Best Practices Guide

Amazon EKS

Copyright © 2026 2024. Review license at https://github.com/aws/aws-eks-best-practices/blob/master/LICENSE

Amazon EKS: Best Practices Guide

Copyright © 2026 2024. Review license at https://github.com/aws/aws-eks-best-practices/blob/master/LICENSE

Amazon's trademarks and trade dress may not be used in connection with any product or service that is not Amazon's, in any manner that is likely to cause confusion among customers, or in any manner that disparages or discredits Amazon. All other trademarks not owned by Amazon are the property of their respective owners, who may or may not be affiliated with, connected to, or sponsored by Amazon

Table of Contents

Introduction **1**
Related guides 2
Contributing 2
Security **3**
How to use this guide 3
Understanding the Shared Responsibility Model 3
Introduction 1
Feedback 6
Further Reading 6
Tools and resources 6
EKS Auto Mode - Security 6
Security Architecture 7
Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) 17
Identity and Access Management 19
Controlling Access to EKS Clusters 20
Cluster Access Recommendations 27
Identities and Credentials for EKS pods 33
Identities and Credentials for EKS pods Recommendations 41
Tools and Resources 50
Pod Security 50
Linux Capabilities 51
Pod Security Solutions 52
Recommendations 61
Tools and resources 50
Multi-tenancy 68
Soft multi-tenancy 68
Kubernetes Constructs 71
Mitigating controls 73
Hard multi-tenancy 80
Future directions 81
Multi-cluster management tools and resources 81
Detective Controls 81
Recommendations 61
Tools and resources 50

Network security ... 89
Traffic control ... 90
Network encryption ... 90
Network policy ... 90
Recommendations ... 61
Security groups ... 95
When to use Network Policy vs Security Group for Pods? ... 97
Service Mesh Policy Enforcement or Kubernetes network policy ... 99
ThirdParty Network Policy Engines ... 100
Encryption in transit ... 101
Tools and resources ... 50
Data encryption and secrets management ... 112
Encryption at rest ... 112
Secrets management ... 114
Tools and resources ... 50
Runtime security ... 116
Security contexts and built-in Kubernetes controls ... 117
Recommendations ... 61
Tools and Resources ... 120
Infrastructure Security ... 121
Recommendations ... 61
Alternatives ... 125
Tools and resources ... 50
Regulatory Compliance ... 128
Shifting Left ... 130
Tools and resources ... 50
Incident response and forensics ... 131
Sample incident response plan ... 132
Recommendations ... 61
Tools and resources ... 50
Image security ... 137
Recommendations ... 61
Tools and resources ... 50
Multi Account Strategy ... 147
Planning for a Multi Workload Account Strategy for Multi Tenant Clusters ... 147
Centralized EKS Cluster ... 148

De-centralized EKS Clusters 154
Centralized vs De-centralized EKS clusters 156
Cluster access management 157
EKS access management options 158
Option 1: AWS IAM Identity Center with Cluster Access Management (CAM) API 158
Option 2: AWS IAM Users/Roles mapped to Kubernetes groups 160
Option 3: OIDC Providers 161
AWS EKS Pod Identity vs IRSA for workloads 162
Recommendation 162
Cluster Autoscaling 163
EKS Auto Mode 163
Reasons to use Auto Mode 164
FAQ 164
Karpenter 170
Recommendations 61
Karpenter best practices 171
Creating NodePools 175
Scheduling Pods 179
CoreDNS recommendations 182
Karpenter Blueprints 182
Additional Resources 89
Cluster Autoscaler 183
Overview 183
Optimizing for Performance and Scalability 188
Optimizing for Cost and Availability 190
Advanced Use Cases 193
Additional Parameters 195
Additional Resources 89
References 80
Reliability 200
How to use this guide 3
Introduction 1
Feedback 6
Applications 203
Recommendations 61
Horizontal Pod Autoscaler (HPA) 208

Vertical Pod Autoscaler (VPA) 208
Updating applications 209
Health checks and self-healing 211
Recommendations 212
Dealing with disruptions 213
Recommendations 214
Observability 216
Recommendations 217
Control Plane 219
EKS Architecture 219
Recommendations 220
Monitor Control Plane Metrics 221
Cluster Authentication 223
Admission Webhooks 225
Handling Cluster Upgrades 226
Cluster Endpoint Connectivity 226
Running large clusters 227
Additional Resources: 228
Data Plane 228
Recommendations 61
Networking 235
Kubernetes Networking Model 235
Container Networking Interface (CNI) 236
Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) CNI 237
Subnet Calculator 238
VPC and Subnets Considerations 239
Overview 183
Recommendations 61
Amazon VPC CNI 250
Overview 183
Recommendations 61
Optimizing IP Address Utilization 262
Optimize node-level IP consumption 262
Mitigate IP exhaustion 262
Running IPv6 Clusters 269
Overview 183

Recommendations 61
Custom Networking 279
Example Configuration 280
Recommendations 61
Prefix Mode for Linux 287
Recommendations 61
Prefix Mode for Windows 292
Recommendations 61
Security Groups Per Pod 297
Recommendations 61
Load Balancing 306
Choosing Load Balancer Type 306
Provisioning Load Balancers 307
Choosing Load Balancer Target-Type 308
Configuring Load Balancer Health Checks 311
Availability and Pod Lifecycle 311
References 80
Appendix 316
Monitoring for Network performance issues 317
Monitoring CoreDNS traffic for DNS throttling issues 317
Monitoring DNS query delays using Conntrack metrics 318
Other important Network performance metrics 319
Capturing the metrics to monitor workloads for network performance issues 319
Running kube-proxy in IPVS Mode 327
Overview 183
Scalability 332
How to use this guide 332
Understanding scaling dimensions 332
Extra large scaling 333
Control Plane 333
Limit workload and node bursting 334
Scale nodes and pods down safely 334
Use Client-Side Cache when running Kubectl 335
Disable kubectl Compression 335
Shard Cluster Autoscaler 336
API Priority and Fairness 337

Retrieving resources in the API server ... 344
Data Plane ... 351
Automatic node autoscaling ... 351
Use many different EC2 instance types ... 351
Prefer larger nodes to reduce API server load ... 352
Use similar node sizes for consistent workload performance ... 353
Use compute resources efficiently ... 354
Automate Amazon Machine Image (AMI) updates ... 354
Use multiple EBS volumes for containers ... 355
Avoid instances with low EBS attach limits if workloads use EBS volumes ... 356
Disable unnecessary logging to disk ... 357
Patch instances in place when OS update speed is a necessity ... 357
Cluster Services ... 358
Scale CoreDNS ... 358
Scale Kubernetes Metrics Server Vertically ... 360
CoreDNS lameduck duration ... 360
CoreDNS readiness probe ... 360
Logging and monitoring agents ... 361
Workloads ... 362
Use IPv6 for pod networking ... 362
Limit number of services per namespace ... 363
Understand Elastic Load Balancer Quotas ... 363
Use Route 53, Global Accelerator, or CloudFront ... 364
Use EndpointSlices instead of Endpoints ... 364
Use immutable and external secrets if possible ... 364
Limit Deployment history ... 365
Disable enableServiceLinks by default ... 365
Limit dynamic admission webhooks per resource ... 366
Compare workloads across multiple clusters ... 366
The theory behind scaling ... 367
Nodes vs. Churn Rate ... 367
Thinking in Queries Per Second ... 368
Scaling Distributed Components ... 368
Upstream and Downstream Bottlenecks ... 369
Scale by Metrics ... 371
Control Plane Monitoring ... 373

API Server ... 373
Where is the issue? ... 373
Scheduler ... 379
Kube Controller Manager ... 381
ETCD ... 383
Node efficiency and scaling ... 384
Node Selection ... 384
Node Bin-packing ... 386
Utilization vs. Saturation ... 393
Setting CPU Limits ... 401
Kubernetes SLOs ... 404
Kubernetes SLOs ... 405
Kubernetes SLI Metrics ... 408
SLOs on Your Cluster ... 411
Known Limits and Service Quotas ... 412
Other AWS Service Quotas ... 413
AWS Request Throttling ... 419
Other Known Limits ... 420
Cluster Upgrades ... 421
Overview ... 421
Before Upgrading ... 421
Keep your cluster up-to-date ... 422
Review the EKS release calendar ... 423
Understand how the shared responsibility model applies to cluster upgrades ... 423
Upgrade clusters in-place ... 423
Upgrade your control plane and data plane in sequence ... 424
Use the EKS Documentation to create an upgrade checklist ... 425
Upgrade add-ons and components using the Kubernetes API ... 425
Verify basic EKS requirements before upgrading ... 426
Verify available IP addresses ... 427
Verify EKS IAM role ... 428
Migrate to EKS Add-ons ... 428
Identify and remediate removed API usage before upgrading the control plane ... 429
Cluster Insights ... 430
Kube-no-trouble ... 431
Pluto ... 432

Resources 432
Update Kubernetes workloads. Use kubectl-convert to update manifests 434
Configure PodDisruptionBudgets and topologySpreadConstraints to ensure availability of your workloads while the data plane is upgraded 434
Use Managed Node Groups or Karpenter to simplify data plane upgrades 436
Confirm version compatibility with existing nodes and the control plane 436
Enable node expiry for Karpenter managed nodes 437
Use Drift feature for Karpenter managed nodes 437
Use eksctl to automate upgrades for self-managed node groups 437
Backup the cluster before upgrading 438
Restart Fargate deployments after upgrading the control plane 438
Evaluate Blue/Green Clusters as an alternative to in-place cluster upgrades 438
Track planned major changes in the Kubernetes project — Think ahead 439
Specific Guidance on Feature Removals 440
Removal of Dockershim in 1.25 - Use Detector for Docker Socket (DDS) 440
Removal of PodSecurityPolicy in 1.25 - Migrate to Pod Security Standards or a policy-as-code solution 440
Deprecation of In-Tree Storage Driver in 1.23 - Migrate to Container Storage Interface (CSI) Drivers 440
Additional Resources 441
ClowdHaus EKS Upgrade Guidance 441
GoNoGo 441
Cost Optimization 442
General Guidelines 442
EKS Cost Optimization Best Practices 442
How to use this guide 3
Key AWS Services and Kubernetes features 443
Feedback 6
Framework 443
The See pillar: Measurement and accountability 444
The Save pillar: Cost optimization 445
The Plan pillar: Planning and forecasting 446
The Run pillar 446
References 80
Awareness 447
Recommendations 61

Other tools 454
Compute 455
Right-size your workloads 455
Reduce consumption 456
Reduce unused capacity 457
Optimize compute capacity types 463
Optimize Compute Usage 466
Network 468
Pod to Pod Communication 468
Load Balancer to Pod Communication 480
Data Transfer from Container Registry 482
Data Transfer to Internet & AWS Services 483
Data Transfer between VPCs 485
Using a Service Mesh 488
Additional Resources 89
Storage 496
Overview 183
Ephemeral Volumes 496
Persistent Volumes 497
Other considerations 504
Observability 505
Introduction 505
Logging 505
EKS Control Plane 505
EKS Data Plane 506
Metrics 510
Tracing 514
Additional Resources: 89
Windows 517
AMI Management 517
Managing your own Amazon EKS optimized Windows AMI 518
Configuring faster launching for custom EKS optimized AMIs 519
Caching Windows base layers on custom AMIs 520
Blog post 521
gMSA for Windows Containers 521
What is a gMSA account 521

Windows container and gMSA use case ... 522
Windows Server Hardening ... 524
Reducing attack surface with Windows Server Core ... 524
Avoiding RDP connections ... 525
Amazon Inspector ... 526
Amazon GuardDuty ... 527
Security in Amazon EC2 for Windows ... 527
Scanning Windows Images ... 528
Windows Versions and Licensing ... 528
Windows Server version ... 528
Licensing ... 529
Logging ... 529
Logging Recomendations ... 529
Monitoring Windows Containers ... 530
Windows Networking ... 535
Windows Container Networking Overview ... 535
IP Address Management ... 536
Container Network Interface (CNI) options ... 539
Network Polices ... 539
Memory and Systems Management ... 539
Reserving system and kubelet memory ... 540
Windows container memory requirements ... 540
Conclusion ... 541
Infrastructure Management ... 541
Pushing and pulling Windows images ... 542
Reference ... 544
Scheduling ... 544
Assigning PODs to Nodes Best practices ... 544
Ensuring OS-specific workloads land on the appropriate container host ... 544
Handling multiple Windows build in the same cluster ... 545
Simplifying NodeSelector and Toleration in Pod manifests using RuntimeClass ... 547
Managed Node Group Support ... 548
Additional documentations ... 548
Pod Security for Windows Containers ... 548
Storage Options ... 551
What is an in-tree vs. out-of-tree volume plugin? ... 551

In-tree Volume Plugin for Windows 552
Out-of-tree for Windows 555
Amazon FSx for Windows File Server 556
Hardening Windows containers images 557
1. Configure Account Policies (Password or Lockout) using Local Security Policies and Registry 558
2. Audit policies 560
3. IIS Security best practices for Windows containers 563
4. Principle of Least Privilege 568
Final Thoughts: Why Securing Your Windows Containers is a Must-Have in Today's Threat Landscape 571
Hybrid 572
Network Disconnection 572
Best practices 573
Kubernetes pod failover 578
Application network traffic 584
Host credentials 588
AI/ML 591
Feedback 591
Compute 591
GPU Resource Optimization and Cost Management 591
Node Resiliency and Training Job Management 605
Application Scaling and Performance 607
Dynamic resource allocation for advanced GPU management 609
Networking 655
Consider Higher Network Bandwidth or Elastic Fabric Adapter For Applications with High Inter-Node Communication 656
Increase the number of IP addresses available to enable faster pod launch times 656
Security 657
Security and Compliance 657
Storage 658
Data Management and Storage 659
Observability 671
Monitoring and Observability 671
Observability and Metrics 672
Performance 688

Managing ML Artifacts, Serving Frameworks, and Startup Optimization 688
Optimizing container image pull times 690
Consider NVMe for kubelet and containerd storage 693
Contribute 694
Summary for existing contributors 694
Setup a local editing environment 694
Fork and clone the repo 694
Open the VS Code Workspace 694
Edit a file 695
Submit a Pull Request 695
Use the github.dev web-based editor 695
Edit a single page 696
View and set the ID for a page 696
Set the page ID 696
Create a new page 697
Create page metadata 697
Add to table of contents 698
Insert an image 698
Check style with Vale 699
Build a local preview 699
AsciiDoc Cheat Sheet 699
Basic Formatting 699
Headers 699
Lists 700
Links 700
Images 700
Code Blocks 700
Tables 701
Admonitions 701
Includes 701

Amazon EKS Best Practices Guide

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Welcome to the EKS Best Practices Guides. The primary goal of this project is to offer a set of best practices for day 2 operations for Amazon EKS. We elected to publish this guidance to GitHub so we could iterate quickly, provide timely and effective recommendations for variety of concerns, and easily incorporate suggestions from the broader community.

We currently have published guides for the following topics:

- Best Practices for Security
- Best Practices for Reliability
- Best Practices for Cluster Autoscaling: Karpenter
- Best Practices for Cluster Autoscaling: cluster-autoscaler
- Best Practices for Cluster Autoscaling: EKS Auto Mode
- Best Practices for Networking
- Best Practices for Scalability
- Best Practices for Cluster Upgrades
- Best Practices for Cost Optimization
- Best Practices for Running Windows Containers
- Best Practices for Hybrid Deployments
- Best Practices for Running AI/ML Workloads

We also open sourced a Python based CLI (Command Line Interface) called hardeneks to check some of the recommendations from this guide.

In the future we will be publishing best practices guidance for performance, cost optimization, and operational excellence.

Related guides

In addition to the EKS User Guide, AWS has published several other guides that may help you with your implementation of EKS.

- EMR Containers Best Practices Guides
- Data on EKS
- AWS Observability Best Practices
- Amazon EKS Blueprints for Terraform
- Amazon EKS Blueprints Quick Start

Contributing

We encourage you to contribute to these guides. If you have implemented a practice that has proven to be effective, please share it with us by opening an issue or a pull request. Similarly, if you discover an error or flaw in the guidance we've already published, please submit a PR to correct it. The guidelines for submitting PRs can be found in our Contributing Guidelines.

Best Practices for Security

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

This guide provides advice about protecting information, systems, and assets that are reliant on EKS while delivering business value through risk assessments and mitigation strategies. The guidance herein is part of a series of best practices guides that AWS is publishing to help customers implement EKS in accordance with best practices. Guides for Performance, Operational Excellence, Cost Optimization, and Reliability will be available in the coming months.

How to use this guide

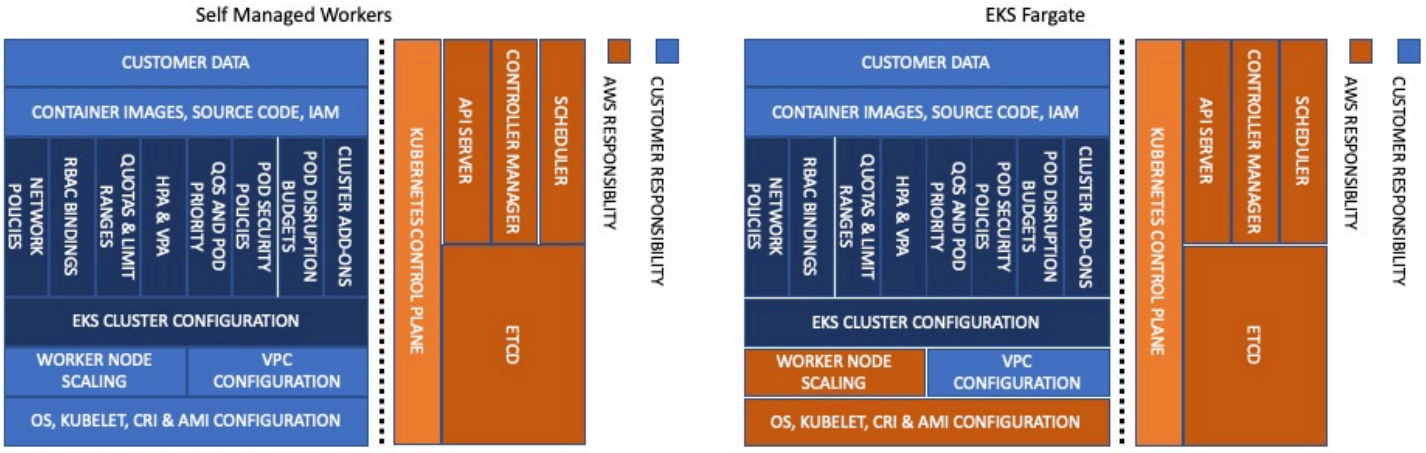
This guide is meant for security practitioners who are responsible for implementing and monitoring the effectiveness of security controls for EKS clusters and the workloads they support. The guide is organized into different topic areas for easier consumption. Each topic starts with a brief overview, followed by a list of recommendations and best practices for securing your EKS clusters. The topics do not need to be read in a particular order.

Understanding the Shared Responsibility Model

Security and compliance are considered shared responsibilities when using a managed service like EKS. Generally speaking, AWS is responsible for security "of" the cloud whereas you, the customer, are responsible for security "in" the cloud. With EKS, AWS is responsible for managing of the EKS managed Kubernetes control plane. This includes the Kubernetes control plane nodes, the ETCD database, and other infrastructure necessary for AWS to deliver a secure and reliable service. As a consumer of EKS, you are largely responsible for the topics in this guide, e.g. IAM, pod security, runtime security, network security, and so forth.

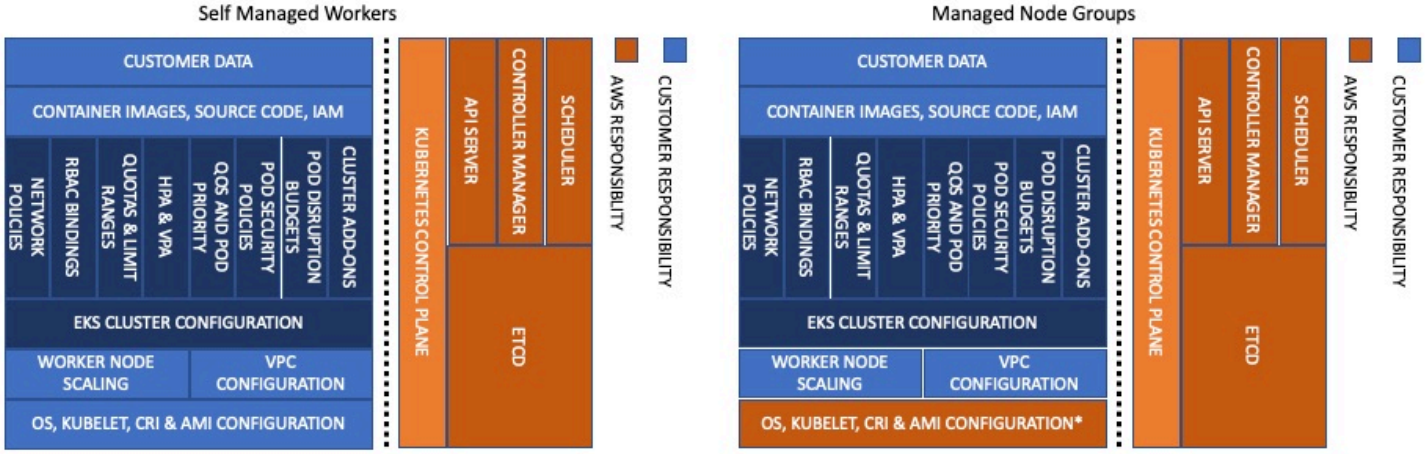
When it comes to infrastructure security, AWS will assume additional responsibilities as you move from self-managed workers, to managed node groups, to Fargate. For example, with Fargate, AWS becomes responsible for securing the underlying instance/runtime used to run your Pods.

Shared Responsibility Model - Fargate



AWS will also assume responsibility of keeping the EKS optimized AMI up to date with Kubernetes patch versions and security patches. Customers using Managed Node Groups (MNG) are responsible for upgrading their Nodegroups to the latest AMI via EKS API, CLI, Cloudformation or AWS Console. Also unlike Fargate, MNGs will not automatically scale your infrastructure/cluster. That can be handled by the cluster-autoscaler or other technologies such as Karpenter, native AWS autoscaling, SpotInst's Ocean, or Atlassian's Escalator.

Shared Responsibility Model - MNG



Before designing your system, it is important to know where the line of demarcation is between your responsibilities and the provider of the service (AWS).

For additional information about the shared responsibility model, see https://aws.amazon.com/compliance/shared-responsibility-model/

Introduction

There are several security best practice areas that are pertinent when using a managed Kubernetes service like EKS:

- Identity and Access Management
- Pod Security
- Runtime Security
- Network Security
- Multi-tenancy
- Multi Account for Multi-tenancy
- Detective Controls
- Infrastructure Security
- Data Encryption and Secrets Management
- Regulatory Compliance
- Incident Response and Forensics
- Image Security

As part of designing any system, you need to think about its security implications and the practices that can affect your security posture. For example, you need to control who can perform actions against a set of resources. You also need the ability to quickly identify security incidents, protect your systems and services from unauthorized access, and maintain the confidentiality and integrity of data through data protection. Having a well-defined and rehearsed set of processes for responding to security incidents will improve your security posture too. These tools and techniques are important because they support objectives such as preventing financial loss or complying with regulatory obligations.

AWS helps organizations achieve their security and compliance goals by offering a rich set of security services that have evolved based on feedback from a broad set of security conscious customers. By offering a highly secure foundation, customers can spend less time on "undifferentiated heavy lifting" and more time on achieving their business objectives.

Feedback

This guide is being released on GitHub so as to collect direct feedback and suggestions from the broader EKS/Kubernetes community. If you have a best practice that you feel we ought to include in the guide, please file an issue or submit a PR in the GitHub repository. Our intention is to update the guide periodically as new features are added to the service or when a new best practice evolves.

Further Reading

Kubernetes Security Whitepaper, sponsored by the Security Audit Working Group, this Whitepaper describes key aspects of the Kubernetes attack surface and security architecture with the aim of helping security practitioners make sound design and implementation decisions.

The CNCF published also a white paper on cloud native security. The paper examines how the technology landscape has evolved and advocates for the adoption of security practices that align with DevOps processes and agile methodologies.

Tools and resources

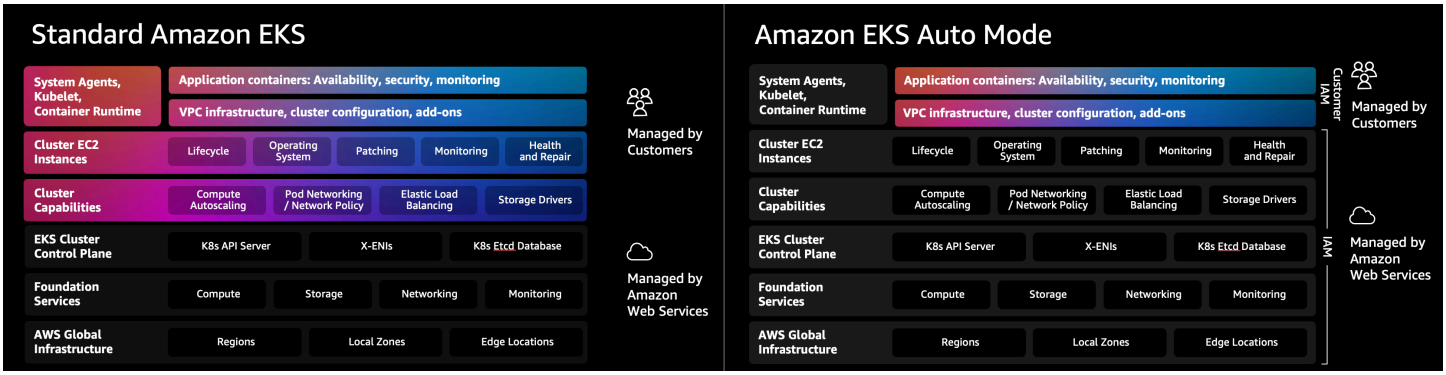
Amazon EKS Security Immersion Workshop

EKS Auto Mode - Security

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Amazon EKS Auto Mode introduces enhanced security capabilities by extending AWS's security management beyond the control plane to include worker nodes and core cluster components. This comprehensive security model helps organizations maintain a strong security posture while reducing operational overhead.

Shared Responsibility Model - EKS Auto Mode



Key security enhancements in EKS Auto Mode include:

- Minimal container-optimized OS with reduced attack surface
- Enforced security best practices through EC2 Managed Instances
- Automated security patch management with mandatory Node rotation
- Built-in node isolation and security boundaries
- Streamlined IAM integration with minimal required permissions

EKS Auto Mode enforces these security controls by default, helping organizations meet their security and compliance requirements while simplifying cluster operations. This approach aligns with defense-in-depth principles, providing multiple layers of security controls at the infrastructure, node, and workload levels.

> **Important**
>
> While EKS Auto Mode provides enhanced security capabilities, organizations should still implement appropriate security controls at the application layer and follow security best practices for their workloads running on the cluster.

Security Architecture

EKS Auto Mode implements security controls across multiple layers of the EKS infrastructure, from the control plane to individual nodes. Understanding this architecture is crucial for effectively managing and securing your EKS clusters.

Control Plane Security

The EKS control plane in EKS Auto Mode maintains the same high-security standards as traditional EKS clusters while adding new security capabilities:

- **Envelope Encryption**: All Kubernetes API data is automatically encrypted using envelope encryption.
- **KMS Integration**: Uses AWS KMS with Kubernetes KMS provider v2, with options for AWS-owned keys or customer-managed keys (CMK).
- **Enhanced Component Management**: Critical components like auto-scaling, ENI management, and EBS controllers are moved outside the cluster and managed by AWS.
- **Improved Security Controls and Audit Capabilities**: EKS Auto Mode required permissions, beyond standard EKS clusters, are fully managed through the cluster IAM role rather than individual node roles.

IAM Integration and Access Management

EKS Auto Mode provides enhanced integration with AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) through EKS Access Entries and EKS Pod Identity.

Cluster Access Management

EKS Auto Mode introduces improvements to cluster access management through the Cluster Access Management (CAM) API:

- Standardized authentication modes through `EKS_API`
- Enhanced security through API-based access management
- Simplified access control using Access Entries and Access Policies

Access Entries can be created to manage cluster access:

```
aws eks create-access-entry \
    --cluster-name ${EKS_CLUSTER_NAME} \
    --principal-arn arn:aws:iam::${ACCOUNT_ID}:role/${IAM_ROLE_NAME} \
    --type STANDARD
```

> **Important**
>
> While it is still possible to create an EKS Auto Mode cluster with `CONFIG_MAP_AND_API` authentication mode, this is not the standard approach, and it's highly recommended to use the default `API` authentication mode for new clusters. `API` based authentication provides enhanced security and simplified access management compared to the legacy ConfigMap-based approach.

EKS Pod Identity

EKS Auto Mode comes with Pod Identity Agent already deployed, allowing a streamlined way to grant AWS IAM permissions to Pods:

- Simplified IAM permissions management without OIDC provider configuration
- Reduced operational overhead compared to IRSA
- Enhanced security through session tagging and ABAC support

```
aws eks create-pod-identity-association \
  --cluster-name ${EKS_CLUSTER_NAME} \
  --role-arn arn:aws:iam::${AWS_ACCOUNT_ID}:role/${IAM_ROLE_NAME} \
  --namespace ${NAMESPACE} \
  --service-account ${SERVICE_ACCOUNT_NAME}
```

> **Important**
>
> Pod Identity is the recommended approach for IAM permissions in EKS Auto Mode as it provides enhanced security features and simplified management compared to IRSA.

Node IAM Role

EKS Auto Mode uses a new `AmazonEKSWorkerNodeMinimalPolicy` which provides only the permissions required for EKS Auto Mode nodes to operate. Those permissions:

- Provide a reduced set of permissions compared to traditional node policies
- Adhere to the principle of least privilege

- Are automatically managed and updated by AWS

This minimal policy approach helps improve the security posture by limiting the permissions available to the node and its workloads.

Node Security

EKS Auto Mode introduces several significant security improvements at the node level:

EC2 Managed Instances Security

EKS Auto Mode nodes use Amazon EC2 Managed Instances with enhanced security properties:

- IAM-enforced restrictions that prevent operations that could compromise AWS's ability to operate the nodes
- Immutable infrastructure patterns where configuration changes require node replacement
- Mandatory node replacement within 21 days to ensure regular security updates
- Restricted access to instance metadata using IMDSv2 with controlled hop limits

Operating System Security

The operating system is a custom variant of Bottlerocket, optimized for EKS Auto Mode, that includes:

- Read-only root filesystem
- SELinux enabled by default with mandatory access controls
- Automatic Pod isolation using unique SELinux MCS labels
- Disabled SSH access and removal of unnecessary services
- Automated security patches through node rotation

Node Component Security

Node components are configured with security best practices:

- Kubelet configured with secure defaults
- Container runtime hardened configuration
- Automated certificate management and rotation

- Restricted node-to-control-plane communication

Network Security

EKS Auto Mode implements several network security features to ensure secure communication within the cluster and with external resources:

VPC CNI Network Policy

EKS Auto Mode leverages the native Kubernetes Network Policy support of the Amazon VPC CNI Plugin:

- Integrates with the upstream Kubernetes Network Policy API
- Allows fine-grained control over pod-to-pod communication
- Supports both ingress and egress rules

To enable network policy support in EKS Auto Mode, you need to configure the VPC CNI add-on with a `configMap` manifest. Here is an example:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ConfigMap
metadata:
  name: amazon-vpc-cni
  namespace: kube-system
data:
  enable-network-policy: "true"
```

It's also required to define the Network Policy support is configured in the Node Class, as illustrated here:

```
apiVersion: eks.amazonaws.com/v1
kind: NodeClass
metadata:
  name: example-node-class
spec:
  networkPolicy: DefaultAllow
  networkPolicyEventLogs: Enabled
```

Once enabled, you can create network policies to control traffic:

```
apiVersion: networking.k8s.io/v1
kind: NetworkPolicy
metadata:
  name: default-deny
spec:
  podSelector: {}
  policyTypes:
  - Ingress
  - Egress
```

Enhanced ENI Management

EKS Auto Mode provides improved security for Elastic Network Interface (ENI) management:

- AWS-managed ENI attachment and configuration
- Separation of control traffic from data traffic
- Automated IP address management with reduced privileges required on nodes

Storage Security

EKS Auto Mode provides enhanced security features for both ephemeral and persistent storage:

Ephemeral Storage

- All data written to ephemeral volumes is automatically encrypted
- Uses industry-standard AES-256 cryptographic algorithm
- Encryption and decryption handled seamlessly by the service

EBS Volumes

- Root and data EBS volumes are always encrypted
- Volumes are configured to be deleted upon termination of the instance
- There is an option to specify custom KMS keys for encryption

EFS Integration

- Support for encryption in transit with EFS

- Automatic encryption at rest for EFS file systems
- Integration with EFS access points for enhanced access control

> **Important**
>
> When using EFS with EKS Auto Mode, ensure that the appropriate encryption settings are configured at the EFS file system level, as EKS Auto Mode does not manage EFS encryption directly.

Monitoring and Logging

EKS Auto Mode provides enhanced monitoring and logging capabilities to help you maintain visibility into your cluster's security posture and operational health.

Control Plane Logging

EKS Auto Mode maintains the same control plane logging capabilities as standard EKS, however it enables all logs by default for enhanced monitoring.

- Logs are sent to Amazon CloudWatch Logs
- By default, EKS Auto Mode enables all control-plane logs: API server, audit, authenticator, controller manager, and scheduler
- EKS Auto Mode enables detailed visibility into cluster operations and security events

> **Important**
>
> Control plane logging incurs additional costs for log storage in CloudWatch. Consider your logging strategy carefully to balance security needs with cost management.

Node-level Logging

EKS Auto Mode enhances node-level logging:

- System logs are automatically collected and can be accessed via CloudWatch Logs
- Node logs are retained even after node termination, aiding in post-incident analysis

- Enhanced visibility into node-level security events and operational issues

Amazon GuardDuty Integration

EKS Auto Mode clusters seamlessly integrate with Amazon GuardDuty for enhanced threat detection. Features include:

- Automated scanning for control-plane audit logs
- Runtime monitoring that can be enabled for workloads monitoring
- Integration with existing GuardDuty findings and alerting mechanisms

To enable EKS Auto Mode protection on Amazon GuardDuty for Kubernetes Audit Logs, you can run the following command:

```
aws guardduty update-detector \
    --detector-id 12abc34d567e8fa901bc2d34e56789f0 \
    --data-sources '{"Kubernetes":{"AuditLogs":{"Enable":true}}}'
```

Amazon GuardDuty Integration for Runtime Security

Amazon GuardDuty provides essential runtime security monitoring for EKS Auto Mode clusters, offering comprehensive threat detection and security monitoring capabilities. This integration is particularly important as it helps identify potential security threats and malicious activity in real-time.

Key GuardDuty Features for EKS Auto Mode

- **Runtime Monitoring**:
  - Continuous monitoring of runtime behavior
  - Detection of malicious or suspicious activities
  - Identification of potential container escape attempts
  - Monitoring of unusual process execution or network connections
- **Kubernetes-Specific Threat Detection**:
  - Identification of suspicious pod deployment attempts
  - Detection of compromised containers
  - Monitoring of privileged container launches

  - Identification of suspicious service account usage
- **Comprehensive Finding Types**:
  - Policy:Kubernetes/* - Detects violations of security best practices
  - Impact:Kubernetes/* - Identifies potentially impacted resources
  - Discovery:Kubernetes/* - Detects reconnaissance activities
  - Execution:Kubernetes/* - Identifies suspicious execution patterns
  - Persistence:Kubernetes/* - Detects potential persistent threats

To enable EKS Auto Mode protection on Amazon GuardDuty for Kubernetes Audit Logs and Runtime Monitoring, you can run the following command:

```
aws guardduty update-detector \
    --detector-id 12abc34d567e8fa901bc2d34e56789f0 \
    --data-sources '{
        "Kubernetes": {
            "AuditLogs": {"Enable": true},
            "RuntimeMonitoring": {"Enable": true}
        }
    }'
```

> **Important**
>
> GuardDuty Runtime Monitoring is automatically supported in EKS Auto Mode clusters, providing enhanced security visibility without additional configuration at the node level.

GuardDuty Findings Integration

GuardDuty findings can be integrated with other AWS services for automated response:

- **EventBridge Rules**:

```
{
  "source": ["aws.guardduty"],
  "detail-type": ["GuardDuty Finding"],
  "detail": {
    "type": ["Runtime:Container/*", "Runtime:Kubernetes/*"],
```

```
    "severity": [4, 5, 6, 7, 8]
  }
}
```

- **Security Hub Integration**:

```
# Enable Security Hub integration
aws securityhub enable-security-hub \
    --enable-default-standards \
    --tags '{"Environment":"Production"}' \
    --region us-west-2
```

Best Practices for GuardDuty with EKS Auto Mode

1. **Enable All Finding Types**:
   - Enable both Kubernetes audit log monitoring and runtime monitoring
   - Configure findings for all severity levels
2. **Implement Automated Response**:
   - Create EventBridge rules for high-severity findings
   - Integrate with AWS Security Hub for centralized security management
   - Set up automated remediation actions where appropriate
3. **Regular Review and Tuning**:
   - Regularly review GuardDuty findings
   - Tune detection thresholds based on your environment
   - Update response procedures based on new finding types
4. **Cross-Account Management**:
   - Consider using GuardDuty administrator account for centralized management
   - Enable findings aggregation across multiple accounts

> **Warning**
>
> While GuardDuty provides comprehensive security monitoring, it should be part of a defense-in-depth strategy that includes other security controls such as Network Policies, Pod Security Standards, and proper RBAC configuration.

Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ)

Q: How does EKS Auto Mode differ from standard EKS in terms of security? A: EKS Auto Mode provides enhanced security through EC2 Managed Instances, automated patching, mandatory node rotation, and built-in security controls. It reduces the operational overhead while maintaining strong security posture by having AWS manage more of the security aspects.

Q: Can I still use existing security tools and policies with EKS Auto Mode? A: Yes, EKS Auto Mode is compatible with most existing security tools and policies. However, some node-level security tools might require adaptation due to the managed nature of EKS Auto Mode nodes.

Q: How do I deploy security agents and monitoring tools in EKS Auto Mode? A: In EKS Auto Mode, security agents and monitoring tools should be deployed as Kubernetes workloads (typically DaemonSets, which deploys one instance of the Pod on every node by default) rather than installed directly on the node OS. This approach aligns with the immutable infrastructure model of EKS Auto Mode. Example:

```
apiVersion: apps/v1
kind: DaemonSet
metadata:
  name: security-agent
  namespace: security
spec:
  selector:
    matchLabels:
      app: security-agent
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: security-agent
    spec:
      containers:
      - name: security-agent
        image: security-vendor/agent:latest
        securityContext:
          privileged: false
          # Use specific capabilities instead of privileged mode
          capabilities:
            add: ["NET_ADMIN", "SYS_ADMIN"]
```

Q: Are third-party security solutions compatible with EKS Auto Mode? A: Many popular third-party security solutions have been updated to support EKS Auto Mode, however it is always recommended to verify the specific version and deployment requirements with your security vendor, as support for EKS Auto Mode may require updated versions or specific deployment configurations.

Q: What are the limitations for security agents in EKS Auto Mode? A: Key limitations include:

- No direct access to modify the node's operating system
- No persistence across node rotations
- Must be compatible with container-based deployment
- Need to respect node immutability
- May require different privilege configurations
- Any persistent changes to the Nodes, should be done through `NodePools` and `NodeClasses` resources.

> **Note**
>
> While EKS Auto Mode may require adjustments to your security tooling deployment strategy, these changes often result in more maintainable and secure configurations aligned with cloud-native best practices. EKS Auto Mode expects to completely take over most of the features it manages. Therefore, any manual changes you make to those features, if you can get to them, could be overwritten or discarded by EKS Auto Mode.

Q: Can I use custom AMIs with EKS Auto Mode? A: At this moment, EKS Auto Mode does not support custom AMIs. This is by design as AWS manages the security, patching, and maintenance of the nodes as part of the shared responsibility model. The EKS Auto Mode nodes use a specialized variant of Bottlerocket that is optimized and maintained by AWS.

Q: How often are nodes automatically rotated in EKS Auto Mode? A: Nodes in EKS Auto Mode have a maximum lifetime of 21 days. They will be automatically replaced before this limit, ensuring regular security updates and patch application.

Q: Can I SSH into EKS Auto Mode nodes for troubleshooting? A: No, direct SSH access is not available in EKS Auto Mode. Instead, you can use the NodeDiagnostic Custom Resource Definition (CRD) for collecting system logs and debugging information.

Q: Is Network Policy support enabled by default in EKS Auto Mode? A: For now, Network Policy support needs to be explicitly enabled through the VPC CNI add-on configuration. Once enabled, you can use standard Kubernetes Network Policies.

Q: Should I use IRSA or Pod Identity with EKS Auto Mode? A: While both are supported, Pod Identity is the recommended approach in EKS Auto Mode as it already includes the Pod Identity Security agent add-on and provides enhanced security features and simplified management.

Q: Can I still use the aws-auth ConfigMap in EKS Auto Mode? A: The `aws-auth` ConfigMap is a deprecated feature. It's recommended to use the default approach of API-based authentication for enhanced security and simplified access management.

Q: How can I monitor security events in EKS Auto Mode? A: EKS Auto Mode integrates with multiple monitoring solutions including GuardDuty, CloudWatch, and CloudTrail. GuardDuty provides enhanced runtime security monitoring specifically for EKS workloads.

Q: How do I collect logs from EKS Auto Mode nodes? A: Use the NodeDiagnostic CRD, which automatically uploads logs to an S3 bucket. You can also use CloudWatch Container Insights and AWS Distro for OpenTelemetry.

> **Note**
>
> This FAQ section is regularly updated as new features are added to EKS Auto Mode and as we receive common questions from customers.

Identity and Access Management

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Identity and Access Management (IAM) is an AWS service that performs two essential functions: Authentication and Authorization. Authentication involves the verification of a identity whereas authorization governs the actions that can be performed by AWS resources. Within AWS, a resource can be another AWS service, e.g. EC2, or an AWS principal such as an IAM User or Role. The rules governing the actions that a resource is allowed to perform are expressed as IAM policies.

Controlling Access to EKS Clusters

The Kubernetes project supports a variety of different strategies to authenticate requests to the kube-apiserver service, e.g. Bearer Tokens, X.509 certificates, OIDC, etc. EKS currently has native support for webhook token authentication, service account tokens, and as of February 21, 2021, OIDC authentication.

The webhook authentication strategy calls a webhook that verifies bearer tokens. On EKS, these bearer tokens are generated by the AWS CLI or the aws-iam-authenticator client when you run `kubectl` commands. As you execute commands, the token is passed to the kube-apiserver which forwards it to the authentication webhook. If the request is well-formed, the webhook calls a pre-signed URL embedded in the token's body. This URL validates the request's signature and returns information about the user, e.g. the user's account, Arn, and UserId to the kube-apiserver.

To manually generate a authentication token, type the following command in a terminal window:

```
aws eks get-token --cluster-name <cluster_name> --region <region>
```

The output should resemble this:

```
{
    "kind": "ExecCredential",
    "apiVersion": "client.authentication.k8s.io/v1alpha1",
    "spec": {},
    "status": {
        "expirationTimestamp": "2024-12-20T17:38:48Z",
        "token": "k8s-aws-
v1.aHR0cHM6Ly9zdHMudXMtd2VzdC0yLmFtYXpvbmF3cy5jb20vP0FjdGlvbj1HZ...."
    }
}
```

You can also get a token programmatically. Below is an example written in Go:

```
package main

import (
  "fmt"
  "log"
  "sigs.k8s.io/aws-iam-authenticator/pkg/token"
)
```

```
func main()  {
  g, _ := token.NewGenerator(false, false)
  tk, err := g.Get("<cluster_name>")
  if err != nil {
    log.Fatal(err)
  }
  fmt.Println(tk)
}
```

The output should resemble this:

```
{
  "kind": "ExecCredential",
  "apiVersion": "client.authentication.k8s.io/v1alpha1",
  "spec": {},
  "status": {
    "expirationTimestamp": "2020-02-19T16:08:27Z",
    "token": "k8s-aws-
v1.aHR0cHM6Ly9zdHMuYW1hem9uYXdzLmNvbS8_QWN0aW9uPUdldENhbGxlcklkZW50aXR5JlZlcnNpb249MjAxMS0wNi0x
  }
}
```

Each token starts with `k8s-aws-v1.` followed by a base64 encoded string. The string, when decoded, should resemble to something similar to this:

```
https://sts.amazonaws.com/?Action=GetCallerIdentity&Version=2011-06-15&X-
Amz-Algorithm=AWS4-HMAC-SHA256&X-Amz-Credential=XXXXJPFRILKNSRC2W5QA
%2F20200219%2Fus-xxxx-1%2Fsts%2Faws4_request&X-Amz-Date=20200219T155427Z&X-
Amz-Expires=60&X-Amz-SignedHeaders=host%3Bx-k8s-aws-id&X-Amz-
Signature=XXXf8f3285e320ddb5e683a5c9a405301ad76546f24f28111fdad09cf648a393
```

The token consists of a pre-signed URL that includes an Amazon credential and signature. For additional details see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/STS/latest/APIReference/API_GetCallerIdentity.html.

The token has a time to live (TTL) of 15 minutes after which a new token will need to be generated. This is handled automatically when you use a client like `kubectl`, however, if you're using the Kubernetes dashboard, you will need to generate a new token and re-authenticate each time the token expires.

Once the user's identity has been authenticated by the AWS IAM service, the kube-apiserver reads the `aws-auth` ConfigMap in the `kube-system` Namespace to determine the RBAC group to associate with the user. The `aws-auth` ConfigMap is used to create a static mapping between IAM principals, i.e. IAM Users and Roles, and Kubernetes RBAC groups. RBAC groups can be referenced in Kubernetes RoleBindings or ClusterRoleBindings. They are similar to IAM Roles in that they define a set of actions (verbs) that can be performed against a collection of Kubernetes resources (objects).

CloudWatch query to help users identify clients sending requests to global STS endpoint

Run CloudWatch query below to get sts endpoint. If stsendpoint equals to "sts.amazonaws.com", then it is a global STS endpoint. If stsendpoint equals like "sts.<region>.amazonaws.com", then it is a regional STS endpoint.

```
fields @timestamp, @message, @logStream, @log,stsendpoint
| filter @logStream like /authenticator/
| filter @message like /stsendpoint/
| sort @timestamp desc
| limit 10000
```

Cluster Access Manager

Cluster Access Manager, now the preferred way to manage access of AWS IAM principals to Amazon EKS clusters, is a functionality of the AWS API and is an opt-in feature for EKS v1.23 and later clusters (new or existing). It simplifies identity mapping between AWS IAM and Kubernetes RBACs, eliminating the need to switch between AWS and Kubernetes APIs or editing the `aws-auth` ConfigMap for access management, reducing operational overhead, and helping address misconfigurations. The tool also enables cluster administrators to revoke or refine `cluster-admin` permissions automatically granted to the AWS IAM principal used to create the cluster.

This API relies on two concepts:

- **Access Entries:** A cluster identity directly linked to an AWS IAM principal (user or role) allowed to authenticate to an Amazon EKS cluster.
- **Access Policies:** Are Amazon EKS specific policies that provides the authorization for an Access Entry to perform actions in the Amazon EKS cluster.

At launch Amazon EKS supports only predefined and AWS managed policies. Access policies are not IAM entities and are defined and managed by Amazon EKS.

Cluster Access Manager allows the combination of upstream RBAC with Access Policies supporting allow and pass (but not deny) on Kubernetes AuthZ decisions regarding API server requests. A deny decision will happen when both, the upstream RBAC and Amazon EKS authorizers can't determine the outcome of a request evaluation.

With this feature, Amazon EKS supports three modes of authentication:

1. `CONFIG_MAP` to continue using `aws-auth` configMap exclusively.
2. `API_AND_CONFIG_MAP` to source authenticated IAM principals from both EKS Access Entry APIs and the `aws-auth` configMap, prioritizing the Access Entries. Ideal to migrate existing `aws-auth` permissions to Access Entries.
3. `API` to exclusively rely on EKS Access Entry APIs. This is the new **recommended approach**.

To get started, cluster administrators can create or update Amazon EKS clusters, setting the preferred authentication to `API_AND_CONFIG_MAP` or `API` method and define Access Entries to grant access the desired AWS IAM principals.

```
$ aws eks create-cluster \
    --name <CLUSTER_NAME> \
    --role-arn <CLUSTER_ROLE_ARN> \
    --resources-vpc-config
 subnetIds=<value>,endpointPublicAccess=true,endpointPrivateAccess=true \
    --logging '{"clusterLogging":[{"types":
["api","audit","authenticator","controllerManager","scheduler"],"enabled":true}]}' \
    --access-config
 authenticationMode=API_AND_CONFIG_MAP,bootstrapClusterCreatorAdminPermissions=false
```

The above command is an example to create an Amazon EKS cluster already without the admin permissions of the cluster creator.

It is possible to update Amazon EKS clusters configuration to enable `API` authenticationMode using the `update-cluster-config` command, to do that on existing clusters using `CONFIG_MAP` you will have to first update to `API_AND_CONFIG_MAP` and then to `API`. **These operations cannot be reverted**, meaning that's not possible to switch from `API` to `API_AND_CONFIG_MAP` or `CONFIG_MAP`, and also from `API_AND_CONFIG_MAP` to `CONFIG_MAP`.

```
$ aws eks update-cluster-config \
    --name <CLUSTER_NAME> \
    --access-config authenticationMode=API
```

The API support commands to add and revoke access to the cluster, as well as validate the existing Access Policies and Access Entries for the specified cluster. The default policies are created to match Kubernetes RBACs as follows.

EKS Access Policy	Kubernetes RBAC
AmazonEKSClusterAdminPolicy	cluster-admin
AmazonEKSAdminPolicy	admin
AmazonEKSEditPolicy	edit
AmazonEKSViewPolicy	view

```
$ aws eks list-access-policies
{
    "accessPolicies": [
        {
            "name": "AmazonEKSAdminPolicy",
            "arn": "arn:aws:eks::aws:cluster-access-policy/AmazonEKSAdminPolicy"
        },
        {
            "name": "AmazonEKSClusterAdminPolicy",
            "arn": "arn:aws:eks::aws:cluster-access-policy/AmazonEKSClusterAdminPolicy"
        },
        {
            "name": "AmazonEKSEditPolicy",
            "arn": "arn:aws:eks::aws:cluster-access-policy/AmazonEKSEditPolicy"
        },
        {
            "name": "AmazonEKSViewPolicy",
            "arn": "arn:aws:eks::aws:cluster-access-policy/AmazonEKSViewPolicy"
        }
    ]
}
```

```
$ aws eks list-access-entries --cluster-name <CLUSTER_NAME>

{
    "accessEntries": []
}
```

No Access Entries are available when the cluster is created without the cluster creator admin permission, which is the only entry created by default.

The `aws-auth` ConfigMap *(deprecated)*

One way Kubernetes integration with AWS authentication can be done is via the `aws-auth` ConfigMap, which resides in the `kube-system` Namespace. It is responsible for mapping the AWS IAM Identities (Users, Groups, and Roles) authentication, to Kubernetes role-based access control (RBAC) authorization. The `aws-auth` ConfigMap is automatically created in your Amazon EKS cluster during its provisioning phase. It was initially created to allow nodes to join your cluster, but as mentioned you can also use this ConfigMap to add RBACs access to IAM principals.

To check your cluster's `aws-auth` ConfigMap, you can use the following command.

```
kubectl -n kube-system get configmap aws-auth -o yaml
```

This is a sample of a default configuration of the `aws-auth` ConfigMap.

```
apiVersion: v1
data:
  mapRoles: |
    - groups:
      - system:bootstrappers
      - system:nodes
      - system:node-proxier
      rolearn: arn:aws:iam::<AWS_ACCOUNT_ID>:role/kube-system-<SELF_GENERATED_UUID>
      username: system:node:{{SessionName}}
kind: ConfigMap
metadata:
  creationTimestamp: "2023-10-22T18:19:30Z"
  name: aws-auth
  namespace: kube-system
```

The main session of this ConfigMap, is under `data` in the `mapRoles` block, which is basically composed by 3 parameters.

- **groups:** The Kubernetes group/groups to map the IAM Role to. This can be a default group, or a custom group specified in a `clusterrolebinding` or `rolebinding`. In the above example we have just system groups declared.
- **rolearn:** The ARN of the AWS IAM Role be mapped to the Kubernetes group/groups add, using the following format `arn:<PARTITION>:iam::<AWS_ACCOUNT_ID>:role/role-name`.
- **username:** The username within Kubernetes to map to the AWS IAM role. This can be any custom name.

It is also possible to map permissions for AWS IAM Users, defining a new configuration block for `mapUsers`, under `data` in the `aws-auth` ConfigMap, replacing the **rolearn** parameter for **userarn**, however as a **Best Practice** it's always recommended to user `mapRoles` instead.

To manage permissions, you can edit the `aws-auth` ConfigMap adding or removing access to your Amazon EKS cluster. Although it's possible to edit the `aws-auth` ConfigMap manually, it's recommended using tools like `eksctl`, since this is a very senstitive configuration, and an inaccurate configuration can lock you outside your Amazon EKS Cluster. Check the subsection Use tools to make changes to the aws-auth ConfigMap below for more details.

Benefits over ConfigMap-based access management

1. **Reduced risk of misconfigurations**: Direct API-based management eliminates common errors associated with manual ConfigMap editing. This helps in preventing accidental deletions or syntax errors that could lock users out of the cluster.
2. **Enhanced least privilege principle**: Removes the need for cluster-admin permission from the cluster creator identity and allows for more granular and appropriate permissions assignment. You can choose to add this permission for break-glass use cases.
3. **Enhanced security model**: Provides built-in validation of access entries before they are applied. Additionally, offers tighter integration with AWS IAM for authentication.
4. **Streamlined operations**: Offers a more intuitive way to manage permissions through AWS-native tooling.

Cluster Access Recommendations

Combine IAM Identity Center with CAM API

- **Simplified management**: By using the Cluster Access Management API in conjunction with IAM Identity Center, administrators can manage EKS cluster access alongside other AWS services, reducing the need to switch between different interfaces or edit ConfigMaps manually.
- Use access entries to manage the Kubernetes permissions of IAM principals from outside the cluster. You can add and manage access to the cluster by using the EKS API, AWS Command Line Interface, AWS SDKs, AWS CloudFormation, and AWS Management Console. This means you can manage users with the same tools that you created the cluster with.
- Leverage automation as demonstrated in this example for deploying clusters with AWS IAM Identity Center as IdP having CAM API as entrypoint.
- Granular Kubernetes permissions can be applied with mapping Kubernetes users or groups with IAM principals associated with SSO identities via access entries and access policies.
- To get started, follow Change authentication mode to use access entries, then Migrating existing aws-auth ConfigMap entries to access entries.

Make the EKS Cluster Endpoint private

By default when you provision an EKS cluster, the API cluster endpoint is set to public, i.e. it can be accessed from the Internet. Despite being accessible from the Internet, the endpoint is still considered secure because it requires all API requests to be authenticated by IAM and then authorized by Kubernetes RBAC. That said, if your corporate security policy mandates that you restrict access to the API from the Internet or prevents you from routing traffic outside the cluster VPC, you can:

- Configure the EKS cluster endpoint to be private. See Modifying Cluster Endpoint Access for further information on this topic.
- Leave the cluster endpoint public and specify which CIDR blocks can communicate with the cluster endpoint. The blocks are effectively a whitelisted set of public IP addresses that are allowed to access the cluster endpoint.
- Configure public access with a set of whitelisted CIDR blocks and set private endpoint access to enabled. This will allow public access from a specific range of public IPs while forcing all network traffic between the kubelets (workers) and the Kubernetes API through the cross-account ENIs that get provisioned into the cluster VPC when the control plane is provisioned.

Don’t use a service account token for authentication

A service account token is a long-lived, static credential. If it is compromised, lost, or stolen, an attacker may be able to perform all the actions associated with that token until the service account is deleted. At times, you may need to grant an exception for applications that have to consume the Kubernetes API from outside the cluster, e.g. a CI/CD pipeline application. If such applications run on AWS infrastructure, like EC2 instances, consider using an instance profile and mapping that to a Kubernetes RBAC role.

Employ least privileged access to AWS Resources

An IAM User does not need to be assigned privileges to AWS resources to access the Kubernetes API. If you need to grant an IAM user access to an EKS cluster, create an entry in the `aws-auth` ConfigMap for that user that maps to a specific Kubernetes RBAC group.

Remove the cluster-admin permissions from the cluster creator principal

By default Amazon EKS clusters are created with a permanent `cluster-admin` permission bound to the cluster creator principal. With the Cluster Access Manager API, it’s possible to create clusters without this permission setting the `--access-config bootstrapClusterCreatorAdminPermissions` to `false`, when using `API_AND_CONFIG_MAP` or `API` authentication mode. Revoke this access considered a best practice to avoid any unwanted changes to the cluster configuration. The process to revoke this access, follows the same process to revoke any other access to the cluster.

The API gives you flexibility to only disassociate an IAM principal from an Access Policy, in this case the `AmazonEKSClusterAdminPolicy`.

```
$ aws eks list-associated-access-policies \
    --cluster-name <CLUSTER_NAME> \
    --principal-arn <IAM_PRINCIPAL_ARN>

$ aws eks disassociate-access-policy --cluster-name <CLUSTER_NAME> \
    --principal-arn <IAM_PRINCIPAL_ARN. \
    --policy-arn arn:aws:eks::aws:cluster-access-policy/AmazonEKSClusterAdminPolicy
```

Or completely removing the Access Entry associated with the `cluster-admin` permission.

```
$ aws eks list-access-entries --cluster-name <CLUSTER_NAME>
```

```
{
    "accessEntries": []
}

$ aws eks delete-access-entry --cluster-name <CLUSTER_NAME> \
  --principal-arn <IAM_PRINCIPAL_ARN>
```

This access can be granted again if needed during an incident, emergency or break glass scenario where the cluster is otherwise inaccessible.

If the cluster still configured with the `CONFIG_MAP` authentication method, all additional users should be granted access to the cluster through the `aws-auth` ConfigMap, and after `aws-auth` ConfigMap is configured, the role assigned to the entity that created the cluster, can be deleted and only recreated in case of an incident, emergency or break glass scenario, or where the `aws-auth` ConfigMap is corrupted and the cluster is otherwise inaccessible. This can be particularly useful in production clusters.

Use IAM Roles when multiple users need identical access to the cluster

Rather than creating an entry for each individual IAM User, allow those users to assume an IAM Role and map that role to a Kubernetes RBAC group. This will be easier to maintain, especially as the number of users that require access grows.

> **Important**
>
> When accessing the EKS cluster with the IAM entity mapped by `aws-auth` ConfigMap, the username described is recorded in the user field of the Kubernetes audit log. If you're using an IAM role, the actual users who assume that role aren't recorded and can't be audited.

If still using the `aws-auth` configMap as the authentication method, when assigning K8s RBAC permissions to an IAM role, you should include \{{SessionName}} in your username. That way, the audit log will record the session name so you can track who the actual user assume this role along with the CloudTrail log.

```
- rolearn: arn:aws:iam::XXXXXXXXXXXX:role/testRole
  username: testRole:{{SessionName}}
  groups:
```

```
    - system:masters
```

In Kubernetes 1.20 and above, this change is no longer required, since `user.extra.sessionName.0` was added to the Kubernetes audit log.

Employ least privileged access when creating RoleBindings and ClusterRoleBindings

Like the earlier point about granting access to AWS Resources, RoleBindings and ClusterRoleBindings should only include the set of permissions necessary to perform a specific function. Avoid using `["*"]` in your Roles and ClusterRoles unless it's absolutely necessary. If you're unsure what permissions to assign, consider using a tool like audit2rbac to automatically generate Roles and binding based on the observed API calls in the Kubernetes Audit Log.

Create cluster using an automated process

As seen in earlier steps, when creating an Amazon EKS cluster, if not using the using `API_AND_CONFIG_MAP` or `API` authentication mode, and not opting out to delegate `cluster-admin` permissions to the cluster creator, the IAM entity user or role, such as a federated user that creates the cluster, is automatically granted `system:masters` permissions in the cluster's RBAC configuration. Even being a best practice to remove this permission, as described here if using the `CONFIG_MAP` authentication method, relying on `aws-auth` ConfigMap, this access cannot be revoked. Therefore it is a good idea to create the cluster with an infrastructure automation pipeline tied to dedicated IAM role, with no permissions to be assumed by other users or entities and regularly audit this role's permissions, policies, and who has access to trigger the pipeline. Also, this role should not be used to perform routine actions on the cluster, and be exclusively used to cluster level actions triggered by the pipeline, via SCM code changes for example.

Create the cluster with a dedicated IAM role

When you create an Amazon EKS cluster, the IAM entity user or role, such as a federated user that creates the cluster, is automatically granted `system:masters` permissions in the cluster's RBAC configuration. This access cannot be removed and is not managed through the `aws-auth` ConfigMap. Therefore it is a good idea to create the cluster with a dedicated IAM role and regularly audit who can assume this role. This role should not be used to perform routine actions on the cluster, and instead additional users should be granted access to the cluster through the `aws-auth` ConfigMap for this purpose. After the `aws-auth` ConfigMap is configured, the role should be secured and only used in temporary elevated privilege mode / break glass for scenarios where the

cluster is otherwise inaccessible. This can be particularly useful in clusters which do not have direct user access configured.

Regularly audit access to the cluster

Who requires access is likely to change over time. Plan to periodically audit the `aws-auth` ConfigMap to see who has been granted access and the rights they've been assigned. You can also use open source tooling like kubectl-who-can, or rbac-lookup to examine the roles bound to a particular service account, user, or group. We'll explore this topic further when we get to the section on auditing. Additional ideas can be found in this article from NCC Group.

If relying on `aws-auth` configMap use tools to make changes

An improperly formatted aws-auth ConfigMap may cause you to lose access to the cluster. If you need to make changes to the ConfigMap, use a tool.

eksctl The `eksctl` CLI includes a command for adding identity mappings to the aws-auth ConfigMap.

View CLI Help:

```
$ eksctl create iamidentitymapping --help
...
```

Check the identities mapped to your Amazon EKS Cluster.

```
$ eksctl get iamidentitymapping --cluster $CLUSTER_NAME --region $AWS_REGION
ARN                                                                    USERNAME
               GROUPS                                                   ACCOUNT
arn:aws:iam::788355785855:role/kube-system-<SELF_GENERATED_UUID>      system:node:
{{SessionName}}     system:bootstrappers,system:nodes,system:node-proxier
```

Make an IAM Role a Cluster Admin:

```
$ eksctl create iamidentitymapping --cluster  <CLUSTER_NAME> --region=<region> --arn
 arn:aws:iam::123456:role/testing --group system:masters --username admin
...
```

For more information, review `eksctl` docs

aws-auth by keikoproj

`aws-auth` by keikoproj includes both a cli and a go library.

Download and view help CLI help:

```
$ go get github.com/keikoproj/aws-auth
...
$ aws-auth help
...
```

Alternatively, install `aws-auth` with the krew plugin manager for kubectl.

```
$ kubectl krew install aws-auth
...
$ kubectl aws-auth
...
```

Review the aws-auth docs on GitHub for more information, including the go library.

AWS IAM Authenticator CLI

The `aws-iam-authenticator` project includes a CLI for updating the ConfigMap.

Download a release on GitHub.

Add cluster permissions to an IAM Role:

```
$ ./aws-iam-authenticator add role --rolearn arn:aws:iam::185309785115:role/lil-dev-
role-cluster --username lil-dev-user --groups system:masters --kubeconfig ~/.kube/
config
...
```

Alternative Approaches to Authentication and Access Management

While IAM is the preferred way to authenticate users who need access to an EKS cluster, it is possible to use an OIDC identity provider such as GitHub using an authentication proxy and Kubernetes impersonation. Posts for two such solutions have been published on the AWS Open Source blog:

- Authenticating to EKS Using GitHub Credentials with Teleport
- Consistent OIDC authentication across multiple EKS clusters using kube-oidc-proxy

> **Important**
>
> EKS natively supports OIDC authentication without using a proxy. For further information, please read the launch blog, Introducing OIDC identity provider authentication for Amazon EKS. For an example showing how to configure EKS with Dex, a popular open source OIDC provider with connectors for a variety of different authention methods, see Using Dex & dex-k8s-authenticator to authenticate to Amazon EKS. As described in the blogs, the username/group of users authenticated by an OIDC provider will appear in the Kubernetes audit log.

You can also use AWS SSO to federate AWS with an external identity provider, e.g. Azure AD. If you decide to use this, the AWS CLI v2.0 includes an option to create a named profile that makes it easy to associate an SSO session with your current CLI session and assume an IAM role. Know that you must assume a role *prior* to running `kubectl` as the IAM role is used to determine the user's Kubernetes RBAC group.

Identities and Credentials for EKS pods

Certain applications that run within a Kubernetes cluster need permission to call the Kubernetes API to function properly. For example, the AWS Load Balancer Controller needs to be able to list a Service's Endpoints. The controller also needs to be able to invoke AWS APIs to provision and configure an ALB. In this section we will explore the best practices for assigning rights and privileges to Pods.

Kubernetes Service Accounts

A service account is a special type of object that allows you to assign a Kubernetes RBAC role to a pod. A default service account is created automatically for each Namespace within a cluster. When you deploy a pod into a Namespace without referencing a specific service account, the default service account for that Namespace will automatically get assigned to the Pod and the Secret, i.e. the service account (JWT) token for that service account, will get mounted to the pod as a volume at `/var/run/secrets/kubernetes.io/serviceaccount`. Decoding the service account token in that directory will reveal the following metadata:

```
{
  "iss": "kubernetes/serviceaccount",
  "kubernetes.io/serviceaccount/namespace": "default",
```

```
  "kubernetes.io/serviceaccount/secret.name": "default-token-5pv4z",
  "kubernetes.io/serviceaccount/service-account.name": "default",
  "kubernetes.io/serviceaccount/service-account.uid":
 "3b36ddb5-438c-11ea-9438-063a49b60fba",
  "sub": "system:serviceaccount:default:default"
}
```

The default service account has the following permissions to the Kubernetes API.

```
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: ClusterRole
metadata:
  annotations:
    rbac.authorization.kubernetes.io/autoupdate: "true"
  creationTimestamp: "2020-01-30T18:13:25Z"
  labels:
    kubernetes.io/bootstrapping: rbac-defaults
  name: system:discovery
  resourceVersion: "43"
  selfLink: /apis/rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1/clusterroles/system%3Adiscovery
  uid: 350d2ab8-438c-11ea-9438-063a49b60fba
rules:
- nonResourceURLs:
  - /api
  - /api/*
  - /apis
  - /apis/*
  - /healthz
  - /openapi
  - /openapi/*
  - /version
  - /version/
  verbs:
  - get
```

This role authorizes unauthenticated and authenticated users to read API information and is deemed safe to be publicly accessible.

When an application running within a Pod calls the Kubernetes APIs, the Pod needs to be assigned a service account that explicitly grants it permission to call those APIs. Similar to guidelines for user access, the Role or ClusterRole bound to a service account should be restricted to the API resources and methods that the application needs to function and nothing else. To use a non-default service

account simply set the `spec.serviceAccountName` field of a Pod to the name of the service account you wish to use. For additional information about creating service accounts, see https://kubernetes.io/docs/reference/access-authn-authz/rbac/#service-account-permissions.

> **Note**
>
> Prior to Kubernetes 1.24, Kubernetes would automatically create a secret for each a service account. This secret was mounted to the pod at /var/run/secrets/kubernetes.io/serviceaccount and would be used by the pod to authenticate to the Kubernetes API server. In Kubernetes 1.24, a service account token is dynamically generated when the pod runs and is only valid for an hour by default. A secret for the service account will not be created. If you have an application that runs outside the cluster that needs to authenticate to the Kubernetes API, e.g. Jenkins, you will need to create a secret of type `kubernetes.io/service-account-token` along with an annotation that references the service account such as `metadata.annotations.kubernetes.io/service-account.name: <SERVICE_ACCOUNT_NAME>`. Secrets created in this way do not expire.

IAM Roles for Service Accounts (IRSA)

IRSA is a feature that allows you to assign an IAM role to a Kubernetes service account. It works by leveraging a Kubernetes feature known as Service Account Token Volume Projection. When Pods are configured with a Service Account that references an IAM Role, the Kubernetes API server will call the public OIDC discovery endpoint for the cluster on startup. The endpoint cryptographically signs the OIDC token issued by Kubernetes and the resulting token mounted as a volume. This signed token allows the Pod to call the AWS APIs associated IAM role. When an AWS API is invoked, the AWS SDKs calls `sts:AssumeRoleWithWebIdentity`. After validating the token's signature, IAM exchanges the Kubernetes issued token for a temporary AWS role credential.

When using IRSA, it is important to reuse AWS SDK sessions to avoid unneeded calls to AWS STS.

Decoding the (JWT) token for IRSA will produce output similar to the example you see below:

```
{
  "aud": [
    "sts.amazonaws.com"
  ],
  "exp": 1582306514,
  "iat": 1582220114,
```

```
  "iss": "https://oidc.eks.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/id/
D43CF17C27A865933144EA99A26FB128",
  "kubernetes.io": {
    "namespace": "default",
    "pod": {
      "name": "alpine-57b5664646-rf966",
      "uid": "5a20f883-5407-11ea-a85c-0e62b7a4a436"
    },
    "serviceaccount": {
      "name": "s3-read-only",
      "uid": "a720ba5c-5406-11ea-9438-063a49b60fba"
    }
  },
  "nbf": 1582220114,
  "sub": "system:serviceaccount:default:s3-read-only"
}
```

This particular token grants the Pod view-only privileges to S3 by assuming an IAM role. When the application attempts to read from S3, the token is exchanged for a temporary set of IAM credentials that resembles this:

```
{
    "AssumedRoleUser": {
        "AssumedRoleId": "AROA36C6WWEJULFUYMPB6:abc",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:sts::123456789012:assumed-role/eksctl-winterfell-addon-
iamserviceaccount-de-Role1-1D61LT75JH3MB/abc"
    },
    "Audience": "sts.amazonaws.com",
    "Provider": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/oidc.eks.us-
west-2.amazonaws.com/id/D43CF17C27A865933144EA99A26FB128",
    "SubjectFromWebIdentityToken": "system:serviceaccount:default:s3-read-only",
    "Credentials": {
        "SecretAccessKey": "wJalrXUtnFEMI/K7MDENG/bPxRfiCYEXAMPLEKEY",
        "SessionToken": "FwoGZXIvYXdzEGMaDMLxAZkuLpmSwYXShiL9A1S0X87VBC1mHCrRe/
pB2oesl1eXxUYnPJyC9ayOoXMvqXQsomq0xs6OqZ3vaa5Iw1HIyA4Cv1suLaOCoU3hNvOIJ6C94H1vU0siQYk7DIq9Av5RZ
Zv2A6zp5xGz9cWj2f0aD9v66vX4bexOs5t/YYhwuwAvkkJPSIGvxja0xRThnceHyFHKtj0Hbi/
PWAtlI8YJcDX69cM30JAHDdQHltm/4scFptW1hlvMaPWReCAaCrsHrATyka7ttw5YlUyvZ8EPogj6fwHlxmrXM9h1Bqdiko
LgkWsCTGlYcY8z3zkigJMbYn07ewTL5Ss7LazTJJa758I7PZan/
v3xQHd5DEc5WBneiV3iOznDFgup0VAMkIviVjVCkszaPSVEdK2NU7jtrh6Jfm7bU/3P6ZGCkyDLIa8MBn9KPXeJd/
yjTk5IifIwO/mDpGNUribg6TPxhzZ8b/XdZO1kS1gVgqjXyVCM+BRBh6C4H21w/eMzjCtDIpoxt5rGKL6Nu/
IFMipoC4fgx6LIIHwtGYMG7SWQi7OsMAkiwZRg0n68/RqWgLzBt/4pfjSRYuk=",
        "Expiration": "2020-02-20T18:49:50Z",
        "AccessKeyId": "ASIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE"
```

```
    }
}
```

A mutating webhook that runs as part of the EKS control plane injects the AWS Role ARN and the path to a web identity token file into the Pod as environment variables. These values can also be supplied manually.

```
AWS_ROLE_ARN=arn:aws:iam::AWS_ACCOUNT_ID:role/IAM_ROLE_NAME
AWS_WEB_IDENTITY_TOKEN_FILE=/var/run/secrets/eks.amazonaws.com/serviceaccount/token
```

The kubelet will automatically rotate the projected token when it is older than 80% of its total TTL, or after 24 hours. The AWS SDKs are responsible for reloading the token when it rotates. For further information about IRSA, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/eks/latest/userguide/iam-roles-for-service-accounts-technical-overview.html.

EKS Pod Identities

EKS Pod Identities is a feature launched at re:Invent 2023 that allows you to assign an IAM role to a kubernetes service account, without the need to configure an Open Id Connect (OIDC) identity provider(IDP) for each cluster in your AWS account. To use EKS Pod Identity, you must deploy an agent which runs as a DaemonSet pod on every eligible worker node. This agent is made available to you as an EKS Add-on and is a pre-requisite to use EKS Pod Identity feature. Your applications must use a supported version of the AWS SDK to use this feature.

When EKS Pod Identities are configured for a Pod, EKS will mount and refresh a pod identity token at `/var/run/secrets/pods.eks.amazonaws.com/serviceaccount/eks-pod-identity-token`. This token will be used by the AWS SDK to communicate with the EKS Pod Identity Agent, which uses the pod identity token and the agent's IAM role to create temporary credentials for your pods by calling the AssumeRoleForPodIdentity API. The pod identity token delivered to your pods is a JWT issued from your EKS cluster and cryptographically signed, with appropriate JWT claims for use with EKS Pod Identities.

To learn more about EKS Pod Identities, please see this blog.

You do not have to make any modifications to your application code to use EKS Pod Identities. Supported AWS SDK versions will automatically discover credentials made available with EKS Pod Identities by using the credential provider chain. Like IRSA, EKS pod identities sets variables within your pods to direct them how to find AWS credentials.

Working with IAM roles for EKS Pod Identities

- EKS Pod Identities can only directly assume an IAM role that belongs to the same AWS account as the EKS cluster. To access an IAM role in another AWS account, you must assume that role by configuring a profile in your SDK configuration, or in your application's code.
- When EKS Pod Identities are being configured for Service Accounts, the person or process configuring the Pod Identity Association must have the `iam:PassRole` entitlement for that role.
- Each Service Account may only have one IAM role associated with it through EKS Pod Identities, however you can associate the same IAM role with multiple service accounts.
- IAM roles used with EKS Pod Identities must allow the `pods.eks.amazonaws.com` Service Principal to assume them, *and* set session tags. The following is an example role trust policy which allows EKS Pod Identities to use an IAM role:

```
{
  "Version":"2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "Service": "pods.eks.amazonaws.com"
      },
      "Action": [
        "sts:AssumeRole",
        "sts:TagSession"
      ],
      "Condition": {
        "StringEquals": {
          "aws:SourceOrgId": "${aws:ResourceOrgId}"
        }
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

AWS recommends using condition keys like `aws:SourceOrgId` to help protect against the cross-service confused deputy problem. In the above example role trust policy, the `ResourceOrgId` is a variable equal to the AWS Organizations Organization ID of the AWS Organization that the AWS account belongs to. EKS will pass in a value for `aws:SourceOrgId` equal to that when assuming a role with EKS Pod Identities.

ABAC and EKS Pod Identities

When EKS Pod Identities assumes an IAM role, it sets the following session tags:

EKS Pod Identities Session Tag	Value
kubernetes-namespace	The namespace the pod associated with EKS Pod Identities runs in.
kubernetes-service-account	The name of the kubernetes service account a ssociated with EKS Pod Identities
eks-cluster-arn	The ARN of the EKS cluster, e.g. `arn:${Partition}:eks:${Region}:${Account}:cluster/${ClusterName}` . The cluster ARN is unique, but if a cluster is deleted and recreated in the same region with the same name, within the same AWS account, it will have the same ARN.
eks-cluster-name	The name of the EKS cluster. Please note that EKS cluster names can be same within your AWS account, and EKS clusters in other AWS accounts.
kubernetes-pod-name	The name of the pod in EKS.
kubernetes-pod-uid	The UID of the pod in EKS.

These session tags allow you to use Attribute Based Access Control(ABAC) to grant access to your AWS resources to only specific kubernetes service accounts. When doing so, it is *very important* to understand that kubernetes service accounts are only unique within a namespace, and kubernetes namespaces are only unique within an EKS cluster. These session tags can be accessed in AWS policies by using the `aws:PrincipalTag/<tag-key>` global condition key, such as `aws:PrincipalTag/eks-cluster-arn`

For example, if you wanted to grant access to only a specific service account to access an AWS resource in your account with an IAM or resource policy, you would need to check `eks-cluster-`

arn and kubernetes-namespace tags as well as the kubernetes-service-account to ensure that only that service accounts from the intended cluster have access to that resource as other clusters could have identical kubernetes-service-accounts and kubernetes-namespaces.

This example S3 Bucket policy only grants access to objects in the S3 bucket it's attached to, only if kubernetes-service-account, kubernetes-namespace, eks-cluster-arn all meet their expected values, where the EKS cluster is hosted in the AWS account 111122223333.

```
{
    "Version":"2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": {
                "AWS": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:root"
            },
            "Action": "s3:*",
            "Resource":            [
                "arn:aws:s3:::ExampleBucket/*"
            ],
            "Condition": {
                "StringEquals": {
                    "aws:PrincipalTag/kubernetes-service-account": "s3objectservice",
                    "aws:PrincipalTag/eks-cluster-arn": "arn:aws:eks:us-
west-2:111122223333:cluster/ProductionCluster",
                    "aws:PrincipalTag/kubernetes-namespace": "s3datanamespace"
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

EKS Pod Identities compared to IRSA

Both EKS Pod Identities and IRSA are preferred ways to deliver temporary AWS credentials to your EKS pods. Unless you have specific usecases for IRSA, we recommend you use EKS Pod Identities when using EKS. This table helps compare the two features.

#	EKS Pod Identities	IRSA
Requires permission to create an OIDC IDP in your AWS accounts?	No	Yes
Requires unique IDP setup per cluster	No	Yes
Sets relevant session tags for use with ABAC	Yes	No
Requires an iam:PassRole Check?	Yes	No
Uses AWS STS Quota from your AWS account?	No	Yes
Can access other AWS accounts	Indirectly with role chaining	Directly with sts:AssumeRoleWithWebIdentity
Compatible with AWS SDKs	Yes	Yes
Requires Pod Identity Agent Daemonset on nodes?	Yes	No

Identities and Credentials for EKS pods Recommendations

Update the aws-node daemonset to use IRSA

At present, the aws-node daemonset is configured to use a role assigned to the EC2 instances to assign IPs to pods. This role includes several AWS managed policies, e.g. AmazonEKS_CNI_Policy and EC2ContainerRegistryReadOnly that effectively allow **all** pods running on a node to attach/detach ENIs, assign/unassign IP addresses, or pull images from ECR. Since this presents a risk to your cluster, it is recommended that you update the aws-node daemonset to use IRSA. A script for doing this can be found in the repository for this guide.

The aws-node daemonset supports EKS Pod Identities in versions v1.15.5 and later.

Restrict access to the instance profile assigned to the worker node

When you use IRSA or EKS Pod Identities, it updates the credential chain of the pod to use IRSA or EKS Pod Identities first, however, the pod *can still inherit the rights of the instance profile assigned to the worker node*. For pods that do not need these permissions, you can block access to the instance metadata to help ensure that your applications only have the permissions they require, and not their nodes.

> **Warning**
>
> Blocking access to instance metadata will prevent pods that do not use IRSA or EKS Pod Identities from inheriting the role assigned to the worker node.

You can block access to instance metadata by requiring the instance to use IMDSv2 only and updating the hop count to 1 as in the example below. You can also include these settings in the node group's launch template. Do **not** disable instance metadata as this will prevent components like the node termination handler and other things that rely on instance metadata from working properly.

```
$ aws ec2 modify-instance-metadata-options --instance-id <value> --http-tokens required
 --http-put-response-hop-limit 1
...
```

If you are using Terraform to create launch templates for use with Managed Node Groups, add the metadata block to configure the hop count as seen in this code snippet:

```
tf hl_lines="7" resource "aws_launch_template" "foo" { name = "foo" …
 metadata_options { http_endpoint = "enabled" http_tokens = "required"
http_put_response_hop_limit = 1 instance_metadata_tags = "enabled" } …
```

You can also block a pod's access to EC2 metadata by manipulating iptables on the node. For further information about this method, see Limiting access to the instance metadata service.

If you have an application that is using an older version of the AWS SDK that doesn't support IRSA or EKS Pod Identities, you should update the SDK version.

Scope the IAM Role trust policy for IRSA Roles to the service account name, namespace, and cluster

The trust policy can be scoped to a Namespace or a specific service account within a Namespace. When using IRSA it's best to make the role trust policy as explicit as possible by including the service account name. This will effectively prevent other Pods within the same Namespace from assuming the role. The CLI `eksctl` will do this automatically when you use it to create service accounts/IAM roles. See https://eksctl.io/usage/iamserviceaccounts/ for further information.

When working with IAM directly, this is adding condition into the role's trust policy that uses conditions to ensure the `:sub` claim are the namespace and service account you expect. As an example, before we had an IRSA token with a sub claim of "system:serviceaccount:default:s3-read-only" . This is the `default` namespace and the service account is `s3-read-only`. You would use a condition like the following to ensure that only your service account in a given namespace from your cluster can assume that role:

```
 "Condition": {
     "StringEquals": {
         "oidc.eks.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/id/D43CF17C27A865933144EA99A26FB128:aud":
"sts.amazonaws.com",
         "oidc.eks.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/id/D43CF17C27A865933144EA99A26FB128:sub":
"system:serviceaccount:default:s3-read-only"
     }
 }
```

Use one IAM role per application

With both IRSA and EKS Pod Identity, it is a best practice to give each application its own IAM role. This gives you improved isolation as you can modify one application without impacting another, and allows you to apply the principal of least privilege by only granting an application the permissions it needs.

When using ABAC with EKS Pod Identity, you may use a common IAM role across multiple service accounts and rely on their session attributes for access control. This is especially useful when operating at scale, as ABAC allows you to operate with fewer IAM roles.

When your application needs access to IMDS, use IMDSv2 and increase the hop limit on EC2 instances to 2

IMDSv2 requires you use a PUT request to get a session token. The initial PUT request has to include a TTL for the session token. Newer versions of the AWS SDKs will handle this and the renewal of said token automatically. It's also important to be aware that the default hop limit on EC2 instances is intentionally set to 1 to prevent IP forwarding. As a consequence, Pods that request a session token that are run on EC2 instances may eventually time out and fallback to using the IMDSv1 data flow. EKS adds support IMDSv2 by *enabling* both v1 and v2 and changing the hop limit to 2 on nodes provisioned by eksctl or with the official CloudFormation templates.

Disable auto-mounting of service account tokens

If your application doesn't need to call the Kubernetes API set the `automountServiceAccountToken` attribute to `false` in the PodSpec for your application or patch the default service account in each namespace so that it's no longer mounted to pods automatically. For example:

```
kubectl patch serviceaccount default -p $'automountServiceAccountToken: false'
```

Use dedicated service accounts for each application

Each application should have its own dedicated service account. This applies to service accounts for the Kubernetes API as well as IRSA and EKS Pod Identity.

> **Important**
>
> If you employ a blue/green approach to cluster upgrades instead of performing an in-place cluster upgrade when using IRSA, you will need to update the trust policy of each of the IRSA IAM roles with the OIDC endpoint of the new cluster. A blue/green cluster upgrade is where you create a cluster running a newer version of Kubernetes alongside the old cluster and use a load balancer or a service mesh to seamlessly shift traffic from services running on the old cluster to the new cluster. When using blue/green cluster upgrades with EKS Pod Identity, you would create pod identity associations between the IAM roles and service accounts in the new cluster. And update the IAM role trust policy if you have a `sourceArn` condition.

Run the application as a non-root user

Containers run as root by default. While this allows them to read the web identity token file, running a container as root is not considered a best practice. As an alternative, consider adding the `spec.securityContext.runAsUser` attribute to the PodSpec. The value of `runAsUser` is arbitrary value.

In the following example, all processes within the Pod will run under the user ID specified in the `runAsUser` field.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: security-context-demo
spec:
  securityContext:
    runAsUser: 1000
    runAsGroup: 3000
  containers:
  - name: sec-ctx-demo
    image: busybox
    command: [ "sh", "-c", "sleep 1h" ]
```

When you run a container as a non-root user, it prevents the container from reading the IRSA service account token because the token is assigned 0600 [root] permissions by default. If you update the securityContext for your container to include fsgroup=65534 [Nobody] it will allow the container to read the token.

```
spec:
  securityContext:
    fsGroup: 65534
```

In Kubernetes 1.19 and above, this change is no longer required and applications can read the IRSA service account token without adding them to the Nobody group.

Grant least privileged access to applications

Action Hero is a utility that you can run alongside your application to identify the AWS API calls and corresponding IAM permissions your application needs to function properly. It is similar to IAM Access Advisor in that it helps you gradually limit the scope of IAM roles assigned to applications.

Consult the documentation on granting least privileged access to AWS resources for further information.

Consider setting a permissions boundary on IAM roles used with IRSA and Pod Identities. You can use the permissions boundary to ensure that the roles used by IRSA or Pod Identities can not exceed a maximum level of permissions. For an example guide on getting started with permissions boundaries with an example permissions boundary policy, please see this github repo.

Review and revoke unnecessary anonymous access to your EKS cluster

Ideally anonymous access should be disabled for all API actions. Anonymous access is granted by creating a RoleBinding or ClusterRoleBinding for the Kubernetes built-in user system:anonymous. You can use the rbac-lookup tool to identify permissions that system:anonymous user has on your cluster:

```
./rbac-lookup | grep -P 'system:(anonymous)|(unauthenticated)'
system:anonymous               cluster-wide        ClusterRole/system:discovery
system:unauthenticated         cluster-wide        ClusterRole/system:discovery
system:unauthenticated         cluster-wide        ClusterRole/system:public-info-
viewer
```

Any role or ClusterRole other than system:public-info-viewer should not be bound to system:anonymous user or system:unauthenticated group.

There may be some legitimate reasons to enable anonymous access on specific APIs. If this is the case for your cluster ensure that only those specific APIs are accessible by anonymous user and exposing those APIs without authentication doesn't make your cluster vulnerable.

Prior to Kubernetes/EKS Version 1.14, system:unauthenticated group was associated to system:discovery and system:basic-user ClusterRoles by default. Note that even if you have updated your cluster to version 1.14 or higher, these permissions may still be enabled on your cluster, since cluster updates do not revoke these permissions. To check which ClusterRoles have "system:unauthenticated" except system:public-info-viewer you can run the following command (requires jq util):

```
kubectl get ClusterRoleBinding -o json | jq -r '.items[] | select(.subjects[]?.name
 =="system:unauthenticated") | select(.metadata.name != "system:public-info-viewer")
 | .metadata.name'
```

And "system:unauthenticated" can be removed from all the roles except "system:public-info-viewer" using:

```
kubectl get ClusterRoleBinding -o json | jq -r '.items[] | select(.subjects[]?.name
 =="system:unauthenticated") | select(.metadata.name != "system:public-info-viewer") |
 del(.subjects[] | select(.name =="system:unauthenticated"))' | kubectl apply -f -
```

Alternatively, you can check and remove it manually by kubectl describe and kubectl edit. To check if system:unauthenticated group has system:discovery permissions on your cluster run the following command:

```
kubectl describe clusterrolebindings system:discovery

Name:         system:discovery
Labels:       kubernetes.io/bootstrapping=rbac-defaults
Annotations:  rbac.authorization.kubernetes.io/autoupdate: true
Role:
  Kind:  ClusterRole
  Name:  system:discovery
Subjects:
  Kind   Name                    Namespace
  ----   ----                    ---------
  Group  system:authenticated
  Group  system:unauthenticated
```

To check if system:unauthenticated group has system:basic-user permission on your cluster run the following command:

```
kubectl describe clusterrolebindings system:basic-user

Name:         system:basic-user
Labels:       kubernetes.io/bootstrapping=rbac-defaults
Annotations:  rbac.authorization.kubernetes.io/autoupdate: true
Role:
  Kind:  ClusterRole
  Name:  system:basic-user
Subjects:
  Kind   Name                    Namespace
  ----   ----                    ---------
  Group  system:authenticated
  Group  system:unauthenticated
```

If system:unauthenticated group is bound to system:discovery and/or system:basic-user ClusterRoles on your cluster, you should disassociate these roles from system:unauthenticated group. Edit system:discovery ClusterRoleBinding using the following command:

```
kubectl edit clusterrolebindings system:discovery
```

The above command will open the current definition of system:discovery ClusterRoleBinding in an editor as shown below:

```
# Please edit the object below. Lines beginning with a '#' will be ignored,
# and an empty file will abort the edit. If an error occurs while saving this file will
 be
# reopened with the relevant failures.
#
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: ClusterRoleBinding
metadata:
  annotations:
    rbac.authorization.kubernetes.io/autoupdate: "true"
  creationTimestamp: "2021-06-17T20:50:49Z"
  labels:
    kubernetes.io/bootstrapping: rbac-defaults
  name: system:discovery
  resourceVersion: "24502985"
  selfLink: /apis/rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1/clusterrolebindings/system%3Adiscovery
  uid: b7936268-5043-431a-a0e1-171a423abeb6
roleRef:
  apiGroup: rbac.authorization.k8s.io
  kind: ClusterRole
  name: system:discovery
subjects:
- apiGroup: rbac.authorization.k8s.io
  kind: Group
  name: system:authenticated
- apiGroup: rbac.authorization.k8s.io
  kind: Group
  name: system:unauthenticated
```

Delete the entry for system:unauthenticated group from the "subjects" section in the above editor screen.

Repeat the same steps for system:basic-user ClusterRoleBinding.

Reuse AWS SDK sessions with IRSA

When you use IRSA, applications written using the AWS SDK use the token delivered to your pods to call `sts:AssumeRoleWithWebIdentity` to generate temporary AWS credentials. This is different from other AWS compute services, where the compute service delivers temporary AWS credentials directly to the AWS compute resource, such as a lambda function. This means that every time an AWS SDK session is initialized, a call to AWS STS for `AssumeRoleWithWebIdentity` is made. If your application scales rapidly and initializes many AWS SDK sessions, you may experience throttling from AWS STS as your code will be making many calls for `AssumeRoleWithWebIdentity`.

To avoid this scenario, we recommend reusing AWS SDK sessions within your application so that unnecessary calls to `AssumeRoleWithWebIdentity` are not made.

In the following example code, a session is created using the boto3 python SDK, and that same session is used to create clients and interact with both Amazon S3 and Amazon SQS. `AssumeRoleWithWebIdentity` is only called once, and the AWS SDK will refresh the credentials of `my_session` when they expire automatically.

```
import boto3

= Create your own session

my_session = boto3.session.Session()

= Now we can create low-level clients from our session

sqs = my_session.client(``sqs``) s3 = my_session.client(``s3``)

s3response = s3.list_buckets() sqsresponse = sqs.list_queues()

#print the response from the S3 and SQS APIs print("`s3 response:`")
print(s3response) print("`—`") print("`sqs response:`")
print(sqsresponse)
```

If you're migrating an application from another AWS compute service, such as EC2, to EKS with IRSA, this is a particularly important detail. On other compute services initializing an AWS SDK session does not call AWS STS unless you instruct it to.

Alternative approaches

While IRSA and EKS Pod Identities are the *preferred ways* to assign an AWS identity to a pod, they require that you include recent version of the AWS SDKs in your application. For a complete listing of the SDKs that currently support IRSA, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/eks/latest/userguide/iam-roles-for-service-accounts-minimum-sdk.html, for EKS Pod Identities, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/eks/latest/userguide/pod-id-minimum-sdk.html. If you have an application that you can't immediately update with a compatible SDK, there are several community-built solutions available for assigning IAM roles to Kubernetes pods, including kube2iam and kiam. Although AWS doesn't endorse, condone, nor support the use of these solutions, they are frequently used by the community at large to achieve similar results as IRSA and EKS Pod Identities.

If you need to use one of these non-aws provided solutions, please exercise due diligence and ensure you understand security implications of doing so.

Tools and Resources

- Amazon EKS Security Immersion Workshop - Identity and Access Management
- Terraform EKS Blueprints Pattern - Fully Private Amazon EKS Cluster
- Terraform EKS Blueprints Pattern - IAM Identity Center Single Sign-On for Amazon EKS Cluster
- Terraform EKS Blueprints Pattern - Okta Single Sign-On for Amazon EKS Cluster
- audit2rbac
- rbac.dev A list of additional resources, including blogs and tools, for Kubernetes RBAC
- Action Hero
- kube2iam
- kiam

Pod Security

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

The pod specification includes a variety of different attributes that can strengthen or weaken your overall security posture. As a Kubernetes practitioner your chief concern should be preventing a process that's running in a container from escaping the isolation boundaries of the container runtime and gaining access to the underlying host.

Linux Capabilities

The processes that run within a container run under the context of the [Linux] root user by default. Although the actions of root within a container are partially constrained by the set of Linux capabilities that the container runtime assigns to the containers, these default privileges could allow an attacker to escalate their privileges and/or gain access to sensitive information bound to the host, including Secrets and ConfigMaps. Below is a list of the default capabilities assigned to containers. For additional information about each capability, see http://man7.org/linux/man-pages/man7/capabilities.7.html.

```
CAP_AUDIT_WRITE, CAP_CHOWN, CAP_DAC_OVERRIDE, CAP_FOWNER, CAP_FSETID,
CAP_KILL, CAP_MKNOD, CAP_NET_BIND_SERVICE, CAP_NET_RAW, CAP_SETGID,
CAP_SETUID, CAP_SETFCAP, CAP_SETPCAP, CAP_SYS_CHROOT
```

Example

EC2 and Fargate pods are assigned the aforementioned capabilities by default. Additionally, Linux capabilities can only be dropped from Fargate pods.

Pods that are run as privileged, inherit *all* of the Linux capabilities associated with root on the host. This should be avoided if possible.

Node Authorization

All Kubernetes worker nodes use an authorization mode called Node Authorization. Node Authorization authorizes all API requests that originate from the kubelet and allows nodes to perform the following actions:

Read operations:

- services
- endpoints
- nodes
- pods

- secrets, configmaps, persistent volume claims and persistent volumes related to pods bound to the kubelet's node

Write operations:

- nodes and node status (enable the `NodeRestriction` admission plugin to limit a kubelet to modify its own node)
- pods and pod status (enable the `NodeRestriction` admission plugin to limit a kubelet to modify pods bound to itself)
- events

Auth-related operations:

- Read/write access to the CertificateSigningRequest (CSR) API for TLS bootstrapping
- the ability to create TokenReview and SubjectAccessReview for delegated authentication/authorization checks

EKS uses the node restriction admission controller which only allows the node to modify a limited set of node attributes and pod objects that are bound to the node. Nevertheless, an attacker who manages to get access to the host will still be able to glean sensitive information about the environment from the Kubernetes API that could allow them to move laterally within the cluster.

Pod Security Solutions

Pod Security Policy (PSP)

In the past, Pod Security Policy (PSP) resources were used to specify a set of requirements that pods had to meet before they could be created. As of Kubernetes version 1.21, PSP have been deprecated. They are scheduled for removal in Kubernetes version 1.25.

> **Important**
>
> PSPs are deprecated in Kubernetes version 1.21. You will have until version 1.25 or roughly 2 years to transition to an alternative. This document explains the motivation for this deprecation.

Migrating to a new pod security solution

Since PSPs have been removed as of Kubernetes v1.25, cluster administrators and operators must replace those security controls. Two solutions can fill this need:

- Policy-as-code (PAC) solutions from the Kubernetes ecosystem
- Kubernetes Pod Security Standards (PSS)

Both the PAC and PSS solutions can coexist with PSP; they can be used in clusters before PSP is removed. This eases adoption when migrating from PSP. Please see this document when considering migrating from PSP to PSS.

Kyverno, one of the PAC solutions outlined below, has specific guidance outlined in a blog post when migrating from PSPs to its solution including analogous policies, feature comparisons, and a migration procedure. Additional information and guidance on migration to Kyverno with respect to Pod Security Admission (PSA) has been published on the AWS blog here.

Policy-as-code (PAC)

Policy-as-code (PAC) solutions provide guardrails to guide cluster users, and prevent unwanted behaviors, through prescribed and automated controls. PAC uses Kubernetes Dynamic Admission Controllers to intercept the Kubernetes API server request flow, via a webhook call, and mutate and validate request payloads, based on policies written and stored as code. Mutation and validation happens before the API server request results in a change to the cluster. PAC solutions use policies to match and act on API server request payloads, based on taxonomy and values.

There are several open source PAC solutions available for Kubernetes. These solutions are not part of the Kubernetes project; they are sourced from the Kubernetes ecosystem. Some PAC solutions are listed below.

- OPA/Gatekeeper
- Open Policy Agent (OPA)
- Kyverno
- Kubewarden
- jsPolicy

For further information about PAC solutions and how to help you select the appropriate solution for your needs, see the links below.

- Policy-based countermeasures for Kubernetes – Part 1
- Policy-based countermeasures for Kubernetes – Part 2

Pod Security Standards (PSS) and Pod Security Admission (PSA)

In response to the PSP deprecation and the ongoing need to control pod security out-of-the-box, with a built-in Kubernetes solution, the Kubernetes Auth Special Interest Group created the Pod Security Standards (PSS) and Pod Security Admission (PSA). The PSA effort includes an admission controller webhook project that implements the controls defined in the PSS. This admission controller approach resembles that used in the PAC solutions.

According to the Kubernetes documentation, the PSS *"`define three different policies to broadly cover the security spectrum. These policies are cumulative and range from highly-permissive to highly-restrictive.`"*

These policies are defined as:

- **Privileged:** Unrestricted (unsecure) policy, providing the widest possible level of permissions. This policy allows for known privilege escalations. It is the absence of a policy. This is good for applications such as logging agents, CNIs, storage drivers, and other system wide applications that need privileged access.
- **Baseline:** Minimally restrictive policy which prevents known privilege escalations. Allows the default (minimally specified) Pod configuration. The baseline policy prohibits use of hostNetwork, hostPID, hostIPC, hostPath, hostPort, the inability to add Linux capabilities, along with several other restrictions.
- **Restricted:** Heavily restricted policy, following current Pod hardening best practices. This policy inherits from the baseline and adds further restrictions such as the inability to run as root or a root-group. Restricted policies may impact an application's ability to function. They are primarily targeted at running security critical applications.

These policies define profiles for pod execution, arranged into three levels of privileged vs. restricted access.

To implement the controls defined by the PSS, PSA operates in three modes:

- **enforce:** Policy violations will cause the pod to be rejected.
- **audit:** Policy violations will trigger the addition of an audit annotation to the event recorded in the audit log, but are otherwise allowed.
- **warn:** Policy violations will trigger a user-facing warning, but are otherwise allowed.

These modes and the profile (restriction) levels are configured at the Kubernetes Namespace level, using labels, as seen in the below example.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Namespace
metadata:
  name: policy-test
  labels:
    pod-security.kubernetes.io/enforce: restricted
```

When used independently, these operational modes have different responses that result in different user experiences. The *enforce* mode will prevent pods from being created if respective podSpecs violate the configured restriction level. However, in this mode, non-pod Kubernetes objects that create pods, such as Deployments, will not be prevented from being applied to the cluster, even if the podSpec therein violates the applied PSS. In this case the Deployment will be applied, while the pod(s) will be prevented from being applied.

This is a difficult user experience, as there is no immediate indication that the successfully applied Deployment object belies failed pod creation. The offending podSpecs will not create pods. Inspecting the Deployment resource with `kubectl get deploy <DEPLOYMENT_NAME> -oyaml` will expose the message from the failed pod(s) `.status.conditions` element, as seen below.

```
...
status:
  conditions:
    - lastTransitionTime: "2022-01-20T01:02:08Z"
      lastUpdateTime: "2022-01-20T01:02:08Z"
      message: 'pods "test-688f68dc87-tw587" is forbidden: violates PodSecurity
 "restricted:latest":
        allowPrivilegeEscalation != false (container "test" must set
 securityContext.allowPrivilegeEscalation=false),
        unrestricted capabilities (container "test" must set
 securityContext.capabilities.drop=["ALL"]),
        runAsNonRoot != true (pod or container "test" must set
 securityContext.runAsNonRoot=true),
```

```
        seccompProfile (pod or container "test" must set
 securityContext.seccompProfile.type
        to "RuntimeDefault" or "Localhost")'
      reason: FailedCreate
      status: "True"
      type: ReplicaFailure
...
```

In both the *audit* and *warn* modes, the pod restrictions do not prevent violating pods from being created and started. However, in these modes audit annotations on API server audit log events and warnings to API server clients, such as *kubectl*, are triggered, respectively, when pods, as well as objects that create pods, contain podSpecs with violations. A `kubectl` *Warning* message is seen below.

```
Warning: would violate PodSecurity "restricted:latest":
 allowPrivilegeEscalation != false (container "test" must set
 securityContext.allowPrivilegeEscalation=false), unrestricted capabilities (container
 "test" must set securityContext.capabilities.drop=["ALL"]), runAsNonRoot != true (pod
 or container "test" must set securityContext.runAsNonRoot=true), seccompProfile (pod
 or container "test" must set securityContext.seccompProfile.type to "RuntimeDefault"
 or "Localhost")
deployment.apps/test created
```

The PSA *audit* and *warn* modes are useful when introducing the PSS without negatively impacting cluster operations.

The PSA operational modes are not mutually exclusive, and can be used in a cumulative manner. As seen below, the multiple modes can be configured in a single namespace.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Namespace
metadata:
  name: policy-test
  labels:
    pod-security.kubernetes.io/audit: restricted
    pod-security.kubernetes.io/enforce: restricted
    pod-security.kubernetes.io/warn: restricted
```

In the above example, the user-friendly warnings and audit annotations are provided when applying Deployments, while the enforce of violations are also provided at the pod level. In fact multiple PSA labels can use different profile levels, as seen below.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Namespace
metadata:
  name: policy-test
  labels:
    pod-security.kubernetes.io/enforce: baseline
    pod-security.kubernetes.io/warn: restricted
```

In the above example, PSA is configured to allow the creation of all pods that satisfy the *baseline* profile level, and then *warn* on pods (and objects that create pods) that violate the *restricted* profile level. This is a useful approach to determine the possible impacts when changing from the *baseline* to *restricted* profiles.

Existing Pods

If a namespace with existing pods is modified to use a more restrictive PSS profile, the *audit* and *warn* modes will produce appropriate messages; however, *enforce* mode will not delete the pods. The warning messages are seen below.

```
Warning: existing pods in namespace "policy-test" violate the new PodSecurity enforce
 level "restricted:latest"
Warning: test-688f68dc87-htm8x: allowPrivilegeEscalation != false, unrestricted
 capabilities, runAsNonRoot != true, seccompProfile
namespace/policy-test configured
```

Exemptions

PSA uses *Exemptions* to exclude enforcement of violations against pods that would have otherwise been applied. These exemptions are listed below.

- **Usernames:** requests from users with an exempt authenticated (or impersonated) username are ignored.
- **RuntimeClassNames:** pods and workload resources specifying an exempt runtime class name are ignored.
- **Namespaces:** pods and workload resources in an exempt namespace are ignored.

These exemptions are applied statically in the PSA admission controller configuration as part of the API server configuration.

In the *Validating Webhook* implementation the exemptions can be configured within a Kubernetes ConfigMap resource that gets mounted as a volume into the pod-security-webhook container.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ConfigMap
metadata:
  name: pod-security-webhook
  namespace: pod-security-webhook
data:
  podsecurityconfiguration.yaml: |
    apiVersion: pod-security.admission.config.k8s.io/v1
    kind: PodSecurityConfiguration
    defaults:
      enforce: "restricted"
      enforce-version: "latest"
      audit: "restricted"
      audit-version: "latest"
      warn: "restricted"
      warn-version: "latest"
    exemptions:
      # Array of authenticated usernames to exempt.
      usernames: []
      # Array of runtime class names to exempt.
      runtimeClasses: []
      # Array of namespaces to exempt.
      namespaces: ["kube-system","policy-test1"]
```

As seen in the above ConfigMap YAML the cluster-wide default PSS level has been set to *restricted* for all PSA modes, *audit*, *enforce*, and *warn*. This affects all namespaces, except those exempted: `namespaces: ["kube-system","policy-test1"]`. Additionally, in the *ValidatingWebhookConfiguration* resource, seen below, the *pod-security-webhook* namespace is also exempted from configured PSS.

```
...
webhooks:
  # Audit annotations will be prefixed with this name
  - name: "pod-security-webhook.kubernetes.io"
    # Fail-closed admission webhooks can present operational challenges.
    # You may want to consider using a failure policy of Ignore, but should
    # consider the security tradeoffs.
    failurePolicy: Fail
    namespaceSelector:
```

```
      # Exempt the webhook itself to avoid a circular dependency.
      matchExpressions:
        - key: kubernetes.io/metadata.name
          operator: NotIn
          values: ["pod-security-webhook"]
...
```

> **Important**
>
> Pod Security Admissions graduated to stable in Kubernetes v1.25. If you wanted to use the Pod Security Admission feature prior to it being enabled by default, you needed to install the dynamic admission controller (mutating webhook). The instructions for installing and configuring the webhook can be found here.

Choosing between policy-as-code and Pod Security Standards

The Pod Security Standards (PSS) were developed to replace the Pod Security Policy (PSP), by providing a solution that was built-in to Kubernetes and did not require solutions from the Kubernetes ecosystem. That being said, policy-as-code (PAC) solutions are considerably more flexible.

The following list of Pros and Cons is designed help you make a more informed decision about your pod security solution.

Policy-as-code (as compared to Pod Security Standards)

Pros:

- More flexible and more granular (down to attributes of resources if need be)
- Not just focused on pods, can be used against different resources and actions
- Not just applied at the namespace level
- More mature than the Pod Security Standards
- Decisions can be based on anything in the API server request payload, as well as existing cluster resources and external data (solution dependent)
- Supports mutating API server requests before validation (solution dependent)
- Can generate complementary policies and Kubernetes resources (solution dependent - From pod policies, Kyverno can auto-gen policies for higher-level controllers, such as Deployments.

Kyverno can also generate additional Kubernetes resources "`*when a new resource is created or when the source is updated*`" by using Generate Rules.)

- Can be used to shift left, into CICD pipelines, before making calls to the Kubernetes API server (solution dependent)
- Can be used to implement behaviors that are not necessarily security related, such as best practices, organizational standards, etc.
- Can be used in non-Kubernetes use cases (solution dependent)
- Because of flexibility, the user experience can be tuned to users' needs

Cons:

- Not built into Kubernetes
- More complex to learn, configure, and support
- Policy authoring may require new skills/languages/capabilities

Pod Security Admission (as compared to policy-as-code)

Pros:

- Built into Kubernetes
- Simpler to configure
- No new languages to use or policies to author
- If the cluster default admission level is configured to *privileged*, namespace labels can be used to opt namespaces into the pod security profiles.

Cons:

- Not as flexible or granular as policy-as-code
- Only 3 levels of restrictions
- Primarily focused on pods

Summary

If you currently do not have a pod security solution, beyond PSP, and your required pod security posture fits the model defined in the Pod Security Standards (PSS), then an easier path may be to

adopt the PSS, in lieu of a policy-as-code solution. However, if your pod security posture does not fit the PSS model, or you envision adding additional controls, beyond that defined by PSS, then a policy-as-code solution would seem a better fit.

Recommendations

Use multiple Pod Security Admission (PSA) modes for a better user experience

As mentioned earlier, PSA *enforce* mode prevents pods with PSS violations from being applied, but does not stop higher-level controllers, such as Deployments. In fact, the Deployment will be applied successfully without any indication that the pods failed to be applied. While you can use *kubectl* to inspect the Deployment object, and discover the failed pods message from the PSA, the user experience could be better. To make the user experience better, multiple PSA modes (audit, enforce, warn) should be used.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Namespace
metadata:
  name: policy-test
  labels:
    pod-security.kubernetes.io/audit: restricted
    pod-security.kubernetes.io/enforce: restricted
    pod-security.kubernetes.io/warn: restricted
```

In the above example, with *enforce* mode defined, when a Deployment manifest with PSS violations in the respective podSpec is attempted to be applied to the Kubernetes API server, the Deployment will be successfully applied, but the pods will not. And, since the *audit* and *warn* modes are also enabled, the API server client will receive a warning message and the API server audit log event will be annotated with a message as well.

Restrict the containers that can run as privileged

As mentioned, containers that run as privileged inherit all of the Linux capabilities assigned to root on the host. Seldom do containers need these types of privileges to function properly. There are multiple methods that can be used to restrict the permissions and capabilities of containers.

> **Important**
>
> Fargate is a launch type that enables you to run "serverless" container(s) where the containers of a pod are run on infrastructure that AWS manages. With Fargate, you cannot run a privileged container or configure your pod to use hostNetwork or hostPort.

Do not run processes in containers as root

All containers run as root by default. This could be problematic if an attacker is able to exploit a vulnerability in the application and get shell access to the running container. You can mitigate this risk a variety of ways. First, by removing the shell from the container image. Second, adding the USER directive to your Dockerfile or running the containers in the pod as a non-root user. The Kubernetes podSpec includes a set of fields, under `spec.securityContext`, that let you specify the user and/or group under which to run your application. These fields are `runAsUser` and `runAsGroup` respectively.

To enforce the use of the `spec.securityContext`, and its associated elements, within the Kubernetes podSpec, policy-as-code or Pod Security Standards can be added to clusters. These solutions allow you to write and/or use policies or profiles that can validate inbound Kubernetes API server request payloads, before they are persisted into etcd. Furthermore, policy-as-code solutions can mutate inbound requests, and in some cases, generate new requests.

Never run Docker in Docker or mount the socket in the container

While this conveniently lets you to build/run images in Docker containers, you're basically relinquishing complete control of the node to the process running in the container. If you need to build container images on Kubernetes use Kaniko, buildah, or a build service like CodeBuild instead.

> **Note**
>
> Kubernetes clusters used for CICD processing, such as building container images, should be isolated from clusters running more generalized workloads.

Restrict the use of hostPath or if hostPath is necessary restrict which prefixes can be used and configure the volume as read-only

`hostPath` is a volume that mounts a directory from the host directly to the container. Rarely will pods need this type of access, but if they do, you need to be aware of the risks. By default pods that run as root will have write access to the file system exposed by hostPath. This could allow an attacker to modify the kubelet settings, create symbolic links to directories or files not directly exposed by the hostPath, e.g. /etc/shadow, install ssh keys, read secrets mounted to the host, and other malicious things. To mitigate the risks from hostPath, configure the `spec.containers.volumeMounts` as `readOnly`, for example:

```
volumeMounts:
- name: hostPath-volume
    readOnly: true
    mountPath: /host-path
```

You should also use policy-as-code solutions to restrict the directories that can be used by `hostPath` volumes, or prevent `hostPath` usage altogether. You can use the Pod Security Standards *Baseline* or *Restricted* policies to prevent the use of `hostPath`.

For further information about the dangers of privileged escalation, read Seth Art's blog Bad Pods: Kubernetes Pod Privilege Escalation.

Set requests and limits for each container to avoid resource contention and DoS attacks

A pod without requests or limits can theoretically consume all of the resources available on a host. As additional pods are scheduled onto a node, the node may experience CPU or memory pressure which can cause the Kubelet to terminate or evict pods from the node. While you can't prevent this from happening all together, setting requests and limits will help minimize resource contention and mitigate the risk from poorly written applications that consume an excessive amount of resources.

The `podSpec` allows you to specify requests and limits for CPU and memory. CPU is considered a compressible resource because it can be oversubscribed. Memory is incompressible, i.e. it cannot be shared among multiple containers.

When you specify *requests* for CPU or memory, you're essentially designating the amount of *memory* that containers are guaranteed to get. Kubernetes aggregates the requests of all the

containers in a pod to determine which node to schedule the pod onto. If a container exceeds the requested amount of memory it may be subject to termination if there's memory pressure on the node.

Limits are the maximum amount of CPU and memory resources that a container is allowed to consume and directly corresponds to the `memory.limit_in_bytes` value of the cgroup created for the container. A container that exceeds the memory limit will be OOM killed. If a container exceeds its CPU limit, it will be throttled.

> **Note**
>
> When using container `resources.limits` it is strongly recommended that container resource usage (a.k.a. Resource Footprints) be data-driven and accurate, based on load testing. Absent an accurate and trusted resource footprint, container `resources.limits` can be padded. For example, `resources.limits.memory` could be padded 20-30% higher than observable maximums, to account for potential memory resource limit inaccuracies.

Kubernetes uses three Quality of Service (QoS) classes to prioritize the workloads running on a node. These include:

- guaranteed
- burstable
- best-effort

If limits and requests are not set, the pod is configured as *best-effort* (lowest priority). Best-effort pods are the first to get killed when there is insufficient memory. If limits are set on *all* containers within the pod, or if the requests and limits are set to the same values and not equal to 0, the pod is configured as *guaranteed* (highest priority). Guaranteed pods will not be killed unless they exceed their configured memory limits. If the limits and requests are configured with different values and not equal to 0, or one container within the pod sets limits and the others don't or have limits set for different resources, the pods are configured as *burstable* (medium priority). These pods have some resource guarantees, but can be killed once they exceed their requested memory.

> **Important**
>
> Requests don't affect the `memory_limit_in_bytes` value of the container's cgroup; the cgroup limit is set to the amount of memory available on the host. Nevertheless, setting the requests value too low could cause the pod to be targeted for termination by the kubelet if the node undergoes memory pressure.

Class	Priority	Condition	Kill Condition
Guaranteed	highest	limit = request != 0	Only exceed memory limits
Burstable	medium	limit != request != 0	Can be killed if exceed request memory
Best-Effort	lowest	limit & request Not Set	First to get killed when there's insufficient memory

For additional information about resource QoS, please refer to the Kubernetes documentation.

You can force the use of requests and limits by setting a resource quota on a namespace or by creating a limit range. A resource quota allows you to specify the total amount of resources, e.g. CPU and RAM, allocated to a namespace. When it's applied to a namespace, it forces you to specify requests and limits for all containers deployed into that namespace. By contrast, limit ranges give you more granular control of the allocation of resources. With limit ranges you can min/max for CPU and memory resources per pod or per container within a namespace. You can also use them to set default request/limit values if none are provided.

Policy-as-code solutions can be used enforce requests and limits. or to even create the resource quotas and limit ranges when namespaces are created.

Do not allow privileged escalation

Privileged escalation allows a process to change the security context under which its running. Sudo is a good example of this as are binaries with the SUID or SGID bit. Privileged escalation

is basically a way for users to execute a file with the permissions of another user or group. You can prevent a container from using privileged escalation by implementing a policy-as-code mutating policy that sets `allowPrivilegeEscalation` to `false` or by setting `securityContext.allowPrivilegeEscalation` in the podSpec. Policy-as-code policies can also be used to prevent API server requests from succeeding if incorrect settings are detected. Pod Security Standards can also be used to prevent pods from using privilege escalation.

Disable ServiceAccount token mounts

For pods that do not need to access the Kubernetes API, you can disable the automatic mounting of a ServiceAccount token on a pod spec, or for all pods that use a particular ServiceAccount.

Example

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: pod-no-automount
spec:
  automountServiceAccountToken: false
```

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ServiceAccount
metadata:
  name: sa-no-automount
automountServiceAccountToken: false
```

Disable service discovery

For pods that do not need to lookup or call in-cluster services, you can reduce the amount of information given to a pod. You can set the Pod's DNS policy to not use CoreDNS, and not expose services in the pod's namespace as environment variables. See the Kubernetes docs on environment variables for more information on service links. The default value for a pod's DNS policy is "ClusterFirst" which uses in-cluster DNS, while the non-default value "Default" uses the underlying node's DNS resolution. See the Kubernetes docs on Pod DNS policy for more information.

Example

```
apiVersion: v1
```

```
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: pod-no-service-info
spec:
    dnsPolicy: Default # "Default" is not the true default value
    enableServiceLinks: false
```

Configure your images with read-only root file system

Configuring your images with a read-only root file system prevents an attacker from overwriting a binary on the file system that your application uses. If your application has to write to the file system, consider writing to a temporary directory or attach and mount a volume. You can enforce this by setting the pod's SecurityContext as follows:

```
...
securityContext:
  readOnlyRootFilesystem: true
...
```

Policy-as-code and Pod Security Standards can be used to enforce this behavior.

Example

As per Windows containers in Kubernetes `securityContext.readOnlyRootFilesystem` cannot be set to `true` for a container running on Windows as write access is required for registry and system processes to run inside the container.

Tools and resources

- Amazon EKS Security Immersion Workshop - Pod Security
- open-policy-agent/gatekeeper-library: The OPA Gatekeeper policy library a library of OPA/Gatekeeper policies that you can use as a substitute for PSPs.
- Kyverno Policy Library
- A collection of common OPA and Kyverno policies for EKS.
- Policy based countermeasures: part 1
- Policy based countermeasures: part 2
- Pod Security Policy Migrator a tool that converts PSPs to OPA/Gatekeeper, KubeWarden, or Kyverno policies

- NeuVector by SUSE open source, zero-trust container security platform, provides process and filesystem policies as well as admission control rules.

Tenant Isolation

When we think of multi-tenancy, we often want to isolate a user or application from other users or applications running on a shared infrastructure.

Kubernetes is a *single tenant orchestrator*, i.e. a single instance of the control plane is shared among all the tenants within a cluster. There are, however, various Kubernetes objects that you can use to create the semblance of multi-tenancy. For example, Namespaces and Role-based access controls (RBAC) can be implemented to logically isolate tenants from each other. Similarly, Quotas and Limit Ranges can be used to control the amount of cluster resources each tenant can consume. Nevertheless, the cluster is the only construct that provides a strong security boundary. This is because an attacker that manages to gain access to a host within the cluster can retrieve *all* Secrets, ConfigMaps, and Volumes, mounted on that host. They could also impersonate the Kubelet which would allow them to manipulate the attributes of the node and/or move laterally within the cluster.

The following sections will explain how to implement tenant isolation while mitigating the risks of using a single tenant orchestrator like Kubernetes.

Soft multi-tenancy

With soft multi-tenancy, you use native Kubernetes constructs, e.g. namespaces, roles and role bindings, and network policies, to create logical separation between tenants. RBAC, for example, can prevent tenants from accessing or manipulate each other's resources. Quotas and limit ranges control the amount of cluster resources each tenant can consume while network policies can help prevent applications deployed into different namespaces from communicating with each other.

None of these controls, however, prevent pods from different tenants from sharing a node. If stronger isolation is required, you can use a node selector, anti-affinity rules, and/or taints and tolerations to force pods from different tenants to be scheduled onto separate nodes; often referred to as *sole tenant nodes*. This could get rather complicated, and cost prohibitive, in an environment with many tenants.

> **Important**
>
> Soft multi-tenancy implemented with Namespaces does not allow you to provide tenants with a filtered list of Namespaces because Namespaces are a globally scoped Type. If a tenant has the ability to view a particular Namespace, it can view all Namespaces within the cluster.

> **Warning**
>
> With soft-multi-tenancy, tenants retain the ability to query CoreDNS for all services that run within the cluster by default. An attacker could exploit this by running dig SRV `..svc.cluster.local` from any pod in the cluster. If you need to restrict access to DNS records of services that run within your clusters, consider using the Firewall or Policy plugins for CoreDNS. For additional information, see https://github.com/coredns/policy#kubernetes-metadata-multi-tenancy-policy.

Kiosk is an open source project that can aid in the implementation of soft multi-tenancy. It is implemented as a series of CRDs and controllers that provide the following capabilities:

- **Accounts & Account Users** to separate tenants in a shared Kubernetes cluster
- **Self-Service Namespace Provisioning** for account users
- **Account Limits** to ensure quality of service and fairness when sharing a cluster
- **Namespace Templates** for secure tenant isolation and self-service namespace initialization

Loft is a commercial offering from the maintainers of Kiosk and DevSpace that adds the following capabilities:

- **Multi-cluster access** for granting access to spaces in different clusters
- **Sleep mode** scales down deployments in a space during periods of inactivity
- **Single sign-on** with OIDC authentication providers like GitHub

There are three primary use cases that can be addressed by soft multi-tenancy.

Enterprise Setting

The first is in an Enterprise setting where the "tenants" are semi-trusted in that they are employees, contractors, or are otherwise authorized by the organization. Each tenant will typically align to an administrative division such as a department or team.

In this type of setting, a cluster administrator will usually be responsible for creating namespaces and managing policies. They may also implement a delegated administration model where certain individuals are given oversight of a namespace, allowing them to perform CRUD operations for non-policy related objects like deployments, services, pods, jobs, etc.

The isolation provided by a container runtime may be acceptable within this setting or it may need to be augmented with additional controls for pod security. It may also be necessary to restrict communication between services in different namespaces if stricter isolation is required.

Kubernetes as a Service

By contrast, soft multi-tenancy can be used in settings where you want to offer Kubernetes as a service (KaaS). With KaaS, your application is hosted in a shared cluster along with a collection of controllers and CRDs that provide a set of PaaS services. Tenants interact directly with the Kubernetes API server and are permitted to perform CRUD operations on non-policy objects. There is also an element of self-service in that tenants may be allowed to create and manage their own namespaces. In this type of environment, tenants are assumed to be running untrusted code.

To isolate tenants in this type of environment, you will likely need to implement strict network policies as well as *pod sandboxing*. Sandboxing is where you run the containers of a pod inside a micro VM like Firecracker or in a user-space kernel. Today, you can create sandboxed pods with EKS Fargate.

Software as a Service (SaaS)

The final use case for soft multi-tenancy is in a Software-as-a-Service (SaaS) setting. In this environment, each tenant is associated with a particular *instance* of an application that's running within the cluster. Each instance often has its own data and uses separate access controls that are usually independent of Kubernetes RBAC.

Unlike the other use cases, the tenant in a SaaS setting does not directly interface with the Kubernetes API. Instead, the SaaS application is responsible for interfacing with the Kubernetes API to create the necessary objects to support each tenant.

Kubernetes Constructs

In each of these instances the following constructs are used to isolate tenants from each other:

Namespaces

Namespaces are fundamental to implementing soft multi-tenancy. They allow you to divide the cluster into logical partitions. Quotas, network policies, service accounts, and other objects needed to implement multi-tenancy are scoped to a namespace.

Network policies

By default, all pods in a Kubernetes cluster are allowed to communicate with each other. This behavior can be altered using network policies.

Network policies restrict communication between pods using labels or IP address ranges. In a multi-tenant environment where strict network isolation between tenants is required, we recommend starting with a default rule that denies communication between pods, and another rule that allows all pods to query the DNS server for name resolution. With that in place, you can begin adding more permissive rules that allow for communication within a namespace. This can be further refined as required.

> **Note**
>
> Amazon VPC CNI now supports Kubernetes Network Policies to create policies that can isolate sensitive workloads and protect them from unauthorized access when running Kubernetes on AWS. This means that you can use all the capabilities of the Network Policy API within your Amazon EKS cluster. This level of granular control enables you to implement the principle of least privilege, which ensures that only authorized pods are allowed to communicate with each other.

> **Important**
>
> Network policies are necessary but not sufficient. The enforcement of network policies requires a policy engine such as Calico or Cilium.

Role-based access control (RBAC)

Roles and role bindings are the Kubernetes objects used to enforce role-based access control (RBAC) in Kubernetes. **Roles** contain lists of actions that can be performed against objects in your cluster. **Role bindings** specify the individuals or groups to whom the roles apply. In the enterprise and KaaS settings, RBAC can be used to permit administration of objects by selected groups or individuals.

Quotas

Quotas are used to define limits on workloads hosted in your cluster. With quotas, you can specify the maximum amount of CPU and memory that a pod can consume, or you can limit the number of resources that can be allocated in a cluster or namespace. **Limit ranges** allow you to declare minimum, maximum, and default values for each limit.

Overcommitting resources in a shared cluster is often beneficial because it allows you maximize your resources. However, unbounded access to a cluster can cause resource starvation, which can lead to performance degradation and loss of application availability. If a pod's requests are set too low and the actual resource utilization exceeds the capacity of the node, the node will begin to experience CPU or memory pressure. When this happens, pods may be restarted and/or evicted from the node.

To prevent this from happening, you should plan to impose quotas on namespaces in a multi-tenant environment to force tenants to specify requests and limits when scheduling their pods on the cluster. It will also mitigate a potential denial of service by constraining the amount of resources a pod can consume.

You can also use quotas to apportion the cluster's resources to align with a tenant's spend. This is particularly useful in the KaaS scenario.

Pod priority and preemption

Pod priority and preemption can be useful when you want to provide more importance to a Pod relative to other Pods. For example, with pod priority you can configure pods from customer A to run at a higher priority than customer B. When there's insufficient capacity available, the scheduler will evict the lower-priority pods from customer B to accommodate the higher-priority pods from customer A. This can be especially handy in a SaaS environment where customers willing to pay a premium receive a higher priority.

Important

Pods priority can have an undesired effect on other Pods with lower priority. For example, although the victim pods are terminated gracefully but the PodDisruptionBudget is not guaranteed, which could break a application with lower priority that relies on a quorum of Pods, see Limitations of preemption.

Mitigating controls

Your chief concern as an administrator of a multi-tenant environment is preventing an attacker from gaining access to the underlying host. The following controls should be considered to mitigate this risk:

Sandboxed execution environments for containers

Sandboxing is a technique by which each container is run in its own isolated virtual machine. Technologies that perform pod sandboxing include Firecracker and Weave's Firekube.

For additional information about the effort to make Firecracker a supported runtime for EKS, see https://threadreaderapp.com/thread/1238496944684597248.html.

Open Policy Agent (OPA) & Gatekeeper

Gatekeeper is a Kubernetes admission controller that enforces policies created with OPA. With OPA you can create a policy that runs pods from tenants on separate instances or at a higher priority than other tenants. A collection of common OPA policies can be found in the GitHub repository for this project.

There is also an experimental OPA plugin for CoreDNS that allows you to use OPA to filter/control the records returned by CoreDNS.

Kyverno

Kyverno is a Kubernetes native policy engine that can validate, mutate, and generate configurations with policies as Kubernetes resources. Kyverno uses Kustomize-style overlays for validation, supports JSON Patch and strategic merge patch for mutation, and can clone resources across namespaces based on flexible triggers.

You can use Kyverno to isolate namespaces, enforce pod security and other best practices, and generate default configurations such as network policies. Several examples are included in the GitHub repository for this project. Many others are included in the policy library on the Kyverno website.

Isolating tenant workloads to specific nodes

Restricting tenant workloads to run on specific nodes can be used to increase isolation in the soft multi-tenancy model. With this approach, tenant-specific workloads are only run on nodes provisioned for the respective tenants. To achieve this isolation, native Kubernetes properties (node affinity, and taints and tolerations) are used to target specific nodes for pod scheduling, and prevent pods, from other tenants, from being scheduled on the tenant-specific nodes.

Part 1 - Node affinity

Kubernetes node affinity is used to target nodes for scheduling, based on node labels. With node affinity rules, the pods are attracted to specific nodes that match the selector terms. In the below pod specification, the `requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution` node affinity is applied to the respective pod. The result is that the pod will target nodes that are labeled with the following key/value: `node-restriction.kubernetes.io/tenant: tenants-x`.

```
...
spec:
  affinity:
    nodeAffinity:
      requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
        nodeSelectorTerms:
        - matchExpressions:
          - key: node-restriction.kubernetes.io/tenant
            operator: In
            values:
            - tenants-x
...
```

With this node affinity, the label is required during scheduling, but not during execution; if the underlying nodes' labels change, the pods will not be evicted due solely to that label change. However, future scheduling could be impacted.

> **Warning**
>
> The label prefix of `node-restriction.kubernetes.io/` has special meaning in Kubernetes. NodeRestriction which is enabled for EKS clusters prevents `kubelet` from adding/removing/updating labels with this prefix. Attackers aren't able to use the `kubelet's credentials to update the node object or modify the system setup to pass these labels into `kubelet` as `kubelet` isn't allowed to modify these labels. If this prefix is used for all pod to node scheduling, it prevents scenarios where an attacker may want to attract a different set of workloads to a node by modifying the node labels.

Example

Instead of node affinity, we could have used the node selector. However, node affinity is more expressive and allows for more conditions to be considered during pod scheduling. For additional information about the differences and more advanced scheduling choices, please see this CNCF blog post on Advanced Kubernetes pod to node scheduling.

Part 2 - Taints and tolerations

Attracting pods to nodes is just the first part of this three-part approach. For this approach to work, we must repel pods from scheduling onto nodes for which the pods are not authorized. To repel unwanted or unauthorized pods, Kubernetes uses node taints. Taints are used to place conditions on nodes that prevent pods from being scheduled. The below taint uses a key-value pair of `tenant: tenants-x`.

```
...
    taints:
      - key: tenant
        value: tenants-x
        effect: NoSchedule
...
```

Given the above node `taint`, only pods that *tolerate* the taint will be allowed to be scheduled on the node. To allow authorized pods to be scheduled onto the node, the respective pod specifications must include a `toleration` to the taint, as seen below.

```
...
```

```
  tolerations:
  - effect: NoSchedule
    key: tenant
    operator: Equal
    value: tenants-x
...
```

Pods with the above `toleration` will not be stopped from scheduling on the node, at least not because of that specific taint. Taints are also used by Kubernetes to temporarily stop pod scheduling during certain conditions, like node resource pressure. With node affinity, and taints and tolerations, we can effectively attract the desired pods to specific nodes and repel unwanted pods.

> **Important**
>
> Certain Kubernetes pods are required to run on all nodes. Examples of these pods are those started by the Container Network Interface (CNI) and kube-proxy daemonsets. To that end, the specifications for these pods contain very permissive tolerations, to tolerate different taints. Care should be taken to not change these tolerations. Changing these tolerations could result in incorrect cluster operation. Additionally, policy-management tools, such as OPA/Gatekeeper and Kyverno can be used to write validating policies that prevent unauthorized pods from using these permissive tolerations.

Part 3 - Policy-based management for node selection

There are several tools that can be used to help manage the node affinity and tolerations of pod specifications, including enforcement of rules in CICD pipelines. However, enforcement of isolation should also be done at the Kubernetes cluster level. For this purpose, policy-management tools can be used to *mutate* inbound Kubernetes API server requests, based on request payloads, to apply the respective node affinity rules and tolerations mentioned above.

For example, pods destined for the *tenants-x* namespace can be *stamped* with the correct node affinity and toleration to permit scheduling on the *tenants-x* nodes. Utilizing policy-management tools configured using the Kubernetes Mutating Admission Webhook, policies can be used to mutate the inbound pod specifications. The mutations add the needed elements to allow desired scheduling. An example OPA/Gatekeeper policy that adds a node affinity is seen below.

```
apiVersion: mutations.gatekeeper.sh/v1alpha1
kind: Assign
```

```
metadata:
  name: mutator-add-nodeaffinity-pod
  annotations:
    aws-eks-best-practices/description: >-
      Adds Node affinity - https://kubernetes.io/docs/concepts/scheduling-eviction/
assign-pod-node/#node-affinity
spec:
  applyTo:
  - groups: [""]
    kinds: ["Pod"]
    versions: ["v1"]
  match:
    namespaces: ["tenants-x"]
  location:
 "spec.affinity.nodeAffinity.requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution.nodeSelectorTerms"
  parameters:
    assign:
      value:
        - matchExpressions:
          - key: "tenant"
            operator: In
            values:
            - "tenants-x"
```

The above policy is applied to a Kubernetes API server request, to apply a pod to the *tenants-x* namespace. The policy adds the `requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution` node affinity rule, so that pods are attracted to nodes with the `tenant: tenants-x` label.

A second policy, seen below, adds the toleration to the same pod specification, using the same matching criteria of target namespace and groups, kinds, and versions.

```
apiVersion: mutations.gatekeeper.sh/v1alpha1
kind: Assign
metadata:
  name: mutator-add-toleration-pod
  annotations:
    aws-eks-best-practices/description: >-
      Adds toleration - https://kubernetes.io/docs/concepts/scheduling-eviction/taint-
and-toleration/
spec:
  applyTo:
  - groups: [""]
    kinds: ["Pod"]
```

```
    versions: ["v1"]
  match:
    namespaces: ["tenants-x"]
  location: "spec.tolerations"
  parameters:
    assign:
      value:
      - key: "tenant"
        operator: "Equal"
        value: "tenants-x"
        effect: "NoSchedule"
```

The above policies are specific to pods; this is due to the paths to the mutated elements in the policies' `location` elements. Additional policies could be written to handle resources that create pods, like Deployment and Job resources. The listed policies and other examples can been seen in the companion GitHub project for this guide.

The result of these two mutations is that pods are attracted to the desired node, while at the same time, not repelled by the specific node taint. To verify this, we can see the snippets of output from two `kubectl` calls to get the nodes labeled with `tenant=tenants-x`, and get the pods in the `tenants-x` namespace.

```
kubectl get nodes -l tenant=tenants-x
NAME
ip-10-0-11-255...
ip-10-0-28-81...
ip-10-0-43-107...

kubectl -n tenants-x get pods -owide
NAME                                 READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE   IP
 NODE
tenant-test-deploy-58b895ff87-2q7xw   1/1     Running   0          13s   10.0.42.143
 ip-10-0-43-107...
tenant-test-deploy-58b895ff87-9b6hg   1/1     Running   0          13s   10.0.18.145
 ip-10-0-28-81...
tenant-test-deploy-58b895ff87-nxvw5   1/1     Running   0          13s   10.0.30.117
 ip-10-0-28-81...
tenant-test-deploy-58b895ff87-vw796   1/1     Running   0          13s   10.0.3.113
 ip-10-0-11-255...
tenant-test-pod                       1/1     Running   0          13s   10.0.35.83
 ip-10-0-43-107...
```

As we can see from the above outputs, all the pods are scheduled on the nodes labeled with `tenant=tenants-x`. Simply put, the pods will only run on the desired nodes, and the other pods (without the required affinity and tolerations) will not. The tenant workloads are effectively isolated.

An example mutated pod specification is seen below.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: tenant-test-pod
  namespace: tenants-x
spec:
  affinity:
    nodeAffinity:
      requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
        nodeSelectorTerms:
        - matchExpressions:
          - key: tenant
            operator: In
            values:
            - tenants-x
...
  tolerations:
  - effect: NoSchedule
    key: tenant
    operator: Equal
    value: tenants-x
...
```

Important

Policy-management tools that are integrated to the Kubernetes API server request flow, using mutating and validating admission webhooks, are designed to respond to the API server's request within a specified timeframe. This is usually 3 seconds or less. If the webhook call fails to return a response within the configured time, the mutation and/or validation of the inbound API sever request may or may not occur. This behavior is based on whether the admission webhook configurations are set to Fail Open or Fail Close.

In the above examples, we used policies written for OPA/Gatekeeper. However, there are other policy management tools that handle our node-selection use case as well. For example, this Kyverno policy could be used to handle the node affinity mutation.

> **Note**
>
> If operating correctly, mutating policies will effect the desired changes to inbound API server request payloads. However, validating policies should also be included to verify that the desired changes occur, before changes are allowed to persist. This is especially important when using these policies for tenant-to-node isolation. It is also a good idea to include *Audit* policies to routinely check your cluster for unwanted configurations.

References

- k-rail Designed to help you secure a multi-tenant environment through the enforcement of certain policies.
- Security Practices for MultiTenant SaaS Applications using Amazon EKS

Hard multi-tenancy

Hard multi-tenancy can be implemented by provisioning separate clusters for each tenant. While this provides very strong isolation between tenants, it has several drawbacks.

First, when you have many tenants, this approach can quickly become expensive. Not only will you have to pay for the control plane costs for each cluster, you will not be able to share compute resources between clusters. This will eventually cause fragmentation where a subset of your clusters are underutilized while others are overutilized.

Second, you will likely need to buy or build special tooling to manage all of these clusters. In time, managing hundreds or thousands of clusters may simply become too unwieldy.

Finally, creating a cluster per tenant will be slow relative to a creating a namespace. Nevertheless, a hard-tenancy approach may be necessary in highly-regulated industries or in SaaS environments where strong isolation is required.

Future directions

The Kubernetes community has recognized the current shortcomings of soft multi-tenancy and the challenges with hard multi-tenancy. The Multi-Tenancy Special Interest Group (SIG) is attempting to address these shortcomings through several incubation projects, including Hierarchical Namespace Controller (HNC) and Virtual Cluster.

The HNC proposal (KEP) describes a way to create parent-child relationships between namespaces with [policy] object inheritance along with an ability for tenant administrators to create sub-namespaces.

The Virtual Cluster proposal describes a mechanism for creating separate instances of the control plane services, including the API server, the controller manager, and scheduler, for each tenant within the cluster (also known as "Kubernetes on Kubernetes").

The Multi-Tenancy Benchmarks proposal provides guidelines for sharing clusters using namespaces for isolation and segmentation, and a command line tool kubectl-mtb to validate conformance to the guidelines.

Multi-cluster management tools and resources

- Banzai Cloud
- Kommander
- Lens
- Nirmata
- Rafay
- Rancher
- Weave Flux

Auditing and logging

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Collecting and analyzing [audit] logs is useful for a variety of different reasons. Logs can help with root cause analysis and attribution, i.e. ascribing a change to a particular user. When enough logs have been collected, they can be used to detect anomalous behaviors too. On EKS, the audit logs are sent to Amazon Cloudwatch Logs. The audit policy for EKS is as follows:

```
apiVersion: audit.k8s.io/v1beta1
kind: Policy
rules:
  # Log full request and response for changes to aws-auth ConfigMap in kube-system
 namespace
  - level: RequestResponse
    namespaces: ["kube-system"]
    verbs: ["update", "patch", "delete"]
    resources:
      - group: "" # core
        resources: ["configmaps"]
        resourceNames: ["aws-auth"]
    omitStages:
      - "RequestReceived"
  # Do not log watch operations performed by kube-proxy on endpoints and services
  - level: None
    users: ["system:kube-proxy"]
    verbs: ["watch"]
    resources:
      - group: "" # core
        resources: ["endpoints", "services", "services/status"]
  # Do not log get operations performed by kubelet on nodes and their statuses
  - level: None
    users: ["kubelet"] # legacy kubelet identity
    verbs: ["get"]
    resources:
      - group: "" # core
        resources: ["nodes", "nodes/status"]
  # Do not log get operations performed by the system:nodes group on nodes and their
 statuses
  - level: None
    userGroups: ["system:nodes"]
    verbs: ["get"]
    resources:
      - group: "" # core
        resources: ["nodes", "nodes/status"]
  # Do not log get and update operations performed by controller manager, scheduler,
 and endpoint-controller on endpoints in kube-system namespace
```

```
  - level: None
    users:
      - system:kube-controller-manager
      - system:kube-scheduler
      - system:serviceaccount:kube-system:endpoint-controller
    verbs: ["get", "update"]
    namespaces: ["kube-system"]
    resources:
      - group: "" # core
        resources: ["endpoints"]
  # Do not log get operations performed by apiserver on namespaces and their statuses/
finalizations
  - level: None
    users: ["system:apiserver"]
    verbs: ["get"]
    resources:
      - group: "" # core
        resources: ["namespaces", "namespaces/status", "namespaces/finalize"]
  # Do not log get and list operations performed by controller manager on
 metrics.k8s.io resources
  - level: None
    users:
      - system:kube-controller-manager
    verbs: ["get", "list"]
    resources:
      - group: "metrics.k8s.io"
  # Do not log access to health, version, and swagger non-resource URLs
  - level: None
    nonResourceURLs:
      - /healthz*
      - /version
      - /swagger*
  # Do not log events resources
  - level: None
    resources:
      - group: "" # core
        resources: ["events"]
  # Log request for updates/patches to nodes and pods statuses by kubelet and node
 problem detector
  - level: Request
    users: ["kubelet", "system:node-problem-detector", "system:serviceaccount:kube-
system:node-problem-detector"]
    verbs: ["update", "patch"]
    resources:
```

```
      - group: "" # core
        resources: ["nodes/status", "pods/status"]
    omitStages:
      - "RequestReceived"
  # Log request for updates/patches to nodes and pods statuses by system:nodes group
  - level: Request
    userGroups: ["system:nodes"]
    verbs: ["update", "patch"]
    resources:
      - group: "" # core
        resources: ["nodes/status", "pods/status"]
    omitStages:
      - "RequestReceived"
  # Log delete collection requests by namespace-controller in kube-system namespace
  - level: Request
    users: ["system:serviceaccount:kube-system:namespace-controller"]
    verbs: ["deletecollection"]
    omitStages:
      - "RequestReceived"
  # Log metadata for secrets, configmaps, and tokenreviews to protect sensitive data
  - level: Metadata
    resources:
      - group: "" # core
        resources: ["secrets", "configmaps"]
      - group: authentication.k8s.io
        resources: ["tokenreviews"]
    omitStages:
      - "RequestReceived"
  # Log requests for serviceaccounts/token resources
  - level: Request
    resources:
      - group: "" # core
        resources: ["serviceaccounts/token"]
  # Log get, list, and watch requests for various resource groups
  - level: Request
    verbs: ["get", "list", "watch"]
    resources:
      - group: "" # core
      - group: "admissionregistration.k8s.io"
      - group: "apiextensions.k8s.io"
      - group: "apiregistration.k8s.io"
      - group: "apps"
      - group: "authentication.k8s.io"
      - group: "authorization.k8s.io"
```

```
      - group: "autoscaling"
      - group: "batch"
      - group: "certificates.k8s.io"
      - group: "extensions"
      - group: "metrics.k8s.io"
      - group: "networking.k8s.io"
      - group: "policy"
      - group: "rbac.authorization.k8s.io"
      - group: "scheduling.k8s.io"
      - group: "settings.k8s.io"
      - group: "storage.k8s.io"
    omitStages:
      - "RequestReceived"
  # Default logging level for known APIs to log request and response
  - level: RequestResponse
    resources:
      - group: "" # core
      - group: "admissionregistration.k8s.io"
      - group: "apiextensions.k8s.io"
      - group: "apiregistration.k8s.io"
      - group: "apps"
      - group: "authentication.k8s.io"
      - group: "authorization.k8s.io"
      - group: "autoscaling"
      - group: "batch"
      - group: "certificates.k8s.io"
      - group: "extensions"
      - group: "metrics.k8s.io"
      - group: "networking.k8s.io"
      - group: "policy"
      - group: "rbac.authorization.k8s.io"
      - group: "scheduling.k8s.io"
      - group: "settings.k8s.io"
      - group: "storage.k8s.io"
    omitStages:
      - "RequestReceived"
  # Default logging level for all other requests to log metadata only
  - level: Metadata
    omitStages:
      - "RequestReceived"
```

Recommendations

Enable audit logs

The audit logs are part of the EKS managed Kubernetes control plane logs that are managed by EKS. Instructions for enabling/disabling the control plane logs, which includes the logs for the Kubernetes API server, the controller manager, and the scheduler, along with the audit log, can be found here, https://docs.aws.amazon.com/eks/latest/userguide/control-plane-logs.html#enabling-control-plane-log-export.

> **Note**
>
> When you enable control plane logging, you will incur costs for storing the logs in CloudWatch. This raises a broader issue about the ongoing cost of security. Ultimately you will have to weigh those costs against the cost of a security breach, e.g. financial loss, damage to your reputation, etc. You may find that you can adequately secure your environment by implementing only some of the recommendations in this guide.

> **Warning**
>
> The maximum size for a CloudWatch Logs entry is 1MB whereas the maximum Kubernetes API request size is 1.5MiB. Log entries greater than 1MB will either be truncated or only include the request metadata.

Utilize audit metadata

Kubernetes audit logs include two annotations that indicate whether or not a request was authorized `authorization.k8s.io/decision` and the reason for the decision `authorization.k8s.io/reason`. Use these attributes to ascertain why a particular API call was allowed.

Create alarms for suspicious events

Create an alarm to automatically alert you where there is an increase in 403 Forbidden and 401 Unauthorized responses, and then use attributes like `host`, `sourceIPs`, and `k8s_user.username` to find out where those requests are coming from.

Analyze logs with Log Insights

Use CloudWatch Log Insights to monitor changes to RBAC objects, e.g. Roles, RoleBindings, ClusterRoles, and ClusterRoleBindings. A few sample queries appear below:

Lists updates to the `aws-auth` ConfigMap:

```
fields @timestamp, @message
| filter @logStream like "kube-apiserver-audit"
| filter verb in ["update", "patch"]
| filter objectRef.resource = "configmaps" and objectRef.name = "aws-auth" and
 objectRef.namespace = "kube-system"
| sort @timestamp desc
```

Lists creation of new or changes to validation webhooks:

```
fields @timestamp, @message
| filter @logStream like "kube-apiserver-audit"
| filter verb in ["create", "update", "patch"] and responseStatus.code = 201
| filter objectRef.resource = "validatingwebhookconfigurations"
| sort @timestamp desc
```

Lists create, update, delete operations to Roles:

```
fields @timestamp, @message
| sort @timestamp desc
| limit 100
| filter objectRef.resource="roles" and verb in ["create", "update", "patch", "delete"]
```

Lists create, update, delete operations to RoleBindings:

```
fields @timestamp, @message
| sort @timestamp desc
| limit 100
| filter objectRef.resource="rolebindings" and verb in ["create", "update", "patch",
 "delete"]
```

Lists create, update, delete operations to ClusterRoles:

```
fields @timestamp, @message
| sort @timestamp desc
```

```
| limit 100
| filter objectRef.resource="clusterroles" and verb in ["create", "update", "patch",
 "delete"]
```

Lists create, update, delete operations to ClusterRoleBindings:

```
fields @timestamp, @message
| sort @timestamp desc
| limit 100
| filter objectRef.resource="clusterrolebindings" and verb in ["create", "update",
 "patch", "delete"]
```

Plots unauthorized read operations against Secrets:

```
fields @timestamp, @message
| sort @timestamp desc
| limit 100
| filter objectRef.resource="secrets" and verb in ["get", "watch", "list"] and
 responseStatus.code="401"
| stats count() by bin(1m)
```

List of failed anonymous requests:

```
fields @timestamp, @message, sourceIPs.0
| sort @timestamp desc
| limit 100
| filter user.username="system:anonymous" and responseStatus.code in ["401", "403"]
```

Audit your CloudTrail logs

AWS APIs called by pods that are utilizing IAM Roles for Service Accounts (IRSA) are automatically logged to CloudTrail along with the name of the service account. If the name of a service account that wasn't explicitly authorized to call an API appears in the log, it may be an indication that the IAM role's trust policy was misconfigured. Generally speaking, Cloudtrail is a great way to ascribe AWS API calls to specific IAM principals.

Use CloudTrail Insights to unearth suspicious activity

CloudTrail insights automatically analyzes write management events from CloudTrail trails and alerts you of unusual activity. This can help you identify when there's an increase in call volume on write APIs in your AWS account, including from pods that use IRSA to assume an IAM role.

See Announcing CloudTrail Insights: Identify and Response to Unusual API Activity for further information.

Additional resources

As the volume of logs increases, parsing and filtering them with Log Insights or another log analysis tool may become ineffective. As an alternative, you might want to consider running Sysdig Falco and ekscloudwatch. Falco analyzes audit logs and flags anomalies or abuse over an extended period of time. The ekscloudwatch project forwards audit log events from CloudWatch to Falco for analysis. Falco provides a set of default audit rules along with the ability to add your own.

Yet another option might be to store the audit logs in S3 and use the SageMaker Random Cut Forest algorithm to anomalous behaviors that warrant further investigation.

Tools and resources

The following commercial and open source projects can be used to assess your cluster's alignment with established best practices:

- Amazon EKS Security Immersion Workshop - Detective Controls
- kubeaudit
- kube-scan Assigns a risk score to the workloads running in your cluster in accordance with the Kubernetes Common Configuration Scoring System framework
- kubesec.io
- polaris
- Starboard
- Snyk
- Kubescape Kubescape is an open source kubernetes security tool that scans clusters, YAML files, and Helm charts. It detects misconfigurations according to multiple frameworks (including NSA-CISA and MITRE ATT&CK®.)

Network security

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Network security has several facets. The first involves the application of rules which restrict the flow of network traffic between services. The second involves the encryption of traffic while it is in transit. The mechanisms to implement these security measures on EKS are varied but often include the following items:

Traffic control

- Network Policies
- Security Groups

Network encryption

- Service Mesh
- Container Network Interfaces (CNIs)
- Ingress Controllers and Load Balancers
- Nitro Instances
- ACM Private CA with cert-manager

Network policy

Within a Kubernetes cluster, all Pod to Pod communication is allowed by default. While this flexibility may help promote experimentation, it is not considered secure. Kubernetes network policies give you a mechanism to restrict network traffic between Pods (often referred to as East/West traffic) as well as between Pods and external services. Kubernetes network policies operate at layers 3 and 4 of the OSI model. Network policies use pod, namespace selectors and labels to identify source and destination pods, but can also include IP addresses, port numbers, protocols, or a combination of these. Network Policies can be applied to both Inbound or Outbound connections to the pod, often called Ingress and Egress rules.

With native network policy support of Amazon VPC CNI Plugin, you can implement network policies to secure network traffic in kubernetes clusters. This integrates with the upstream Kubernetes Network Policy API, ensuring compatibility and adherence to Kubernetes standards. You can define policies using different identifiers supported by the upstream API. By default, all ingress and egress traffic is allowed to a pod. When a network policy with a policyType Ingress is specified, only allowed connections into the pod are those from the pod's node and those allowed

by the ingress rules. Same applies for egress rules. If multiple rules are defined, then union of all rules are taken into account when making the decision. Thus, order of evaluation does not affect the policy result.

> **Important**
>
> When you first provision an EKS cluster, VPC CNI Network Policy functionality is not enabled by default. Ensure you deployed supported VPC CNI Add-on version and set `ENABLE_NETWORK_POLICY` flag to `true` on the vpc-cni add-on to enable this. Refer Amazon EKS User guide for detailed instructions.

Recommendations

Getting Started with Network Policies - Follow Principle of Least Privilege

Create a default deny policy

As with RBAC policies, it is recommended to follow least privileged access principles with network policies. Start by creating a deny all policy that restricts all inbound and outbound traffic with in a namespace.

```
apiVersion: networking.k8s.io/v1
kind: NetworkPolicy
metadata:
  name: default-deny
  namespace: default
spec:
  podSelector: {}
  policyTypes:
  - Ingress
  - Egress
```

default-deny

		Target		Source				
#	Policy name	Namespace	Pods	Namespace	Pods	Subnet	Ports	
1	default-deny	default	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	

> **Note**
>
> The image above was created by the network policy viewer from Tufin.

Create a rule to allow DNS queries

Once you have the default deny all rule in place, you can begin layering on additional rules, such as a rule that allows pods to query CoreDNS for name resolution.

```
apiVersion: networking.k8s.io/v1
kind: NetworkPolicy
metadata:
  name: allow-dns-access
  namespace: default
spec:
  podSelector:
    matchLabels: {}
  policyTypes:
  - Egress
  egress:
  - to:
    - namespaceSelector:
        matchLabels:
          kubernetes.io/metadata.name: kube-system
      podSelector:
        matchLabels:
          k8s-app: kube-dns
    ports:
    - protocol: UDP
      port: 53
```

allow-dns-access

		Target		Destination				
#	Policy name	Namespace	Pods	Namespace	Pods	Subnet	Ports	
1	allow-dns-access	default	Any	name: kube-system	Any		UDP: 53	

Incrementally add rules to selectively allow the flow of traffic between namespaces/pods

Understand the application requirements and create fine-grained ingress and egress rules as needed. Below example shows how to restrict ingress traffic on port 80 to `app-one` from `client-one`. This helps minimize the attack surface and reduces the risk of unauthorized access.

```
apiVersion: networking.k8s.io/v1
kind: NetworkPolicy
metadata:
  name: allow-ingress-app-one
  namespace: default
spec:
  podSelector:
    matchLabels:
      k8s-app: app-one
  policyTypes:
  - Ingress
  ingress:
  - from:
    - podSelector:
        matchLabels:
          k8s-app: client-one
    ports:
    - protocol: TCP
      port: 80
```

allow-ingress-app-one

		Target		Source				
#	Policy name	Namespace	Pods	Namespace	Pods	Subnet	Ports	
1	allow-ingress-app-one	default	k8s-app: app-one	default	k8s-app: client-one		TCP: 80	

Monitoring network policy enforcement

- **Use Network Policy editor**
  - Network policy editor helps with visualizations, security score, autogenerates from network flow logs
  - Build network policies in an interactive way
- **Audit Logs**

- Regularly review audit logs of your EKS cluster
- Audit logs provide wealth of information about what actions have been performed on your cluster including changes to network policies
- Use this information to track changes to your network policies over time and detect any unauthorized or unexpected changes

- **Automated testing**
  - Implement automated testing by creating a test environment that mirrors your production environment and periodically deploy workloads that attempt to violate your network policies.
- **Monitoring metrics**
  - Configure your observability agents to scrape the prometheus metrics from the VPC CNI node agents, that allows to monitor the agent health, and sdk errors.
- **Audit Network Policies regularly**
  - Periodically audit your Network Policies to make sure that they meet your current application requirements. As your application evolves, an audit gives you the opportunity to remove redundant ingress, egress rules and make sure that your applications don't have excessive permissions.
- **Ensure Network Policies exists using Open Policy Agent (OPA)**
  - Use OPA Policy like shown below to ensure Network Policy always exists before onboarding application pods. This policy denies onboarding k8s pods with a label `k8s-app: sample-app` if corresponding network policy does not exist.

```
package kubernetes.admission
import data.kubernetes.networkpolicies

deny[msg] {
    input.request.kind.kind == "Pod"
    pod_label_value := {v["k8s-app"] | v := input.request.object.metadata.labels}
    contains_label(pod_label_value, "sample-app")
    np_label_value := {v["k8s-app"] | v :=
 networkpolicies[_].spec.podSelector.matchLabels}
    not contains_label(np_label_value, "sample-app")
    msg:= sprintf("The Pod %v could not be created because it is missing an associated
 Network Policy.", [input.request.object.metadata.name])
}
contains_label(arr, val) {
    arr[_] == val
```

```
}
```

Troubleshooting

Monitor the vpc-network-policy-controller, node-agent logs

Enable the EKS Control plane controller manager logs to diagnose the network policy functionality. You can stream the control plane logs to a CloudWatch log group and use CloudWatch Log insights to perform advanced queries. From the logs, you can view what pod endpoint objects are resolved to a Network Policy, reconcilation status of the policies, and debug if the policy is working as expected.

In addition, Amazon VPC CNI allows you to enable the collection and export of policy enforcement logs to Amazon Cloudwatch from the EKS worker nodes. Once enabled, you can leverage CloudWatch Container Insights to provide insights on your usage related to Network Policies.

Amazon VPC CNI also ships an SDK that provides an interface to interact with eBPF programs on the node. The SDK is installed when the `aws-node` is deployed onto the nodes. You can find the SDK binary installed under `/opt/cni/bin` directory on the node. At launch, the SDK provides support for fundamental functionalities such as inspecting eBPF programs and maps.

```
sudo /opt/cni/bin/aws-eks-na-cli ebpf progs
```

Log network traffic metadata

AWS VPC Flow Logs captures metadata about the traffic flowing through a VPC, such as source and destination IP address and port along with accepted/dropped packets. This information could be analyzed to look for suspicious or unusual activity between resources within the VPC, including Pods. However, since the IP addresses of pods frequently change as they are replaced, Flow Logs may not be sufficient on its own. Calico Enterprise extends the Flow Logs with pod labels and other metadata, making it easier to decipher the traffic flows between pods.

Security groups

EKS uses AWS VPC Security Groups (SGs) to control the traffic between the Kubernetes control plane and the cluster's worker nodes. Security groups are also used to control the traffic between worker nodes, and other VPC resources, and external IP addresses. When you provision an EKS cluster (with Kubernetes version 1.14-eks.3 or greater), a cluster security group is automatically

created for you. This security group allows unfettered communication between the EKS control plane and the nodes from managed node groups. For simplicity, it is recommended that you add the cluster SG to all node groups, including unmanaged node groups.

Prior to Kubernetes version 1.14 and EKS version eks.3, there were separate security groups configured for the EKS control plane and node groups. The minimum and suggested rules for the control plane and node group security groups can be found at https://docs.aws.amazon.com/eks/latest/userguide/sec-group-reqs.html. The minimum rules for the *control plane security group* allows port 443 inbound from the worker node SG. This rule is what allows the kubelets to communicate with the Kubernetes API server. It also includes port 10250 for outbound traffic to the worker node SG; 10250 is the port that the kubelets listen on. Similarly, the minimum *node group* rules allow port 10250 inbound from the control plane SG and 443 outbound to the control plane SG. Finally there is a rule that allows unfettered communication between nodes within a node group.

If you need to control communication between services that run within the cluster and service the run outside the cluster such as an RDS database, consider security groups for pods. With security groups for pods, you can assign an **existing** security group to a collection of pods.

> ⚠ **Warning**
>
> If you reference a security group that does not exist prior to the creation of the pods, the pods will not get scheduled.

You can control which pods are assigned to a security group by creating a `SecurityGroupPolicy` object and specifying a `PodSelector` or a `ServiceAccountSelector`. Setting the selectors to `{}` will assign the SGs referenced in the `SecurityGroupPolicy` to all pods in a namespace or all Service Accounts in a namespace. Be sure you've familiarized yourself with all the considerations before implementing security groups for pods.

> ⚠ **Important**
>
> If you use SGs for pods you **must** create SGs that allow port 53 outbound to the cluster security group. Similarly, you **must** update the cluster security group to accept port 53 inbound traffic from the pod security group.

> **Important**
>
> The limits for security groups still apply when using security groups for pods so use them judiciously.

> **Important**
>
> You **must** create rules for inbound traffic from the cluster security group (kubelet) for all of the probes configured for pod.

> **Important**
>
> Security groups for pods relies on a feature known as ENI trunking which was created to increase the ENI density of an EC2 instance. When a pod is assigned to an SG, a VPC controller associates a branch ENI from the node group with the pod. If there aren't enough branch ENIs available in a node group at the time the pod is scheduled, the pod will stay in pending state. The number of branch ENIs an instance can support varies by instance type/family. See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/eks/latest/userguide/security-groups-for-pods.html#supported-instance-types for further details.

While security groups for pods offers an AWS-native way to control network traffic within and outside of your cluster without the overhead of a policy daemon, other options are available. For example, the Cilium policy engine allows you to reference a DNS name in a network policy. Calico Enterprise includes an option for mapping network policies to AWS security groups. If you've implemented a service mesh like Istio, you can use an egress gateway to restrict network egress to specific, fully qualified domains or IP addresses. For further information about this option, read the three part series on egress traffic control in Istio.

When to use Network Policy vs Security Group for Pods?

When to use Kubernetes network policy

- **Controlling pod-to-pod traffic**
  - Suitable for controlling network traffic between pods inside a cluster (east-west traffic)

- **Control traffic at the IP address or port level (OSI layer 3 or 4)**

When to use AWS Security groups for pods (SGP)

- **Leverage existing AWS configurations**
  - If you already have complex set of EC2 security groups that manage access to AWS services and you are migrating applications from EC2 instances to EKS, SGPs can be a very good choice allowing you to reuse security group resources and apply them to your pods.
- **Control access to AWS services**
  - Your applications running within an EKS cluster wants to communicate with other AWS services (RDS database), use SGPs as an efficient mechanism to control the traffic from the pods to AWS services.
- **Isolation of Pod & Node traffic**
  - If you want to completely separate pod traffic from the rest of the node traffic, use SGP in `POD_SECURITY_GROUP_ENFORCING_MODE=strict` mode.

Best practices using Security groups for pods and Network Policy

- **Layered security**
  - Use a combination of SGP and kubernetes network policy for a layered security approach
  - Use SGPs to limit network level access to AWS services that are not part of a cluster, while kubernetes network policies can restrict network traffic between pods inside the cluster
- **Principle of least privilege**
  - Only allow necessary traffic between pods or namespaces
- **Segment your applications**
  - Wherever possible, segment applications by the network policy to reduce the blast radius if an application is compromised
- **Keep policies simple and clear**
  - Kubernetes network policies can be quite granular and complex, its best to keep them as simple as possible to reduce the risk of misconfiguration and ease the management overhead
- **Reduce the attack surface**
  - Minimize the attack surface by limiting the exposure of your applications

> **Important**
>
> Security Groups for pods provides two enforcing modes: `strict` and `standard`. You must use `standard` mode when using both Network Policy and Security Groups for pods features in an EKS cluster.

When it comes to network security, a layered approach is often the most effective solution. Using kubernetes network policy and SGP in combination can provide a robust defense-in-depth strategy for your applications running in EKS.

Service Mesh Policy Enforcement or Kubernetes network policy

A `service mesh` is a dedicated infrastructure layer that you can add to your applications. It allows you to transparently add capabilities like observability, traffic management, and security, without adding them to your own code.

Service mesh enforces policies at Layer 7 (application) of OSI model whereas kubernetes network policies operate at Layer 3 (network) and Layer 4 (transport). There are many offerings in this space like AWS AppMesh, Istio, Linkerd, etc.,

When to use Service mesh for policy enforcement

- Have existing investment in a service mesh
- Need more advanced capabilities like traffic management, observability & security
  - Traffic control, load balancing, circuit breaking, rate limiting, timeouts etc.
  - Detailed insights into how your services are performing (latency, error rates, requests per second, request volumes etc.)
  - You want to implement and leverage service mesh for security features like mTLS

Choose Kubernetes network policy for simpler use cases

- Limit which pods can communicate with each other
- Network policies require fewer resources than a service mesh making them a good fit for simpler use cases or for smaller clusters where the overhead of running and managing a service mesh might not be justified

> **Note**
>
> Network policies and Service mesh can also be used together. Use network policies to provide a baseline level of security and isolation between your pods and then use a service mesh to add additional capabilities like traffic management, observability and security.

ThirdParty Network Policy Engines

Consider a Third Party Network Policy Engine when you have advanced policy requirements like Global Network Policies, support for DNS Hostname based rules, Layer 7 rules, ServiceAccount based rules, and explicit deny/log actions, etc., Calico, is an open source policy engine from Tigera that works well with EKS. In addition to implementing the full set of Kubernetes network policy features, Calico supports extended network polices with a richer set of features, including support for layer 7 rules, e.g. HTTP, when integrated with Istio. Calico policies can be scoped to Namespaces, Pods, service accounts, or globally. When policies are scoped to a service account, it associates a set of ingress/egress rules with that service account. With the proper RBAC rules in place, you can prevent teams from overriding these rules, allowing IT security professionals to safely delegate administration of namespaces. Isovalent, the maintainers of Cilium, have also extended the network policies to include partial support for layer 7 rules, e.g. HTTP. Cilium also has support for DNS hostnames which can be useful for restricting traffic between Kubernetes Services/Pods and resources that run within or outside of your VPC. By contrast, Calico Enterprise includes a feature that allows you to map a Kubernetes network policy to an AWS security group, as well as DNS hostnames.

You can find a list of common Kubernetes network policies at https://github.com/ahmetb/kubernetes-network-policy-recipes. A similar set of rules for Calico are available at https://docs.projectcalico.org/security/calico-network-policy.

Migration to Amazon VPC CNI Network Policy Engine

To maintain consistency and avoid unexpected pod communication behavior, it is recommended to deploy only one Network Policy Engine in your cluster. If you want to migrate from 3P to VPC CNI Network Policy Engine, we recommend converting your existing 3P NetworkPolicy CRDs to the Kubernetes NetworkPolicy resources before enabling VPC CNI network policy support. And, test the migrated policies in a separate test cluster before applying them in you production environment. This allows you to identify and address any potential issues or inconsistencies in pod communication behavior.

Migration Tool

To assist in your migration process, we have developed a tool called K8s Network Policy Migrator that converts your existing Calico/Cilium network policy CRDs to Kubernetes native network policies. After conversion you can directly test the converted network policies on your new clusters running VPC CNI network policy controller. The tool is designed to help you streamline the migration process and ensure a smooth transition.

> **Important**
>
> Migration tool will only convert 3P policies that are compatible with native kubernetes network policy api. If you are using advanced network policy features offered by 3P plugins, Migration tool will skip and report them.

Please note that migration tool is currently not supported by AWS VPC CNI Network policy engineering team, it is made available to customers on a best-effort basis. We encourage you to utilize this tool to facilitate your migration process. In the event that you encounter any issues or bugs with the tool, we kindly ask you create a GitHub issue. Your feedback is invaluable to us and will assist in the continuous improvement of our services.

Additional Resources

- Kubernetes & Tigera: Network Policies, Security, and Audit
- Calico Enterprise
- Cilium
- NetworkPolicy Editor an interactive policy editor from Cilium
- Inspektor Gadget advise network-policy gadget Suggests network policies based on an analysis of network traffic

Encryption in transit

Applications that need to conform to PCI, HIPAA, or other regulations may need to encrypt data while it is in transit. Nowadays TLS is the de facto choice for encrypting traffic on the wire. TLS, like it's predecessor SSL, provides secure communications over a network using cryptographic protocols. TLS uses symmetric encryption where the keys to encrypt the data are generated based

on a shared secret that is negotiated at the beginning of the session. The following are a few ways that you can encrypt data in a Kubernetes environment.

Nitro Instances

Traffic exchanged between the following Nitro instance types, e.g. C5n, G4, I3en, M5dn, M5n, P3dn, R5dn, and R5n, is automatically encrypted by default. When there's an intermediate hop, like a transit gateway or a load balancer, the traffic is not encrypted. See Encryption in transit for further details on encryption in transit as well as the complete list of instances types that support network encryption by default.

Container Network Interfaces (CNIs)

WeaveNet can be configured to automatically encrypt all traffic using NaCl encryption for sleeve traffic, and IPsec ESP for fast datapath traffic.

Service Mesh

Encryption in transit can also be implemented with a service mesh like App Mesh, Linkerd v2, and Istio. AppMesh supports mTLS with X.509 certificates or Envoy's Secret Discovery Service(SDS). Linkerd and Istio both have support for mTLS.

The aws-app-mesh-examples GitHub repository provides walkthroughs for configuring mTLS using X.509 certificates and SPIRE as SDS provider with your Envoy container:

- Configuring mTLS using X.509 certificates
- Configuring TLS using SPIRE (SDS)

App Mesh also supports TLS encryption with a private certificate issued by AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) or a certificate stored on the local file system of the virtual node.

The aws-app-mesh-examples GitHub repository provides walkthroughs for configuring TLS using certificates issued by ACM and certificates that are packaged with your Envoy container:

- Configuring TLS with File Provided TLS Certificates
- Configuring TLS with AWS Certificate Manager

Ingress Controllers and Load Balancers

Ingress controllers are a way for you to intelligently route HTTP/S traffic that emanates from outside the cluster to services running inside the cluster. Oftentimes, these Ingresses are fronted by a layer 4 load balancer, like the Classic Load Balancer or the Network Load Balancer (NLB). Encrypted traffic can be terminated at different places within the network, e.g. at the load balancer, at the ingress resource, or the Pod. How and where you terminate your SSL connection will ultimately be dictated by your organization's network security policy. For instance, if you have a policy that requires end-to-end encryption, you will have to decrypt the traffic at the Pod. This will place additional burden on your Pod as it will have to spend cycles establishing the initial handshake. Overall SSL/TLS processing is very CPU intensive. Consequently, if you have the flexibility, try performing the SSL offload at the Ingress or the load balancer.

Use encryption with AWS Elastic load balancers

The AWS Application Load Balancer (ALB) and Network Load Balancer (NLB) both have support for transport encryption (SSL and TLS). The `alb.ingress.kubernetes.io/certificate-arn` annotation for the ALB lets you to specify which certificates to add to the ALB. If you omit the annotation the controller will attempt to add certificates to listeners that require it by matching the available AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificates using the host field. Starting with EKS v1.15 you can use the `service.beta.kubernetes.io/aws-load-balancer-ssl-cert` annotation with the NLB as shown in the example below.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: demo-app
  namespace: default
  labels:
    app: demo-app
  annotations:
     service.beta.kubernetes.io/aws-load-balancer-type: "nlb"
     service.beta.kubernetes.io/aws-load-balancer-ssl-cert: "<certificate ARN>"
     service.beta.kubernetes.io/aws-load-balancer-ssl-ports: "443"
     service.beta.kubernetes.io/aws-load-balancer-backend-protocol: "http"
spec:
  type: LoadBalancer
  ports:
  - port: 443
    targetPort: 80
    protocol: TCP
```

```
  selector:
    app: demo-app
//---
kind: Deployment
apiVersion: apps/v1
metadata:
  name: nginx
  namespace: default
  labels:
    app: demo-app
spec:
  replicas: 1
  selector:
    matchLabels:
      app: demo-app
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: demo-app
    spec:
      containers:
        - name: nginx
          image: nginx
          ports:
            - containerPort: 443
              protocol: TCP
            - containerPort: 80
              protocol: TCP
```

Following are additional examples for SSL/TLS termination.

- Securing EKS Ingress With Contour And Let's Encrypt The GitOps Way
- How do I terminate HTTPS traffic on Amazon EKS workloads with ACM?

> **Important**
>
> Some Ingresses, like the AWS LB controller, implement the SSL/TLS using Annotations instead of as part of the Ingress Spec.

ACM Private CA with cert-manager

You can enable TLS and mTLS to secure your EKS application workloads at the ingress, on the pod, and between pods using ACM Private Certificate Authority (CA) and cert-manager, a popular Kubernetes add-on to distribute, renew, and revoke certificates. ACM Private CA is a highly-available, secure, managed CA without the upfront and maintenance costs of managing your own CA. If you are using the default Kubernetes certificate authority, there is an opportunity to improve your security and meet compliance requirements with ACM Private CA. ACM Private CA secures private keys in FIPS 140-2 Level 3 hardware security modules (very secure), compared with the default CA storing keys encoded in memory (less secure). A centralized CA also gives you more control and improved auditability for private certificates both inside and outside of a Kubernetes environment.

Short-Lived CA Mode for Mutual TLS Between Workloads

When using ACM Private CA for mTLS in EKS, it is recommended that you use short lived certificates with *short-lived CA mode*. Although it is possible to issue out short-lived certificates in the general-purpose CA mode, using short-lived CA mode works out more cost-effective (~75% cheaper than general mode) for use cases where new certificates need to be issued frequently. In addition to this, you should try to align the validity period of the private certificates with the lifetime of the pods in your EKS cluster. Learn more about ACM Private CA and its benefits here.

ACM Setup Instructions

Start by creating a Private CA by following procedures provided in the ACM Private CA tech docs. Once you have a Private CA, install cert-manager using regular installation instructions. After installing cert-manager, install the Private CA Kubernetes cert-manager plugin by following the setup instructions in GitHub. The plugin lets cert-manager request private certificates from ACM Private CA.

Now that you have a Private CA and an EKS cluster with cert-manager and the plugin installed, it's time to set permissions and create the issuer. Update IAM permissions of the EKS node role to allow access to ACM Private CA. Replace the <CA_ARN> with the value from your Private CA:

```
{
    "Version":"2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Sid": "awspcaissuer",
            "Action": [
```

```
                "acm-pca:DescribeCertificateAuthority",
                "acm-pca:GetCertificate",
                "acm-pca:IssueCertificate"
            ],
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Resource": "arn:aws:acm-pca:us-west-2:123456789012:certificate-
authority/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012"
        }
    ]
}
```

Service Roles for IAM Accounts, or IRSA can also be used. Please see the Additional Resources section below for complete examples.

Create an Issuer in Amazon EKS by creating a Custom Resource Definition file named cluster-issuer.yaml with the following text in it, replacing <CA_ARN> and <Region> information with your Private CA.

```
apiVersion: awspca.cert-manager.io/v1beta1
kind: AWSPCAClusterIssuer
metadata:
          name: demo-test-root-ca
spec:
          arn: <CA_ARN>
          region: <Region>
```

Deploy the Issuer you created.

```
kubectl apply -f cluster-issuer.yaml
```

Your EKS cluster is configured to request certificates from Private CA. You can now use cert-manager's `Certificate` resource to issue certificates by changing the `issuerRef` field's values to the Private CA Issuer you created above. For more details on how to specify and request Certificate resources, please check cert-manager's Certificate Resources guide. See examples here.

ACM Private CA with Istio and cert-manager

If you are running Istio in your EKS cluster, you can disable the Istio control plane (specifically `istiod`) from functioning as the root Certificate Authority (CA), and configure ACM Private CA as the root CA for mTLS between workloads. If you're going with this approach, consider using the

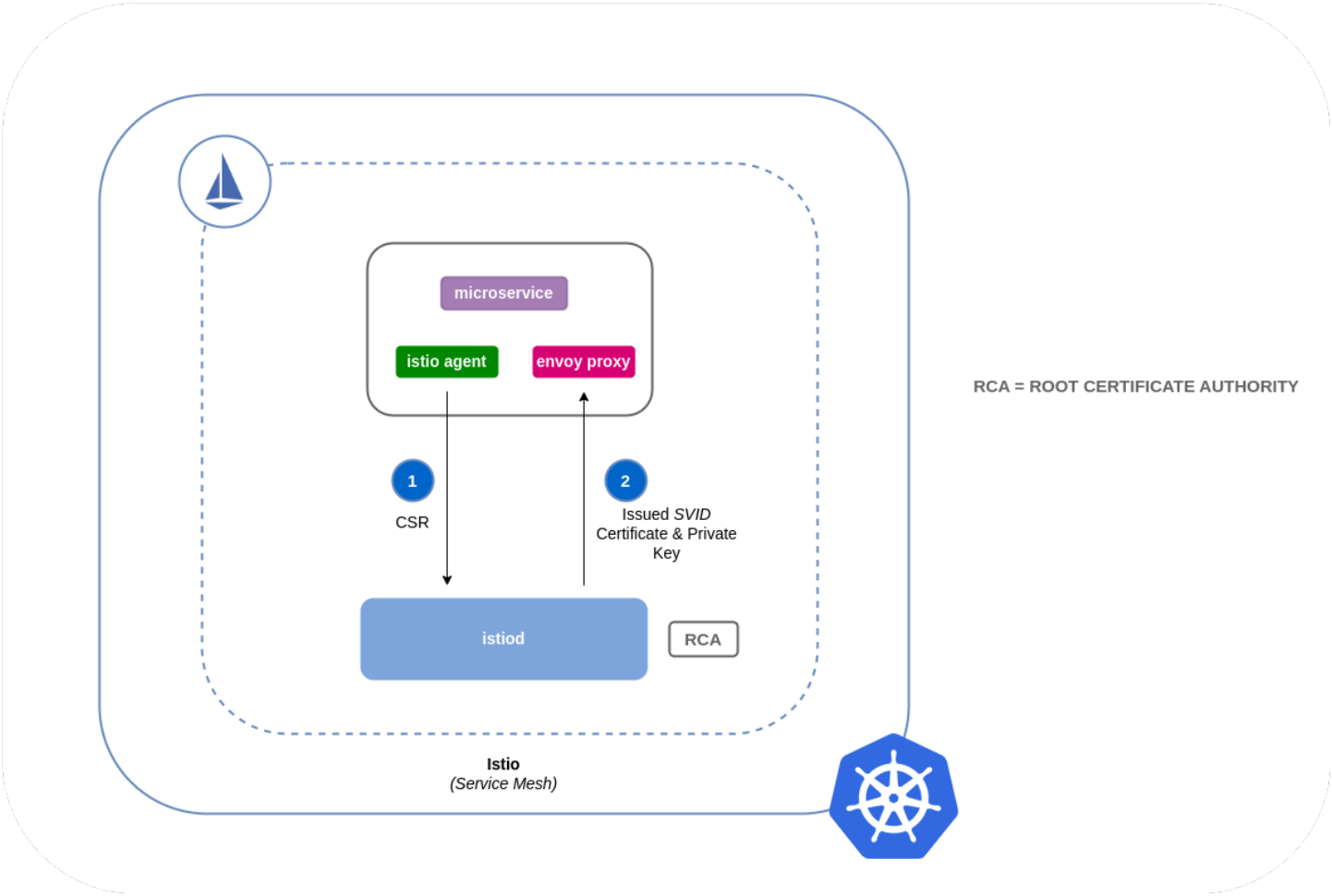
short-lived CA mode in ACM Private CA. Refer to the previous section and this blog post for more details.

How Certificate Signing Works in Istio (Default)

Workloads in Kubernetes are identified using service accounts. If you don't specify a service account, Kubernetes will automatically assign one to your workload. Also, service accounts automatically mount an associated token. This token is used by the service account for workloads to authenticate against the Kubernetes API. The service account may be sufficient as an identity for Kubernetes but Istio has its own identity management system and CA. When a workload starts up with its envoy sidecar proxy, it needs an identity assigned from Istio in order for it to be deemed as trustworthy and allowed to communicate with other services in the mesh.

To get this identity from Istio, the `istio-agent` sends a request known as a certificate signing request (or CSR) to the Istio control plane. This CSR contains the service account token so that the workload's identity can be verified before being processed. This verification process is handled by `istiod`, which acts as both the Registration Authority (or RA) and the CA. The RA serves as a gatekeeper that makes sure only verified CSR makes it through to the CA. Once the CSR is verified, it will be forwarded to the CA which will then issue a certificate containing a SPIFFE identity with the service account. This certificate is called a SPIFFE verifiable identity document (or SVID). The SVID is assigned to the requesting service for identification purposes and to encrypt the traffic in transit between the communicating services.

Default flow for Istio Certificate Signing Requests:



How Certificate Signing Works in Istio with ACM Private CA

You can use a cert-manager add-on called the Istio Certificate Signing Request agent (istio-csr) to integrate Istio with ACM Private CA. This agent allows Istio workloads and control plane components to be secured with cert manager issuers, in this case ACM Private CA. The *istio-csr* agent exposes the same service that *istiod* serves in the default config of validating incoming CSRs. Except, after verification, it will convert the requests into resources that cert manager supports (i.e. integrations with external CA issuers).

Whenever there's a CSR from a workload, it will be forwarded to *istio-csr*, which will request certificates from ACM Private CA. This communication between *istio-csr* and ACM Private CA is enabled by the AWS Private CA issuer plugin. Cert manager uses this plugin to request TLS certificates from ACM Private CA. The issuer plugin will communicate with the ACM Private CA service to request a signed certificate for the workload. Once the certificate has been signed, it will be returned to *istio-csr*, which will read the signed request, and return it to the workload that initiated the CSR.

Flow for Istio Certificate Signing Requests with istio-csr

image::istio-csr-with-acm-private-ca.png[Flow for Istio Certificate Signing Requests with istio-csr]

Istio with Private CA Setup Instructions

1. Start by following the same setup instructions in this section to complete the following:
2. Create a Private CA
3. Install cert-manager
4. Install the issuer plugin
5. Set permissions and create an issuer. The issuer represents the CA and is used to sign `istiod` and mesh workload certificates. It will communicate with ACM Private CA.
6. Create an `istio-system` namespace. This is where the `istiod certificate` and other Istio resources will be deployed.
7. Install Istio CSR configured with AWS Private CA Issuer Plugin. You can preserve the certificate signing requests for workloads to verify that they get approved and signed (`preserveCertificateRequests=true`).

```
helm install -n cert-manager cert-manager-istio-csr jetstack/cert-manager-istio-csr \
--set "app.certmanager.issuer.group=awspca.cert-manager.io" \
--set "app.certmanager.issuer.kind=AWSPCAClusterIssuer" \
--set "app.certmanager.issuer.name=<the-name-of-the-issuer-you-created>" \
--set "app.certmanager.preserveCertificateRequests=true" \
--set "app.server.maxCertificateDuration=48h" \
--set "app.tls.certificateDuration=24h" \
--set "app.tls.istiodCertificateDuration=24h" \
--set "app.tls.rootCAFile=/var/run/secrets/istio-csr/ca.pem" \
--set "volumeMounts[0].name=root-ca" \
--set "volumeMounts[0].mountPath=/var/run/secrets/istio-csr" \
--set "volumes[0].name=root-ca" \
--set "volumes[0].secret.secretName=istio-root-ca"
```

8. Install Istio with custom configurations to replace `istiod` with `cert-manager istio-csr` as the certificate provider for the mesh. This process can be carried out using the Istio Operator.

```
apiVersion: install.istio.io/v1alpha1
kind: IstioOperator
metadata:
  name: istio
  namespace: istio-system
```

```
spec:
  profile: "demo"
  hub: gcr.io/istio-release
  values:
  global:
    # Change certificate provider to cert-manager istio agent for istio agent
    caAddress: cert-manager-istio-csr.cert-manager.svc:443
  components:
    pilot:
      k8s:
        env:
          # Disable istiod CA Sever functionality
        - name: ENABLE_CA_SERVER
          value: "false"
        overlays:
        - apiVersion: apps/v1
          kind: Deployment
          name: istiod
          patches:

            # Mount istiod serving and webhook certificate from Secret mount
          - path: spec.template.spec.containers.[name:discovery].args[7]
            value: "--tlsCertFile=/etc/cert-manager/tls/tls.crt"
          - path: spec.template.spec.containers.[name:discovery].args[8]
            value: "--tlsKeyFile=/etc/cert-manager/tls/tls.key"
          - path: spec.template.spec.containers.[name:discovery].args[9]
            value: "--caCertFile=/etc/cert-manager/ca/root-cert.pem"

          - path: spec.template.spec.containers.[name:discovery].volumeMounts[6]
            value:
              name: cert-manager
              mountPath: "/etc/cert-manager/tls"
              readOnly: true
          - path: spec.template.spec.containers.[name:discovery].volumeMounts[7]
            value:
              name: ca-root-cert
              mountPath: "/etc/cert-manager/ca"
              readOnly: true

          - path: spec.template.spec.volumes[6]
            value:
              name: cert-manager
              secret:
                secretName: istiod-tls
```

```
          - path: spec.template.spec.volumes[7]
            value:
              name: ca-root-cert
              configMap:
                defaultMode: 420
                name: istio-ca-root-cert
```

9. Deploy the above custom resource you created.

```
istioctl operator init
kubectl apply -f istio-custom-config.yaml
```

10Now you can deploy a workload to the mesh in your EKS cluster and enforce mTLS.

Istio certificate signing requests

image::istio-csr-requests.png[Istio certificate signing requests]

Tools and resources

- Amazon EKS Security Immersion Workshop - Network security
- How to implement cert-manager and the ACM Private CA plugin to enable TLS in EKS.
- Setting up end-to-end TLS encryption on Amazon EKS with the new AWS Load Balancer Controller and ACM Private CA.
- Private CA Kubernetes cert-manager plugin on GitHub.
- Private CA Kubernetes cert-manager plugin user guide.
- How to use AWS Private Certificate Authority short-lived certificate mode
- egress-operator An operator and DNS plugin to control egress traffic from your cluster without protocol inspection
- NeuVector by SUSE open source, zero-trust container security platform, provides policy network rules, data loss prevention (DLP), web application firewall (WAF) and network threat signatures.

Data encryption and secrets management

Encryption at rest

There are three different AWS-native storage options you can use with Kubernetes: EBS, EFS, and FSx for Lustre. All three offer encryption at rest using a service managed key or a customer master key (CMK). For EBS you can use the in-tree storage driver or the EBS CSI driver. Both include parameters for encrypting volumes and supplying a CMK. For EFS, you can use the EFS CSI driver, however, unlike EBS, the EFS CSI driver does not support dynamic provisioning. If you want to use EFS with EKS, you will need to provision and configure at-rest encryption for the file system prior to creating a PV. For further information about EFS file encryption, please refer to Encrypting Data at Rest. Besides offering at-rest encryption, EFS and FSx for Lustre include an option for encrypting data in transit. FSx for Lustre does this by default. For EFS, you can add transport encryption by adding the `tls` parameter to `mountOptions` in your PV as in this example:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolume
metadata:
  name: efs-pv
spec:
  capacity:
    storage: 5Gi
  volumeMode: Filesystem
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteOnce
  persistentVolumeReclaimPolicy: Retain
  storageClassName: efs-sc
  mountOptions:
    - tls
  csi:
    driver: efs.csi.aws.com
    volumeHandle: <file_system_id>
```

The FSx CSI driver supports dynamic provisioning of Lustre file systems. It encrypts data with a service managed key by default, although there is an option to provide your own CMK as in this example:

```
kind: StorageClass
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
metadata:
```

```
  name: fsx-sc
provisioner: fsx.csi.aws.com
parameters:
  subnetId: subnet-056da83524edbe641
  securityGroupIds: sg-086f61ea73388fb6b
  deploymentType: PERSISTENT_1
  kmsKeyId: <kms_arn>
```

Important

As of May 28, 2020 all data written to the ephemeral volume in EKS Fargate pods is encrypted by default using an industry-standard AES-256 cryptographic algorithm. No modifications to your application are necessary as encryption and decryption are handled seamlessly by the service.

Encrypt data at rest

Encrypting data at rest is considered a best practice. If you're unsure whether encryption is necessary, encrypt your data.

Rotate your CMKs periodically

Configure KMS to automatically rotate your CMKs. This will rotate your keys once a year while saving old keys indefinitely so that your data can still be decrypted. For additional information see Rotating customer master keys

Use EFS access points to simplify access to shared datasets

If you have shared datasets with different POSIX file permissions or want to restrict access to part of the shared file system by creating different mount points, consider using EFS access points. To learn more about working with access points, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/efs/latest/ug/efs-access-points.html. Today, if you want to use an access point (AP) you'll need to reference the AP in the PV's `volumeHandle` parameter.

Important

As of March 23, 2021 the EFS CSI driver supports dynamic provisioning of EFS Access Points. Access points are application-specific entry points into an EFS file system that make

it easier to share a file system between multiple pods. Each EFS file system can have up to 120 PVs. See Introducing Amazon EFS CSI dynamic provisioning for additional information.

Secrets management

Kubernetes secrets are used to store sensitive information, such as user certificates, passwords, or API keys. They are persisted in etcd as base64 encoded strings. On EKS, the EBS volumes for etcd nodes are encrypted with EBS encryption. A pod can retrieve a Kubernetes secrets objects by referencing the secret in the `podSpec`. These secrets can either be mapped to an environment variable or mounted as volume. For additional information on creating secrets, see https://kubernetes.io/docs/concepts/configuration/secret/.

Warning

Secrets in a particular namespace can be referenced by all pods in the secret's namespace.

Warning

The node authorizer allows the Kubelet to read all of the secrets mounted to the node.

Use AWS KMS for envelope encryption of Kubernetes secrets

This allows you to encrypt your secrets with a unique data encryption key (DEK). The DEK is then encrypted using a key encryption key (KEK) from AWS KMS which can be automatically rotated on a recurring schedule. With the KMS plugin for Kubernetes, all Kubernetes secrets are stored in etcd in ciphertext instead of plain text and can only be decrypted by the Kubernetes API server. For additional details, see using EKS encryption provider support for defense in depth

Audit the use of Kubernetes Secrets

On EKS, turn on audit logging and create a CloudWatch metrics filter and alarm to alert you when a secret is used (optional). The following is an example of a metrics filter for the Kubernetes audit log, `{($.verb="get") && ($.objectRef.resource="secret")}`. You can also use the following queries with CloudWatch Log Insights:

```
fields @timestamp, @message
```

```
| sort @timestamp desc
| limit 100
| stats count(*) by objectRef.name as secret
| filter verb="get" and objectRef.resource="secrets"
```

The above query will display the number of times a secret has been accessed within a specific timeframe.

```
fields @timestamp, @message
| sort @timestamp desc
| limit 100
| filter verb="get" and objectRef.resource="secrets"
| display objectRef.namespace, objectRef.name, user.username, responseStatus.code
```

This query will display the secret, along with the namespace and username of the user who attempted to access the secret and the response code.

Rotate your secrets periodically

Kubernetes doesn't automatically rotate secrets. If you have to rotate secrets, consider using an external secret store, e.g. Vault or AWS Secrets Manager.

Use separate namespaces as a way to isolate secrets from different applications

If you have secrets that cannot be shared between applications in a namespace, create a separate namespace for those applications.

Use volume mounts instead of environment variables

The values of environment variables can unintentionally appear in logs. Secrets mounted as volumes are instantiated as tmpfs volumes (a RAM backed file system) that are automatically removed from the node when the pod is deleted.

Use an external secrets provider

There are several viable alternatives to using Kubernetes secrets, including AWS Secrets Manager and Hashicorp's Vault. These services offer features such as fine grained access controls, strong encryption, and automatic rotation of secrets that are not available with Kubernetes Secrets. Bitnami's Sealed Secrets is another approach that uses asymmetric encryption to create "sealed secrets". A public key is used to encrypt the secret while the private key used to decrypt the secret

is kept within the cluster, allowing you to safely store sealed secrets in source control systems like Git. See Managing secrets deployment in Kubernetes using Sealed Secrets for further information.

As the use of external secrets stores has grown, so has need for integrating them with Kubernetes. The Secret Store CSI Driver is a community project that uses the CSI driver model to fetch secrets from external secret stores. Currently, the Driver has support for AWS Secrets Manager, Azure, Vault, and GCP. The AWS provider supports both AWS Secrets Manager **and** AWS Parameter Store. It can also be configured to rotate secrets when they expire and can synchronize AWS Secrets Manager secrets to Kubernetes Secrets. Synchronization of secrets can be useful when you need to reference a secret as an environment variable instead of reading them from a volume.

> **Note**
>
> When the secret store CSI driver has to fetch a secret, it assumes the IRSA role assigned to the pod that references a secret. The code for this operation can be found here.

For additional information about the AWS Secrets & Configuration Provider (ASCP) refer to the following resources:

- How to use AWS Secrets Configuration Provider with Kubernetes Secret Store CSI Driver
- Integrating Secrets Manager secrets with Kubernetes Secrets Store CSI Driver

external-secrets is yet another way to use an external secret store with Kubernetes. Like the CSI Driver, external-secrets works against a variety of different backends, including AWS Secrets Manager. The difference is, rather than retrieving secrets from the external secret store, external-secrets copies secrets from these backends to Kubernetes as Secrets. This lets you manage secrets using your preferred secret store and interact with secrets in a Kubernetes-native way.

Tools and resources

- Amazon EKS Security Immersion Workshop - Data Encryption and Secrets Management

Runtime security

Runtime security provides active protection for your containers while they're running. The idea is to detect and/or prevent malicious activity from occurring inside the container. This can be achieved

with a number of mechanisms in the Linux kernel or kernel extensions that are integrated with Kubernetes, such as Linux capabilities, secure computing (seccomp), AppArmor, or SELinux. There are also options like Amazon GuardDuty and third party tools that can assist with establishing baselines and detecting anomalous activity with less manual configuration of Linux kernel mechanisms.

> **Important**
>
> Kubernetes does not currently provide any native mechanisms for loading seccomp, AppArmor, or SELinux profiles onto Nodes. They either have to be loaded manually or installed onto Nodes when they are bootstrapped. This has to be done prior to referencing them in your Pods because the scheduler is unaware of which nodes have profiles. See below how tools like Security Profiles Operator can help automate provisioning of profiles onto nodes.

Security contexts and built-in Kubernetes controls

Many Linux runtime security mechanisms are tightly integrated with Kubernetes and can be configured through Kubernetes security contexts. One such option is the `privileged` flag, which is `false` by default and if enabled is essentially equivalent to root on the host. It is nearly always inappropriate to enable privileged mode in production workloads, but there are many more controls that can provide more granular privileges to containers as appropriate.

Linux capabilities

Linux capabilities allow you to grant certain capabilities to a Pod or container without providing all the abilities of the root user. Examples include `CAP_NET_ADMIN`, which allows configuring network interfaces or firewalls, or `CAP_SYS_TIME`, which allows manipulation of the system clock.

Seccomp

With secure computing (seccomp) you can prevent a containerized application from making certain syscalls to the underlying host operating system's kernel. While the Linux operating system has a few hundred system calls, the lion's share of them are not necessary for running containers. By restricting what syscalls can be made by a container, you can effectively decrease your application's attack surface.

Seccomp works by intercepting syscalls and only allowing those that have been allowlisted to pass through. Docker has a default seccomp profile which is suitable for a majority of general purpose workloads, and other container runtimes like containerd provide comparable defaults. You can configure your container or Pod to use the container runtime's default seccomp profile by adding the following to the `securityContext` section of the Pod spec:

```
securityContext:
  seccompProfile:
    type: RuntimeDefault
```

As of 1.22 (in alpha, stable as of 1.27), the above `RuntimeDefault` can be used for all Pods on a Node using a single kubelet flag, `--seccomp-default`. Then the profile specified in `securityContext` is only needed for other profiles.

It's also possible to create your own profiles for things that require additional privileges. This can be very tedious to do manually, but there are tools like Inspektor Gadget (also recommended in the network security section for generating network policies) and Security Profiles Operator that support using tools like eBPF or logs to record baseline privilege requirements as seccomp profiles. Security Profiles Operator further allows automating the deployment of recorded profiles to nodes for use by Pods and containers.

AppArmor and SELinux

AppArmor and SELinux are known as mandatory access control or MAC systems. They are similar in concept to seccomp but with different APIs and abilities, allowing access control for e.g. specific filesystem paths or network ports. Support for these tools depends on the Linux distribution, with Debian/Ubuntu supporting AppArmor and RHEL/CentOS/Bottlerocket/Amazon Linux 2023 supporting SELinux. Also see the infrastructure security section for further discussion of SELinux.

Both AppArmor and SELinux are integrated with Kubernetes, but as of Kubernetes 1.28 AppArmor profiles must be specified via annotations while SELinux labels can be set through the SELinuxOptions field on the security context directly.

As with seccomp profiles, the Security Profiles Operator mentioned above can assist with deploying profiles onto nodes in the cluster. (In the future, the project also aims to generate profiles for AppArmor and SELinux as it does for seccomp.)

Recommendations

Use Amazon GuardDuty for runtime monitoring and detecting threats to your EKS environments

If you do not currently have a solution for continuously monitoring EKS runtimes and analyzing EKS audit logs, and scanning for malware and other suspicious activity, Amazon strongly recommends the use of Amazon GuardDuty for customers who want a simple, fast, secure, scalable, and cost-effective one-click way to protect their AWS environments. Amazon GuardDuty is a security monitoring service that analyzes and processes foundational data sources, such as AWS CloudTrail management events, AWS CloudTrail event logs, VPC flow logs (from Amazon EC2 instances), Kubernetes audit logs, and DNS logs. It also includes EKS runtime monitoring. It uses continuously updated threat intelligence feeds, such as lists of malicious IP addresses and domains, and machine learning to identify unexpected, potentially unauthorized, and malicious activity within your AWS environment. This can include issues like escalation of privileges, use of exposed credentials, or communication with malicious IP addresses, domains, presence of malware on your Amazon EC2 instances and EKS container workloads, or discovery of suspicious API activity. GuardDuty informs you of the status of your AWS environment by producing security findings that you can view in the GuardDuty console or through Amazon EventBridge. GuardDuty also provides support for you to export your findings to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3) bucket, and integrate with other services such as AWS Security Hub and Detective.

Watch this AWS Online Tech Talk "Enhanced threat detection for Amazon EKS with Amazon GuardDuty - AWS Online Tech Talks" to see how to enable these additional EKS security features step-by-step in minutes.

Optionally: Use a 3rd party solution for runtime monitoring

Creating and managing seccomp and Apparmor profiles can be difficult if you're not familiar with Linux security. If you don't have the time to become proficient, consider using a 3rd party commercial solution. A lot of them have moved beyond static profiles like Apparmor and seccomp and have begun using machine learning to block or alert on suspicious activity. A handful of these solutions can be found below in the tools section. Additional options can be found on the AWS Marketplace for Containers.

Consider add/dropping Linux capabilities before writing seccomp policies

Capabilities involve various checks in kernel functions reachable by syscalls. If the check fails, the syscall typically returns an error. The check can be done either right at the beginning of a specific

syscall, or deeper in the kernel in areas that might be reachable through multiple different syscalls (such as writing to a specific privileged file). Seccomp, on the other hand, is a syscall filter which is applied to all syscalls before they are run. A process can set up a filter which allows them to revoke their right to run certain syscalls, or specific arguments for certain syscalls.

Before using seccomp, consider whether adding/removing Linux capabilities gives you the control you need. See Setting capabilities for- containers for further information.

See whether you can accomplish your aims by using Pod Security Policies (PSPs)

Pod Security Policies offer a lot of different ways to improve your security posture without introducing undue complexity. Explore the options available in PSPs before venturing into building seccomp and Apparmor profiles.

> **Warning**
>
> As of Kubernetes 1.25, PSPs have been removed and replaced with the Pod Security Admission controller. Third-party alternatives which exist include OPA/Gatekeeper and Kyverno. A collection of Gatekeeper constraints and constraint templates for implementing policies commonly found in PSPs can be pulled from the Gatekeeper library repository on GitHub. And many replacements for PSPs can be found in the Kyverno policy library including the full collection of Pod Security Standards.

Tools and Resources

- 7 things you should know before you start
- AppArmor Loader
- Setting up nodes with profiles
- Security Profiles Operator is a Kubernetes enhancement which aims to make it easier for users to use SELinux, seccomp and AppArmor in Kubernetes clusters. It provides capabilities for both generating profiles from running workloads and loading profiles onto Kubernetes nodes for use in Pods.
- Inspektor Gadget allows inspecting, tracing, and profiling many aspects of runtime behavior on Kubernetes, including assisting in the generation of seccomp profiles.
- Aqua
- Qualys

- Stackrox
- Sysdig Secure
- Prisma
- NeuVector by SUSE open source, zero-trust container security platform, provides process profile rules and file access rules.

Protecting the infrastructure (hosts)

Inasmuch as it's important to secure your container images, it's equally important to safeguard the infrastructure that runs them. This section explores different ways to mitigate risks from attacks launched directly against the host. These guidelines should be used in conjunction with those outlined in the Runtime Security section.

Recommendations

Use an OS optimized for running containers

Consider using Flatcar Linux, Project Atomic, RancherOS, and Bottlerocket, a special purpose OS from AWS designed for running Linux containers. It includes a reduced attack surface, a disk image that is verified on boot, and enforced permission boundaries using SELinux.

Alternately, use the EKS optimized AMI for your Kubernetes worker nodes. The EKS optimized AMI is released regularly and contains a minimal set of OS packages and binaries necessary to run your containerized workloads.

Please refer Amazon EKS AMI RHEL Build Specification for a sample configuration script which can be used for building a custom Amazon EKS AMI running on Red Hat Enterprise Linux using Hashicorp Packer. This script can be further leveraged to build STIG compliant EKS custom AMIs.

Keep your worker node OS updated

Regardless of whether you use a container-optimized host OS like Bottlerocket or a larger, but still minimalist, Amazon Machine Image like the EKS optimized AMIs, it is best practice to keep these host OS images up to date with the latest security patches.

For the EKS optimized AMIs, regularly check the CHANGELOG and/or release notes channel and automate the rollout of updated worker node images into your cluster.

Treat your infrastructure as immutable and automate the replacement of your worker nodes

Rather than performing in-place upgrades, replace your workers when a new patch or update becomes available. This can be approached a couple of ways. You can either add instances to an existing autoscaling group using the latest AMI as you sequentially cordon and drain nodes until all of the nodes in the group have been replaced with the latest AMI. Alternatively, you can add instances to a new node group while you sequentially cordon and drain nodes from the old node group until all of the nodes have been replaced. EKS managed node groups uses the first approach and will display a message in the console to upgrade your workers when a new AMI becomes available. `eksctl` also has a mechanism for creating node groups with the latest AMI and for gracefully cordoning and draining pods from nodes groups before the instances are terminated. If you decide to use a different method for replacing your worker nodes, it is strongly recommended that you automate the process to minimize human oversight as you will likely need to replace workers regularly as new updates/patches are released and when the control plane is upgraded.

With EKS Fargate, AWS will automatically update the underlying infrastructure as updates become available. Oftentimes this can be done seamlessly, but there may be times when an update will cause your pod to be rescheduled. Hence, we recommend that you create deployments with multiple replicas when running your application as a Fargate pod.

Periodically run kube-bench to verify compliance with CIS benchmarks for Kubernetes

kube-bench is an open source project from Aqua that evaluates your cluster against the CIS benchmarks for Kubernetes. The benchmark describes the best practices for securing unmanaged Kubernetes clusters. The CIS Kubernetes Benchmark encompasses the control plane and the data plane. Since Amazon EKS provides a fully managed control plane, not all of the recommendations from the CIS Kubernetes Benchmark are applicable. To ensure this scope reflects how Amazon EKS is implemented, AWS created the *CIS Amazon EKS Benchmark*. The EKS benchmark inherits from CIS Kubernetes Benchmark with additional inputs from the community with specific configuration considerations for EKS clusters.

When running kube-bench against an EKS cluster, follow these instructions from Aqua Security. For further information see Introducing The CIS Amazon EKS Benchmark.

Minimize access to worker nodes

Instead of enabling SSH access, use SSM Session Manager when you need to remote into a host. Unlike SSH keys which can be lost, copied, or shared, Session Manager allows you to control access to EC2 instances using IAM. Moreover, it provides an audit trail and log of the commands that were run on the instance.

As of August 19th, 2020 Managed Node Groups support custom AMIs and EC2 Launch Templates. This allows you to embed the SSM agent into the AMI or install it as the worker node is being bootstrapped. If you rather not modify the Optimized AMI or the ASG's launch template, you can install the SSM agent with a DaemonSet as in this example.

Minimal IAM policy for SSM based SSH Access

The `AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore` AWS managed policy contains a number of permissions that are not required for SSM Session Manager / SSM RunCommand if you're just looking to avoid SSH access. Of concern specifically is the `*` permissions for `ssm:GetParameter(s)` which would allow for the role to access all parameters in Parameter Store (including SecureStrings with the AWS managed KMS key configured).

The following IAM policy contains the minimal set of permissions to enable node access via SSM Systems Manager.

```
{
  "Version":"2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "EnableAccessViaSSMSessionManager",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "ssmmessages:OpenDataChannel",
        "ssmmessages:OpenControlChannel",
        "ssmmessages:CreateDataChannel",
        "ssmmessages:CreateControlChannel",
        "ssm:UpdateInstanceInformation"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    },
    {
      "Sid": "EnableSSMRunCommand",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
```

```
        "ssm:UpdateInstanceInformation",
        "ec2messages:SendReply",
        "ec2messages:GetMessages",
        "ec2messages:GetEndpoint",
        "ec2messages:FailMessage",
        "ec2messages:DeleteMessage",
        "ec2messages:AcknowledgeMessage"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}
```

With this policy in place and the Session Manager plugin installed, you can then run

```
aws ssm start-session --target [INSTANCE_ID_OF_EKS_NODE]
```

to access the node.

> **Note**
>
> You may also want to consider adding permissions to enable Session Manager logging.

Deploy workers onto private subnets

By deploying workers onto private subnets, you minimize their exposure to the Internet where attacks often originate. Beginning April 22, 2020, the assignment of public IP addresses to nodes in a managed node groups will be controlled by the subnet they are deployed onto. Prior to this, nodes in a Managed Node Group were automatically assigned a public IP. If you choose to deploy your worker nodes on to public subnets, implement restrictive AWS security group rules to limit their exposure.

Run Amazon Inspector to assess hosts for exposure, vulnerabilities, and deviations from best practices

You can use Amazon Inspector to check for unintended network access to your nodes and for vulnerabilities on the underlying Amazon EC2 instances.

Amazon Inspector can provide common vulnerabilities and exposures (CVE) data for your Amazon EC2 instances only if the Amazon EC2 Systems Manager (SSM) agent is installed and enabled. This

agent is preinstalled on several Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) including EKS optimized Amazon Linux AMIs. Regardless of SSM agent status, all of your Amazon EC2 instances are scanned for network reachability issues. For more information about configuring scans for Amazon EC2, see Scanning Amazon EC2 instances.

> **Important**
>
> Inspector cannot be run on the infrastructure used to run Fargate pods.

Alternatives

Run SELinux

> **Note**
>
> Available on Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL), CentOS, Bottlerocket, and Amazon Linux 2023

SELinux provides an additional layer of security to keep containers isolated from each other and from the host. SELinux allows administrators to enforce mandatory access controls (MAC) for every user, application, process, and file. Think of it as a backstop that restricts the operations that can be performed against to specific resources based on a set of labels. On EKS, SELinux can be used to prevent containers from accessing each other's resources.

Container SELinux policies are defined in the container-selinux package. Docker CE requires this package (along with its dependencies) so that the processes and files created by Docker (or other container runtimes) run with limited system access. Containers leverage the `container_t` label which is an alias to `svirt_lxc_net_t`. These policies effectively prevent containers from accessing certain features of the host.

When you configure SELinux for Docker, Docker automatically labels workloads `container_t` as a type and gives each container a unique MCS level. This will isolate containers from one another. If you need looser restrictions, you can create your own profile in SElinux which grants a container permissions to specific areas of the file system. This is similar to PSPs in that you can create different profiles for different containers/pods. For example, you can have a profile for general workloads with a set of restrictive controls and another for things that require privileged access.

SELinux for Containers has a set of options that can be configured to modify the default restrictions. The following SELinux Booleans can be enabled or disabled based on your needs:

Boolean	Default	Description
container_connect_any	off	Allow containers to access privileged ports on the host. For example, if you have a container that need s to map ports to 443 or 80 on the host.
container_manage_cgroup	off	Allow containers to manage cgroup co nfiguration. For example, a container running systemd will need this to be enabled.
container_use_cephfs	off	Allow containers to use a ceph file system.

By default, containers are allowed to read/execute under `/usr` and read most content from `/etc`. The files under `/var/lib/docker` and `/var/lib/containers` have the label `container_var_lib_t`. To view a full list of default, labels see the container.fc file.

```
docker container run -it \
  -v /var/lib/docker/image/overlay2/repositories.json:/host/repositories.json \
  centos:7 cat /host/repositories.json
# cat: /host/repositories.json: Permission denied

docker container run -it \
  -v /etc/passwd:/host/etc/passwd \
  centos:7 cat /host/etc/passwd
# cat: /host/etc/passwd: Permission denied
```

Files labeled with `container_file_t` are the only files that are writable by containers. If you want a volume mount to be writeable, you will needed to specify `:z` or `:Z` at the end.

- :z will re-label the files so that the container can read/write
- :Z will re-label the files so that **only** the container can read/write

```
ls -Z /var/lib/misc
# -rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:var_lib_t:s0   postfix.aliasesdb-stamp

docker container run -it \
  -v /var/lib/misc:/host/var/lib/misc:z \
  centos:7 echo "Relabeled!"

ls -Z /var/lib/misc
#-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:container_file_t:s0 postfix.aliasesdb-stamp
```

```
docker container run -it \
  -v /var/log:/host/var/log:Z \
  fluentbit:latest
```

In Kubernetes, relabeling is slightly different. Rather than having Docker automatically relabel the files, you can specify a custom MCS label to run the pod. Volumes that support relabeling will automatically be relabeled so that they are accessible. Pods with a matching MCS label will be able to access the volume. If you need strict isolation, set a different MCS label for each pod.

```
securityContext:
  seLinuxOptions:
    # Provide a unique MCS label per container
    # You can specify user, role, and type also
    # enforcement based on type and level (svert)
    level: s0:c144:c154
```

In this example `s0:c144:c154` corresponds to an MCS label assigned to a file that the container is allowed to access.

On EKS you could create policies that allow for privileged containers to run, like FluentD and create an SELinux policy to allow it to read from /var/log on the host without needing to relabel the host directory. Pods with the same label will be able to access the same host volumes.

We have implemented sample AMIs for Amazon EKS that have SELinux configured on CentOS 7 and RHEL 7. These AMIs were developed to demonstrate sample implementations that meet requirements of highly regulated customers.

> **Warning**
>
> SELinux will ignore containers where the type is unconfined.

Tools and resources

- SELinux Kubernetes RBAC and Shipping Security Policies for On-prem Applications
- Iterative Hardening of Kubernetes
- Audit2Allow
- SEAlert
- Generate SELinux policies for containers with Udica describes a tool that looks at container spec files for Linux capabilities, ports, and mount points, and generates a set of SELinux rules that allow the container to run properly
- AMI Hardening playbooks for hardening the OS to meet different regulatory requirements
- Keiko Upgrade Manager an open source project from Intuit that orchestrates the rotation of worker nodes.
- Sysdig Secure
- eksctl

Compliance

Compliance is a shared responsibility between AWS and the consumers of its services. Generally speaking, AWS is responsible for "security of the cloud" whereas its users are responsible for "security in the cloud." The line that delineates what AWS and its users are responsible for will vary depending on the service. For example, with Fargate, AWS is responsible for managing the physical security of its data centers, the hardware, the virtual infrastructure (Amazon EC2), and the container runtime (Docker). Users of Fargate are responsible for securing the container image and their application. Knowing who is responsible for what is an important consideration when running workloads that must adhere to compliance standards.

The following table shows the compliance programs with which the different container services conform.

Compliance Program	Amazon ECS Orchestrator	Amazon EKS Orchestrator	ECS Fargate	Amazon ECR
PCI DSS Level 1	1	1	1	1
HIPAA Eligible	1	1	1	1
SOC I	1	1	1	1
SOC II	1	1	1	1
SOC III	1	1	1	1
ISO 27001:2013	1	1	1	1
ISO 9001:2015	1	1	1	1
ISO 27017:2015	1	1	1	1
ISO 27018:2019	1	1	1	1
IRAP	1	1	1	1
FedRAMP Moderate (East/ West)	1	1	0	1
FedRAMP High (GovCloud)	1	1	0	1
DOD CC SRG	1	DISA Review (IL5)	0	1
HIPAA BAA	1	1	1	1
MTCS	1	1	0	1
C5	1	1	0	1
K-ISMS	1	1	0	1
ENS High	1	1	0	1

Compliance Program	Amazon ECS Orchestrator	Amazon EKS Orchestrator	ECS Fargate	Amazon ECR
OSPAR	1	1	0	1
HITRUST CSF	1	1	1	1

Compliance status changes over time. For the latest status, always refer to https://aws.amazon.com/compliance/services-in-scope/.

For further information about cloud accreditation models and best practices, see the AWS whitepaper, Accreditation Models for Secure Cloud Adoption

Shifting Left

The concept of shifting left involves catching policy violations and errors earlier in the software development lifecycle. From a security perspective, this can be very beneficial. A developer, for example, can fix issues with their configuration before their application is deployed to the cluster. Catching mistakes like this earlier will help prevent configurations that violate your policies from being deployed.

Policy as Code

Policy can be thought of as a set of rules for governing behaviors, i.e. behaviors that are allowed or those that are prohibited. For example, you may have a policy that says that all Dockerfiles should include a USER directive that causes the container to run as a non-root user. As a document, a policy like this can be hard to discover and enforce. It may also become outdated as your requirements change. With Policy as Code (PaC) solutions, you can automate security, compliance, and privacy controls that detect, prevent, reduce, and counteract known and persistent threats. Furthermore, they give you mechanism to codify your policies and manage them as you do other code artifacts. The benefit of this approach is that you can reuse your DevOps and GitOps strategies to manage and consistently apply policies across fleets of Kubernetes clusters. Please refer to Pod Security for information about PaC options and the future of PSPs.

Use policy-as-code tools in pipelines to detect violations before deployment

- OPA is an open source policy engine that's part of the CNCF. It's used for making policy decisions and can be run a variety of different ways, e.g. as a language library or a service. OPA policies

are written in a Domain Specific Language (DSL) called Rego. While it is often run as part of a Kubernetes Dynamic Admission Controller as the Gatekeeper project, OPA can also be incorporated into your CI/CD pipeline. This allows developers to get feedback about their configuration earlier in the release cycle which can subsequently help them resolve issues before they get to production. A collection of common OPA policies can be found in the GitHub repository for this project.

- Conftest is built on top of OPA and it provides a developer focused experience for testing Kubernetes configuration.
- Kyverno is a policy engine designed for Kubernetes. With Kyverno, policies are managed as Kubernetes resources and no new language is required to write policies. This allows using familiar tools such as kubectl, git, and kustomize to manage policies. Kyverno policies can validate, mutate, and generate Kubernetes resources plus ensure OCI image supply chain security. The Kyverno CLI can be used to test policies and validate resources as part of a CI/CD pipeline. All the Kyverno community policies can be found on the Kyverno website, and for examples using the Kyverno CLI to write tests in pipelines, see the policies repository.

Tools and resources

- Amazon EKS Security Immersion Workshop - Regulatory Compliance
- kube-bench
- docker-bench-security
- AWS Inspector
- Kubernetes Security Review A 3rd party security assessment of Kubernetes 1.13.4 (2019)
- NeuVector by SUSE open source, zero-trust container security platform, provides compliance reporting and custom compliance checks

Incident response and forensics

Your ability to react quickly to an incident can help minimize damage caused from a breach. Having a reliable alerting system that can warn you of suspicious behavior is the first step in a good incident response plan. When an incident does arise, you have to quickly decide whether to destroy and replace the effected container, or isolate and inspect the container. If you choose to isolate the container as part of a forensic investigation and root cause analysis, then the following set of activities should be followed:

Sample incident response plan

Identify the offending Pod and worker node

Your first course of action should be to isolate the damage. Start by identifying where the breach occurred and isolate that Pod and its node from the rest of the infrastructure.

Identify the offending Pods and worker nodes using workload name

If you know the name and namespace of the offending pod, you can identify the worker node running the pod as follows:

```
kubectl get pods <name> --namespace <namespace> -o=jsonpath='{.spec.nodeName}{"\n"}'
```

If a Workload Resource such as a Deployment has been compromised, it is likely that all the pods that are part of the workload resource are compromised. Use the following command to list all the pods of the Workload Resource and the nodes they are running on:

```
selector=$(kubectl get deployments <name> \
 --namespace <namespace> -o json | jq -j \
'.spec.selector.matchLabels | to_entries | .[] | "\(.key)=\(.value)"')

kubectl get pods --namespace <namespace> --selector=$selector \
-o json | jq -r '.items[] | "\(.metadata.name) \(.spec.nodeName)"'
```

The above command is for deployments. You can run the same command for other workload resources such as replicasets,, statefulsets, etc.

Identify the offending Pods and worker nodes using service account name

In some cases, you may identify that a service account is compromised. It is likely that pods using the identified service account are compromised. You can identify all the pods using the service account and nodes they are running on with the following command:

```
kubectl get pods -o json --namespace <namespace> | \
    jq -r '.items[] |
    select(.spec.serviceAccount == "<service account name>") |
    "\(.metadata.name) \(.spec.nodeName)"'
```

Identify Pods with vulnerable or compromised images and worker nodes

In some cases, you may discover that a container image being used in pods on your cluster is malicious or compromised. A container image is malicious or compromised, if it was found to contain malware, is a known bad image or has a CVE that has been exploited. You should consider all the pods using the container image compromised. You can identify the pods using the image and nodes they are running on with the following command:

```
IMAGE=<Name of the malicious/compromised image>

kubectl get pods -o json --all-namespaces | \
    jq -r --arg image "$IMAGE" '.items[] |
    select(.spec.containers[] | .image == $image) |
    "\(.metadata.name) \(.metadata.namespace) \(.spec.nodeName)"'
```

Isolate the Pod by creating a Network Policy that denies all ingress and egress traffic to the pod

A deny all traffic rule may help stop an attack that is already underway by severing all connections to the pod. The following Network Policy will apply to a pod with the label app=web.

```
apiVersion: networking.k8s.io/v1
kind: NetworkPolicy
metadata:
  name: default-deny
spec:
  podSelector:
    matchLabels:
      app: web
  policyTypes:
  - Ingress
  - Egress
```

> **Important**
>
> A Network Policy may prove ineffective if an attacker has gained access to underlying host. If you suspect that has happened, you can use AWS Security Groups to isolate a compromised host from other hosts. When changing a host's security group, be aware that it will impact all containers running on that host.

Revoke temporary security credentials assigned to the pod or worker node if necessary

If the worker node has been assigned an IAM role that allows Pods to gain access to other AWS resources, remove those roles from the instance to prevent further damage from the attack. Similarly, if the Pod has been assigned an IAM role, evaluate whether you can safely remove the IAM policies from the role without impacting other workloads.

Cordon the worker node

By cordoning the impacted worker node, you're informing the scheduler to avoid scheduling pods onto the affected node. This will allow you to remove the node for forensic study without disrupting other workloads.

> **Note**
>
> This guidance is not applicable to Fargate where each Fargate pod run in its own sandboxed environment. Instead of cordoning, sequester the affected Fargate pods by applying a network policy that denies all ingress and egress traffic.

Enable termination protection on impacted worker node

An attacker may attempt to erase their misdeeds by terminating an affected node. Enabling termination protection can prevent this from happening. Instance scale-in protection will protect the node from a scale-in event.

> **Warning**
>
> You cannot enable termination protection on a Spot instance.

Label the offending Pod/Node with a label indicating that it is part of an active investigation

This will serve as a warning to cluster administrators not to tamper with the affected Pods/Nodes until the investigation is complete.

Capture volatile artifacts on the worker node

- **Capture the operating system memory**. This will capture the Docker daemon (or other container runtime) and its subprocesses per container. This can be accomplished using tools like LiME and Volatility, or through higher-level tools such as Automated Forensics Orchestrator for Amazon EC2 that build on top of them.
- **Perform a netstat tree dump of the processes running and the open ports**. This will capture the docker daemon and its subprocess per container.
- **Run commands to save container-level state before evidence is altered**. You can use capabilities of the container runtime to capture information about currently running containers. For example, with Containerd, you could do the following:
  - `crictl ps` for processes running.
  - `crictl logs CONTAINER` for daemon level held logs.

    The same could be achieved with containerd using the nerdctl CLI, in place of `docker` (e.g. `nerdctl inspect`). Some additional commands are available depending on the container runtime. For example, Docker has `docker diff` to see changes to the container filesystem or `docker checkpoint` to save all container state including volatile memory (RAM). See this Kubernetes blog post for discussion of similar capabilities with containerd or CRI-O runtimes.
- **Pause the container for forensic capture**.
- **Snapshot the instance's EBS volumes**.

Redeploy compromised Pod or Workload Resource

Once you have gathered data for forensic analysis, you can redeploy the compromised pod or workload resource.

First roll out the fix for the vulnerability that was compromised and start new replacement pods. Then delete the vulnerable pods.

If the vulnerable pods are managed by a higher-level Kubernetes workload resource (for example, a Deployment or DaemonSet), deleting them will schedule new ones. So vulnerable pods will be launched again. In that case you should deploy a new replacement workload resource after fixing the vulnerability. Then you should delete the vulnerable workload.

Recommendations

Review the AWS Security Incident Response Whitepaper

While this section gives a brief overview along with a few recommendations for handling suspected security breaches, the topic is exhaustively covered in the white paper, AWS Security Incident Response.

Practice security game days

Divide your security practitioners into 2 teams: red and blue. The red team will be focused on probing different systems for vulnerabilities while the blue team will be responsible for defending against them. If you don't have enough security practitioners to create separate teams, consider hiring an outside entity that has knowledge of Kubernetes exploits.

Kubesploit is a penetration testing framework from CyberArk that you can use to conduct game days. Unlike other tools which scan your cluster for vulnerabilities, kubesploit simulates a real-world attack. This gives your blue team an opportunity to practice its response to an attack and gauge its effectiveness.

Run penetration tests against your cluster

Periodically attacking your own cluster can help you discover vulnerabilities and misconfigurations. Before getting started, follow the penetration test guidelines before conducting a test against your cluster.

Tools and resources

- kube-hunter, a penetration testing tool for Kubernetes.
- Gremlin, a chaos engineering toolkit that you can use to simulate attacks against your applications and infrastructure.
- Attacking and Defending Kubernetes Installations
- kubesploit
- NeuVector by SUSE open source, zero-trust container security platform, provides vulnerability- and risk reporting as well as security event notification
- Advanced Persistent Threats
- Kubernetes Practical Attack and Defense
- Compromising Kubernetes Cluster by Exploiting RBAC Permissions

Image security

You should consider the container image as your first line of defense against an attack. An insecure, poorly constructed image can allow an attacker to escape the bounds of the container and gain access to the host. Once on the host, an attacker can gain access to sensitive information or move laterally within the cluster or with your AWS account. The following best practices will help mitigate risk of this happening.

Recommendations

Create minimal images

Start by removing all extraneous binaries from the container image. If you're using an unfamiliar image from Dockerhub, inspect the image using an application like Dive which can show you the contents of each of the container's layers. Remove all binaries with the SETUID and SETGID bits as they can be used to escalate privilege and consider removing all shells and utilities like nc and curl that can be used for nefarious purposes. You can find the files with SETUID and SETGID bits with the following command:

```
find / -perm /6000 -type f -exec ls -ld {} \;
```

To remove the special permissions from these files, add the following directive to your container image:

```
RUN find / -xdev -perm /6000 -type f -exec chmod a-s {} \; || true
```

Colloquially, this is known as de-fanging your image.

Use multi-stage builds

Using multi-stage builds is a way to create minimal images. Oftentimes, multi-stage builds are used to automate parts of the Continuous Integration cycle. For example, multi-stage builds can be used to lint your source code or perform static code analysis. This affords developers an opportunity to get near immediate feedback instead of waiting for a pipeline to execute. Multi-stage builds are attractive from a security standpoint because they allow you to minimize the size of the final image pushed to your container registry. Container images devoid of build tools and other extraneous binaries improves your security posture by reducing the attack surface of

the image. For additional information about multi-stage builds, see Docker's multi-stage builds documentation.

Create Software Bill of Materials (SBOMs) for your container image

A "software bill of materials" (SBOM) is a nested inventory of the software artifacts that make up your container image. SBOM is a key building block in software security and software supply chain risk management. Generating, storing SBOMS in a central repository and scanning SBOMs for vulnerabilities helps address the following concerns:

- **Visibility**: understand what components make up your container image. Storing in a central repository allows SBOMs to be audited and scanned anytime, even post deployment to detect and respond to new vulnerabilities such as zero day vulnerabilities.
- **Provenance Verification**: assurance that existing assumptions of where and how an artifact originates from are true and that the artifact or its accompanying metadata have not been tampered with during the build or delivery processes.
- **Trustworthiness**: assurance that a given artifact and its contents can be trusted to do what it is purported to do, i.e. is suitable for a purpose. This involves judgement on whether the code is safe to execute and making informed decisions about the risks associated with executing the code. Trustworthiness is assured by creating an attested pipeline execution report along with attested SBOM and attested CVE scan report to assure the consumers of the image that this image is in-fact created through secure means (pipeline) with secure components.
- **Dependency Trust Verification**: recursive checking of an artifact's dependency tree for trustworthiness and provenance of the artifacts it uses. Drift in SBOMs can help detect malicious activity including unauthorized, untrusted dependencies, infiltration attempts.

The following tools can be used to generate SBOM:

- Amazon Inspector can be used to create and export SBOMs.
- Syft from Anchore can also be used for SBOM generation. For quicker vulnerability scans, the SBOM generated for a container image can be used as an input to scan. The SBOM and scan report are then attested and attached to the image before pushing the image to a central OCI repository such as Amazon ECR for review and audit purposes.

Learn more about securing your software supply chain by reviewing CNCF Software Supply Chain Best Practices guide.

Scan images for vulnerabilities regularly

Like their virtual machine counterparts, container images can contain binaries and application libraries with vulnerabilities or develop vulnerabilities over time. The best way to safeguard against exploits is by regularly scanning your images with an image scanner. Images that are stored in Amazon ECR can be scanned on push or on-demand (once during a 24 hour period). ECR currently supports two types of scanning - Basic and Enhanced. Basic scanning leverages Clair an open source image scanning solution for no cost. Enhanced scanning uses Amazon Inspector to provide automatic continuous scans for additional cost. After an image is scanned, the results are logged to the event stream for ECR in EventBridge. You can also see the results of a scan from within the ECR console. Images with a HIGH or CRITICAL vulnerability should be deleted or rebuilt. If an image that has been deployed develops a vulnerability, it should be replaced as soon as possible.

Knowing where images with vulnerabilities have been deployed is essential to keeping your environment secure. While you could conceivably build an image tracking solution yourself, there are already several commercial offerings that provide this and other advanced capabilities out of the box, including:

- Grype
- Palo Alto - Prisma Cloud (twistcli)
- Aqua
- Kubei
- Trivy
- Snyk

A Kubernetes validation webhook could also be used to validate that images are free of critical vulnerabilities. Validation webhooks are invoked prior to the Kubernetes API. They are typically used to reject requests that don't comply with the validation criteria defined in the webhook. This is an example of a serverless webhook that calls the ECR describeImageScanFindings API to determine whether a pod is pulling an image with critical vulnerabilities. If vulnerabilities are found, the pod is rejected and a message with list of CVEs is returned as an Event.

Use attestations to validate artifact integrity

An attestation is a cryptographically signed "statement" that claims something - a "predicate" e.g. a pipeline run or the SBOM or the vulnerability scan report is true about another thing - a "subject" i.e. the container image.

Attestations help users to validate that an artifact comes from a trusted source in the software supply chain. As an example, we may use a container image without knowing all the software components or dependencies that are included in that image. However, if we trust whatever the producer of the container image says about what software is present, we can use the producer's attestation to rely on that artifact. This means that we can proceed to use the artifact safely in our workflow in place of having done the analysis ourself.

- Attestations can be created using AWS Signer or Sigstore cosign.
- Kubernetes admission controllers such as Kyverno can be used to verify attestations.
- Refer to this workshop to learn more about software supply chain management best practices on AWS using open source tools with topics including creating and attaching attestations to a container image.

Create IAM policies for ECR repositories

Nowadays, it is not uncommon for an organization to have multiple development teams operating independently within a shared AWS account. If these teams don't need to share assets, you may want to create a set of IAM policies that restrict access to the repositories each team can interact with. A good way to implement this is by using ECR namespaces. Namespaces are a way to group similar repositories together. For example, all of the registries for team A can be prefaced with the team-a/ while those for team B can use the team-b/ prefix. The policy to restrict access might look like the following:

```
{
  "Version":"2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "AllowPushPull",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "ecr:GetDownloadUrlForLayer",
        "ecr:BatchGetImage",
        "ecr:BatchCheckLayerAvailability",
        "ecr:PutImage",
        "ecr:InitiateLayerUpload",
        "ecr:UploadLayerPart",
        "ecr:CompleteLayerUpload"
      ],
      "Resource": [
```

```
        "arn:aws:ecr:us-east-1:123456789012:repository/team-a/*"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

Consider using ECR private endpoints

The ECR API has a public endpoint. Consequently, ECR registries can be accessed from the Internet so long as the request has been authenticated and authorized by IAM. For those who need to operate in a sandboxed environment where the cluster VPC lacks an Internet Gateway (IGW), you can configure a private endpoint for ECR. Creating a private endpoint enables you to privately access the ECR API through a private IP address instead of routing traffic across the Internet. For additional information on this topic, see Amazon ECR interface VPC endpoints.

Implement endpoint policies for ECR

The default endpoint policy for allows access to all ECR repositories within a region. This might allow an attacker/insider to exfiltrate data by packaging it as a container image and pushing it to a registry in another AWS account. Mitigating this risk involves creating an endpoint policy that limits API access to ECR repositories. For example, the following policy allows all AWS principles in your account to perform all actions against your and only your ECR repositories:

```
{
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "LimitECRAccess",
      "Principal": "*",
      "Action": "*",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Resource": "arn:aws:ecr:<region>:<account_id>:repository/*"
    }
  ]
}
```

You can enhance this further by setting a condition that uses the new `PrincipalOrgID` attribute which will prevent pushing/pulling of images by an IAM principle that is not part of your AWS Organization. See, aws:PrincipalOrgID for additional details. We recommended applying the same policy to both the `com.amazonaws.<region>.ecr.dkr` and the `com.amazonaws.<region>.ecr.api` endpoints. Since EKS pulls images for kube-proxy,

coredns, and aws-node from ECR, you will need to add the account ID of the registry, e.g. `602401143452.dkr.ecr.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/` to the list of resources in the endpoint policy or alter the policy to allow pulls from and restrict pushes to your account ID. The table below reveals the mapping between the AWS accounts where EKS images are vended from and cluster region.

Account Number	Region
602401143452	All commercial regions except for those listed below
—	—
800184023465	ap-east-1 - Asia Pacific (Hong Kong)
558608220178	me-south-1 - Middle East (Bahrain)
918309763551	cn-north-1 - China (Beijing)
961992271922	cn-northwest-1 - China (Ningxia)

For further information about using endpoint policies, see Using VPC endpoint policies to control Amazon ECR access.

Implement lifecycle policies for ECR

The NIST Application Container Security Guide warns about the risk of "stale images in registries", noting that over time old images with vulnerable, out-of-date software packages should be removed to prevent accidental deployment and exposure. Each ECR repository can have a lifecycle policy that sets rules for when images expire. The AWS official documentation describes how to set up test rules, evaluate them and then apply them. There are several lifecycle policy examples in the official docs that show different ways of filtering the images in a repository:

- Filtering by image age or count
- Filtering by tagged or untagged images
- Filtering by image tags, either in multiple rules or a single rule

???+ warning If the image for long running application is purged from ECR, it can cause an image pull errors when the application is redeployed or scaled horizontally. When using image lifecycle policies, be sure you have good CI/CD practices in place to keep deployments and the images that they reference up to date and always create [image] expiry rules that account for how often you do releases/deployments.

Create a set of curated images

Rather than allowing developers to create their own images, consider creating a set of vetted images for the different application stacks in your organization. By doing so, developers can forego learning how to compose Dockerfiles and concentrate on writing code. As changes are merged into Master, a CI/CD pipeline can automatically compile the asset, store it in an artifact repository and copy the artifact into the appropriate image before pushing it to a Docker registry like ECR. At the very least you should create a set of base images from which developers to create their own Dockerfiles. Ideally, you want to avoid pulling images from Dockerhub because 1/ you don't always know what is in the image and 2/ about a fifth of the top 1000 images have vulnerabilities. A list of those images and their vulnerabilities can be found here.

Add the USER directive to your Dockerfiles to run as a non-root user

As was mentioned in the pod security section, you should avoid running container as root. While you can configure this as part of the podSpec, it is a good habit to use the `USER` directive to your Dockerfiles. The `USER` directive sets the UID to use when running `RUN`, `ENTRYPOINT`, or `CMD` instruction that appears after the USER directive.

Lint your Dockerfiles

Linting can be used to verify that your Dockerfiles are adhering to a set of predefined guidelines, e.g. the inclusion of the `USER` directive or the requirement that all images be tagged. dockerfile_lint is an open source project from RedHat that verifies common best practices and includes a rule engine that you can use to build your own rules for linting Dockerfiles. It can be incorporated into a CI pipeline, in that builds with Dockerfiles that violate a rule will automatically fail.

Build images from Scratch

Reducing the attack surface of your container images should be primary aim when building images. The ideal way to do this is by creating minimal images that are devoid of binaries that can be used to exploit vulnerabilities. Fortunately, Docker has a mechanism to create images from `scratch`.

With languages like Go, you can create a static linked binary and reference it in your Dockerfile as in this example:

```
############################
# STEP 1 build executable binary
############################
FROM golang:alpine AS builder# Install git.
# Git is required for fetching the dependencies.
RUN apk update && apk add --no-cache gitWORKDIR $GOPATH/src/mypackage/myapp/COPY . . #
 Fetch dependencies.
# Using go get.
RUN go get -d -v# Build the binary.
RUN go build -o /go/bin/hello

############################
# STEP 2 build a small image
############################
FROM scratch# Copy our static executable.
COPY --from=builder /go/bin/hello /go/bin/hello# Run the hello binary.
ENTRYPOINT ["/go/bin/hello"]
```

This creates a container image that consists of your application and nothing else, making it extremely secure.

Use immutable tags with ECR

Immutable tags force you to update the image tag on each push to the image repository. This can thwart an attacker from overwriting an image with a malicious version without changing the image's tags. Additionally, it gives you a way to easily and uniquely identify an image.

Sign your images, SBOMs, pipeline runs and vulnerability reports

When Docker was first introduced, there was no cryptographic model for verifying container images. With v2, Docker added digests to the image manifest. This allowed an image's configuration to be hashed and for the hash to be used to generate an ID for the image. When image signing is enabled, the Docker engine verifies the manifest's signature, ensuring that the content was produced from a trusted source and no tampering has occurred. After each layer is downloaded, the engine verifies the digest of the layer, ensuring that the content matches the content specified in the manifest. Image signing effectively allows you to create a secure supply chain, through the verification of digital signatures associated with the image.

We can use AWS Signer or Sigstore Cosign, to sign container images, create attestations for SBOMs, vulnerability scan reports and pipeline run reports. These attestations assure the trustworthiness and integrity of the image, that it is in fact created by the trusted pipeline without any interference or tampering, and that it contains only the software components that are documented (in the SBOM) that is verified and trusted by the image publisher. These attestations can be attached to the container image and pushed to the repository.

In the next section we will see how to use the attested artifacts for audits and admissions controller verification.

Image integrity verification using Kubernetes admission controller

We can verify image signatures, attested artifacts in an automated way before deploying the image to target Kubernetes cluster using dynamic admission controller and admit deployments only when the security metadata of the artifacts comply with the admission controller policies.

For example we can write a policy that cryptographically verifies the signature of an image, an attested SBOM, attested pipeline run report, or attested CVE scan report. We can write conditions in the policy to check data in the report, e.g. a CVE scan should not have any critical CVEs. Deployment is allowed only for images that satisfy these conditions and all other deployments will be rejected by the admissions controller.

Examples of admission controller include:

- Kyverno
- OPA Gatekeeper
- Portieris
- Ratify
- Kritis
- Grafeas tutorial
- Voucher

Update the packages in your container images

You should include RUN `apt-get update && apt-get upgrade` in your Dockerfiles to upgrade the packages in your images. Although upgrading requires you to run as root, this occurs during

image build phase. The application doesn't need to run as root. You can install the updates and then switch to a different user with the USER directive. If your base image runs as a non-root user, switch to root and back; don't solely rely on the maintainers of the base image to install the latest security updates.

Run `apt-get clean` to delete the installer files from `/var/cache/apt/archives/`. You can also run `rm -rf /var/lib/apt/lists/*` after installing packages. This removes the index files or the lists of packages that are available to install. Be aware that these commands may be different for each package manager. For example:

```
RUN apt-get update && apt-get install -y \
    curl \
    git \
    libsqlite3-dev \
    && apt-get clean && rm -rf /var/lib/apt/lists/*
```

Tools and resources

- Amazon EKS Security Immersion Workshop - Image Security
- docker-slim Build secure minimal images
- dockle Verifies that your Dockerfile aligns with best practices for creating secure images
- dockerfile-lint Rule based linter for Dockerfiles
- hadolint A smart dockerfile linter
- Gatekeeper and OPA A policy based admission controller
- Kyverno A Kubernetes-native policy engine
- in-toto Allows the user to verify if a step in the supply chain was intended to be performed, and if the step was performed by the right actor
- Notary A project for signing container images
- Notary v2
- Grafeas An open artifact metadata API to audit and govern your software supply chain
- NeuVector by SUSE open source, zero-trust container security platform, provides container, image and registry scanning for vulnerabilities, secrets and compliance.

Multi Account Strategy

AWS recommends using a multi account strategy and AWS organizations to help isolate and manage your business applications and data. There are many benefits to using a multi account strategy:

- Increased AWS API service quotas. Quotas are applied to AWS accounts, and using multiple accounts for your workloads increases the overall quota available to your workloads.
- Simpler Identity and Access Management (IAM) policies. Granting workloads and the operators that support them access to only their own AWS accounts means less time crafting fine-grained IAM policies to achieve the principle of least privilege.
- Improved Isolation of AWS resources. By design, all resources provisioned within an account are logically isolated from resources provisioned in other accounts. This isolation boundary provides you with a way to limit the risks of an application-related issue, misconfiguration, or malicious actions. If an issue occurs within one account, impacts to workloads contained in other accounts can be either reduced or eliminated.
- More benefits, as described in the AWS Multi Account Strategy Whitepaper

The following sections will explain how to implement a multi account strategy for your EKS workloads using either a centralized, or de-centralized EKS cluster approach.

Planning for a Multi Workload Account Strategy for Multi Tenant Clusters

In a multi account AWS strategy, resources that belong to a given workload such as S3 buckets, ElastiCache clusters and DynamoDB Tables are all created in an AWS account that contains all the resources for that workload. These are referred to as a workload account, and the EKS cluster is deployed into an account referred to as the cluster account. Cluster accounts will be explored in the next section. Deploying resources into a dedicated workload account is similar to deploying kubernetes resources into a dedicated namespace.

Workload accounts can then be further broken down by software development lifecycle or other requirements if appropriate. For example a given workload can have a production account, a development account, or accounts for hosting instances of that workload in a specific region. More information is available in this AWS whitepaper.

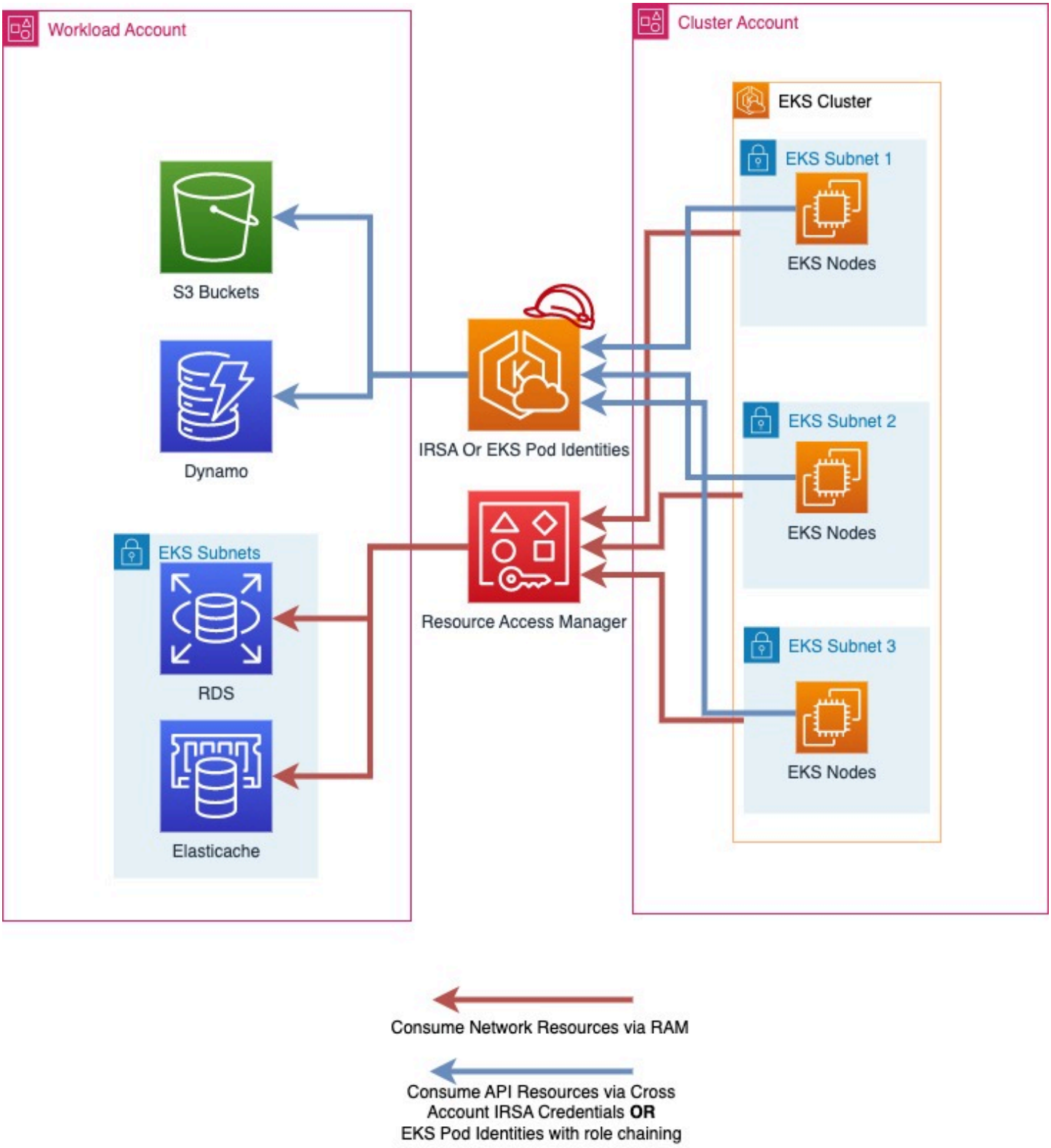
You can adopt the following approaches when implementing EKS Multi account strategy:

Centralized EKS Cluster

In this approach, your EKS Cluster will be deployed in a single AWS account called the `Cluster Account`. Using IAM roles for Service Accounts (IRSA) or EKS Pod Identities to deliver temporary AWS credentials and AWS Resource Access Manager (RAM) to simplify network access, you can adopt a multi account strategy for your multi tenant EKS cluster. The cluster account will contain the VPC, subnets, EKS cluster, EC2/Fargate compute resources (worker nodes), and any additional networking configurations needed to run your EKS cluster.

In a multi workload account strategy for multi tenant cluster, AWS accounts typically align with kubernetes namespaces as a mechanism for isolating groups of resources. Best practices for tenant isolation within an EKS cluster should still be followed when implementing a multi account strategy for multi tenant EKS clusters.

It is possible to have multiple `Cluster Accounts` in your AWS organization, and it is a best practice to have multiple `Cluster Accounts` that align with your software development lifecycle needs. For workloads operating at a very large scale, you may require multiple `Cluster Accounts` to ensure that there are enough kubernetes and AWS service quotas available to all your workloads.


Workload Account
Cluster Account
EKS Cluster
EKS Subnet 1
EKS Nodes
S3 Buckets
Dynamo
IRSA Or EKS Pod Identities
EKS Subnet 2
EKS Nodes
EKS Subnets
Resource Access Manager
RDS
EKS Subnet 3
EKS Nodes
Elasticache
Consume Network Resources via RAM
Consume API Resources via Cross Account IRSA Credentials OR EKS Pod Identities with role chaining

|In the above diagram, AWS RAM is used to share subnets from a cluster account into a workload account. Then workloads running in EKS pods use IRSA or EKS Pod Identities and role chaining to assume a role in their workload account and access their AWS resources.

Implementing a Multi Workload Account Strategy for Multi Tenant Cluster

Sharing Subnets With AWS Resource Access Manager

AWS Resource Access Manager (RAM) allows you to share resources across AWS accounts.

If RAM is enabled for your AWS Organization, you can share the VPC Subnets from the Cluster account to your workload accounts. This will allow AWS resources owned by your workload accounts, such as Amazon ElastiCache Clusters or Amazon Relational Database Service (RDS) Databases to be deployed into the same VPC as your EKS cluster, and be consumable by the workloads running on your EKS cluster.

To share a resource via RAM, open up RAM in the AWS console of the cluster account and select "Resource Shares" and "Create Resource Share". Name your Resource Share and Select the subnets you want to share. Select Next again and enter the 12 digit account IDs for the workload accounts you wish to share the subnets with, select next again, and click Create resource share to finish. After this step, the workload account can deploy resources into those subnets.

RAM shares can also be created programmatically, or with infrastructure as code.

Choosing Between EKS Pod Identities and IRSA

At re:Invent 2023, AWS launched EKS Pod Identities as a simpler way of delivering temporary AWS credentials to your pods on EKS. Both IRSA and EKS Pod Identities are valid methods for delivering temporary AWS credentials to your EKS pods and will continue to be supported. You should consider which method of delivering best meets your needs.

When working with a EKS cluster and multiple AWS accounts, IRSA can directly assume roles in AWS accounts other than the account the EKS cluster is hosted in directly, while EKS Pod identities require you to configure role chaining. Refer EKS documentation for an in-depth comparison.

Accessing AWS API Resources with IAM Roles For Service Accounts

IAM Roles for Service Accounts (IRSA) allows you to deliver temporary AWS credentials to your workloads running on EKS. IRSA can be used to get temporary credentials for IAM roles in the workload accounts from the cluster account. This allows your workloads running on your EKS

clusters in the cluster account to consume AWS API resources, such as S3 buckets hosted in the workload account seemlessly, and use IAM authentication for resources like Amazon RDS Databases or Amazon EFS FileSystems.

AWS API resources and other Resources that use IAM authentication in a workload account can only be accessed by credentials for IAM roles in that same workload account, except where cross account access is capable and has been explicity enabled.

Enabling IRSA for cross account access

To enable IRSA for workloads in your Cluster Account to access resources in your Workload accounts, you first must create an IAM OIDC identity provider in your workload account. This can be done with the same procedure for setting up IRSA, except the Identity Provider will be created in the workload account.

Then when configuring IRSA for your workloads on EKS, you can follow the same steps as the documentation, but use the 12 digit account id of the workload account as mentioned in the section "Example Create an identity provider from another account's cluster".

After this is configured, your application running in EKS will be able to directly use its service account to assume a role in the workload account, and use resources within it.

Accessing AWS API Resources with EKS Pod Identities

EKS Pod Identities is a new way of delivering AWS credentials to your workloads running on EKS. EKS pod identities simplifies the configuration of AWS resources as you no longer need to manage OIDC configurations to deliver AWS credentials to your pods on EKS.

Enabling EKS Pod Identities for cross account access

Unlike IRSA, EKS Pod Identities can only be used to directly grant access to a role in the same account as the EKS cluster. To access a role in another AWS account, pods that use EKS Pod Identities must perform Role Chaining.

Role chaining can be configured in an applications profile with their aws configuration file using the Process Credentials Provider available in various AWS SDKs. `credential_process` can be used as a credential source when configuring a profile, such as:

```
# Content of the AWS Config file
[profile account_b_role]
source_profile = account_a_role
```

```
role_arn = arn:aws:iam::444455556666:role/account-b-role

[profile account_a_role]
credential_process = /eks-credential-processrole.sh
```

The source of the script called by credential_process:

```
#!/bin/bash
# Content of the eks-credential-processrole.sh
# This will retreive the credential from the pod identities agent,
# and return it to the AWS SDK when referenced in a profile
curl -H "Authorization: $(cat $AWS_CONTAINER_AUTHORIZATION_TOKEN_FILE)"
 $AWS_CONTAINER_CREDENTIALS_FULL_URI | jq -c '{AccessKeyId: .AccessKeyId,
 SecretAccessKey: .SecretAccessKey, SessionToken: .Token, Expiration: .Expiration,
 Version: 1}'
```

You can create an aws config file as shown above with both Account A and B roles and specify the AWS_CONFIG_FILE and AWS_PROFILE env vars in your pod spec. EKS Pod identity webhook does not override if the env vars already exists in the pod spec.

```
# Snippet of the PodSpec
containers:
  - name: container-name
    image: container-image:version
    env:
    - name: AWS_CONFIG_FILE
      value: path-to-customer-provided-aws-config-file
    - name: AWS_PROFILE
      value: account_b_role
```

When configuring role trust policies for role chaining with EKS pod identities, you can reference EKS specific attributes as session tags and use attribute based access control(ABAC) to limit access to your IAM roles to only specific EKS Pod identity sessions, such as the Kubernetes Service Account a pod belongs to.

Please note that some of these attributes may not be universally unique, for example two EKS clusters may have identical namespaces, and one cluster may have identically named service accounts across namespaces. So when granting access via EKS Pod Identities and ABAC, it is a best practice to always consider the cluster arn and namespace when granting access to a service account.

ABAC and EKS Pod Identities for cross account access

When using EKS Pod Identities to assume roles (role chaining) in other accounts as part of a multi account strategy, you have the option to assign a unique IAM role for each service account that needs to access another account, or use a common IAM role across multiple service accounts and use ABAC to control what accounts it can access.

To use ABAC to control what service accounts can assume a role into another account with role chaining, you create a role trust policy statement that only allows a role to be assumed by a role session when the expected values are present. The following role trust policy will only let a role from the EKS cluster account (account ID 111122223333) assume a role if the `kubernetes-service-account`, `eks-cluster-arn` and `kubernetes-namespace` tags all have the expected value.

```
{
    "Version":"2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": {
                "AWS": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:root"
            },
            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
            "Condition": {
                "StringEquals": {
                    "aws:PrincipalTag/kubernetes-service-account":
 "PayrollApplication",
                    "aws:PrincipalTag/eks-cluster-arn": "arn:aws:eks:us-
east-1:111122223333:cluster/ProductionCluster",
                    "aws:PrincipalTag/kubernetes-namespace": "PayrollNamespace"
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

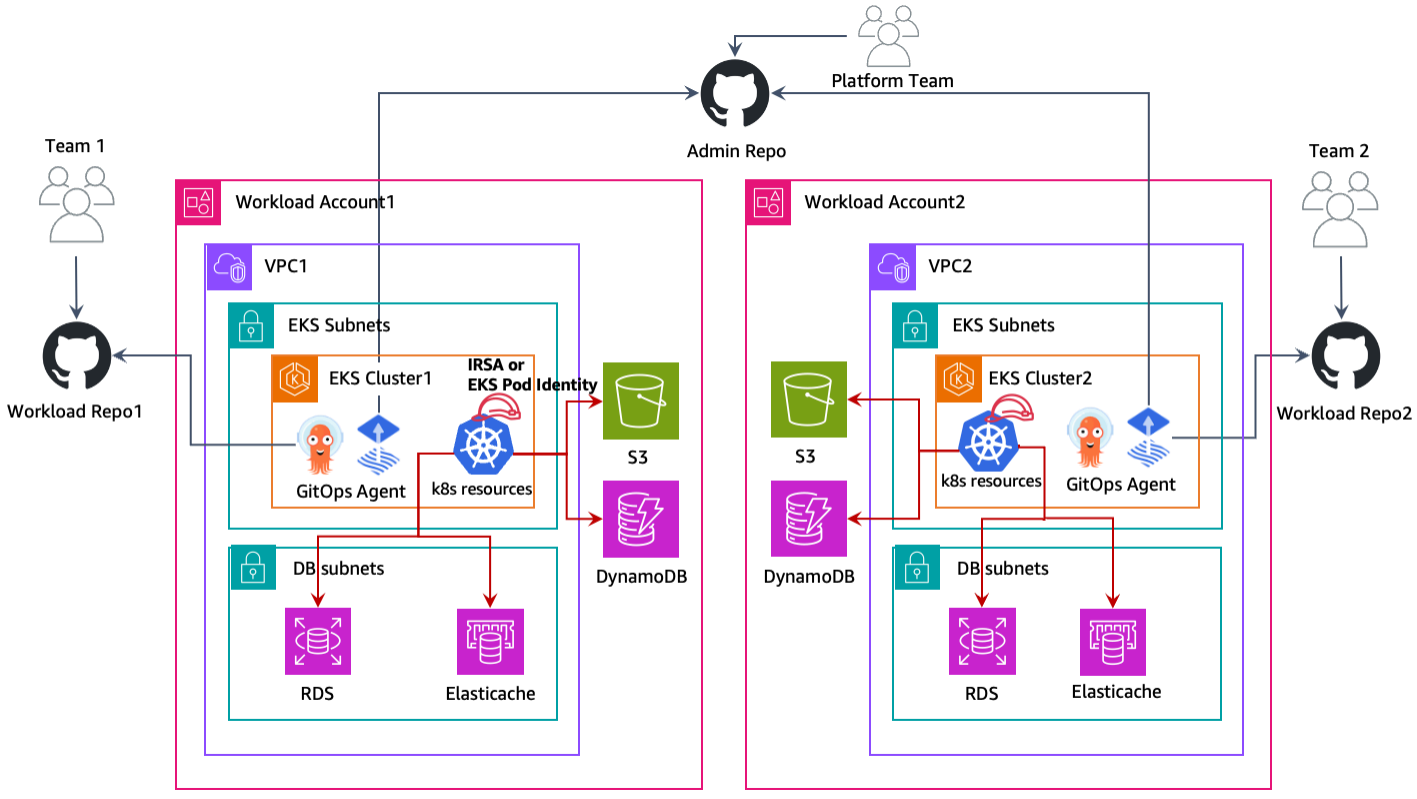
When using this strategy it is a best practice to ensure that the common IAM role only has `sts:AssumeRole` permissions and no other AWS access.

It is important when using ABAC that you control who has the ability to tag IAM roles and users to only those who have a strict need to do so. Someone with the ability to tag an IAM role or user

would be able to set tags on roles/users identical to what would be set by EKS Pod Identities and may be able to escalate their privileges. You can restrict who has the access to set tags the `kubernetes-` and `eks-` tags on IAM role and users using IAM policy, or Service Control Policy (SCP).

De-centralized EKS Clusters

In this approach, EKS clusters are deployed to respective workload AWS Accounts and live along side with other AWS resources like Amazon S3 buckets, VPCs, Amazon DynamoDB tables, etc., Each workload account is independent, self-sufficient, and operated by respective Business Unit/ Application teams. This model allows the creation of reusable blueprints for various cluster capabilities — AI/ML cluster, Batch processing, General purpose, etc, — and vend the clusters based on the application team requirements. Both application and platform teams operate out of their respective GitOps repositories to manage the deployments to the workload clusters.



In the above diagram, Amazon EKS clusters and other AWS resources are deployed to respective workload accounts. Then workloads running in EKS pods use IRSA or EKS Pod Identities to access their AWS resources.

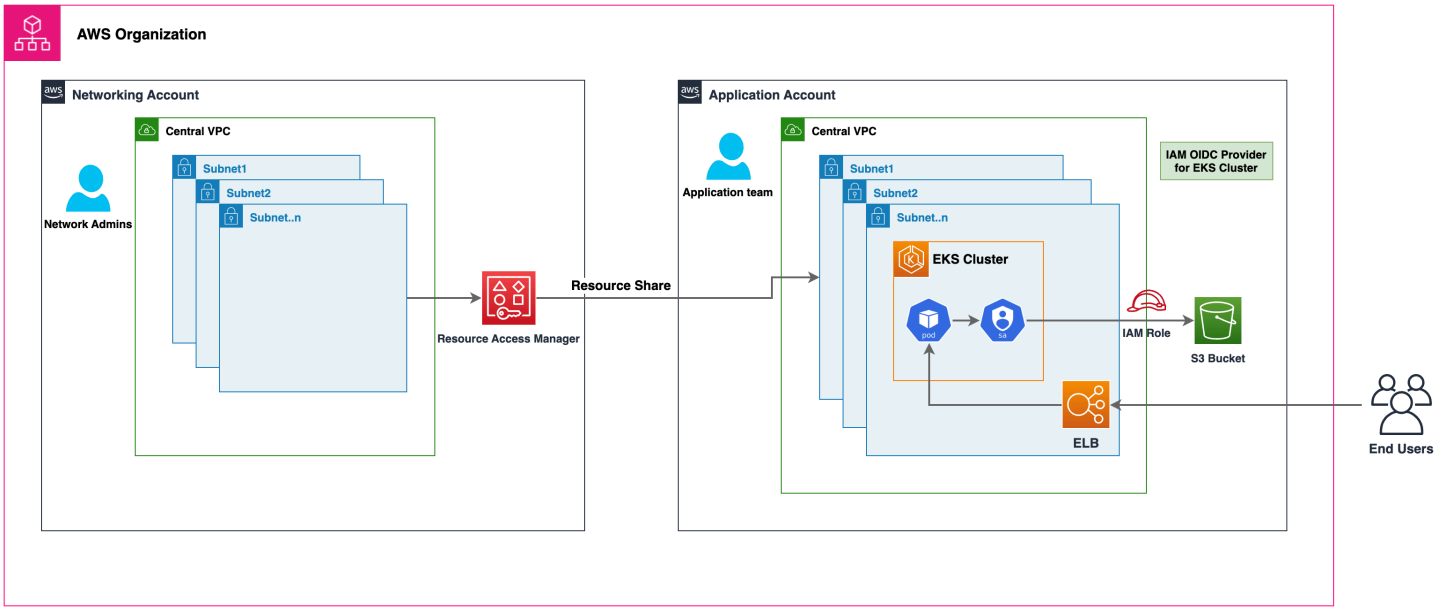
GitOps is a way of managing application and infrastructure deployment so that the whole system is described declaratively in a Git repository. It's an operational model that offers you the

ability to manage the state of multiple Kubernetes clusters using the best practices of version control, immutable artifacts, and automation. In this multi cluster model, each workload cluster is bootstrapped with multiple Git repos, allowing each team (application, platform, security, etc.,) to deploy their respective changes on the cluster.

You would utilize IAM roles for Service Accounts (IRSA) or EKS Pod Identities in each account to allow your EKS workloads to get temporary aws credentials to securely access other AWS resources. IAM roles are created in respective workload AWS Accounts and map them to k8s service accounts to provide temporary IAM access. So, no cross-account access is required in this approach. Follow the IAM roles for Service Accounts documentation on how to setup in each workload for IRSA, and EKS Pod Identities documentation on how to setup EKS pod identities in each account.

Centralized Networking

You can also utilize AWS RAM to share the VPC Subnets to workload accounts and launch Amazon EKS clusters and other AWS resources in them. This enables centralized network managment/ administration, simplified network connectivity, and de-centralized EKS clusters. Refer this AWS blog for a detailed walkthrough and considerations of this approach.



In the above diagram, AWS RAM is used to share subnets from a central networking account into a workload account. Then EKS cluster and other AWS resources are launched in those subnets in respective workload accounts. EKS pods use IRSA or EKS Pod Identities to access their AWS resources.

Centralized vs De-centralized EKS clusters

The decision to run with a Centralized or De-centralized will depend on your requirements. This table demonstrates the key differences with each strategy.

#	Centralized EKS cluster	De-centralized EKS clusters
Cluster Management:	Managing a single EKS cluster is easier than administrating multiple clusters	An Efficient cluster management automation is necessary to reduce the operational overhead of managing multiple EKS clusters
Cost Efficiency:	Allows reuse of EKS cluster and network resources, which promotes cost efficiency	Requires networking and cluster setups per workload, which requires additional resources
Resilience:	Multiple workloads on the centralized cluster may be impacted if a cluster becomes impaired	If a cluster becomes impaired, the damage is limited to only the workloads that run on that cluster. All other workloads are unaffected
Isolation & Security:	Isolation/Soft Multi-tenancy is achieved using k8s native constructs like `Namespaces`. Workloads may share the underlying resources like CPU, memory, etc. AWS resources are isolated into their own workload accounts which by default are not accessible from other AWS accounts.	Stronger isolation on compute resources as the workloads run in individual clusters and nodes that don't share any resources. AWS resources are isolated into their own workload accounts which by default are not accessible from other AWS accounts.

#	Centralized EKS cluster	De-centralized EKS clusters
Performance & Scalabity:	As workloads grow to very large scales you may encounter kubernetes and AWS service quotas in the cluster account. You can deploy addtional cluster accounts to scale even further	As more clusters and VPCs are present, each workload has more available k8s and AWS service quota
Networking:	Single VPC is used per cluster, allowing for simpler connectivity for applications on that cluster	Routing must be established between the de-centralized EKS cluster VPCs
Kubernetes Access Management:	Need to maintain many different roles and users in the cluster to provide access to all workload teams and ensure kubernetes resources are properly segregated	Simplified access ma nagement as each cluster is dedicated to a workload/ team
AWS Access Management:	AWS resources are deployed into to their own account which can only be accessed by default with IAM roles in the workload account. IAM roles in the workload accounts are assumed cross account either with IRSA or EKS Pod Identities.	AWS resources are deployed into to their own account which can only be accessed by default with IAM roles in the workload account. IAM roles in the workload accounts are delivered directly to pods with IRSA or EKS Pod Identities

Cluster access management

Effective access management is crucial for maintaining the security and integrity of your Amazon EKS clusters. This guide explores various options for EKS access management, with a focus on using

AWS IAM Identity Center (formerly AWS SSO). We'll compare different approaches, discuss their trade-offs, and highlight known limitations and considerations.

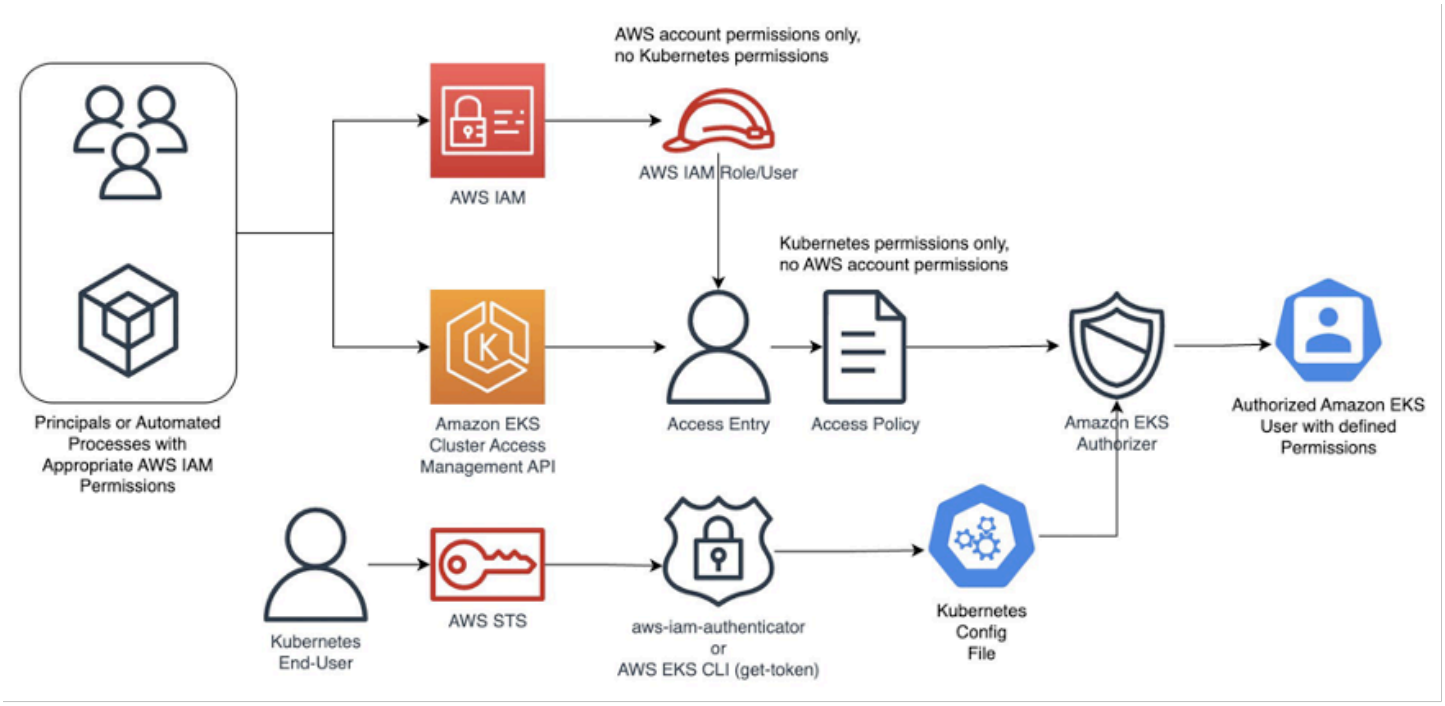
EKS access management options

> **Note**
>
> ConfigMap-based access management (aws-auth ConfigMap) is deprecated and replaced by Cluster Access Management (CAM) API. For new EKS clusters, implement CAM API to manage cluster access. For existing clusters using aws-auth ConfigMap, migrate to using CAM API.

Option 1: AWS IAM Identity Center with Cluster Access Management (CAM) API

- Centralized user and permission management
- Integration with existing identity providers (e.g. Microsoft AD,Okta, PingId and more)
- The CAM API uses Access Entries to link AWS IAM principals (users or roles) to the EKS cluster. These entries work with IAM Identity Center's managed identities, allowing administrators to control cluster access for users and groups defined in Identity Center.

EKS cluster authentication flow:



1. Principals(human users) or automated processes authenticate via AWS IAM by presenting appropriate AWS account permissions. In this step, they are mapped to appropriate AWS IAM principal (role or user).
2. Next, an EKS access entry maps this IAM principal to a Kubernetes RBAC principal(user or group) by defining appropriate access policy, which contains Kubernetes permissions only.
3. When a Kubernetes end user tries to access a cluster, its authentication request is processed by aws-iam-authenticator or AWS EKS CLI and validated against the cluster context in kubeconfig file.
4. Finally, the EKS authorizer verifies the permissions associated with the authenticated user's access entry and grants or denies access accordingly.
    - The API uses Amazon EKS-specific Access Policies to define the level of authorization for each Access Entry. These policies can be mapped to roles and permissions set up in IAM Identity Center, ensuring consistent access control across AWS services and EKS clusters.

Benefits over ConfigMap-based access management:

1. **Reduced risk of misconfigurations**: Direct API-based management eliminates common errors associated with manual ConfigMap editing. This helps in preventing accidental deletions or syntax errors that could lock users out of the cluster.

2. **Enhanced least privilege principle**: Removes the need for cluster-admin permission from the cluster creator identity and allows for more granular and appropriate permissions assignment. You can choose to add this permission for break-glass use cases.
3. **Enhanced security model**: Provides built-in validation of access entries before they are applied. Additionally, offers tighter integration with AWS IAM for authentication.
4. **Streamlined operations**: Offers a more intuitive way to manage permissions through AWS-native tooling.

Best practices:

1. Use AWS Organizations to manage multiple accounts and apply service control policies (SCPs).
2. Implement least privilege principle by creating specific permission sets for different EKS role (e.g. admin, developer, read-only).
3. Utilize attribute-based access control (ABAC) to dynamically assign permissions to pods based on user attributes.
4. Regularly audit and review access permissions.

Considerations/limitations:

1. Role ARNs generated by Identity Center have random suffixes, making them challenging to use in static configurations.
2. Limited support for fine-grained permissions at the Kubernetes resource level. Additional configuration is required for custom Kubernetes RBAC roles. Along with Kubernetes-native RBAC, consider using Kyverno for advanced permissions management in EKS clusters.

Option 2: AWS IAM Users/Roles mapped to Kubernetes groups

Pros:

1. Fine-grained control over IAM permissions.
2. Predictable and static role ARNs

Cons:

1. Increased management overhead for user accounts

2. Lack of centralized identity management
3. Potential for proliferation of IAM entities

Best practices:

1. Use IAM roles instead of IAM users for improved security and manageability
2. Implement a naming convention for roles to ensure consistency and ease of management
3. Utilize IAM policy conditions to restrict access based on tags or other attributes.
4. Regularly rotate access keys and review permissions.

Considerations/limitations:

1. Scalability issues when managing large number of users or roles
2. No built-in single sign-on capabilities

Option 3: OIDC Providers

Pros:

1. Integration with existing identity management systems
2. Reduced management overhead for user accounts

Cons:

1. Additional configuration complexity
2. Potential for increased latency during authentication
3. Dependency on external identity provider

Best Practices:

1. Carefully configure the OIDC provider to ensure secure token validation.
2. Use short-lived tokens and implement token refresh mechanisms.
3. Regularly audit and update OIDC configurations.

Review this guide for a reference implementation of integrating external Single Sign-On providers with Amazon EKS

Considerations/limitations:

1. Limited native integration with AWS services compared to IAM.
2. Issuer URL of the OIDC provider must be publicly accessible for EKS to discover signing keys.

AWS EKS Pod Identity vs IRSA for workloads

Amazon EKS provides two ways to grant AWS IAM permissions to workloads that run in Amazon EKS clusters: IAM roles for service accounts (IRSA), and EKS Pod Identities.

While both IRSA and EKS Pod Identities provide the benefits of least privilege access, credential isolation and auditability, EKS Pod Identity is the recommended way to grant permissions to workloads.

For detailed guidance on Identity and credentials for EKS pods, please refer to the Identities and Credentials section of Security best practices.

Recommendation

Combine IAM Identity Center with CAM API

- **Simplified management**: By using the Cluster Access Management API in conjunction with IAM Identity Center, administrators can manage EKS cluster access alongside other AWS services, reducing the need to switch between different interfaces or edit ConfigMaps manually.
- Use access entries to manage the Kubernetes permissions of IAM principals from outside the cluster. You can add and manage access to the cluster by using the EKS API, AWS Command Line Interface, AWS SDKs, AWS CloudFormation, and AWS Management Console. This means you can manage users with the same tools that you created the cluster with.
- Granular Kubernetes permissions can be applied with mapping Kubernetes users or groups with IAM principals associated with SSO identities via access entries and access policies.
- To get started, follow Change authentication mode to use access entries, then Migrating existing aws-auth ConfigMap entries to access entries.

Best Practices for Cluster Autoscaling

This guide provides advice about Cluster Autoscaling, including guidance for Auto Mode, Karpenter and Kubernetes Cluster Autoscaler.

Topics

- EKS Auto Mode
- Karpenter
- Cluster Autoscaler

EKS Auto Mode

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Amazon EKS Auto Mode represents a significant evolution in Kubernetes infrastructure management, combining secure and scalable cluster infrastructure with integrated Kubernetes capabilities managed by AWS . The service provides fully-managed worker node operations, eliminating the need for customers to set up Managed Node Groups or AutoScaling groups .

The key architectural difference is that EKS Auto Mode uses a Karpenter-based system that automatically provisions EC2 instances in response to pod requests . These instances run on Bottlerocket AMIs with pre-installed add-ons like EBS CSI drivers, making the infrastructure truly managed by AWS . In contrast to traditional scaling methods:

- Traditional Cluster Autoscaler (CAS) requires manual node group management and can only create nodes with a single instance type per node group
- Self-managed Karpenter offers more flexibility by working with EC2 Fleet API and can provision different instance types, but requires customer management
- EKS Auto Mode handles all scaling operations automatically through managed NodePools and NodeClasses

The new system introduces several operational improvements:

- Automatic pod-driven scaling without manual node group configuration
- Built-in managed load balancer controllers that automatically create ALB/NLB based on Ingress resources
- Integrated security features with pre-configured Pod identity
- Maximum node runtime of 21 days with automatic replacement

From a cost perspective, EKS Auto Mode maintains standard EC2 pricing while adding a management fee only for Auto Mode-managed nodes. Importantly, customers can still mix Auto Mode managed nodes with self-managed nodes in the same cluster .

While AWS handles most operational aspects, customers retain responsibility for cluster version management and can perform controlled upgrades that trigger rolling updates of worker nodes .

Reasons to use Auto Mode

Auto Mode is geared towards users that want the benefits of Kubernetes and EKS but need to minimize operational burden around Kubernetes like upgrades and installation/maintenance of critical platform pieces like auto-scaling, load balancing, and storage. Auto Mode takes EKS a step further in the minimization of the undifferentiated heavy lifting that goes along with Kubernetes maintenance

FAQ

What is the difference between EKS Auto Mode and Open Source Karpenter?

EKS Auto Mode is a large suite of features that make running production-grade Kubernetes simple. One of these features is the auto-scaling benefits of Karpenter, fully managed. From an operations standpoint, the only difference is in EKS Auto Mode you do not need to manage the deployment, scaling, and upgrade of the Karpenter pods themselves. All other operations, like managed NodeClasses and NodePools works the same as with open source Karpenter.

Can I run managed node groups alongside Auto Mode-managed nodes?

Yes, you may run static nodes via a managed node groups alongside your autoscaling nodes provided with Auto Mode

Can I migrate a cluster from standard EKS to EKS Auto Mode?

Yes, instructions to enable EKS Auto Mode on an existing cluster can be found in the official AWS Documentation

Things to note: 1. After enabling Auto Mode, you'll want to uninstall any components you had installed that are now managed by Auto Mode, like Karpenter or the AWS Load Balancer Controller 2. You need to make sure your installed add-ons are up-to-date. See documentation.

How do I configure NodePools in EKS Auto Mode?

A new cluster will come pre-configured with two NodePools

general-purpose

```yaml
apiVersion: karpenter.sh/v1
kind: NodePool
metadata:
  generation: 1
  labels:
    app.kubernetes.io/managed-by: eks
  name: general-purpose
spec:
  disruption:
    budgets:
      - nodes: 10%
    consolidateAfter: 30s
    consolidationPolicy: WhenEmptyOrUnderutilized
  template:
    spec:
      expireAfter: 336h
      nodeClassRef:
        group: eks.amazonaws.com
        kind: NodeClass
        name: default
      requirements:
        - key: karpenter.sh/capacity-type
          operator: In
          values:
            - on-demand
        - key: eks.amazonaws.com/instance-category
          operator: In
          values:
            - c
            - m
            - r
        - key: eks.amazonaws.com/instance-generation
          operator: Gt
          values:
            - '4'
        - key: kubernetes.io/arch
          operator: In
          values:
            - amd64
        - key: kubernetes.io/os
          operator: In
          values:
            - linux
      terminationGracePeriod: 24h0m0s
```

This NodePool instructs Karpenter to launch nodes with the following characteristics:

1. Capacity Type of “On Demand”
2. Instance Types of C, M, or R
3. Instance Generation of 4
4. AMD architecture
5. Linux OS

It also defines what the scale down logic is by declaring that only 10% of all nodes may be in a disrupted state at any given time and that consolidation should only occur when nodes are empty or underutilized.

system

```
apiVersion: karpenter.sh/v1
kind: NodePool
metadata:
  generation: 1
  labels:
    app.kubernetes.io/managed-by: eks
  name: system
spec:
  disruption:
    budgets:
      - nodes: 10%
    consolidateAfter: 30s
    consolidationPolicy: WhenEmptyOrUnderutilized
  template:
    spec:
      expireAfter: 336h
      nodeClassRef:
        group: eks.amazonaws.com
        kind: NodeClass
        name: default
      requirements:
        - key: karpenter.sh/capacity-type
          operator: In
          values:
            - on-demand
        - key: eks.amazonaws.com/instance-category
          operator: In
          values:
            - c
            - m
            - r
        - key: eks.amazonaws.com/instance-generation
          operator: Gt
          values:
            - '4'
        - key: kubernetes.io/arch
          operator: In
          values:
            - amd64
            - arm64
        - key: kubernetes.io/os
          operator: In
          values:
            - linux
      taints:
        - effect: NoSchedule
```

This NodePool is similar to “general-purpose” except for the following differences:

1. It allows for nodes with the ARM architecture as well as AMD architecture
2. It taints these nodes with a NoSchedule unless there’s a toleration for “CriticalAddonsOnly”. This is for internal use by EKS add-ons

custom

You may create your own custom NodePools depending on your needs. To learn more about NodePools please consult the Karpenter Documentation.

Can I customize the AMI used by Auto Mode when new nodes are launched?

No, currently the only supported AMIs are for Amazon-provided Bottlerocket

How can I install custom tooling or agents on my Kubernetes hosts?

Because AMI customization is not supported, if you have a need for host-level software for things like security scanning you should be deploying the workload as a Kubernetes DaemonSet.

What components are running in my cluster data plane when I provision a new EKS Auto Mode cluster?

If you create a cluster with eksctl or the AWS console, the only pods running in an EKS Auto Mode cluster are Kubernetes Metrics Server pods. The other components of EKS Auto Mode like Karpenter, the AWS Load Balancer Controller, and the EBS CSI Driver are all running and managed off-cluster.

What managed components are running to support my new EKS Auto Mode cluster?

EKS Auto Mode completely automates the deployment of most of the pieces of a data plane needed for production-grade Kubernetes. This includes:

- Karpenter, for auto-scaling the compute of your cluster
- AWS Load Balancer Controller to allow you to easily expose Kubernetes services via automated Elastic Load Balancer integration
- VPC CNI
- Cluster DNS

- kube-proxy
- EBS CSI
- EKS Pod Identity Agent
- EKS Node Monitoring Agent

How do I troubleshoot the components of Auto Mode that used to run as pods in my cluster?

With EKS Auto Mode, many of the components like the AWS Load Balancer Controller and Karpenter are managed for you outside of your cluster, therefore you won't have the same visibility into the logs that you are used to when self-managing. If you are in a situation where you need to troubleshoot the functionality of a piece of Auto Mode functionality create an AWS Support Ticket.

Karpenter

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Karpenter is an open-source project designed to enhance node lifecycle management within Kubernetes clusters. It automates provisioning and deprovisioning of nodes based on the specific scheduling needs of pods, allowing efficient scaling and cost optimization. Its main functions are:

- Monitor pods that the Kubernetes scheduler cannot schedule due to resource constraints.
- Evaluate the scheduling requirements (resource requests, node selectors, affinities, tolerations, etc.) of the unschedulable pods.
- Provision new nodes that meet the requirements of those pods.
- Remove nodes when they are no longer needed.

With Karpenter, you can define NodePools with constraints on node provisioning like taints, labels, requirements (instance types, zones, etc.), and limits on total provisioned resources. When deploying workloads, you can specify various scheduling constraints in the pod specifications like resource requests/limits, node selectors, node/pod affinities, tolerations, and topology spread constraints. Karpenter will then provision right sized nodes based on these specifications.

Reasons to use Karpenter

Before the launch of Karpenter, Kubernetes users relied primarily on Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling groups and the Kubernetes Cluster Autoscaler (CAS) to dynamically adjust the compute capacity of their clusters. With Karpenter, you don't need to create dozens of node groups to achieve the flexibility and diversity you get with Karpenter. Unlike CAS, Karpenter is not as tightly coupled to Kubernetes versions and doesn't require you to jump between AWS and Kubernetes APIs.

Karpenter consolidates instance orchestration responsibilities within a single system, which is simpler, more stable and cluster-aware. Karpenter was designed to overcome some of the challenges presented by Cluster Autoscaler by providing simplified ways to:

- Provision nodes based on workload requirements.
- Create diverse node configurations by instance type, using flexible NodePool options. Instead of managing many specific custom node groups, Karpenter could let you manage diverse workload capacity with a single, flexible NodePool.
- Achieve improved pod scheduling at scale by quickly launching nodes and scheduling pods.

For information and documentation on using Karpenter, visit the karpenter.sh site.

Recommendations

Best practices are divided into sections on Karpenter itself, NodePools, and pod scheduling.

Karpenter best practices

The following best practices cover topics related to Karpenter itself.

Lock down AMIs in production clusters

We strongly recommend that you pin well-known Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) used by Karpenter for production clusters. Using `amiSelector` with an alias set to `@latest`, or using some other method that results in deploying untested AMIs as they are released, offers the risk of workload failures and downtime in your production clusters. As a result, we strongly recommend pinning tested working versions of AMIs for your production clusters while you test newer versions in non-production clusters. For example, you could set an alias in your NodeClass as follows:

```
amiSelectorTerms
```

```
  - alias: al2023@v20240807
```

For information on managing and pinning down AMIs in Karpenter, see Managing AMIs in the Karpenter documentation.

Use Karpenter for workloads with changing capacity needs

Karpenter brings scaling management closer to Kubernetes native APIs than do Autoscaling Groups (ASGs) and Managed Node Groups (MNGs). ASGs and MNGs are AWS-native abstractions where scaling is triggered based on AWS level metrics, such as EC2 CPU load. Cluster Autoscaler bridges the Kubernetes abstractions into AWS abstractions, but loses some flexibility because of that, such as scheduling for a specific availability zone.

Karpenter removes a layer of AWS abstraction to bring some of the flexibility directly into Kubernetes. Karpenter is best used for clusters with workloads that encounter periods of high, spiky demand or have diverse compute requirements. MNGs and ASGs are good for clusters running workloads that tend to be more static and consistent. You can use a mix of dynamically and statically managed nodes, depending on your requirements.

Consider other autoscaling projects when...

You need features that are still being developed in Karpenter. Because Karpenter is a relatively new project, consider other autoscaling projects for the time being if you have a need for features that are not yet part of Karpenter.

Run the Karpenter controller on EKS Fargate or on a worker node that belongs to a node group

Karpenter is installed using a Helm chart. The Helm chart installs the Karpenter controller and a webhook pod as a Deployment that needs to run before the controller can be used for scaling your cluster. We recommend a minimum of one small node group with at least one worker node. As an alternative, you can run these pods on EKS Fargate by creating a Fargate profile for the `karpenter` namespace. Doing so will cause all pods deployed into this namespace to run on EKS Fargate. Do not run Karpenter on a node that is managed by Karpenter.

No custom launch templates support with Karpenter

There is no custom launch template support with v1 APIs. You can use custom user data and/or directly specifying custom AMIs in the EC2NodeClass. More information on how to do this is available at NodeClasses.

Exclude instance types that do not fit your workload

Consider excluding specific instances types with the `node.kubernetes.io/instance-type` key if they are not required by workloads running in your cluster.

The following example shows how to avoid provisioning large Graviton instances.

```
- key: node.kubernetes.io/instance-type
  operator: NotIn
  values:
  - m6g.16xlarge
  - m6gd.16xlarge
  - r6g.16xlarge
  - r6gd.16xlarge
  - c6g.16xlarge
```

Enable Interruption Handling when using Spot

Karpenter supports native interruption handling and can handle involuntary interruption events like Spot Instance interruptions, scheduled maintenance events, instance termination/stopping events that could disrupt your workloads. When Karpenter detects such events for nodes, it automatically taints, drains and terminates the affected nodes ahead of time to start graceful cleanup of workloads before disruption. For Spot interruptions with 2 minute notice, Karpenter quickly starts a new node so pods can be moved before the instance is reclaimed. To enable interruption handling, you configure the `--interruption-queue` CLI argument with the name of the SQS queue provisioned for this purpose. It is not advised to use Karpenter interruption handling alongside Node Termination Handler as explained here.

Pods that require checkpointing or other forms of graceful draining, requiring the 2-mins before shutdown should enable Karpenter interruption handling in their clusters.

Amazon EKS private cluster without outbound internet access

When provisioning an EKS Cluster into a VPC with no route to the internet, you have to make sure you've configured your environment in accordance with the private cluster requirements that appear in EKS documentation. In addition, you need to make sure you've created an STS VPC regional endpoint in your VPC. If not, you will see errors similar to those that appear below.

```
{"level":"FATAL","time":"2024-02-29T14:28:34.392Z","logger":"controller","message":"Checking
 EC2 API connectivity, WebIdentityErr: failed to retrieve credentials
```

```
\ncaused by: RequestError: send request failed\ncaused by: Post
 \"https://sts.<region>.amazonaws.com/\": dial tcp 54.239.32.126:443: i/o
 timeout","commit":"596ea97"}
```

These changes are necessary in a private cluster because the Karpenter Controller uses IAM Roles for Service Accounts (IRSA). Pods configured with IRSA acquire credentials by calling the AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS) API. If there is no outbound internet access, you must create and use an ***AWS STS VPC endpoint in your VPC*** .

Private clusters also require you to create a ***VPC endpoint for SSM*** . When Karpenter tries to provision a new node, it queries the Launch template configs and an SSM parameter. If you do not have a SSM VPC endpoint in your VPC, it will cause the following error:

```
{"level":"ERROR","time":"2024-02-29T14:28:12.889Z","logger":"controller","message":"Unable
 to hydrate the AWS launch template cache, RequestCanceled: request context canceled
\ncaused by: context canceled","commit":"596ea97","tag-key":"karpenter.k8s.aws/
cluster","tag-value":"eks-workshop"}
...
{"level":"ERROR","time":"2024-02-29T15:08:58.869Z","logger":"controller.nodeclass","message":"d
 amis from ssm, getting ssm parameter \"/aws/service/eks/optimized-ami/1.27/amazon-
linux-2/recommended/image_id\", RequestError: send request failed\ncaused by:
 Post \"https://ssm.<region>.amazonaws.com/\": dial tcp 67.220.228.252:443: i/o
 timeout","commit":"596ea97","ec2nodeclass":"default","query":"/aws/service/eks/
optimized-ami/1.27/amazon-linux-2/recommended/image_id"}
```

There is no ***VPC endpoint for the Price List Query API*** . As a result, pricing data will go stale over time. Karpenter gets around this by including on-demand pricing data in its binary, but only updates that data when Karpenter is upgraded. Failed requests for pricing data will result in the following error messages:

```
{"level":"ERROR","time":"2024-02-29T15:08:58.522Z","logger":"controller.pricing","message":"ret
 on-demand pricing data, RequestError: send request failed\ncaused by: Post
 \"https://api.pricing.<region>.amazonaws.com/\": dial tcp 18.196.224.8:443:
 i/o timeout; RequestError: send request failed\ncaused by: Post \"https://
api.pricing.<region>.amazonaws.com/\": dial tcp 18.185.143.117:443: i/o
 timeout","commit":"596ea97"}
```

Refer to this documentation to use Karpenter in a completely Private EKS Clusters and to know which VPC endpoints to be created.

Creating NodePools

The following best practices cover topics related to creating NodePools.

Create multiple NodePools when...

When different teams are sharing a cluster and need to run their workloads on different worker nodes, or have different OS or instance type requirements, create multiple NodePools. For example, one team may want to use Bottlerocket, while another may want to use Amazon Linux. Likewise, one team might have access to expensive GPU hardware that wouldn't be needed by another team. Using multiple NodePools makes sure that the most appropriate assets are available to each team.

Create NodePools that are mutually exclusive or weighted

It is recommended to create NodePools that are either mutually exclusive or weighted to provide consistent scheduling behavior. If they are not and multiple NodePools are matched, Karpenter will randomly choose which to use, causing unexpected results. Useful examples for creating multiple NodePools include the following:

Creating a NodePool with GPU and only allowing special workloads to run on these (expensive) nodes:

```
# NodePool for GPU Instances with Taints
apiVersion: karpenter.sh/v1
kind: NodePool
metadata:
  name: gpu
spec:
  disruption:
    consolidateAfter: 1m
    consolidationPolicy: WhenEmptyOrUnderutilized
  template:
    metadata: {}
    spec:
      nodeClassRef:
        group: karpenter.k8s.aws
        kind: EC2NodeClass
        name: default
      expireAfter: Never
      requirements:
```

```
      - key: node.kubernetes.io/instance-type
        operator: In
        values:
        - p3.8xlarge
        - p3.16xlarge
      - key: kubernetes.io/os
        operator: In
        values:
        - linux
      - key: kubernetes.io/arch
        operator: In
        values:
        - amd64
      - key: karpenter.sh/capacity-type
        operator: In
        values:
        - on-demand
      taints:
      - effect: NoSchedule
        key: nvidia.com/gpu
        value: "true"
```

Deployment with toleration for the taint:

```
# Deployment of GPU Workload will have tolerations defined
apiVersion: apps/v1
kind: Deployment
metadata:
  name: inflate-gpu
spec:
    spec:
      tolerations:
      - key: "nvidia.com/gpu"
        operator: "Exists"
        effect: "NoSchedule"
```

For a general deployment for another team, the NodePool spec could include nodeAffinity. A Deployment could then use nodeSelectorTerms to match `billing-team`.

```
# NodePool for regular EC2 instances
apiVersion: karpenter.sh/v1
kind: NodePool
metadata:
```

```
  name: generalcompute
spec:
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        billing-team: my-team
    spec:
      nodeClassRef:
        group: karpenter.k8s.aws
        kind: EC2NodeClass
        name: default
      expireAfter: Never
      requirements:
      - key: node.kubernetes.io/instance-type
        operator: In
        values:
        - m5.large
        - m5.xlarge
        - m5.2xlarge
        - c5.large
        - c5.xlarge
        - c5a.large
        - c5a.xlarge
        - r5.large
        - r5.xlarge
      - key: kubernetes.io/os
        operator: In
        values:
        - linux
      - key: kubernetes.io/arch
        operator: In
        values:
        - amd64
      - key: karpenter.sh/capacity-type
        operator: In
        values:
        - on-demand
```

Deployment using nodeAffinity:

```
# Deployment will have spec.affinity.nodeAffinity defined
kind: Deployment
metadata:
```

```
  name: workload-my-team
spec:
  replicas: 200
    spec:
      affinity:
        nodeAffinity:
          requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
            nodeSelectorTerms:
              - matchExpressions:
                - key: "billing-team"
                  operator: "In"
                  values: ["my-team"]
```

Use timers (TTL) to automatically delete nodes from the cluster

You can use timers on provisioned nodes to set when to delete nodes that are devoid of workload pods or have reached an expiration time. Node expiry can be used as a means of upgrading, so that nodes are retired and replaced with updated versions. See Expiration in the Karpenter documentation for information on using `spec.template.spec` to configure node expiry.

Avoid overly constraining the Instance Types that Karpenter can provision, especially when utilizing Spot

When using Spot, Karpenter uses the Price Capacity Optimized allocation strategy to provision EC2 instances. This strategy instructs EC2 to provision instances from the deepest pools for the number of instances that you are launching and have the lowest risk of interruption. EC2 Fleet then requests Spot instances from the lowest priced of these pools. The more instance types you allow Karpenter to utilize, the better EC2 can optimize your spot instance's runtime. By default, Karpenter will use all Instance Types EC2 offers in the region and availability zones your cluster is deployed in. Karpenter intelligently chooses from the set of all instance types based on pending pods to make sure your pods are scheduled onto appropriately sized and equipped instances. For example, if your pod does not require a GPU, Karpenter will not schedule your pod to an EC2 instance type supporting a GPU. When you're unsure about which instance types to use, you can run the Amazon ec2-instance-selector to generate a list of instance types that match your compute requirements. For example, the CLI takes memory vCPU, architecture, and region as input parameters and provides you with a list of EC2 instances that satisfy those constraints.

```
$ ec2-instance-selector --memory 4 --vcpus 2 --cpu-architecture x86_64 -r ap-
southeast-1
c5.large
```

```
c5a.large
c5ad.large
c5d.large
c6i.large
t2.medium
t3.medium
t3a.medium
```

You shouldn't place too many constraints on Karpenter when using Spot instances because doing so can affect the availability of your applications. Say, for example, all of the instances of a particular type are reclaimed and there are no suitable alternatives available to replace them. Your pods will remain in a pending state until the spot capacity for the configured instance types is replenished. You can reduce the risk of insufficient capacity errors by spreading your instances across different availability zones, because spot pools are different across AZs. That said, the general best practice is to allow Karpenter to use a diverse set of instance types when using Spot.

Scheduling Pods

The following best practices relate to deploying pods In a cluster using Karpenter for node provisioning.

Follow EKS best practices for high availability

If you need to run highly available applications, follow general EKS best practice recommendations. See Topology Spread in Karpenter documentation for details on how to spread pods across nodes and zones. Use Disruption Budgets to set the minimum available pods that need to be maintained, in case there are attempts to evict or delete pods.

Use layered Constraints to constrain the compute features available from your cloud provider

Karpenter's model of layered constraints allows you to create a complex set of NodePool and pod deployment constraints to get the best possible matches for pod scheduling. Examples of constraints that a pod spec can request include the following:

- Needing to run in availability zones where only particular applications are available. Say, for example, you have pod that has to communicate with another application that runs on an EC2 instance residing in a particular availability zone. If your aim is to reduce cross-AZ traffic in your VPC, you may want to co-locate the pods in the AZ where the EC2 instance is located. This sort

of targeting is often accomplished using node selectors. For additional information on Node selectors, please refer to the Kubernetes documentation.

- Requiring certain kinds of processors or other hardware. See the Accelerators section of the Karpenter docs for a pod spec example that requires the pod to run on a GPU.

Create billing alarms to monitor your compute spend

When you configure your cluster to automatically scale, you should create billing alarms to warn you when your spend has exceeded a threshold and add resource limits to your Karpenter configuration. Setting resource limits with Karpenter is similar to setting an AWS autoscaling group's maximum capacity in that it represents the maximum amount of compute resources that can be instantiated by a Karpenter NodePool.

> **Note**
>
> It is not possible to set a global limit for the whole cluster. Limits apply to specific NodePools.

The snippet below tells Karpenter to only provision a maximum of 1000 CPU cores and 1000Gi of memory. Karpenter will stop adding capacity only when the limit is met or exceeded. When a limit is exceeded the Karpenter controller will write `memory resource usage of 1001 exceeds limit of 1000` or a similar looking message to the controller's logs. If you are routing your container logs to CloudWatch logs, you can create a metrics filter to look for specific patterns or terms in your logs and then create a CloudWatch alarm to alert you when your configured metrics threshold is breached.

For further information using limits with Karpenter, see Setting Resource Limits in the Karpenter documentation.

```
spec:
  limits:
    cpu: 1000
    memory: 1000Gi
```

If you don't use limits or constrain the instance types that Karpenter can provision, Karpenter will continue adding compute capacity to your cluster as needed. While configuring Karpenter in this way allows your cluster to scale freely, it can also have significant cost implications. It is for this

reason that we recommend that configuring billing alarms. Billing alarms allow you to be alerted and proactively notified when the calculated estimated charges in your account(s) exceed a defined threshold. See Setting up an Amazon CloudWatch Billing Alarm to Proactively Monitor Estimated Charges for additional information.

You may also want to enable Cost Anomaly Detection which is an AWS Cost Management feature that uses machine learning to continuously monitor your cost and usage to detect unusual spends. Further information can be found in the AWS Cost Anomaly Detection Getting Started guide. If you've gone so far as to create a budget in AWS Budgets, you can also configure an action to notify you when a specific threshold has been breached. With budget actions you can send an email, post a message to an SNS topic, or send a message to a chatbot like Slack. For further information see Configuring AWS Budgets actions.

Use the karpenter.sh/do-not-disrupt annotation to prevent Karpenter from deprovisioning a node

If you are running a critical application on a Karpenter-provisioned node, such as a *long running* batch job or stateful application, *and* the node's TTL has expired, the application will be interrupted when the instance is terminated. By adding a `karpenter.sh/do-not-disrupt` annotation to the pod, you are instructing Karpenter to preserve the node until the Pod is terminated or the `karpenter.sh/do-not-disrupt` annotation is removed. See Distruption documentation for further information.

If the only non-daemonset pods left on a node are those associated with jobs, Karpenter is able to target and terminate those nodes so long as the job status is succeed or failed.

Configure requests=limits for all non-CPU resources when using consolidation

Consolidation and scheduling in general work by comparing the pods resource requests vs the amount of allocatable resources on a node. The resource limits are not considered. As an example, pods that have a memory limit that is larger than the memory request can burst above the request. If several pods on the same node burst at the same time, this can cause some of the pods to be terminated due to an out of memory (OOM) condition. Consolidation can make this more likely to occur as it works to pack pods onto nodes only considering their requests.

Use LimitRanges to configure defaults for resource requests and limits

Because Kubernetes doesn't set default requests or limits, a container's consumption of resources from the underlying host, CPU, and memory is unbound. The Kubernetes scheduler looks at

a pod's total requests (the higher of the total requests from the pod's containers or the total resources from the pod's Init containers) to determine which worker node to schedule the pod onto. Similarly, Karpenter considers a pod's requests to determine which type of instance it provisions. You can use a limit range to apply a sensible default for a namespace, in case resource requests are not specified by some pods.

See Configure Default Memory Requests and Limits for a Namespace

Apply accurate resource requests to all workloads

Karpenter is able to launch nodes that best fit your workloads when its information about your workloads requirements is accurate. This is particularly important if using Karpenter's consolidation feature.

See Configure and Size Resource Requests/Limits for all Workloads

CoreDNS recommendations

Update the configuration of CoreDNS to maintain reliability

When deploying CoreDNS pods on nodes managed by Karpenter, given Karpenter's dynamic nature in rapidly terminating/creating new nodes to align with demand, it is advisable to adhere to the following best practices:

CoreDNS lameduck duration

CoreDNS readiness probe

This will ensure that DNS queries are not directed to a CoreDNS Pod that is not yet ready or has been terminated.

Karpenter Blueprints

As Karpenter takes an application-first approach to provision compute capacity for to the Kubernetes data plane, there are common workload scenarios that you might be wondering how to configure them properly. Karpenter Blueprints is a repository that includes a list of common workload scenarios following the best practices described here. You'll have all the resources you need to even create an EKS cluster with Karpenter configured, and test each of the blueprints included in the repository. You can combine different blueprints to finally create the one you need for your workload(s).

Additional Resources

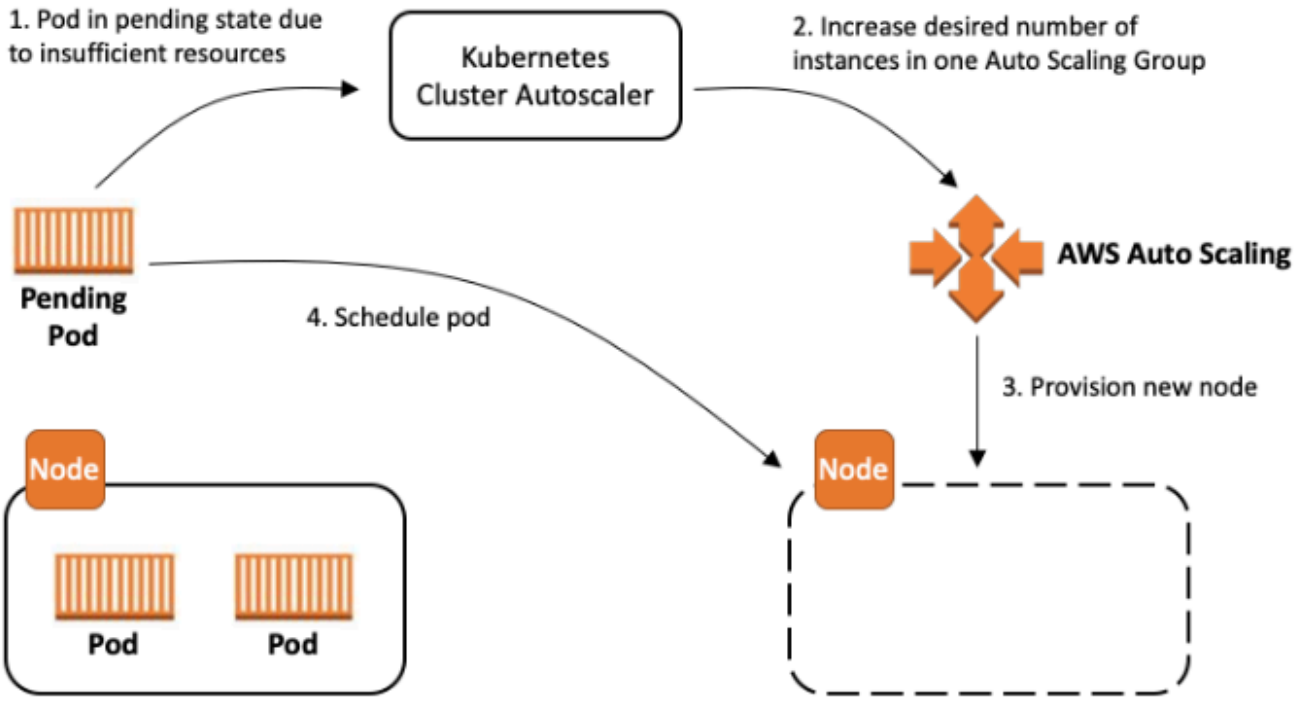
- Karpenter Immersion Day Workshop
- Karpenter Cost Optimization Workshop
- EKS Workshop - Karpenter
- Karpenter vs Cluster Autoscaler
- Karpenter Session at re:Invent 2023
- Tutorial: Run Kubernetes Clusters for Less with Amazon EC2 Spot and Karpenter

Cluster Autoscaler

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Overview

The Kubernetes Cluster Autoscaler is a popular Cluster Autoscaling solution maintained by SIG Autoscaling. It is responsible for ensuring that your cluster has enough nodes to schedule your pods without wasting resources. It watches for pods that fail to schedule and for nodes that are underutilized. It then simulates the addition or removal of nodes before applying the change to your cluster. The AWS Cloud Provider implementation within Cluster Autoscaler controls the `.DesiredReplicas` field of your EC2 Auto Scaling Groups.



This guide will provide a mental model for configuring the Cluster Autoscaler and choosing the best set of tradeoffs to meet your organization's requirements. While there is no single best configuration, there are a set of configuration options that enable you to trade off performance, scalability, cost, and availability. Additionally, this guide will provide tips and best practices for optimizing your configuration for AWS.

Glossary

The following terminology will be used frequently throughout this document. These terms can have broad meaning, but are limited to the definitions below for the purposes of this document.

Scalability refers to how well the Cluster Autoscaler performs as your Kubernetes Cluster increases in number of pods and nodes. As scalability limits are reached, the Cluster Autoscaler's performance and functionality degrades. As the Cluster Autoscaler exceeds its scalability limits, it may no longer add or remove nodes in your cluster.

Performance refers to how quickly the Cluster Autoscaler is able to make and execute scaling decisions. A perfectly performing Cluster Autoscaler would instantly make a decision and trigger a scaling action in response to stimuli, such as a pod becoming unschedulable.

Availability means that pods can be scheduled quickly and without disruption. This includes when newly created pods need to be scheduled and when a scaled down node terminates any remaining pods scheduled to it.

Cost is determined by the decision behind scale out and scale in events. Resources are wasted if an existing node is underutilized or a new node is added that is too large for incoming pods. Depending on the use case, there can be costs associated with prematurely terminating pods due to an aggressive scale down decision.

Node Groups are an abstract Kubernetes concept for a group of nodes within a cluster. It is not a true Kubernetes resource, but exists as an abstraction in the Cluster Autoscaler, Cluster API, and other components. Nodes within a Node Group share properties like labels and taints, but may consist of multiple Availability Zones or Instance Types.

EC2 Auto Scaling Groups can be used as an implementation of Node Groups on EC2. EC2 Auto Scaling Groups are configured to launch instances that automatically join their Kubernetes Clusters and apply labels and taints to their corresponding Node resource in the Kubernetes API.

EC2 Managed Node Groups are another implementation of Node Groups on EC2. They abstract away the complexity manually configuring EC2 Autoscaling Scaling Groups and provide additional management features like node version upgrade and graceful node termination.

Operating the Cluster Autoscaler

The Cluster Autoscaler is typically installed as a Deployment in your cluster. It uses leader election to ensure high availability, but work is done by a single replica at a time. It is not horizontally scalable. For basic setups, the default it should work out of the box using the provided installation instructions, but there are a few things to keep in mind.

Ensure that:

- The Cluster Autoscaler's version matches the Cluster's Version. Cross version compatibility is not tested or supported.
- Auto Discovery is enabled, unless you have specific advanced use cases that prevent use of this mode.

Employ least privileged access to the IAM role

When the Auto Discovery is used, we strongly recommend that you employ least privilege access by limiting Actions `autoscaling:SetDesiredCapacity` and

`autoscaling:TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup` to the Auto Scaling groups that are scoped to the current cluster.

This will prevents a Cluster Autoscaler running in one cluster from modifying nodegroups in a different cluster even if the `--node-group-auto-discovery` argument wasn't scoped down to the nodegroups of the cluster using tags (for example `k8s.io/cluster-autoscaler/<cluster-name>`).

```
{
    "Version":"2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "autoscaling:SetDesiredCapacity",
                "autoscaling:TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup"
            ],
            "Resource": "*",
            "Condition": {
                "StringEquals": {
                    "aws:ResourceTag/k8s.io/cluster-autoscaler/enabled": "true",
                    "aws:ResourceTag/k8s.io/cluster-autoscaler/my-cluster": "owned"
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "autoscaling:DescribeAutoScalingGroups",
                "autoscaling:DescribeAutoScalingInstances",
                "autoscaling:DescribeLaunchConfigurations",
                "autoscaling:DescribeScalingActivities",
                "autoscaling:DescribeTags",
                "ec2:DescribeImages",
                "ec2:DescribeInstanceTypes",
                "ec2:DescribeLaunchTemplateVersions",
                "ec2:GetInstanceTypesFromInstanceRequirements",
                "eks:DescribeNodegroup"
            ],
            "Resource": "*"
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

Configuring your Node Groups

Effective autoscaling starts with correctly configuring a set of Node Groups for your cluster. Selecting the right set of Node Groups is key to maximizing availability and reducing cost across your workloads. AWS implements Node Groups using EC2 Auto Scaling Groups, which are flexible to a large number of use cases. However, the Cluster Autoscaler makes some assumptions about your Node Groups. Keeping your EC2 Auto Scaling Group configurations consistent with these assumptions will minimize undesired behavior.

Ensure that:

- Each Node in a Node Group has identical scheduling properties, such as Labels, Taints, and Resources.
  - For MixedInstancePolicies, the Instance Types must be of the same shape for CPU, Memory, and GPU
  - The first Instance Type specified in the policy will be used to simulate scheduling.
  - If your policy has additional Instance Types with more resources, resources may be wasted after scale out.
  - If your policy has additional Instance Types with less resources, pods may fail to schedule on the instances.
- Node Groups with many nodes are preferred over many Node Groups with fewer nodes. This will have the biggest impact on scalability.
- Wherever possible, prefer EC2 features when both systems provide support (e.g. Regions, MixedInstancePolicy)

> **Note**
>
> We recommend using EKS Managed Node Groups. Managed Node Groups come with powerful management features, including features for Cluster Autoscaler like automatic EC2 Auto Scaling Group discovery and graceful node termination.

Optimizing for Performance and Scalability

Understanding the autoscaling algorithm's runtime complexity will help you tune the Cluster Autoscaler to continue operating smoothly in large clusters with greater than 1,000 nodes.

The primary knobs for tuning scalability of the Cluster Autoscaler are the resources provided to the process, the scan interval of the algorithm, and the number of Node Groups in the cluster. There are other factors involved in the true runtime complexity of this algorithm, such as scheduling plugin complexity and number of pods. These are considered to be unconfigurable parameters as they are natural to the cluster's workload and cannot easily be tuned.

The Cluster Autoscaler loads the entire cluster's state into memory, including Pods, Nodes, and Node Groups. On each scan interval, the algorithm identifies unschedulable pods and simulates scheduling for each Node Group. Tuning these factors come with different tradeoffs which should be carefully considered for your use case.

Vertically Autoscaling the Cluster Autoscaler

The simplest way to scale the Cluster Autoscaler to larger clusters is to increase the resource requests for its deployment. Both memory and CPU should be increased for large clusters, though this varies significantly with cluster size. The autoscaling algorithm stores all pods and nodes in memory, which can result in a memory footprint larger than a gigabyte in some cases. Increasing resources is typically done manually. If you find that constant resource tuning is creating an operational burden, consider using the Addon Resizer or Vertical Pod Autoscaler.

Reducing the number of Node Groups

Minimizing the number of node groups is one way to ensure that the Cluster Autoscaler will continue to perform well on large clusters. This may be challenging for some organizations who structure their node groups per team or per application. While this is fully supported by the Kubernetes API, this is considered to be a Cluster Autoscaler anti-pattern with repercussions for scalability. There are many reasons to use multiple node groups (e.g. Spot or GPUs), but in many cases there are alternative designs that achieve the same effect while using a small number of groups.

Ensure that:

- Pod isolation is done using Namespaces rather than Node Groups.
  - This may not be possible in low-trust multi-tenant clusters.

  - Pod ResourceRequests and ResourceLimits are properly set to avoid resource contention.
  - Larger instance types will result in more optimal bin packing and reduced system pod overhead.
- NodeTaints or NodeSelectors are used to schedule pods as the exception, not as the rule.
- Regional resources are defined as a single EC2 Auto Scaling Group with multiple Availability Zones.

Reducing the Scan Interval

A low scan interval (e.g. 10 seconds) will ensure that the Cluster Autoscaler responds as quickly as possible when pods become unschedulable. However, each scan results in many API calls to the Kubernetes API and EC2 Auto Scaling Group or EKS Managed Node Group APIs. These API calls can result in rate limiting or even service unavailability for your Kubernetes Control Plane.

The default scan interval is 10 seconds, but on AWS, launching a node takes significantly longer to launch a new instance. This means that it's possible to increase the interval without significantly increasing overall scale up time. For example, if it takes 2 minutes to launch a node, changing the interval to 1 minute will result a tradeoff of 6x reduced API calls for 38% slower scale ups.

Sharding Across Node Groups

The Cluster Autoscaler can be configured to operate on a specific set of Node Groups. Using this functionality, it's possible to deploy multiple instances of the Cluster Autoscaler, each configured to operate on a different set of Node Groups. This strategy enables you use arbitrarily large numbers of Node Groups, trading cost for scalability. We only recommend using this as a last resort for improving performance.

The Cluster Autoscaler was not originally designed for this configuration, so there are some side effects. Since the shards do not communicate, it's possible for multiple autoscalers to attempt to schedule an unschedulable pod. This can result in unnecessary scale out of multiple Node Groups. These extra nodes will scale back in after the `scale-down-delay`.

```
metadata:
  name: cluster-autoscaler
  namespace: cluster-autoscaler-1

...

--nodes=1:10:k8s-worker-asg-1
```

```
--nodes=1:10:k8s-worker-asg-2

---

metadata:
  name: cluster-autoscaler
  namespace: cluster-autoscaler-2

...

--nodes=1:10:k8s-worker-asg-3
--nodes=1:10:k8s-worker-asg-4
```

Ensure that:

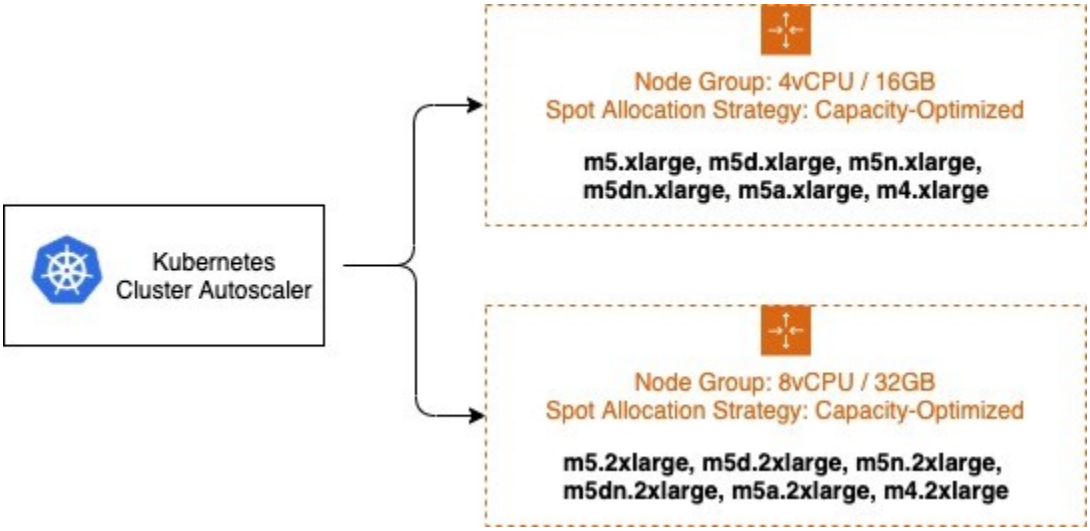
- Each shard is configured to point to a unique set of EC2 Auto Scaling Groups
- Each shard is deployed to a separate namespace to avoid leader election conflicts

Optimizing for Cost and Availability

Spot Instances

You can use Spot Instances in your node groups and save up to 90% off the on-demand price, with the trade-off the Spot Instances can be interrupted at any time when EC2 needs the capacity back. Insufficient Capacity Errors will occur when your EC2 Auto Scaling group cannot scale up due to lack of available capacity. Maximizing diversity by selecting many instance families can increase your chance of achieving your desired scale by tapping into many Spot capacity pools, and decrease the impact of Spot Instance interruptions on your cluster availability. Mixed Instance Policies with Spot Instances are a great way to increase diversity without increasing the number of node groups. Keep in mind, if you need guaranteed resources, use On-Demand Instances instead of Spot Instances.

It's critical that all Instance Types have similar resource capacity when configuring Mixed Instance Policies. The autoscaler's scheduling simulator uses the first InstanceType in the MixedInstancePolicy. If subsequent Instance Types are larger, resources may be wasted after a scale up. If smaller, your pods may fail to schedule on the new instances due to insufficient capacity. For example, M4, M5, M5a, and M5n instances all have similar amounts of CPU and Memory and are great candidates for a MixedInstancePolicy. The EC2 Instance Selector tool can help you identify similar instance types.



It's recommended to isolate On-Demand and Spot capacity into separate EC2 Auto Scaling groups. This is preferred over using a base capacity strategy because the scheduling properties are fundamentally different. Since Spot Instances be interrupted at any time (when EC2 needs the capacity back), users will often taint their preemptable nodes, requiring an explicit pod toleration to the preemption behavior. These taints result in different scheduling properties for the nodes, so they should be separated into multiple EC2 Auto Scaling Groups.

The Cluster Autoscaler has a concept of Expanders, which provide different strategies for selecting which Node Group to scale. The strategy `--expander=least-waste` is a good general purpose default, and if you're going to use multiple node groups for Spot Instance diversification (as described in the image above), it could help further cost-optimize the node groups by scaling the group which would be best utilized after the scaling activity.

Prioritizing a node group / ASG

You may also configure priority based autoscaling by using the Priority expander. `--expander=priority` enables your cluster to prioritize a node group / ASG, and if it is unable to scale for any reason, it will choose the next node group in the prioritized list. This is useful in situations where, for example, you want to use P3 instance types because their GPU provides optimal performance for your workload, but as a second option you can also use P2 instance types.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ConfigMap
metadata:
  name: cluster-autoscaler-priority-expander
  namespace: kube-system
```

```
data:
  priorities: |-
    10:
      - .*p2-node-group.*
    50:
      - .*p3-node-group.*
```

Cluster Autoscaler will try to scale up the EC2 Auto Scaling group matching the name *p3-node-group*. If this operation does not succeed within `--max-node-provision-time`, it will attempt to scale an EC2 Auto Scaling group matching the name *p2-node-group*. This value defaults to 15 minutes and can be reduced for more responsive node group selection, though if the value is too low, it can cause unnecessary scale outs.

Overprovisioning

The Cluster Autoscaler minimizes costs by ensuring that nodes are only added to the cluster when needed and are removed when unused. This significantly impacts deployment latency because many pods will be forced to wait for a node scale up before they can be scheduled. Nodes can take multiple minutes to become available, which can increase pod scheduling latency by an order of magnitude.

This can be mitigated using overprovisioning, which trades cost for scheduling latency. Overprovisioning is implemented using temporary pods with negative priority, which occupy space in the cluster. When newly created pods are unschedulable and have higher priority, the temporary pods will be preempted to make room. The temporary pods then become unschedulable, triggering the Cluster Autoscaler to scale out new overprovisioned nodes.

There are other less obvious benefits to overprovisioning. Without overprovisioning, one of the side effects of a highly utilized cluster is that pods will make less optimal scheduling decisions using the `preferredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution` rule of Pod or Node Affinity. A common use case for this is to separate pods for a highly available application across availability zones using AntiAffinity. Overprovisioning can significantly increase the chance that a node of the correct zone is available.

The amount of overprovisioned capacity is a careful business decision for your organization. At its core, it's a tradeoff between performance and cost. One way to make this decision is to determine your average scale up frequency and divide it by the amount of time it takes to scale up a new node. For example, if on average you require a new node every 30 seconds and EC2 takes 30 seconds to provision a new node, a single node of overprovisioning will ensure that

there's always an extra node available, reducing scheduling latency by 30 seconds at the cost of a single additional EC2 Instance. To improve zonal scheduling decisions, overprovision a number of nodes equal to the number of availability zones in your EC2 Auto Scaling Group to ensure that the scheduler can select the best zone for incoming pods.

Prevent Scale Down Eviction

Some workloads are expensive to evict. Big data analysis, machine learning tasks, and test runners will eventually complete, but must be restarted if interrupted. The Cluster Autoscaler will attempt to scale down any node under the scale-down-utilization-threshold, which will interrupt any remaining pods on the node. This can be prevented by ensuring that pods that are expensive to evict are protected by a label recognized by the Cluster Autoscaler.

Ensure that:

- Expensive to evict pods have the annotation `cluster-autoscaler.kubernetes.io/safe-to-evict=false`

Advanced Use Cases

EBS Volumes

Persistent storage is critical for building stateful applications, such as database or distributed caches. EBS Volumes enable this use case on Kubernetes, but are limited to a specific zone. These applications can be highly available if sharded across multiple AZs using a separate EBS Volume for each AZ. The Cluster Autoscaler can then balance the scaling of the EC2 Autoscaling Groups.

Ensure that:

- Node group balancing is enabled by setting `balance-similar-node-groups=true`.
- Node Groups are configured with identical settings except for different availability zones and EBS Volumes.

Co-Scheduling

Machine learning distributed training jobs benefit significantly from the minimized latency of same-zone node configurations. These workloads deploy multiple pods to a specific zone. This can be achieved by setting Pod Affinity for all co-scheduled pods or Node Affinity using

`topologyKey: failure-domain.beta.kubernetes.io/zone`. The Cluster Autoscaler will then scale out a specific zone to match demands. You may wish to allocate multiple EC2 Auto Scaling Groups, one per availability zone to enable failover for the entire co-scheduled workload.

Ensure that:

- Node group balancing is enabled by setting `balance-similar-node-groups=false`
- Node Affinity and/or Pod Preemption is used when clusters include both Regional and Zonal Node Groups.
  - Use Node Affinity to force or encourage regional pods to avoid zonal Node Groups, and vice versa.
  - If zonal pods schedule onto regional node groups, this will result in imbalanced capacity for your regional pods.
  - If your zonal workloads can tolerate disruption and relocation, configure Pod Preemption to enable regionally scaled pods to force preemption and rescheduling on a less contested zone.

Accelerators

Some clusters take advantage of specialized hardware accelerators such as GPU. When scaling out, the accelerator device plugin can take several minutes to advertise the resource to the cluster. The Cluster Autoscaler has simulated that this node will have the accelerator, but until the accelerator becomes ready and updates the node's available resources, pending pods can not be scheduled on the node. This can result in repeated unnecessary scale out.

Additionally, nodes with accelerators and high CPU or Memory utilization will not be considered for scale down, even if the accelerator is unused. This behavior can be expensive due to the relative cost of accelerators. Instead, the Cluster Autoscaler can apply special rules to consider nodes for scale down if they have unoccupied accelerators.

To ensure the correct behavior for these cases, you can configure the kubelet on your accelerator nodes to label the node before it joins the cluster. The Cluster Autoscaler will use this label selector to trigger the accelerator optimized behavior.

Ensure that:

- The Kubelet for GPU nodes is configured with `--node-labels k8s.amazonaws.com/accelerator=$ACCELERATOR_TYPE`
- Nodes with Accelerators adhere to the identical scheduling properties rule noted above.

Scaling from 0

Cluster Autoscaler is capable of scaling Node Groups to and from zero, which can yield significant cost savings. It detects the CPU, memory, and GPU resources of an Auto Scaling Group by inspecting the InstanceType specified in its LaunchConfiguration or LaunchTemplate. Some pods require additional resources like `WindowsENI` or `PrivateIPv4Address` or specific NodeSelectors or Taints which cannot be discovered from the LaunchConfiguration. The Cluster Autoscaler can account for these factors by discovering them from tags on the EC2 Auto Scaling Group. For example:

```
Key: k8s.io/cluster-autoscaler/node-template/resources/$RESOURCE_NAME
Value: 5
Key: k8s.io/cluster-autoscaler/node-template/label/$LABEL_KEY
Value: $LABEL_VALUE
Key: k8s.io/cluster-autoscaler/node-template/taint/$TAINT_KEY
Value: NoSchedule
```

> **Note**
>
> Keep in mind, when scaling to zero your capacity is returned to EC2 and may be unavailable in the future.

Additional Parameters

There are many configuration options that can be used to tune the behavior and performance of the Cluster Autoscaler. A complete list of parameters is available on GitHub.

Parameter	Description	Default
scan-interval	How often cluster is reevaluated for scale up or down	10 seconds
max-empty-bulk-delete	Maximum number of empty nodes that can be deleted at the same time.	10

Parameter	Description	Default
scale-down-delay-after-add	How long after scale up that scale down evaluation resumes	10 minutes
scale-down-delay-after-delete	How long after node deletion that scale down evaluation resumes, defaults to scan-interval	scan-interval
scale-down-delay-after-failure	How long after scale down failure that scale down evaluation resumes	3 minutes
scale-down-unneeded-time	How long a node should be unneeded before it is eligible for scale down	10 minutes
scale-down-unready-time	How long an unready node should be unneeded before it is eligible for scale down	20 minutes
scale-down-utilization-threshold	Node utilization level, defined as sum of requested resources divided by capacity, below which a node can be considered for scale down	0.5

Parameter	Description	Default
scale-down-non-empty-candidates-count	Maximum number of non empty nodes considered in one iteration as candidates for scale down with drain. Lower value means better CA responsiveness but possible slower scale down latency. Higher value can affect CA performance with big clusters (hundreds of nodes). Set to non positive value to turn this heuristic off - CA will not limit the number of nodes it considers.“	30
scale-down-candidates-pool-ratio	A ratio of nodes that are considered as additional non empty candidates for scale down when some candidates from previous iteration are no longer valid. Lower value means better CA responsiveness but possible slower scale down latency. Higher value can affect CA performance with big clusters (hundreds of nodes). Set to 1.0 to turn this heuristics off - CA will take all nodes as additional candidates.	0.1

Parameter	Description	Default
scale-down-candidates-pool-min-count	Minimum number of nodes that are considered as additional non empty candidates for scale down when some candidates from previous iteration are no longer valid. When calculating the pool size for additional candidates we take `max(#nodes * scale-down-candidates-pool-ratio, scale-down-candidates-pool-min-count)`	50

Additional Resources

This page contains a list of Cluster Autoscaler presentations and demos. If you'd like to add a presentation or demo here, please send a pull request.

Presentation/Demo	Presenters
Autoscaling and Cost Optimization on Kubernetes: From 0 to 100	Guy Templeton, Skyscanner & Jiaxin Shan, Amazon
SIG-Autoscaling Deep Dive	Maciek Pytel & Marcin Wielgus

References

- https://github.com/kubernetes/autoscaler/blob/master/cluster-autoscaler/FAQ.md
- https://github.com/kubernetes/autoscaler/blob/master/cluster-autoscaler/cloudprovider/aws/README.md
- https://github.com/aws/amazon-ec2-instance-selector

- https://github.com/aws/aws-node-termination-handler

Best Practices for Reliability

This section provides guidance about making workloads running on EKS resilient and highly-available

How to use this guide

This guide is meant for developers and architects who want to develop and operate highly-available and fault-tolerant services in EKS. The guide is organized into different topic areas for easier consumption. Each topic starts with a brief overview, followed by a list of recommendations and best practices for the reliability of your EKS clusters.

Introduction

The reliability best practices for EKS have been grouped under the following topics:

- Applications
- Control Plane
- Data Plane

What makes a system reliable? If a system can function consistently and meet demands in spite of changes in its environment over a period of time, it can be called reliable. To achieve this, the system has to detect failures, automatically heal itself, and have the ability to scale based on demand.

Customers can use Kubernetes as a foundation to operate mission-critical applications and services reliably. But aside from incorporating container-based application design principles, running workloads reliably also requires a reliable infrastructure. In Kubernetes, infrastructure comprises the control plane and data plane.

EKS provides a production-grade Kubernetes control plane that is designed to be highly-available and fault-tolerant.

In EKS, AWS is responsible for the reliability of the Kubernetes control plane. EKS runs Kubernetes control plane across three availability zones in an AWS Region. It automatically manages the availability and scalability of the Kubernetes API servers and the etcd cluster.

The responsibility for the data plane's reliability is shared between you, the customer, and AWS. EKS offers four worker node options for deploying the Kubernetes data plane.

EKS Auto Mode, which is the most managed option, handles provisioning, scaling and updates of the data plane along with providing managed Compute, Networking, and Storage capabilities. Auto Mode AMIs are released frequently and clusters are updated to the latest AMI automatically to deploy CVE fixes and security patches. You have the ability to control when this occurs by configuring disruption controls on your Auto Mode NodePools.

Fargate handles provisioning and scaling of the data plane by running one Pod per Node. The third option, managed nodes groups, handles provisioning, and updates of the data plane. And finally, self-managed nodes is the least managed option for the data plane. The more AWS-managed data plane you use, the less responsibility you have.

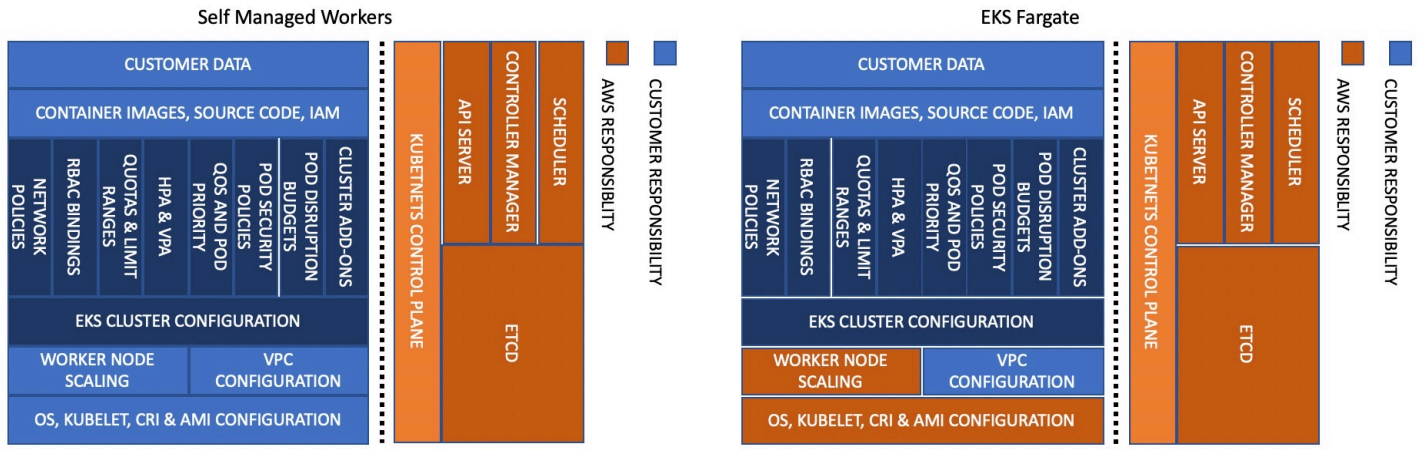
Managed node groups automate the provisioning and lifecycle management of EC2 nodes. You can use the EKS API (using EKS console, AWS API, AWS CLI, CloudFormation, Terraform, or `eksctl`), to create, scale, and upgrade managed nodes. Managed nodes run EKS-optimized Amazon Linux 2 EC2 instances in your account, and you can install custom software packages by enabling SSH access. When you provision managed nodes, they run as part of an EKS-managed Auto Scaling Group that can span multiple Availability Zones; you control this through the subnets you provide when creating managed nodes. EKS also automatically tags managed nodes so they can be used with Cluster Autoscaler.

Amazon EKS follows the shared responsibility model for CVEs and security patches on managed node groups. Because managed nodes run the Amazon EKS-optimized AMIs, Amazon EKS is responsible for building patched versions of these AMIs when bug fixes. However, you are responsible for deploying these patched AMI versions to your managed node groups.

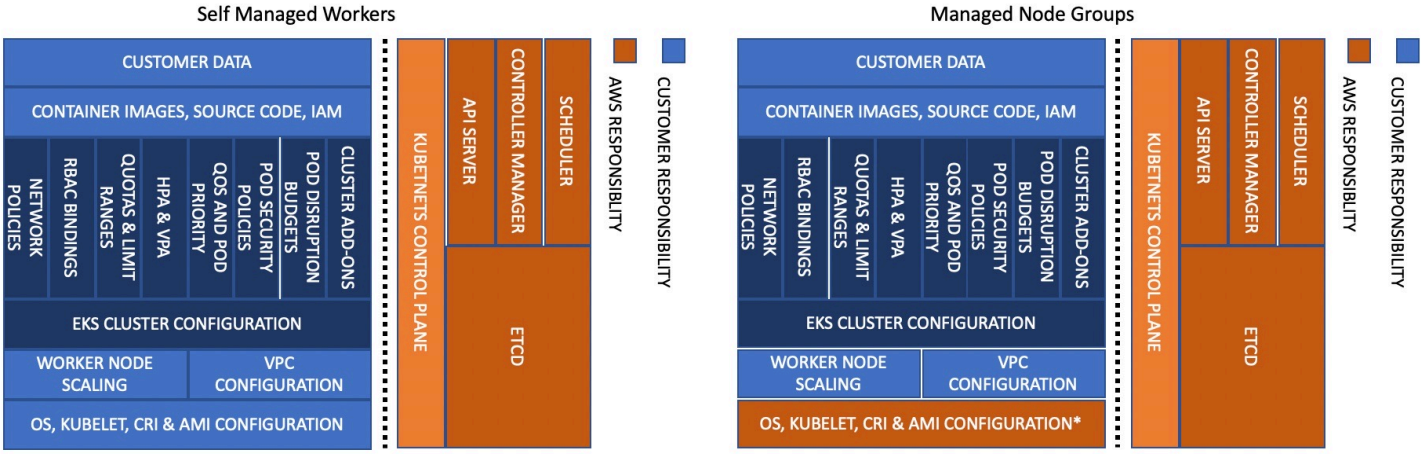
EKS also manages updating the nodes although you have to initiate the update process. The process of updating managed node is explained in the EKS documentation.

If you run self-managed nodes, you can use Amazon EKS-optimized Linux AMI to create worker nodes. You are responsible for patching and upgrading the AMI and the nodes. It is a best practice to use `eksctl`, CloudFormation, or infrastructure as code tools to provision self-managed nodes because this will make it easy for you to upgrade self-managed nodes. Consider migrating to new nodes when updating worker nodes because the migration process **taints** the old node group as `NoSchedule` and **drains** the nodes after a new stack is ready to accept the existing pod workload. However, you can also perform an in-place upgrade of self-managed nodes.

Shared Responsibility Model - Fargate



Shared Responsibility Model - MNG



This guide includes a set of recommendations that you can use to improve the reliability of your EKS data plane, Kubernetes core components, and your applications.

Feedback

This guide is being released on GitHub to collect direct feedback and suggestions from the broader EKS/Kubernetes community. If you have a best practice that you feel we ought to include in the guide, please file an issue or submit a PR in the GitHub repository. We intend to update the guide periodically as new features are added to the service or when a new best practice evolves.

Running highly-available applications

Your customers expect your application to be always available, including when you're making changes and especially during spikes in traffic. A scalable and resilient architecture keeps your applications and services running without disruptions, which keeps your users happy. A scalable infrastructure grows and shrinks based on the needs of the business. Eliminating single points of failure is a critical step towards improving an application's availability and making it resilient.

With Kubernetes, you can operate your applications and run them in a highly-available and resilient fashion. Its declarative management ensures that once you've set up the application, Kubernetes will continuously try to match the current state with the desired state.

Recommendations

Configure Pod Disruption Budgets

Pod Disruption Budgets are used to limit the amount of concurrent disruption that an application will experience. They should be configured for workloads if its important to always have a portion of that workload available. EKS Auto Mode, Karpenter, and Cluster Autoscaler are aware of and adhere to configured Pod Disruption Budgets when scaling down. EKS Auto Mode, Karpenter and Managed Node Groups also adhere to Pod Disruption Budgets when updating Nodes

Avoid running singleton Pods

If your entire application runs in a single Pod, then your application will be unavailable if that Pod gets terminated. Instead of deploying applications using individual pods, create Deployments. If a Pod that is created by a Deployment fails or gets terminated, the Deployment controller will start a new pod to ensure the specified number of replica Pods are always running.

Run multiple replicas

Running multiple replicas Pods of an app using a Deployment helps it run in a highly-available manner. If one replica fails, the remaining replicas will still function, albeit at reduced capacity until Kubernetes creates another Pod to make up for the loss. Furthermore, you can use the Horizontal Pod Autoscaler to scale replicas automatically based on workload demand.

Schedule replicas across nodes

Running multiple replicas won't be very useful if all the replicas are running on the same node, and the node becomes unavailable. Consider using pod anti-affinity or pod topology spread constraints to spread replicas of a Deployment across multiple worker nodes.

You can further improve a typical application's reliability by running it across multiple AZs.

Using Pod anti-affinity rules

The manifest below tells Kubernetes scheduler to *prefer* to place pods on separate nodes and AZs. It doesn't require distinct nodes or AZ because if it did, then Kubernetes will not be able to schedule any pods once there is a pod running in each AZ. If your application requires just three replicas, you can use `requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution` for `topologyKey: topology.kubernetes.io/zone`, and Kubernetes scheduler will not schedule two pods in the same AZ.

```
apiVersion: apps/v1
kind: Deployment
metadata:
  name: spread-host-az
  labels:
    app: web-server
spec:
  replicas: 4
  selector:
    matchLabels:
      app: web-server
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: web-server
    spec:
      affinity:
        podAntiAffinity:
          preferredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
          - podAffinityTerm:
              labelSelector:
                matchExpressions:
                - key: app
                  operator: In
                  values:
```

```
                - web-server
            topologyKey: topology.kubernetes.io/zone
          weight: 100
        - podAffinityTerm:
            labelSelector:
              matchExpressions:
              - key: app
                operator: In
                values:
                - web-server
            topologyKey: kubernetes.io/hostname
          weight: 99
    containers:
    - name: web-app
      image: nginx:1.16-alpine
```

Using Pod topology spread constraints

Similar to pod anti-affinity rules, pod topology spread constraints allow you to make your application available across different failure (or topology) domains like hosts or AZs. This approach works very well when you're trying to ensure fault tolerance as well as availability by having multiple replicas in each of the different topology domains. Pod anti-affinity rules, on the other hand, can easily produce a result where you have a single replica in a topology domain because the pods with an anti-affinity toward each other have a repelling effect. In such cases, a single replica on a dedicated node isn't ideal for fault tolerance nor is it a good use of resources. With topology spread constraints, you have more control over the spread or distribution that the scheduler should try to apply across the topology domains. Here are some important properties to use in this approach:

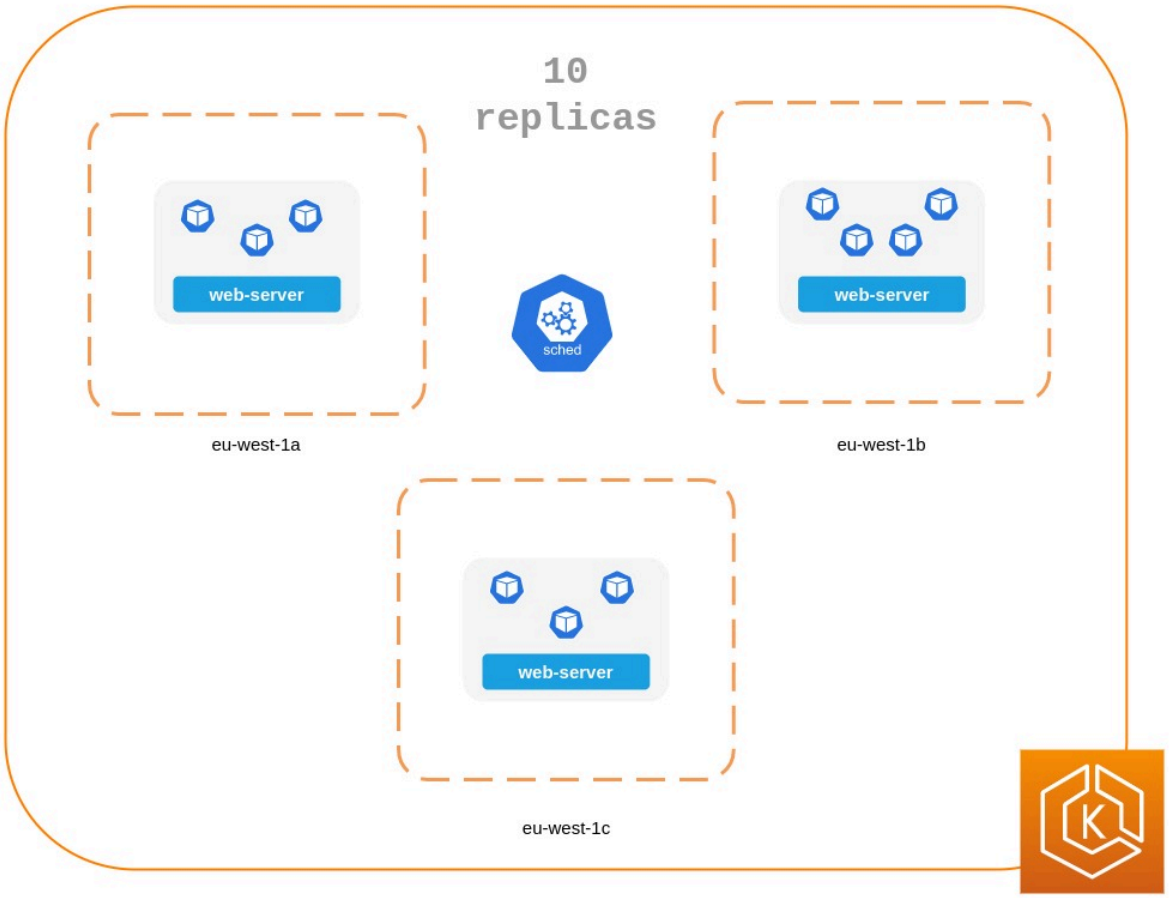
1. The `maxSkew` is used to control or determine the maximum point to which things can be uneven across the topology domains. For example, if an application has 10 replicas and is deployed across 3 AZs, you can't get an even spread, but you can influence how uneven the distribution will be. In this case, the `maxSkew` can be anything between 1 and 10. A value of 1 means you can potentially end up with a spread like `4,3,3`, `3,4,3` or `3,3,4` across the 3 AZs. In contrast, a value of 10 means you can potentially end up with a spread like `10,0,0`, `0,10,0` or `0,0,10` across 3 AZs.
2. The `topologyKey` is a key for one of the node labels and defines the type of topology domain that should be used for the pod distribution. For example, a zonal spread would have the following key-value pair:

```
topologyKey: "topology.kubernetes.io/zone"
```

3. The `whenUnsatisfiable` property is used to determine how you want the scheduler to respond if the desired constraints can't be satisfied.
4. The `labelSelector` is used to find matching pods so that the scheduler can be aware of them when deciding where to place pods in accordance with the constraints that you specify.

In addition to these above, there are other fields that you can read about further in the Kubernetes documentation.

Pod topology spread constraints across 3 AZs




```
apiVersion: apps/v1
kind: Deployment
```

```
metadata:
  name: spread-host-az
  labels:
    app: web-server
spec:
  replicas: 10
  selector:
    matchLabels:
      app: web-server
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: web-server
    spec:
      topologySpreadConstraints:
      - maxSkew: 1
        topologyKey: "topology.kubernetes.io/zone"
        whenUnsatisfiable: ScheduleAnyway
        labelSelector:
          matchLabels:
            app: express-test
      containers:
      - name: web-app
        image: nginx:1.16-alpine
```

Run Kubernetes Metrics Server

Install the Kubernetes metrics server to help scale your applications. Kubernetes autoscaler add-ons like HPA and VPA need to track metrics of applications to scale them. The metrics-server collects resource metrics that can be used to make scaling decisions. The metrics are collected from kubelets and served in Metrics API format.

The metrics server doesn't retain any data, and it's not a monitoring solution. Its purpose is to expose CPU and memory usage metrics to other systems. If you want to track your application's state over time, you need a monitoring tool like Prometheus or Amazon CloudWatch.

Follow the EKS documentation to install metrics-server in your EKS cluster.

Horizontal Pod Autoscaler (HPA)

HPA can automatically scale your application in response to demand and help you avoid impacting your customers during peak traffic. It is implemented as a control loop in Kubernetes that periodically queries metrics from APIs that provide resource metrics.

HPA can retrieve metrics from the following APIs: 1. `metrics.k8s.io` also known as Resource Metrics API — Provides CPU and memory usage for pods 2. `custom.metrics.k8s.io` — Provides metrics from other metric collectors like Prometheus; these metrics are **internal** to your Kubernetes cluster. 3. `external.metrics.k8s.io` — Provides metrics that are **external** to your Kubernetes cluster (E.g., SQS Queue Depth, ELB latency).

You must use one of these three APIs to provide the metric to scale your application.

Scaling applications based on custom or external metrics

You can use custom or external metrics to scale your application on metrics other than CPU or memory utilization. Custom Metrics API servers provide the `custom-metrics.k8s.io` API that HPA can use to autoscale applications.

You can use the Prometheus Adapter for Kubernetes Metrics APIs to collect metrics from Prometheus and use with the HPA. In this case, Prometheus adapter will expose Prometheus metrics in Metrics API format.

Once you deploy the Prometheus Adapter, you can query custom metrics using kubectl. `kubectl get –raw /apis/custom.metrics.k8s.io/v1beta1/`

External metrics, as the name suggests, provide the Horizontal Pod Autoscaler the ability to scale deployments using metrics that are external to the Kubernetes cluster. For example, in batch processing workloads, it is common to scale the number of replicas based on the number of jobs in flight in an SQS queue.

To autoscale Kubernetes workloads you can use KEDA (Kubernetes Event-driven Autoscaling), an open-source project that can drive container scaling based on a number of custom events. This AWS blog outlines how to use Amazon Managed Service for Prometheus for Kubernetes workload auto-scaling.

Vertical Pod Autoscaler (VPA)

VPA automatically adjusts the CPU and memory reservation for your Pods to help you "right-size" your applications. For applications that need to be scaled vertically - which is done by increasing

resource allocation - you can use VPA to automatically scale Pod replicas or provide scaling recommendations.

Your application may become temporarily unavailable if VPA needs to scale it because VPA's current implementation does not perform in-place adjustments to Pods; instead, it will recreate the Pod that needs to be scaled.

EKS Documentation includes a walkthrough for setting up VPA.

Fairwinds Goldilocks project provides a dashboard to visualize VPA recommendations for CPU and memory requests and limits. Its VPA update mode allows you to auto-scale Pods based on VPA recommendations.

Updating applications

Modern applications require rapid innovation with a high degree of stability and availability. Kubernetes gives you the tools to update your applications continuously without disrupting your customers.

Let's look at some of the best practices that make it possible to quickly deploy changes without sacrificing availability.

Have a mechanism to perform rollbacks

Having an undo button can evade disasters. It is a best practice to test deployments in a separate lower environment (test or development environment) before updating the production cluster. Using a CI/CD pipeline can help you automate and test deployments. With a continuous deployment pipeline, you can quickly revert to the older version if the upgrade happens to be defective.

You can use Deployments to update a running application. This is typically done by updating the container image. You can use `kubectl` to update a Deployment like this:

```
kubectl --record deployment.apps/nginx-deployment set image nginx-deployment
 nginx=nginx:1.16.1
```

The `--record` argument record the changes to the Deployment and helps you if you need to perform a rollback. `kubectl rollout history deployment` shows you the recorded changes to Deployments in your cluster. You can rollback a change using `kubectl rollout undo deployment <DEPLOYMENT_NAME>`.

By default, when you update a Deployment that requires a recreation of pods, Deployment will perform a rolling update. In other words, Kubernetes will only update a portion of the running pods in a Deployment and not all the Pods at once. You can control how Kubernetes performs rolling updates through `RollingUpdateStrategy` property.

When performing a *rolling update* of a Deployment, you can use the `Max Unavailable` property to specify the maximum number of Pods that can be unavailable during the update. The `Max Surge` property of Deployment allows you to set the maximum number of Pods that can be created over the desired number of Pods.

Consider adjusting `max unavailable` to ensure that a rollout doesn't disrupt your customers. For example, Kubernetes sets 25% `max unavailable` by default, which means if you have 100 Pods, you may have only 75 Pods actively working during a rollout. If your application needs a minimum of 80 Pods, this rollout can be disruptive. Instead, you can set `max unavailable` to 20% to ensure that there are at least 80 functional Pods throughout the rollout.

Use blue/green deployments

Changes are inherently risky, but changes that cannot be undone can be potentially catastrophic. Change procedures that allow you to effectively turn back time through a *rollback* make enhancements and experimentation safer. Blue/green deployments give you a method to quickly retract the changes if things go wrong. In this deployment strategy, you create an environment for the new version. This environment is identical to the current version of the application being updated. Once the new environment is provisioned, traffic is routed to the new environment. If the new version produces the desired results without generating errors, the old environment is terminated. Otherwise, traffic is restored to the old version.

You can perform blue/green deployments in Kubernetes by creating a new Deployment that is identical to the existing version's Deployment. Once you verify that the Pods in the new Deployment are running without errors, you can start sending traffic to the new Deployment by changing the `selector` spec in the Service that routes traffic to your application's Pods.

Many continuous integration tools such as Flux, Jenkins, and Spinnaker let you automate blue/green deployments. AWS Containers Blog includes a walkthrough using AWS Load Balancer Controller: Using AWS Load Balancer Controller for blue/green deployment, canary deployment and A/B testing

Use Canary deployments

Canary deployments are a variant of blue/green deployments that can significantly remove risk from changes. In this deployment strategy, you create a new Deployment with fewer Pods alongside your old Deployment, and divert a small percentage of traffic to the new Deployment. If metrics indicate that the new version is performing as well or better than the existing version, you progressively increase traffic to the new Deployment while scaling it up until all traffic is diverted to the new Deployment. If there's an issue, you can route all traffic to the old Deployment and stop sending traffic to the new Deployment.

Although Kubernetes offers no native way to perform canary deployments, you can use tools such as Flagger with Istio.

Health checks and self-healing

No software is bug-free, but Kubernetes can help you to minimize the impact of software failures. In the past, if an application crashed, someone had to remediate the situation by restarting the application manually. Kubernetes gives you the ability to detect software failures in your Pods and automatically replace them with new replicas. With Kubernetes you can monitor the health of your applications and automatically replace unhealthy instances.

Kubernetes supports three types of health-checks:

1. Liveness probe
2. Startup probe (supported in Kubernetes version 1.16+)
3. Readiness probe

Kubelet, the Kubernetes agent, is responsible for running all the above-mentioned checks. Kubelet can check a Pods' health in three ways: kubelet can either run a shell command inside a Pod's container, send an HTTP GET request to its container, or open a TCP socket on a specified port.

If you choose an `exec`-based probe, which runs a shell script inside a container, ensure that the shell command exits *before* the `timeoutSeconds` value expires. Otherwise, your node will have `<defunct>` processes, leading to node failure.

Recommendations

Use Liveness Probe to remove unhealthy pods

The Liveness probe can detect *deadlock* conditions where the process continues to run, but the application becomes unresponsive. For example, if you are running a web service that listens on port 80, you can configure a Liveness probe to send an HTTP GET request on Pod's port 80. Kubelet will periodically send a GET request to the Pod and expect a response; if the Pod responds between 200-399 then the kubelet considers that Pod is healthy; otherwise, the Pod will be marked as unhealthy. If a Pod fails health-checks continuously, the kubelet will terminate it.

You can use `initialDelaySeconds` to delay the first probe.

When using the Liveness Probe, ensure that your application doesn't run into a situation in which all Pods simultaneously fail the Liveness Probe because Kubernetes will try to replace all your Pods, which will render your application offline. Furthermore, Kubernetes will continue to create new Pods that will also fail Liveness Probes, putting unnecessary strain on the control plane. Avoid configuring the Liveness Probe to depend on an a factor that is external to your Pod, for example, a external database. In other words, a non-responsive external-to-your-Pod database shouldn't make your Pods fail their Liveness Probes.

Sandor Szücs's post LIVENESS PROBES ARE DANGEROUS describes problems that can be caused by misconfigured probes.

Use Startup Probe for applications that take longer to start

When your app needs additional time to startup, you can use the Startup Probe to delay the Liveness and Readiness Probe. For example, a Java app that needs to hydrate cache from a database may need up to two minutes before it is fully functional. Any Liveness or Readiness Probe until it becomes fully functional might fail. Configuring a Startup Probe will allow the Java app to become *healthy* before Liveness or Readiness Probe are executed.

Until the Startup Probe succeeds, all the other Probes are disabled. You can define the maximum time Kubernetes should wait for application startup. If, after the maximum configured time, the Pod still fails Startup Probes, it will be terminated, and a new Pod will be created.

The Startup Probe is similar to the Liveness Probe – if they fail, the Pod is recreated. As Ricardo A. explains in his post Fantastic Probes And How To Configure Them, Startup Probes should be used when the startup time of an application is unpredictable. If you know your application needs ten seconds to start, you should use Liveness/Readiness Probe with `initialDelaySeconds` instead.

Use Readiness Probe to detect partial unavailability

While the Liveness probe detects failures in an app that are resolved by terminating the Pod (hence, restarting the app), Readiness Probe detects conditions where the app may be *temporarily* unavailable. In these situations, the app may become temporarily unresponsive; however, it is expected to be healthy again once this operation completes.

For example, during intense disk I/O operations, applications may be temporarily unavailable to handle requests. Here, terminating the application's Pod is not a remedy; at the same time, additional requests sent to the Pod can fail.

You can use the Readiness Probe to detect temporary unavailability in your app and stop sending requests to its Pod until it becomes functional again. *Unlike Liveness Probe, where a failure would result in a recreation of Pod, a failed Readiness Probe would mean that Pod will not receive any traffic from Kubernetes Service*. When the Readiness Probe succeeds, Pod will resume receiving traffic from Service.

Just like the Liveness Probe, avoid configuring Readiness Probes that depend on a resource that's external to the Pod (such as a database). Here's a scenario where a poorly configured Readiness can render the application nonfunctional - if a Pod's Readiness Probe fails when the app's database is unreachable, other Pod replicas will also fail simultaneously since they share the same health-check criteria. Setting the probe in this way will ensure that whenever the database is unavailable, the Pod's Readiness Probes will fail, and Kubernetes will stop sending traffic *all* Pods.

A side-effect of using Readiness Probes is that they can increase the time it takes to update Deployments. New replicas will not receive traffic unless Readiness Probes are successful; until then, old replicas will continue to receive traffic.

Dealing with disruptions

Pods have a finite lifetime - even if you have long-running Pods, it's prudent to ensure Pods terminate correctly when the time comes. Depending on your upgrade strategy, Kubernetes cluster upgrades may require you to create new worker nodes, which requires all Pods to be recreated on newer nodes. Proper termination handling and Pod Disruption Budgets can help you avoid service disruptions as Pods are removed from older nodes and recreated on newer nodes.

The preferred way to upgrade worker nodes is by creating new worker nodes and terminating old ones. Before terminating worker nodes, you should `drain` it. When a worker node is drained,

all its pods are *safely* evicted. Safely is a key word here; when pods on a worker are evicted, they are not simply sent a `SIGKILL` signal. Instead, a `SIGTERM` signal is sent to the main process (PID 1) of each container in the Pods being evicted. After the `SIGTERM` signal is sent, Kubernetes will give the process some time (grace period) before a `SIGKILL` signal is sent. This grace period is 30 seconds by default; you can override the default by using `grace-period` flag in kubectl or declare `terminationGracePeriodSeconds` in your Podspec.

```
kubectl delete pod <pod name> –grace-period=<seconds>
```

It is common to have containers in which the main process doesn't have PID 1. Consider this Python-based sample container:

```
$ kubectl exec python-app -it ps
 PID USER TIME COMMAND
 1   root 0:00 {script.sh} /bin/sh ./script.sh
 5   root 0:00 python app.py
```

In this example, the shell script receives `SIGTERM`, the main process, which happens to be a Python application in this example, doesn't get a `SIGTERM` signal. When the Pod is terminated, the Python application will be killed abruptly. This can be remediated by changing the `ENTRYPOINT` of the container to launch the Python application. Alternatively, you can use a tool like dumb-init to ensure that your application can handle signals.

You can also use Container hooks to execute a script or an HTTP request at container start or stop. The `PreStop` hook action runs before the container receives a `SIGTERM` signal and must complete before this signal is sent. The `terminationGracePeriodSeconds` value applies from when the `PreStop` hook action begins executing, not when the `SIGTERM` signal is sent.

Recommendations

Protect critical workload with Pod Disruption Budgets

Pod Disruption Budget or PDB can temporarily halt the eviction process if the number of replicas of an application falls below the declared threshold. The eviction process will continue once the number of available replicas is over the threshold. You can use PDB to declare the `minAvailable` and `maxUnavailable` number of replicas. For example, if you want at least three copies of your app to be available, you can create a PDB.

```
apiVersion: policy/v1beta1
```

```
kind: PodDisruptionBudget
metadata:
  name: my-svc-pdb
spec:
  minAvailable: 3
  selector:
    matchLabels:
      app: my-svc
```

The above PDB policy tells Kubernetes to halt the eviction process until three or more replicas are available. Node draining respects `PodDisruptionBudgets`. During an EKS managed node group upgrade, nodes are drained with a fifteen-minute timeout. After fifteen minutes, if the update is not forced (the option is called Rolling update in the EKS console), the update fails. If the update is forced, the pods are deleted.

For self-managed nodes, you can also use tools like AWS Node Termination Handler, which ensures that the Kubernetes control plane responds appropriately to events that can cause your EC2 instance to become unavailable, such as EC2 maintenance events and EC2 Spot interruptions. It uses the Kubernetes API to cordon the node to ensure no new Pods are scheduled, then drains it, terminating any running Pods.

You can use Pod anti-affinity to schedule a Deployment's Pods on different nodes and avoid PDB related delays during node upgrades.

Practice chaos engineering

Chaos Engineering is the discipline of experimenting on a distributed system in order to build confidence in the system's capability to withstand turbulent conditions in production.

In his blog, Dominik Tornow explains that Kubernetes is a declarative system where " *the user supplies a representation of the desired state of the system to the system. The system then considers the current state and the desired state to determine the sequence of commands to transition from the current state to the desired state.* " This means Kubernetes always stores the *desired state* and if the system deviates, Kubernetes will take action to restore the state. For example, if a worker node becomes unavailable, Kubernetes will reschedule the Pods onto another worker node. Similarly, if a `replica` crashes, the Deployment Contoller will create a new `replica`. In this way, Kubernetes controllers automatically fix failures.

Chaos engineering tools like Gremlin help you test the resiliency of your Kubernetes cluster and identify single points of failure. Tools that introduce artificial chaos in your cluster (and

beyond) can uncover systemic weaknesses, present an opportunity to identify bottlenecks and misconfigurations, and rectify problems in a controlled environment. The Chaos Engineering philosophy advocates breaking things on purpose and stress testing infrastructure to minimize unanticipated downtime.

Use a Service Mesh

You can use a service mesh to improve your application's resiliency. Service meshes enable service-to-service communication and increase the observability of your microservices network. Most service mesh products work by having a small network proxy run alongside each service that intercepts and inspects the application's network traffic. You can place your application in a mesh without modifying your application. Using service proxy's built-in features, you can have it generate network statistics, create access logs, and add HTTP headers to outbound requests for distributed tracing.

A service mesh can help you make your microservices more resilient with features like automatic request retries, timeouts, circuit-breaking, and rate-limiting.

If you operate multiple clusters, you can use a service mesh to enable cross-cluster service-to-service communication.

Service Meshes

- Istio
- LinkerD
- Consul

Observability

Observability is an umbrella term that includes monitoring, logging, and tracing. Microservices based applications are distributed by nature. Unlike monolithic applications where monitoring a single system is sufficient, in a distributed application architecture, you need to monitor each component's performance. You can use cluster-level monitoring, logging, and distributed tracing systems to identify issues in your cluster before they disrupt your customers.

Kubernetes built-in tools for troubleshooting and monitoring are limited. The metrics-server collects resource metrics and stores them in memory but doesn't persist them. You can view the logs of a Pod using kubectl, but Kubernetes doesn't automatically retain logs. And the

implementation of distributed tracing is done either at the application code level or using services meshes.

Kubernetes' extensibility shines here. Kubernetes allows you to bring your preferred centralized monitoring, logging, and tracing solution.

Recommendations

Monitor your applications

The number of metrics you need to monitor in modern applications is growing continuously. It helps if you have an automated way to track your applications so you can focus on solving your customer's challenges. Cluster-wide monitoring tools like Prometheus or CloudWatch Container Insights can monitor your cluster and workload and provide you signals when, or preferably, before things go wrong.

Monitoring tools allow you to create alerts that your operations team can subscribe to. Consider rules to activate alarms for events that can, when exacerbated, lead to an outage or impact application performance.

If you're unclear on which metrics you should monitor, you can take inspiration from these methods:

- RED method. Stands for requests, errors, and duration.
- USE method. Stands for utilization, saturation, and errors.

Sysdig's post Best practices for alerting on Kubernetes includes a comprehensive list of components that can impact the availability of your applications.

Use Prometheus client library to expose application metrics

In addition to monitoring the state of the application and aggregating standard metrics, you can also use the Prometheus client library to expose application-specific custom metrics to improve the application's observability.

Use centralized logging tools to collect and persist logs

Logging in EKS falls under two categories: control plane logs and application logs. EKS control plane logging provides audit and diagnostic logs directly from the control plane to CloudWatch

Logs in your account. Application logs are logs produced by Pods running inside your cluster. Application logs include logs produced by Pods that run the business logic applications and Kubernetes system components such as CoreDNS, Cluster Autoscaler, Prometheus, etc.

EKS provide five types of control plane logs:

1. Kubernetes API server component logs
2. Audit
3. Authenticator
4. Controller manager
5. Scheduler

The controller manager and scheduler logs can help diagnose control plane problems such as bottlenecks and errors. By default, EKS control plane logs aren't sent to CloudWatch Logs. You can enable control plane logging and select the types of EKS control plane logs you'd like to capture for each cluster in your account

Collecting application logs requires installing a log aggregator tool like Fluent Bit, Fluentd, or CloudWatch Container Insights in your cluster.

Kubernetes log aggregator tools run as DaemonSets and scrape container logs from nodes. Application logs are then sent to a centralized destination for storage. For example, CloudWatch Container Insights can use either Fluent Bit or Fluentd to collect logs and ship them to CloudWatch Logs for storage. Fluent Bit and Fluentd support many popular log analytics systems such as Elasticsearch and InfluxDB giving you the ability to change the storage backend for your logs by modifying Fluent bit or Fluentd's log configuration.

Use a distributed tracing system to identify bottlenecks

A typical modern application has components distributed over the network, and its reliability depends on the proper functioning of each of the components that make up the application. You can use a distributed tracing solution to understand how requests flow and how systems communicate. Traces can show you where bottlenecks exist in your application network and prevent problems that can cause cascading failures.

You have two options to implement tracing in your applications: you can either implement distributed tracing at the code level using shared libraries or use a service mesh.

Implementing tracing at the code level can be disadvantageous. In this method, you have to make changes to your code. This is further complicated if you have polyglot applications. You're also responsible for maintaining yet another library, across your services.

Service Meshes like LinkerD and Istio can be used to implement distributed tracing in your application with minimal changes to the application code. You can use service mesh to standardize metrics generation, logging, and tracing.

Tracing tools like AWS X-Ray, Jaeger support both shared library and service mesh implementations.

Consider using a tracing tool like AWS X-Ray or Jaeger that supports both (shared library and service mesh) implementations so you will not have to switch tools if you later adopt service mesh.

EKS Control Plane

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service (EKS) is a managed Kubernetes service that makes it easy for you to run Kubernetes on AWS without needing to install, operate, and maintain your own Kubernetes control plane or worker nodes. It runs upstream Kubernetes and is certified Kubernetes conformant. This conformance ensures that EKS supports the Kubernetes APIs, just like the open-source community version that you can install on EC2 or on-premises. Existing applications running on upstream Kubernetes are compatible with Amazon EKS.

EKS automatically manages the availability and scalability of the Kubernetes control plane nodes, and it automatically replaces unhealthy control plane nodes.

EKS Architecture

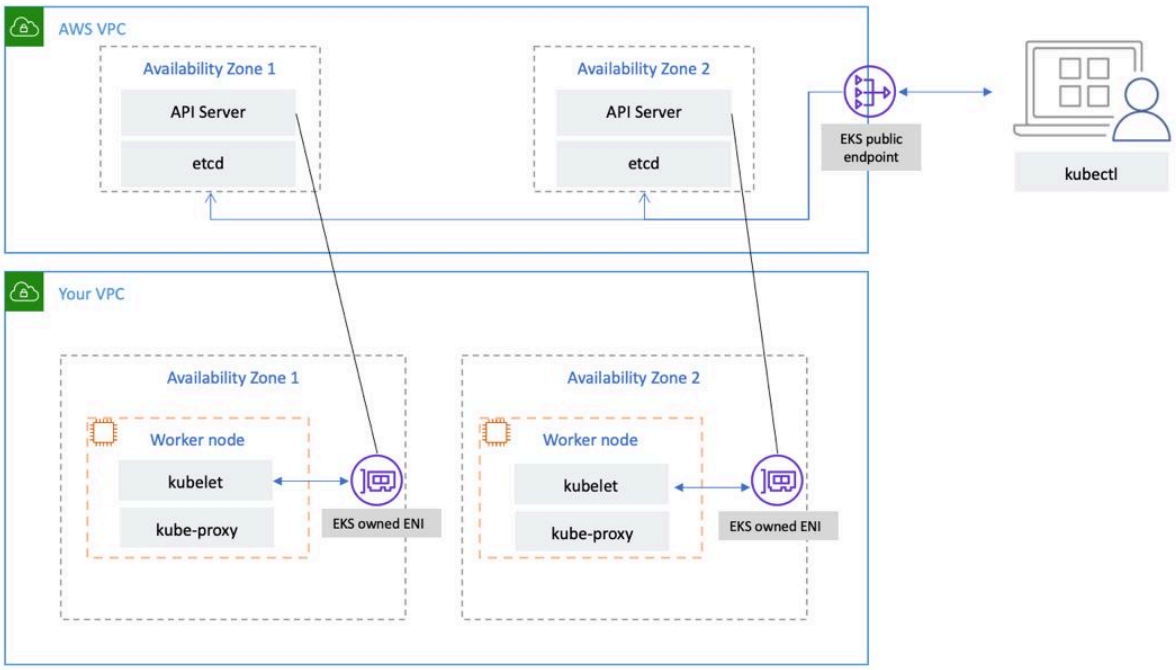
EKS architecture is designed to eliminate any single points of failure that may compromise the availability and durability of the Kubernetes control plane.

The Kubernetes control plane managed by EKS runs inside an EKS managed VPC. The EKS control plane comprises the Kubernetes API server nodes, etcd cluster. Kubernetes API server nodes that run components like the API server, scheduler, and `kube-controller-manager` run in an auto-scaling group. EKS runs a minimum of two API server nodes in distinct Availability Zones (AZs)

within in AWS region. Likewise, for durability, the etcd server nodes also run in an auto-scaling group that spans three AZs. EKS runs a NAT Gateway in each AZ, and API servers and etcd servers run in a private subnet. This architecture ensures that an event in a single AZ doesn't affect the EKS cluster's availability.

When you create a new cluster, Amazon EKS creates a highly-available endpoint for the managed Kubernetes API server that you use to communicate with your cluster (using tools like `kubectl`). The managed endpoint uses NLB to load balance Kubernetes API servers. EKS also provisions two ENI s in different AZs to facilitate communication to your worker nodes.

EKS Data plane network connectivity



You can configure whether your Kubernetes cluster's API server is reachable from the public internet (using the public endpoint) or through your VPC (using the EKS-managed ENIs) or both.

Whether users and worker nodes connect to the API server using the public endpoint or the EKS-managed ENI, there are redundant paths for connection.

Recommendations

Review the following recommendations.

Monitor Control Plane Metrics

Monitoring Kubernetes API metrics can give you insights into control plane performance and identify issues. An unhealthy control plane can compromise the availability of the workloads running inside the cluster. For example, poorly written controllers can overload the API servers, affecting your application's availability.

Kubernetes exposes control plane metrics at the `/metrics` endpoint.

You can view the metrics exposed using `kubectl`:

```
kubectl get --raw /metrics
```

These metrics are represented in a Prometheus text format.

You can use Prometheus to collect and store these metrics. In May 2020, CloudWatch added support for monitoring Prometheus metrics in CloudWatch Container Insights. So you can also use Amazon CloudWatch to monitor the EKS control plane. You can use Tutorial for Adding a New Prometheus Scrape Target: Prometheus KPI Server Metrics to collect metrics and create CloudWatch dashboard to monitor your cluster's control plane.

You can find Kubernetes API server metrics here. For example, `apiserver_request_duration_seconds` can indicate how long API requests are taking to run.

Consider monitoring these control plane metrics:

API Server

Metric	Description
`apiserver_request_total`	Counter of apiserver requests broken out for each verb, dry run value, group, version, resource, scope, component, and HTTP response code.
`apiserver_request_duration_seconds*`	Response latency histogram in seconds for each verb, dry run value, group, version, resource, subresource, scope, and component.

Metric	Description
apiserver_admission_controller_admission_duration_seconds*	Admission controller latency histogram in seconds, identified by name and broken out for each operation and API resource and type (validate or admit).
apiserver_admission_webhook_rejection_count	Count of admission webhook rejections. Identified by name, operation, rejection_code, type (validating or admit), error_type (calling_webhook_error, apiserver_internal_error, no_error)
rest_client_request_duration_seconds*	Request latency histogram in seconds. Broken down by verb and URL.
rest_client_requests_total	Number of HTTP requests, partitioned by status code, method, and host.

- Histogram metrics include _bucket, _sum, and _count suffixes.

etcd

Metric	Description
etcd_request_duration_seconds*	Etcd request latency histog in second for each operat and

Metric	Description
	object type.
`apiserver_storage_db_total_size_in_bytes` or `apiserver_storage_size_bytes` (starting with EKS v1.28)	Etcd data base size.

- Histogram metrics include _bucket, _sum, and _count suffixes.

Consider using the Kubernetes Monitoring Overview Dashboard to visualize and monitor Kubernetes API server requests and latency and etcd latency metrics.

> **Important**
>
> When the database size limit is exceeded, etcd emits a no space alarm and stops taking further write requests. In other words, the cluster becomes read-only, and all requests to mutate objects such as creating new pods, scaling deployments, etc., will be rejected by the cluster's API server.

Cluster Authentication

EKS currently supports two types of authentication: bearer/service account tokens and IAM authentication which uses webhook token authentication. When users call the Kubernetes API, a webhook passes an authentication token included in the request to IAM. The token, a base 64 signed URL, is generated by the AWS Command Line Interface (AWS CLI).

The IAM user or role that creates the EKS Cluster automatically gets full access to the cluster. You can manage access to the EKS cluster by editing the aws-auth configmap.

If you misconfigure the `aws-auth` configmap and lose access to the cluster, you can still use the cluster creator's user or role to access your EKS cluster.

In the unlikely event that you cannot use the IAM service in the AWS region, you can also use the Kubernetes service account's bearer token to manage the cluster.

Create a `super-admin` account that is permitted to perform all actions in the cluster:

```
kubectl -n kube-system create serviceaccount super-admin
```

Create a role binding that gives super-admin cluster-admin role:

```
kubectl create clusterrolebinding super-admin-rb --clusterrole=cluster-admin --
serviceaccount=kube-system:super-admin
```

Get service account's secret:

```
SECRET_NAME=`kubectl -n kube-system get serviceaccount/super-admin -o
 jsonpath='{.secrets[0].name}'`
```

Get token associated with the secret:

```
TOKEN=`kubectl -n kube-system get secret $SECRET_NAME -o jsonpath='{.data.token}'|
 base64 --decode`
```

Add service account and token to `kubeconfig`:

```
kubectl config set-credentials super-admin --token=$TOKEN
```

Set the current-context in `kubeconfig` to use super-admin account:

```
kubectl config set-context --current --user=super-admin
```

Final `kubeconfig` should look like this:

```
apiVersion: v1
clusters:
- cluster:
    certificate-authority-data:<REDACTED>
    server: https://<CLUSTER>.gr7.us-west-2.eks.amazonaws.com
  name: arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:<account number>:cluster/<cluster name>
```

```
contexts:
- context:
    cluster: arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:<account number>:cluster/<cluster name>
    user: super-admin
  name: arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:<account number>:cluster/<cluster name>
current-context: arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:<account number>:cluster/<cluster name>
kind: Config
preferences: {}
users:
#- name: arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:<account number>:cluster/<cluster name>
#  user:
#    exec:
#      apiVersion: client.authentication.k8s.io/v1beta1
#      args:
#      - --region
#      - us-west-2
#      - eks
#      - get-token
#      - --cluster-name
#      - <<cluster name>>
#      command: aws
#      env: null
- name: super-admin
  user:
    token: <<super-admin sa's secret>>
```

Admission Webhooks

Kubernetes has two types of admission webhooks: validating admission webhooks and mutating admission webhooks. These allow a user to extend the kubernetes API and validate or mutate objects before they are accepted by the API. Poor configurations of these webhooks can destabilize the EKS control plane by blocking cluster critical operations.

In order to avoid impacting cluster critical operations either avoid setting "catch-all" webhooks like the following:

```
- name: "pod-policy.example.com"
  rules:
  - apiGroups:   ["*"]
    apiVersions: ["*"]
    operations:  ["*"]
    resources:   ["*"]
```

```
    scope: "*"
```

Or make sure the webhook has a fail open policy with a timeout shorter than 30 seconds to ensure that if your webhook is unavailable it will not impair cluster critical workloads.

Block Pods with unsafe `sysctls`

`Sysctl` is a Linux utility that allows users to modify kernel parameters during runtime. These kernel parameters control various aspects of the operating system's behavior, such as network, file system, virtual memory, and process management.

Kubernetes allows assigning `sysctl` profiles for Pods. Kubernetes categorizes `systcls` as safe and unsafe. Safe `sysctls` are namespaced in the container or Pod, and setting them doesn't impact other Pods on the node or the node itself. In contrast, unsafe sysctls are disabled by default since they can potentially disrupt other Pods or make the node unstable.

As unsafe `sysctls` are disabled by default, the kubelet will not create a Pod with unsafe `sysctl` profile. If you create such a Pod, the scheduler will repeatedly assign such Pods to nodes, while the node fails to launch it. This infinite loop ultimately strains the cluster control plane, making the cluster unstable.

Consider using OPA Gatekeeper or Kyverno to reject Pods with unsafe `sysctls`.

Handling Cluster Upgrades

Since April 2021, Kubernetes release cycle has been changed from four releases a year (once a quarter) to three releases a year. A new minor version (like 1.**21** or 1.**22**) is released approximately every fifteen weeks. Starting with Kubernetes 1.19, each minor version is supported for approximately twelve months after it's first released. With the advent of Kubernetes v1.28, the compatibility skew between the control plane and worker nodes has expanded from n-2 to n-3 minor versions. To learn more, see Best Practices for Cluster Upgrades.

Cluster Endpoint Connectivity

When working with Amazon EKS (Elastic Kubernetes Service), you may encounter connection timeouts or errors during events such as Kubernetes control plane scaling or patching. These events can cause the kube-apiserver instances to be replaced, potentially resulting in different IP addresses being returned when resolving the FQDN. This document outlines best practices for Kubernetes API consumers to maintain reliable connectivity.

> **Note**
>
> Implementing these best practices may require updates to client configurations or scripts to handle new DNS re-resolution and retry strategies effectively.

The main issue stems from DNS client-side caching and the potential for stale IP addresses of EKS endpoint - *public NLB for public endpoint or X-ENI for private endpoint*. When the kube-apiserver instances are replaced, the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) may resolve to new IP addresses. However, due to DNS Time to Live (TTL)settings, which are set to 60 seconds in the AWS managed Route 53 zone, clients may continue to use outdated IP addresses for a short period of time.

To mitigate these issues, Kubernetes API consumers (such as kubectl, CI/CD pipelines, and custom applications) should implement the following best practices:

- Implement DNS re-resolution
- Implement Retries with Backoff and Jitter. For example, see this article titled Failures Happen
- Implement Client Timeouts. Set appropriate timeouts to prevent long-running requests from blocking your application. Be aware that some Kubernetes client libraries, particularly those generated by OpenAPI generators, may not allow setting custom timeouts easily.
  - Example 1 with kubectl:

```
kubectl get pods --request-timeout 10s # default: no timeout
```

  - Example 2 with Python: Kubernetes client provides a _request_timeout parameter

By implementing these best practices, you can significantly improve the reliability and resilience of your applications when interacting with Kubernetes API. Remember to test these implementations thoroughly, especially under simulated failure conditions, to ensure they behave as expected during actual scaling or patching events.

Running large clusters

EKS actively monitors the load on control plane instances and automatically scales them to ensure high performance. However, you should account for potential performance issues and limits within Kubernetes and quotas in AWS services when running large clusters.

- Clusters with more than 1000 services may experience network latency with using `kube-proxy` in `iptables` mode according to the tests performed by the ProjectCalico team. The solution is to switch to running `kube-proxy` in `ipvs` mode.
- You may also experience EC2 API request throttling if the CNI needs to request IP addresses for Pods or if you need to create new EC2 instances frequently. You can reduce calls EC2 API by configuring the CNI to cache IP addresses. You can use larger EC2 instance types to reduce EC2 scaling events.

Additional Resources:

- De-mystifying cluster networking for Amazon EKS worker nodes
- Amazon EKS cluster endpoint access control
- AWS re:Invent 2019: Amazon EKS under the hood (CON421-R1)

EKS Data Plane

To operate high-available and resilient applications, you need a highly-available and resilient data plane. An elastic data plane ensures that Kubernetes can scale and heal your applications automatically. A resilient data plane consists of two or more worker nodes, can grow and shrink with the workload, and automatically recover from failures.

You have multiple choices for worker nodes with EKS: EKS Auto Mode managed nodes, EC2 Instances and Fargate.

EKS Auto Mode offers the easiest path to a resilient data plane. Auto Mode extends AWS management of Kubernetes clusters beyond the cluster itself, to allow AWS to also set up and manage the infrastructure that enables the smooth operation of your workloads. Auto Mode automatically scales the data plane up or down as Kubernetes scales Pods and works to continually ensure that the Nodes in your cluster are sized appropriately and cost-effectively for the currently running workloads.

If you choose EC2 instances, you can manage the worker nodes yourself or use EKS managed node groups. You can have a cluster with a mix of Auto Mode, managed, self-managed worker nodes, and Fargate.

Fargate runs each Pod in an isolated compute environment. Each Pod running on Fargate gets its own worker node. Fargate automatically scales the data plane as Kubernetes scales pods. You can scale both the data plane and your workload by using the horizontal pod autoscaler.

The preferred way to scale EC2 worker nodes (if not using EKS Auto Mode where this is performed automatically by AWS) is by using Karpenter, Kubernetes Cluster Autoscaler, or EC2 Auto Scaling groups.

Recommendations

Spread worker nodes and workloads across multiple AZs

You can protect your workloads from failures in an individual AZ by running worker nodes and Pods in multiple AZs. You can control the AZ the worker nodes are created in using the subnets you create the nodes in.

The recommended method for spreading pods across AZs is to use Topology Spread Constraints for Pods. Auto-scaling capabilities like EKS Auto Mode and Karpenter are aware of topology spread constraints and will automatically launch Nodes in the correct AZs to allow your constraints to be met.

The deployment below spreads pods across AZs if possible, letting those pods run anyway if not:

```
apiVersion: apps/v1
kind: Deployment
metadata:
  name: web-server
spec:
  replicas: 3
  selector:
    matchLabels:
      app: web-server
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: web-server
    spec:
      topologySpreadConstraints:
        - maxSkew: 1
          whenUnsatisfiable: ScheduleAnyway
          topologyKey: topology.kubernetes.io/zone
          labelSelector:
```

```
            matchLabels:
              app: web-server
      containers:
      - name: web-app
        image: nginx
        resources:
          requests:
            cpu: 1
```

Note

`kube-scheduler` is only aware of topology domains via nodes that exist with those labels. If the above deployment is deployed to a cluster with nodes only in a single zone, all of the pods will schedule on those nodes as `kube-scheduler` isn't aware of the other zones. For this topology spread to work as expected with the scheduler, nodes must already exist in all zones. The `minDomains` property of a topology spread constraints is used to inform the scheduler of the number of eligible domains, even if there is a Node running there to avoid this issue.

Warning

Setting `whenUnsatisfiable` to `DoNotSchedule` will cause pods to be unschedulable if the topology spread constraint can't be fulfilled. It should only be set if its preferable for pods to not run instead of violating the topology spread constraint.

On older versions of Kubernetes, you can use pod anti-affinity rules to schedule pods across multiple AZs. The manifest below informs Kubernetes scheduler to *prefer* scheduling pods in distinct AZs.

```
apiVersion: apps/v1
kind: Deployment
metadata:
  name: web-server
  labels:
    app: web-server
spec:
  replicas: 4
  selector:
```

```
    matchLabels:
      app: web-server
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: web-server
    spec:
      affinity:
        podAntiAffinity:
          preferredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
          - podAffinityTerm:
              labelSelector:
                matchExpressions:
                - key: app
                  operator: In
                  values:
                  - web-server
              topologyKey: failure-domain.beta.kubernetes.io/zone
            weight: 100
      containers:
      - name: web-app
        image: nginx
```

Warning

Do not require that pods be scheduled across distinct AZs otherwise, the number of pods in a deployment will never exceed the number of AZs.

Ensure ability to launch Nodes in each AZ when using EBS volumes

If you use Amazon EBS to provide Persistent Volumes, then you need to ensure that the pods and associated EBS volume are located in the same AZ. A Pod cannot access EBS-backed persistent volumes located in a different AZ. The Kubernetes scheduler knows which AZ a worker node is located in from the labels that are on the Node and will always schedule a Pod that requires an EBS volume in the same AZ as the volume. However, if there are no worker nodes available in the AZ where the volume is located, then the Pod cannot be scheduled.

If using EKS Auto Mode or Karpenter you will need to ensure that your NodeClass selects subnets in each AZ. If using Managed Node Groups, you need to ensure that you have a Node Group in each AZ.

An EBS storage capability is built into EKS Auto Mode, but if using Karpenter or Managed Node Groups the EBS CSI will also need to be installed.

Use EKS Auto Mode to manage worker nodes

EKS Auto Mode streamlines EKS management by providing production-ready clusters with minimal operational overhead. Auto Mode is responsible for scaling the number of Nodes up or down depending on the Pods that are running in the cluster. Nodes are kept up to date with software patches and fixes automatically, with the updates being performed in accordance with the configured NodePool disruption settings and Pod Disruption Budgets.

Run the Node Monitoring Agent

The Node Monitoring Agent monitors and reacts to Node health issues by publishing Kubernetes events and updating the status condition on Nodes. The Node Monitoring Agent is included with EKS Auto Mode Nodes, and can be installed as an EKS Addon for Nodes that aren't managed by Auto Mode.

EKS Auto Mode, Managed Node Groups, and Karpenter all have the ability to detect fatal Node conditions reported by the Node Monitoring Agent and repair those Nodes automatically when those conditions occur.

Implement QoS

For critical applications, consider defining `requests=limits` for the container in the Pod. This will ensure that the container will not be killed if another Pod requests resources.

It is a best practice to implement CPU and memory limits for all containers as it prevents a container inadvertently consuming system resources impacting the availability of other co-located processes.

Configure and Size Resource Requests/Limits for all Workloads

Some general guidance can be applied to sizing resource requests and limits for workloads:

- Do not specify resource limits on CPU. In the absence of limits, the request acts as a weight on how much relative CPU time containers get. This allows your workloads to use the full CPU without an artificial limit or starvation.
- For non-CPU resources, configuring `requests=limits` provides the most predictable behavior. If `requests!=limits`, the container also has its QOS reduced from Guaranteed to Burstable making it more likely to be evicted in the event of node pressure.

- For non-CPU resources, do not specify a limit that is much larger than the request. The larger `limits` are configured relative to `requests`, the more likely nodes will be overcommitted leading to high chances of workload interruption.
- Correctly sized requests are particularly important when using a node auto-scaling solution like Karpenter or Cluster AutoScaler. These tools look at your workload requests to determine the number and size of nodes to be provisioned. If your requests are too small with larger limits, you may find your workloads evicted or OOM killed if they have been tightly packed on a node.

Determining resource requests can be difficult, but tools like the Vertical Pod Autoscaler can help you "right-size" the requests by observing container resource usage at runtime. Other tools that may be useful for determining request sizes include:

- Goldilocks
- Parca
- Prodfiler
- rsg

Configure resource quotas for namespaces

Namespaces are intended for use in environments with many users spread across multiple teams, or projects. They provide a scope for names and are a way to divide cluster resources between multiple teams, projects, workloads. You can limit the aggregate resource consumption in a namespace. The `ResourceQuota` object can limit the quantity of objects that can be created in a namespace by type, as well as the total amount of compute resources that may be consumed by resources in that project. You can limit the total sum of storage and/or compute (CPU and memory) resources that can be requested in a given namespace.

If resource quota is enabled for a namespace for compute resources like CPU and memory, users must specify requests or limits for each container in that namespace.

Consider configuring quotas for each namespace. Consider using `LimitRanges` to automatically apply preconfigured limits to containers within a namespaces.

Limit container resource usage within a namespace

Resource Quotas help limit the amount of resources a namespace can use. The `LimitRange` object can help you implement minimum and maximum resources a container can request.

Using `LimitRange` you can set a default request and limits for containers, which is helpful if setting compute resource limits is not a standard practice in your organization. As the name suggests, `LimitRange` can enforce minimum and maximum compute resources usage per Pod or Container in a namespace. As well as, enforce minimum and maximum storage request per PersistentVolumeClaim in a namespace.

Consider using `LimitRange` in conjunction with `ResourceQuota` to enforce limits at a container as well as namespace level. Setting these limits will ensure that a container or a namespace does not impinge on resources used by other tenants in the cluster.

Use NodeLocal DNSCache

You can improve the Cluster DNS performance by running NodeLocal DNSCache. This feature runs a DNS caching agent on cluster nodes as a DaemonSet. All the pods use the DNS caching agent running on the node for name resolution instead of using `kube-dns` Service. This feature is automatically included in EKS Auto Mode.

Configure auto-scaling CoreDNS

Another method of improving Cluster DNS performance is by enabling the built-in auto-scaling of CoreDNS Pods.

This feature continuously monitors the cluster state, including the number of nodes and CPU cores. Based on that information, the controller will dynamically adapt the number of replicas of the CoreDNS deployment in an EKS cluster.

Best Practices for Networking

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

It is critical to understand Kubernetes networking to operate your cluster and applications efficiently. Pod networking, also called the cluster networking, is the center of Kubernetes networking. Kubernetes supports Container Network Interface (CNI) plugins for cluster networking.

Amazon EKS officially supports Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) CNI plugin to implement Kubernetes Pod networking. The VPC CNI provides native integration with AWS VPC and works in underlay mode. In underlay mode, Pods and hosts are located at the same network layer and share the network namespace. The IP address of the Pod is consistent from the cluster and VPC perspective.

This guide introduces the Amazon VPC Container Network Interface (VPC CNI) in the context of Kubernetes cluster networking. The VPC CNI is the default networking plugin supported by EKS and hence is the focus of the guide. The VPC CNI is highly configurable to support different use cases. This guide further includes dedicated sections on different VPC CNI use cases, operating modes, sub-components, followed by the recommendations.

Amazon EKS runs upstream Kubernetes and is certified Kubernetes conformant. Although you can use alternate CNI plugins, this guide does not provide recommendations for managing alternate CNIs. Check the EKS Alternate CNI documentation for a list of partners and resources for managing alternate CNIs effectively.

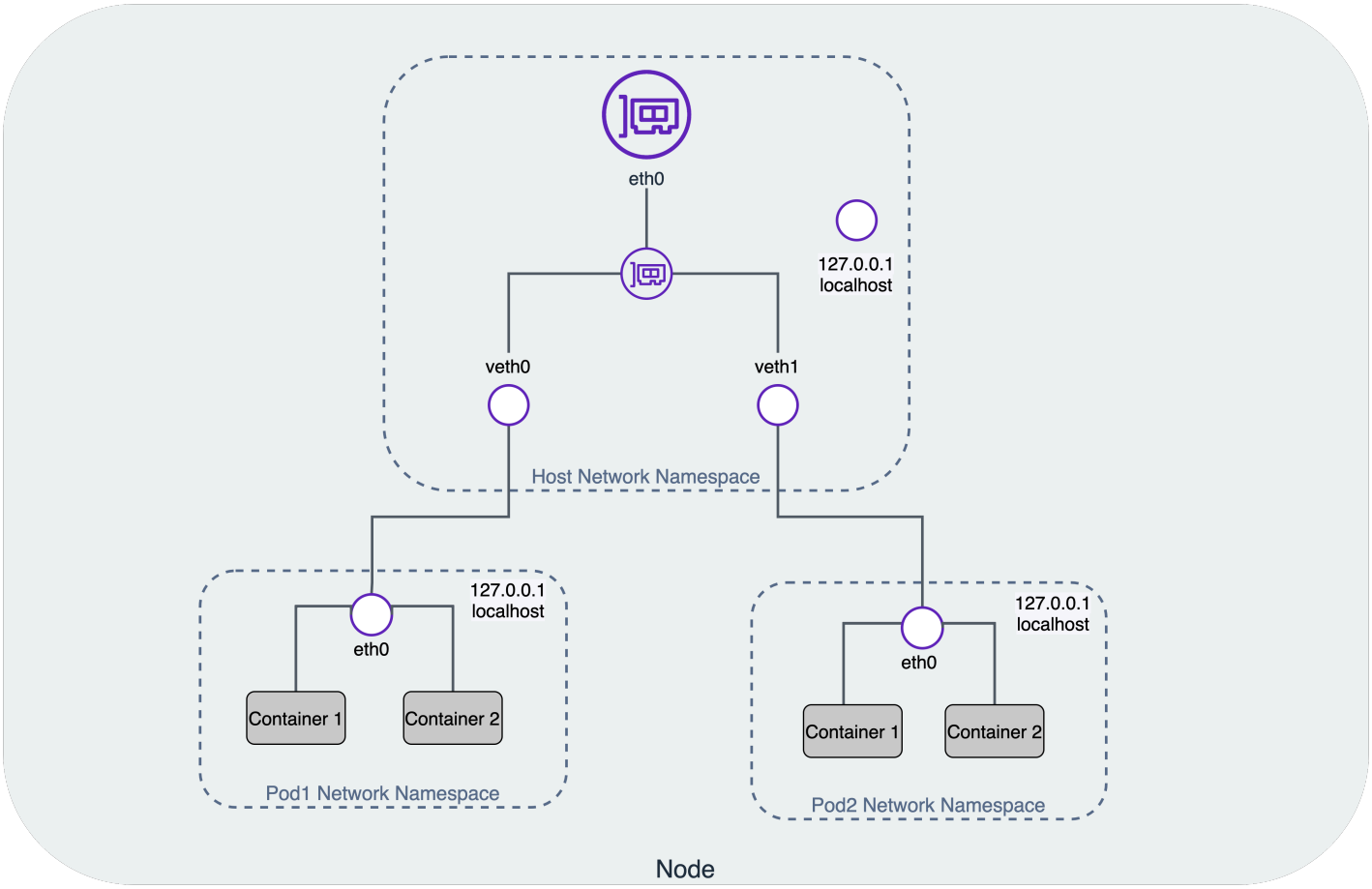
Kubernetes Networking Model

Kubernetes sets the following requirements on cluster networking:

- Pods scheduled on the same node must be able to communicate with other Pods without using NAT (Network Address Translation).
- All system daemons (background processes, for example, kubelet) running on a particular node can communicate with the Pods running on the same node.

- Pods that use the host network must be able to contact all other Pods on all other nodes without using NAT.

See the Kubernetes network model for details on what Kubernetes expects from compatible networking implementations. The following figure illustrates the relationship between Pod network namespaces and the host network namespace.



Container Networking Interface (CNI)

Kubernetes supports CNI specifications and plugins to implement Kubernetes network model. A CNI consists of a specification (current version 1.0.0) and libraries for writing plugins to configure network interfaces in containers, along with a number of supported plugins. CNI concerns itself only with network connectivity of containers and removing allocated resources when the container is deleted.

The CNI plugin is enabled by passing kubelet the `--network-plugin=cni` command-line option. Kubelet reads a file from `--cni-conf-dir` (default /etc/cni/net.d) and uses the CNI configuration

from that file to set up each Pod's network. The CNI configuration file must match the CNI specification (minimum v0.4.0) and any required CNI plugins referenced by the configuration must be present in the `--cni-bin-dir` directory (default /opt/cni/bin). If there are multiple CNI configuration files in the directory, the kubelet uses the configuration file that comes first by name in lexicographic order.

Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) CNI

The AWS-provided VPC CNI is the default networking add-on for EKS clusters. VPC CNI add-on is installed by default when you provision EKS clusters. VPC CNI runs on Kubernetes worker nodes. The VPC CNI add-on consists of the CNI binary and the IP Address Management (ipamd) plugin. The CNI assigns an IP address from the VPC network to a Pod. The ipamd manages AWS Elastic Networking Interfaces (ENIs) to each Kubernetes node and maintains the warm pool of IPs. The VPC CNI provides configuration options for pre-allocation of ENIs and IP addresses for fast Pod startup times. Refer to Amazon VPC CNI for recommended plugin management best practices.

Amazon EKS recommends you specify subnets in at least two availability zones when you create a cluster. Amazon VPC CNI allocates IP addresses to Pods from the node subnets. We strongly recommend checking the subnets for available IP addresses. Please consider VPC and Subnet recommendations before deploying EKS clusters.

Amazon VPC CNI allocates a warm pool of ENIs and secondary IP addresses from the subnet attached to the node's primary ENI. This mode of VPC CNI is called the secondary IP mode. The number of IP addresses and hence the number of Pods (Pod density) is defined by the number of ENIs and the IP address per ENI (limits) as defined by the instance type. The secondary mode is the default and works well for small clusters with smaller instance types. Please consider using prefix mode if you are experiencing pod density challenges. You can also increase the available IP addresses on node for Pods by assigning prefixes to ENIs.

Amazon VPC CNI natively integrates with AWS VPC and allows users to apply existing AWS VPC networking and security best practices for building Kubernetes clusters. This includes the ability to use VPC flow logs, VPC routing policies, and security groups for network traffic isolation. By default, the Amazon VPC CNI applies security group associated with the primary ENI on the node to the Pods. Consider enabling security groups for Pods when you would like to assign different network rules for a Pod.

By default, VPC CNI assigns IP addresses to Pods from the subnet assigned to the primary ENI of a node. It is common to experience a shortage of IPv4 addresses when running large clusters with

thousands of workloads. AWS VPC allows you to extend available IPs by assigning a secondary CIDRs to work around exhaustion of IPv4 CIDR blocks. AWS VPC CNI allows you to use a different subnet CIDR range for Pods. This feature of VPC CNI is called custom networking. You might consider using custom networking to use `100.64.0.0/10` and `198.19.0.0/16` CIDRs (CG-NAT) with EKS. This effectively allows you to create an environment where Pods no longer consume any RFC1918 IP addresses from your VPC.

Custom networking is one option to address the IPv4 address exhaustion problem, but it requires operational overhead. We recommend IPv6 clusters over custom networking to resolve this problem. Specifically, we recommend migrating to IPv6 clusters if you have completely exhausted all available IPv4 address space for your VPC. Evaluate your organization's plans to support IPv6, and consider if investing in IPv6 may have more long-term value.

EKS's support for IPv6 is focused on solving the IP exhaustion problem caused by a limited IPv4 address space. In response to customer issues with IPv4 exhaustion, EKS has prioritized IPv6-only Pods over dual-stack Pods. That is, Pods may be able to access IPv4 resources, but they are not assigned an IPv4 address from VPC CIDR range. The VPC CNI assigns IPv6 addresses to Pods from the AWS managed VPC IPv6 CIDR block.

Subnet Calculator

This project includes a Subnet Calculator Excel Document. This calculator document simulates the IP address consumption of a specified workload under different ENI configuration options, such as `WARM_IP_TARGET` and `WARM_ENI_TARGET`. The document includes two sheets, a first for Warm ENI mode, and a second for Warm IP mode. Review the VPC CNI guidance for more information on these modes.

Inputs:

- Subnet CIDR Size
- Warm ENI Target *or* Warm IP Target
- List of instances
  - type, number, and number of workload pods scheduled per instance

Outputs:

- Total number of pods hosted
- Number of Subnet IPs consumed

- Number of Subnet IPs remaining
- Instance Level Details
  - Number of Warm IPs/ENIs per instance
  - Number of Active IPs/ENIs per instance

VPC and Subnet Considerations

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Operating an EKS cluster requires knowledge of AWS VPC networking, in addition to Kubernetes networking.

We recommend you understand the EKS control plane communication mechanisms before you start designing your VPC or deploying clusters into existing VPCs.

Refer to Cluster VPC considerations and Amazon EKS security group considerations when architecting a VPC and subnets to be used with EKS.

Overview

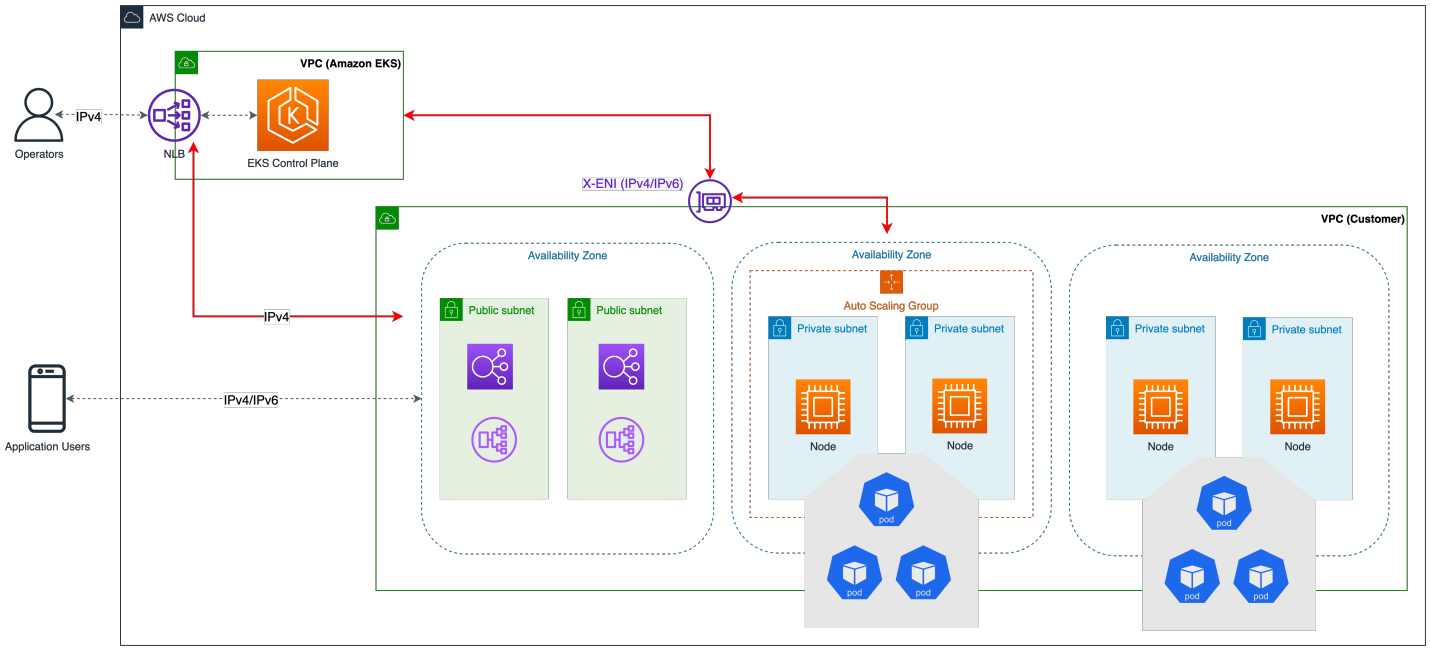
EKS Cluster Architecture

An EKS cluster consists of two VPCs:

- An AWS-managed VPC that hosts the Kubernetes control plane. This VPC does not appear in the customer account.
- A customer-managed VPC that hosts the Kubernetes nodes. This is where containers run, as well as other customer-managed AWS infrastructure such as load balancers used by the cluster. This VPC appears in the customer account. You need to create customer-managed VPC prior creating a cluster. The eksctl creates a VPC if you do not provide one.

The nodes in the customer VPC need the ability to connect to the managed API server endpoint in the AWS VPC. This allows the nodes to register with the Kubernetes control plane and receive requests to run application Pods.

The nodes connect to the EKS control plane through (a) an EKS public endpoint or (b) a Cross-Account elastic network interfaces (X-ENI) managed by EKS. When a cluster is created, you need to specify at least two VPC subnets. EKS places a X-ENI in each subnet specified during cluster create (also called cluster subnets). The Kubernetes API server uses these Cross-Account ENIs to communicate with nodes deployed on the customer-managed cluster VPC subnets.



As the node starts, the EKS bootstrap script is executed and Kubernetes node configuration files are installed. As part of the boot process on each instance, the container runtime agents, kubelet, and Kubernetes node agents are launched.

To register a node, Kubelet contacts the Kubernetes cluster endpoint. It establishes a connection with either the public endpoint outside of the VPC or the private endpoint within the VPC. Kubelet receives API instructions and provides status updates and heartbeats to the endpoint on a regular basis.

EKS Control Plane Communication

EKS has two ways to control access to the cluster endpoint. Endpoint access control lets you choose whether the endpoint can be reached from the public internet or only through your VPC. You can turn on the public endpoint (which is the default), the private endpoint, or both at once.

The configuration of the cluster API endpoint determines the path that nodes take to communicate to the control plane. Note that these endpoint settings can be changed at any time through the EKS console or API.

Public Endpoint

This is the default behavior for new Amazon EKS clusters. When only the public endpoint for the cluster is enabled, Kubernetes API requests that originate from within your cluster's VPC (such as worker node to control plane communication) leave the VPC, but not Amazon's network. In order for nodes to connect to the control plane, they must have a public IP address and a route to an internet gateway or a route to a NAT gateway where they can use the public IP address of the NAT gateway.

Public and Private Endpoint

When both the public and private endpoints are enabled, Kubernetes API requests from within the VPC communicate to the control plane via the X-ENIs within your VPC. Your cluster API server is accessible from the internet.

Private Endpoint

There is no public access to your API server from the internet when only private endpoint is enabled. All traffic to your cluster API server must come from within your cluster's VPC or a connected network. The nodes communicate to API server via X-ENIs within your VPC. Note that cluster management tools must have access to the private endpoint. Learn more about how to connect to a private Amazon EKS cluster endpoint from outside the Amazon VPC.

Note that the cluster's API server endpoint is resolved by public DNS servers to a private IP address from the VPC. In the past, the endpoint could only be resolved from within the VPC.

VPC configurations

Amazon VPC supports IPv4 and IPv6 addressing. Amazon EKS supports IPv4 by default. A VPC must have an IPv4 CIDR block associated with it. You can optionally associate multiple IPv4 Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR) blocks and multiple IPv6 CIDR blocks to your VPC. When you create a VPC, you must specify an IPv4 CIDR block for the VPC from the private IPv4 address ranges as specified in RFC 1918. The allowed block size is between a /16 prefix (65,536 IP addresses) and /28 prefix (16 IP addresses).

When creating a new VPC, you can attach a single IPv6 CIDR block, and up to five when changing an existing VPC. The prefix length of the IPv6 CIDR block size can be between /44 and /60 and for the IPv6 subnets it can be betwen /44/ and /64. You can request an IPv6 CIDR block from the pool of IPv6 addresses maintained by Amazon. Please refer to VPC CIDR blocks section of the VPC User Guide for more information.

Amazon EKS clusters support both IPv4 and IPv6. By default, EKS clusters use IPv4 IP. Specifying IPv6 at cluster creation time will enable the use IPv6 clusters. IPv6 clusters require dual-stack VPCs and subnets.

Amazon EKS recommends you use at least two subnets that are in different Availability Zones during cluster creation. The subnets you pass in during cluster creation are known as cluster subnets. When you create a cluster, Amazon EKS creates up to 4 cross account (x-account or x-ENIs) ENIs in the subnets that you specify. The x-ENIs are always deployed and are used for cluster administration traffic such as log delivery, exec, and proxy. Please refer to the EKS user guide for complete VPC and subnet requirement details.

Kubernetes worker nodes can run in the cluster subnets, but it is not recommended. During cluster upgrades Amazon EKS provisions additional ENIs in the cluster subnets. When your cluster scales out, worker nodes and pods may consume the available IPs in the cluster subnet. Hence in order to make sure there are enough available IPs you might want to consider using dedicated cluster subnets with /28 netmask.

Kubernetes worker nodes can run in either a public or a private subnet. Whether a subnet is public or private refers to whether traffic within the subnet is routed through an internet gateway. Public subnets have a route table entry to the internet through the internet gateway, but private subnets don't.

The traffic that originates somewhere else and reaches your nodes is called *ingress*. Traffic that originates from the nodes and leaves the network is called *egress*. Nodes with public or elastic IP addresses (EIPs) within a subnet configured with an internet gateway allow ingress from outside of the VPC. Private subnets usually have a routing to a NAT gateway, which do not allow ingress traffic to the nodes in the subnets from outside of VPC while still allowing traffic *from* the nodes to leave the VPC (*egress*).

In the IPv6 world, every address is internet routable. The IPv6 addresses associated with the nodes and pods are public. Private subnets are supported by implementing an egress-only internet gateways (EIGW) in a VPC, allowing outbound traffic while blocking all incoming traffic. Best practices for implementing IPv6 subnets can be found in the VPC user guide.

You can configure VPC and Subnets in three different ways:

Using only public subnets

In the same public subnets, both nodes and ingress resources (such as load balancers) are created. Tag the public subnet with `kubernetes.io/role/elb` to construct load balancers that face the

internet. In this configuration, the cluster endpoint can be configured to be public, private, or both (public and private).

Using private and public subnets

Nodes are created on private subnets, whereas Ingress resources are instantiated in public subnets. You can enable public, private, or both (public and private) access to the cluster endpoint. Depending on the configuration of the cluster endpoint, node traffic will enter via the NAT gateway or the ENI.

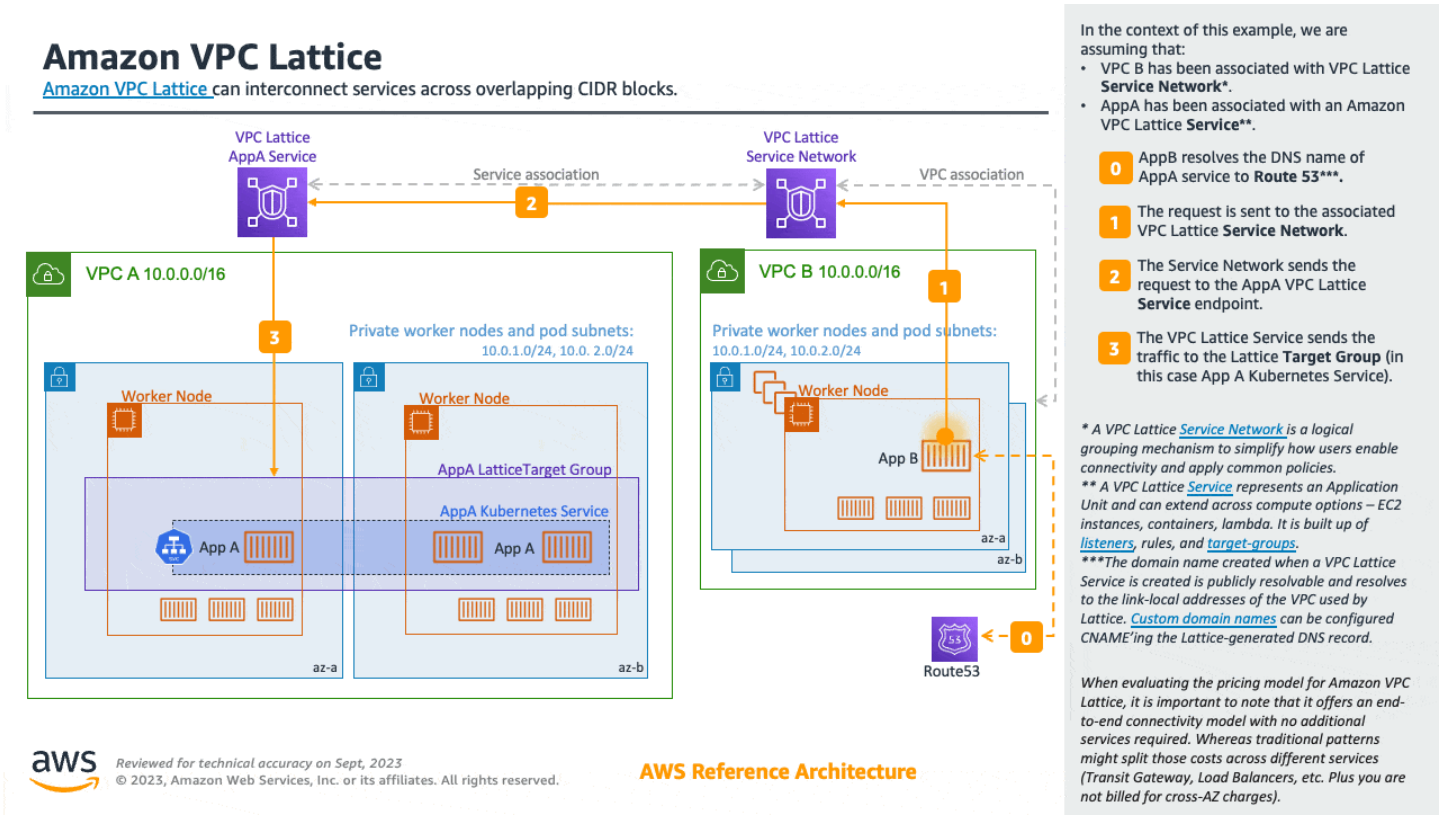
Using only private subnets

Both nodes and ingress are created in private subnets. Using the `kubernetes.io/role/internal-elb` subnet tag to construct internal load balancers. Accessing your cluster's endpoint will require a VPN connection. You must activate AWS PrivateLink for EC2 and all Amazon ECR and S3 repositories. Only the private endpoint of the cluster should be enabled. We suggest going through the EKS private cluster requirements before provisioning private clusters.

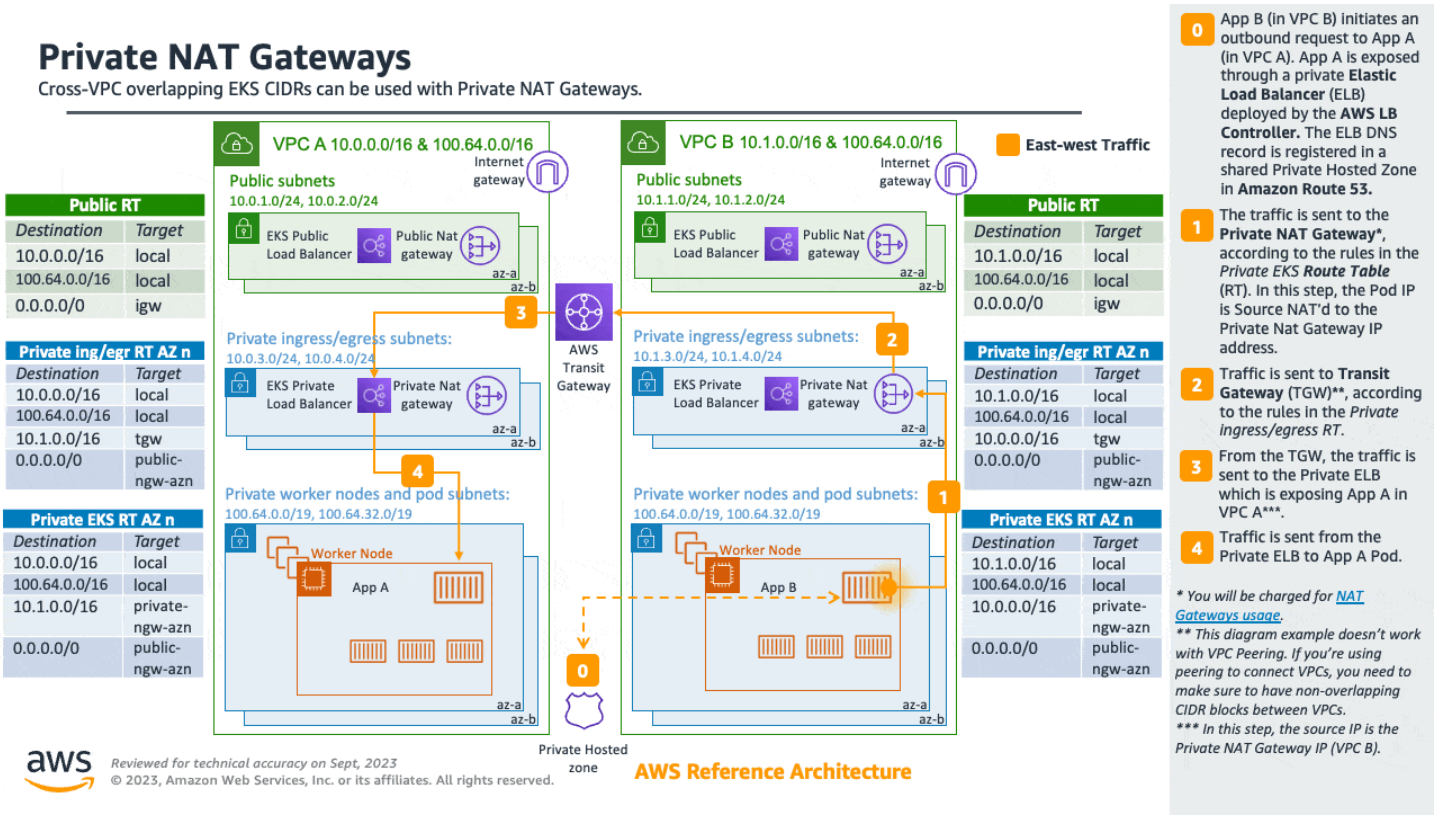
Communication across VPCs

There are many scenarios when you require multiple VPCs and separate EKS clusters deployed to these VPCs.

You can use Amazon VPC Lattice to consistently and securely connect services across multiple VPCs and accounts (without requiring additional connectivity to be provided by services like VPC peering, AWS PrivateLink or AWS Transit Gateway). Learn more here.



Amazon VPC Lattice operates in the link-local address space in IPv4 and IPv6, providing connectivity between services that may have overlapping IPv4 addresses. For operational efficiency, we strongly recommend deploying EKS clusters and nodes to IP ranges that do not overlap. In case your infrastructure includes VPCs with overlapping IP ranges, you need to architect your network accordingly. We suggest Private NAT Gateway, or VPC CNI in custom networking mode in conjunction with transit gateway to integrate workloads on EKS to solve overlapping CIDR challenges while preserving routable RFC1918 IP addresses.

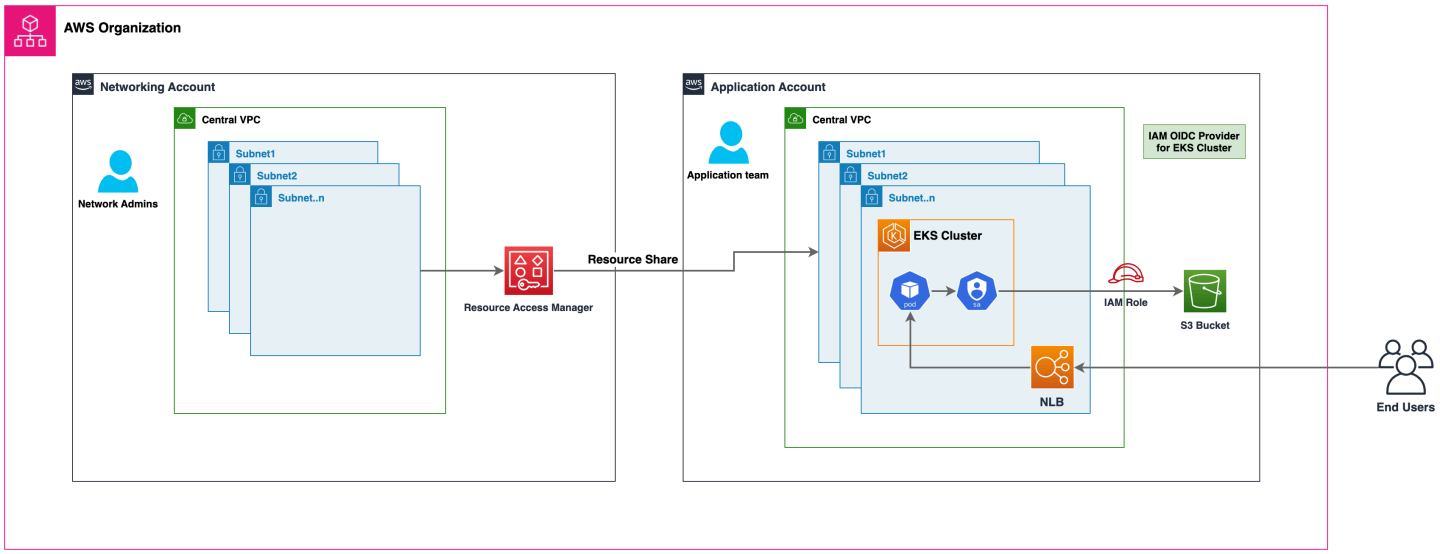


Consider utilizing AWS PrivateLink, also known as an endpoint service, if you are the service provider and would want to share your Kubernetes service and ingress (either ALB or NLB) with your customer VPC in separate accounts.

Sharing VPC across multiple accounts

Many enterprises adopted shared Amazon VPCs as a means to streamline network administration, reduce costs and improve security across multiple AWS Accounts in an AWS Organization. They utilize AWS Resource Access Manager (RAM) to securely share supported AWS resources with individual AWS Accounts, organizational units (OUs) or entire AWS Organization.

You can deploy Amazon EKS clusters, managed node groups and other supporting AWS resources (like LoadBalancers, security groups, end points, etc.,) in shared VPC Subnets from an another AWS Account using AWS RAM. Below figure depicts an example highlevel architecture. This allows central networking teams control over the networking constructs like VPCs, Subnets, etc., while allowing application or platform teams to deploy Amazon EKS clusters in their respective AWS Accounts. A complete walkthrough of this scenario is available at this github repository.



Considerations when using Shared Subnets

- Amazon EKS clusters and worker nodes can be created within shared subnets that are all part of the same VPC. Amazon EKS does not support the creation of clusters across multiple VPCs.
- Amazon EKS uses AWS VPC Security Groups (SGs) to control the traffic between the Kubernetes control plane and the cluster's worker nodes. Security groups are also used to control the traffic between worker nodes, and other VPC resources, and external IP addresses. You must create these security groups in the application/participant account. Ensure that the security groups you intend to use for your pods are also located in the participant account. You can configure the inbound and outbound rules within your security groups to permit the necessary traffic to and from security groups located in the Central VPC account.
- Create IAM roles and associated policies within the participant account where your Amazon EKS cluster resides. These IAM roles and policies are essential for granting the necessary permissions to Kubernetes clusters managed by Amazon EKS, as well as to the nodes and pods running on Fargate. The permissions enable Amazon EKS to make calls to other AWS services on your behalf.
- You can follow following approaches to allow cross Account access to AWS resources like Amazon S3 buckets, Dynamodb tables, etc., from k8s pods:
  - **Resource based policy approach**: If the AWS service supports resource policies, you can add appropriate resource based policy to allow cross account access to IAM Roles assigned to the kubernetes pods. In this scenario, OIDC provider, IAM Roles, and permission policies exist in the application account. To find AWS Services that support Resource based policies, refer AWS services that work with IAM and look for the services that have Yes in the Resource Based column.

- **OIDC Provider approach**: IAM resources like OIDC Provider, IAM Roles, Permission, and Trust policies will be created in other participant AWS Account where the resources exists. These roles will be assigned to Kubernetes pods in application account, so that they can access cross account resources. Refer Cross account IAM roles for Kubernetes service accounts blog for a complete walkthrough of this approach.

- You can deploy the Amazon Elastic Loadbalancer (ELB) resources (ALB or NLB) to route traffic to k8s pods either in application or central networking accounts. Refer to Expose Amazon EKS Pods Through Cross-Account Load Balancer walkthrough for detailed instructions on deploying the ELB resources in central networking account. This option offers enhanced flexibility, as it grants the Central Networking account full control over the security configuration of the Load Balancer resources.
- When using `custom networking feature` of Amazon VPC CNI, you need to use the Availability Zone (AZ) ID mappings listed in the central networking account to create each `ENIConfig`. This is due to random mapping of physical AZs to the AZ names in each AWS account.

Security Groups

A *security group* controls the traffic that is allowed to reach and leave the resources that it is associated with. Amazon EKS uses security groups to manage the communication between the control plane and nodes. When you create a cluster, Amazon EKS creates a security group that's named `eks-cluster-sg-my-cluster-uniqueID`. EKS associates these security groups to the managed ENIs and the nodes. The default rules allow all traffic to flow freely between your cluster and nodes, and allows all outbound traffic to any destination.

When you create a cluster, you can specify your own security groups. Please see recommendation for security groups when you specify own security groups.

Recommendations

Consider Multi-AZ Deployment

AWS Regions provide multiple physically separated and isolated Availability Zones (AZ), which are connected with low-latency, high-throughput, and highly redundant networking. With Availability Zones, you can design and operate applications that automatically fail over between Availability Zones without interruption. Amazon EKS strongly recommends deploying EKS clusters to multiple

availability zones. Please consider specifying subnets in at least two availability zones when you create the cluster.

Kubelet running on nodes automatically adds labels to the node object such as `topology.kubernetes.io/region=us-west-2`. We recommend to use node labels in conjunction with Pod topology spread constraints to control how Pods are spread across zones. These hints enable Kubernetes scheduler to place Pods for better expected availability, reducing the risk that a correlated failure affects your whole workload. Please refer Assigning nodes to Pods to see examples for node selector and AZ spread constraints.

You can define the subnets or availability zones when you create nodes. The nodes are placed in cluster subnets if no subnets are configured. EKS support for managed node groups automatically spreads the nodes across multiple availability zones on available capacity. Karpenter will honor the AZ spread placement by scaling nodes to specified AZs if workloads define topology spread limits.

AWS Elastic Load Balancers are managed by the AWS Load Balancer Controller for a Kubernetes cluster. It provisions an Application Load Balancer (ALB) for Kubernetes ingress resources and a Network Load Balancer (NLB) for Kubernetes services of type Loadbalancer. The Elastic Load Balancer controller uses tags to discover the subnets. ELB controller requires a minimum of two availability zones (AZs) to provision ingress resource successfully. Consider setting subnets in at least two AZs to take advantage of geographic redundancy's safety and reliability.

Deploy Nodes to Private Subnets

A VPC including both private and public subnets is the ideal method for deploying Kubernetes workloads on EKS. Consider setting a minimum of two public subnets and two private subnets in two distinct availability zones. The related route table of a public subnet contains a route to an internet gateway . Pods are able to interact with the Internet via a NAT gateway. Private subnets are supported by egress-only internet gateways in the IPv6 environment (EIGW).

Instantiating nodes in private subnets offers maximal control over traffic to the nodes and is effective for the vast majority of Kubernetes applications. Ingress resources (like as load balancers) are instantiated in public subnets and route traffic to Pods operating on private subnets.

Consider private only mode if you demand strict security and network isolation. In this configuration, three private subnets are deployed in distinct Availability Zones within the AWS Region's VPC. The resources deployed to the subnets cannot access the internet, nor can the internet access the resources in the subnets. In order for your Kubernetes application to access other AWS services, you must configure PrivateLink interfaces and/or gateway endpoints. You may setup internal load balancers to redirect traffic to Pods using AWS Load Balancer Controller. The

private subnets must be tagged (`kubernetes.io/role/internal-elb: 1`) for the controller to provision load balancers. For nodes to register with the cluster, the cluster endpoint must be set to private mode. Please visit private cluster guide for complete requirements and considerations.

Consider Public and Private Mode for Cluster Endpoint

Amazon EKS offers public-only, public-and-private, and private-only cluster endpoint modes. The default mode is public-only, however we recommend configuring cluster endpoint in public and private mode. This option allows Kubernetes API calls within your cluster's VPC (such as node-to-control-plane communication) to utilize the private VPC endpoint and traffic to remain within your cluster's VPC. Your cluster API server, on the other hand, can be reached from the internet. However, we strongly recommend limiting the CIDR blocks that can use the public endpoint. Learn how to configure public and private endpoint access, including limiting CIDR blocks.

We suggest a private-only endpoint when you need security and network isolation. We recommend using either of the options listed in the EKS user guide to connect to an API server privately.

Configure Security Groups Carefully

Amazon EKS supports using custom security groups. Any custom security groups must allow communication between nodes and the Kubernetes control plane. Please check port requirements and configure rules manually when your organization doesn't allow for open communication.

EKS applies the custom security groups that you provide during cluster creation to the managed interfaces (X-ENIs). However, it does not immediately associate them with nodes. While creating node groups, it is strongly recommended to associate custom security groups manually. Please consider enabling securityGroupSelectorTerms to enable Karpenter node template discovery of custom security groups during autoscaling of nodes.

We strongly recommend creating a security group to allow all inter-node communication traffic. During the bootstrap process, nodes require outbound Internet connectivity to access the cluster endpoint. Evaluate outward access requirements, such as on-premise connection and container registry access, and set rules appropriately. Before putting changes into production, we strongly suggest that you check connections carefully in your development environment.

Deploy NAT Gateways in each Availability Zone

If you deploy nodes in private subnets (IPv4 and IPv6), consider creating a NAT Gateway in each Availability Zone (AZ) to ensure zone-independent architecture and reduce cross AZ expenditures. Each NAT gateway in an AZ is implemented with redundancy.

Amazon VPC CNI

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Amazon EKS implements cluster networking through the Amazon VPC Container Network Interface plugin, also known as VPC CNI. The CNI plugin allows Kubernetes Pods to have the same IP address as they do on the VPC network. More specifically, all containers inside the Pod share a network namespace, and they can communicate with each-other using local ports.

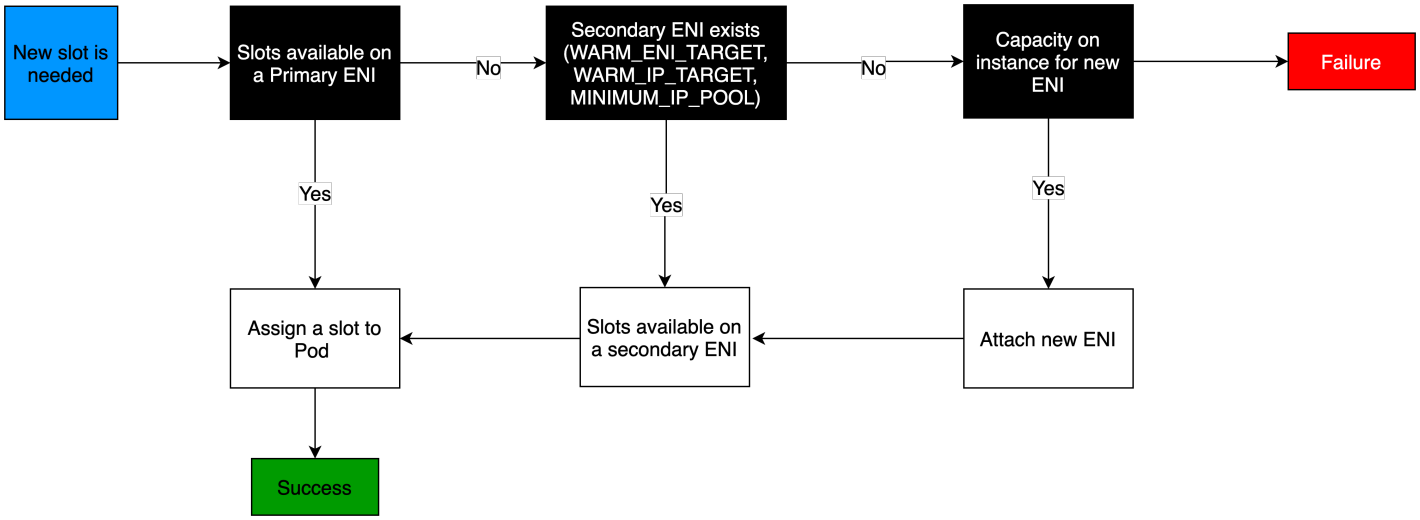
Amazon VPC CNI has two components:

- CNI Binary, which will setup Pod network to enable Pod-to-Pod communication. The CNI binary runs on a node root file system and is invoked by the kubelet when a new Pod gets added to, or an existing Pod removed from the node.
- ipamd, a long-running node-local IP Address Management (IPAM) daemon and is responsible for:
  - managing ENIs on a node, and
  - maintaining a warm-pool of available IP addresses or prefix

When an instance is created, EC2 creates and attaches a primary ENI associated with a primary subnet. The primary subnet may be public or private. The Pods that run in hostNetwork mode use the primary IP address assigned to the node primary ENI and share the same network namespace as the host.

The CNI plugin manages Elastic Network Interfaces (ENI) on the node. When a node is provisioned, the CNI plugin automatically allocates a pool of slots (IPs or Prefix's) from the node's subnet to the primary ENI. This pool is known as the *warm pool*, and its size is determined by the node's instance type. Depending on CNI settings, a slot may be an IP address or a prefix. When a slot on an ENI has been assigned, the CNI may attach additional ENIs with warm pool of slots to the nodes. These additional ENIs are called Secondary ENIs. Each ENI can only support a certain number of slots, based on instance type. The CNI attaches more ENIs to instances based on the number of slots needed, which usually corresponds to the number of Pods. This process continues until the node can no longer support additional ENI. The CNI also pre-allocates "warm" ENIs and slots for faster

Pod startup. Note each instance type has a maximum number of ENIs that may be attached. This is one constraint on Pod density (number of Pods per node), in addition to compute resources.



The maximum number of network interfaces, and the maximum number of slots that you can use varies by the type of EC2 Instance. Since each Pod consumes an IP address on a slot, the number of Pods you can run on a particular EC2 Instance depends on how many ENIs can be attached to it and how many slots each ENI supports. We suggest setting the maximum Pods per EKS user guide to avoid exhaustion of the instance's CPU and memory resources. Pods using `hostNetwork` are excluded from this calculation. For more information, see How maxPods is determined in the Amazon EKS User Guide.

Overview

Secondary IP mode is the default mode for VPC CNI. This guide provides a generic overview of VPC CNI behavior when Secondary IP mode is enabled. The functionality of ipamd (allocation of IP addresses) may vary depending on the configuration settings for VPC CNI, such as the section called "Prefix Mode for Linux", the section called "Security Groups Per Pod", and the section called "Custom Networking".

The Amazon VPC CNI is deployed as a Kubernetes Daemonset named aws-node on worker nodes. When a worker node is provisioned, it has a default ENI, called the primary ENI, attached to it. The CNI allocates a warm pool of ENIs and secondary IP addresses from the subnet attached to the node's primary ENI. By default, ipamd attempts to allocate an additional ENI to the node. The IPAMD allocates additional ENI when a single Pod is scheduled and assigned a secondary IP address from the primary ENI. This "warm" ENI enables faster Pod networking. As the pool of secondary IP addresses runs out, the CNI adds another ENI to assign more.

The number of ENIs and IP addresses in a pool are configured through environment variables called WARM_ENI_TARGET, WARM_IP_TARGET, MINIMUM_IP_TARGET. The `aws-node` Daemonset will periodically check that a sufficient number of ENIs are attached. A sufficient number of ENIs are attached when all of the `WARM_ENI_TARGET`, or `WARM_IP_TARGET` and `MINIMUM_IP_TARGET` conditions are met. If there are insufficient ENIs attached, the CNI will make an API call to EC2 to attach more until `MAX_ENI` limit is reached.

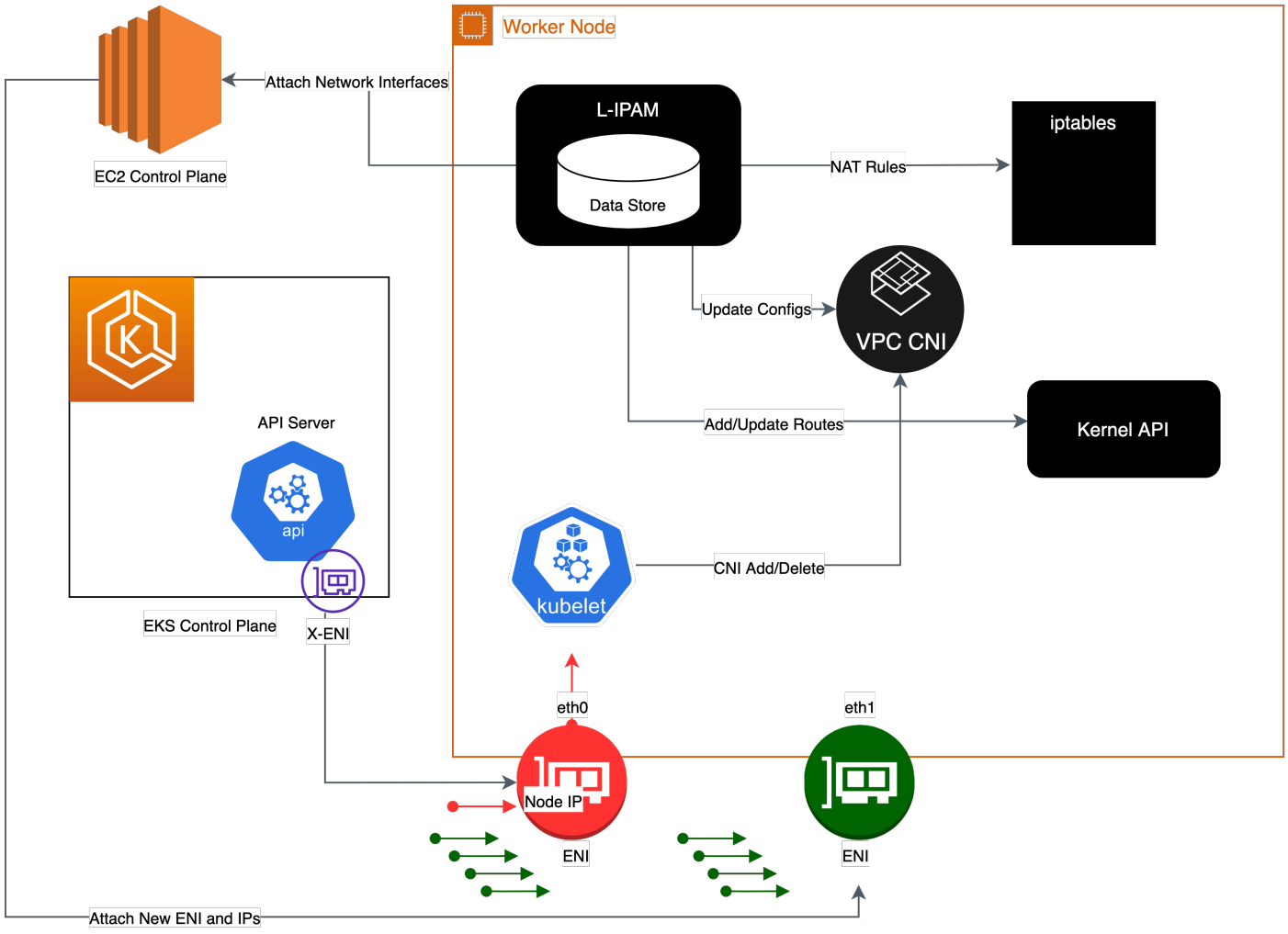
- `WARM_ENI_TARGET` - Integer, Values greater than 0 indicate requirement Enabled
  - The number of Warm ENIs to be maintained. An ENI is "warm" when it is attached as a secondary ENI to a node, but it is not in use by any Pod. More specifically, no IP addresses of the ENI have been associated with a Pod.
  - Example: Consider an instance with 2 ENIs, each ENI supporting 5 IP addresses. WARM_ENI_TARGET is set to 1. If exactly 5 IP addresses are associated with the instance, the CNI maintains 2 ENIs attached to the instance. The first ENI is in use, and all 5 possible IP addresses of this ENI are used. The second ENI is "warm" with all 5 IP addresses in pool. If another Pod is launched on the instance, a 6th IP address will be needed. The CNI will assign this 6th Pod an IP address from the second ENI and from 5 IPs from the pool. The second ENI is now in use, and no longer in a "warm" status. The CNI will allocate a 3rd ENI to maintain at least 1 warm ENI.

> **Note**
>
> The warm ENIs still consume IP addresses from the CIDR of your VPC. IP addresses are "unused" or "warm" until they are associated with a workload, such as a Pod.

- `WARM_IP_TARGET`, Integer, Values greater than 0 indicate requirement Enabled
  - The number of Warm IP addresses to be maintained. A Warm IP is available on an actively attached ENI, but has not been assigned to a Pod. In other words, the number of Warm IPs available is the number of IPs that may be assigned to a Pod without requiring an additional ENI.
- Example: Consider an instance with 1 ENI, each ENI supporting 20 IP addresses. WARM_IP_TARGET is set to 5. WARM_ENI_TARGET is set to 0. Only 1 ENI will be attached until a 16th IP address is needed. Then, the CNI will attach a second ENI, consuming 20 possible addresses from the subnet CIDR.
- `MINIMUM_IP_TARGET`, Integer, Values greater than 0 indicate requirement Enabled

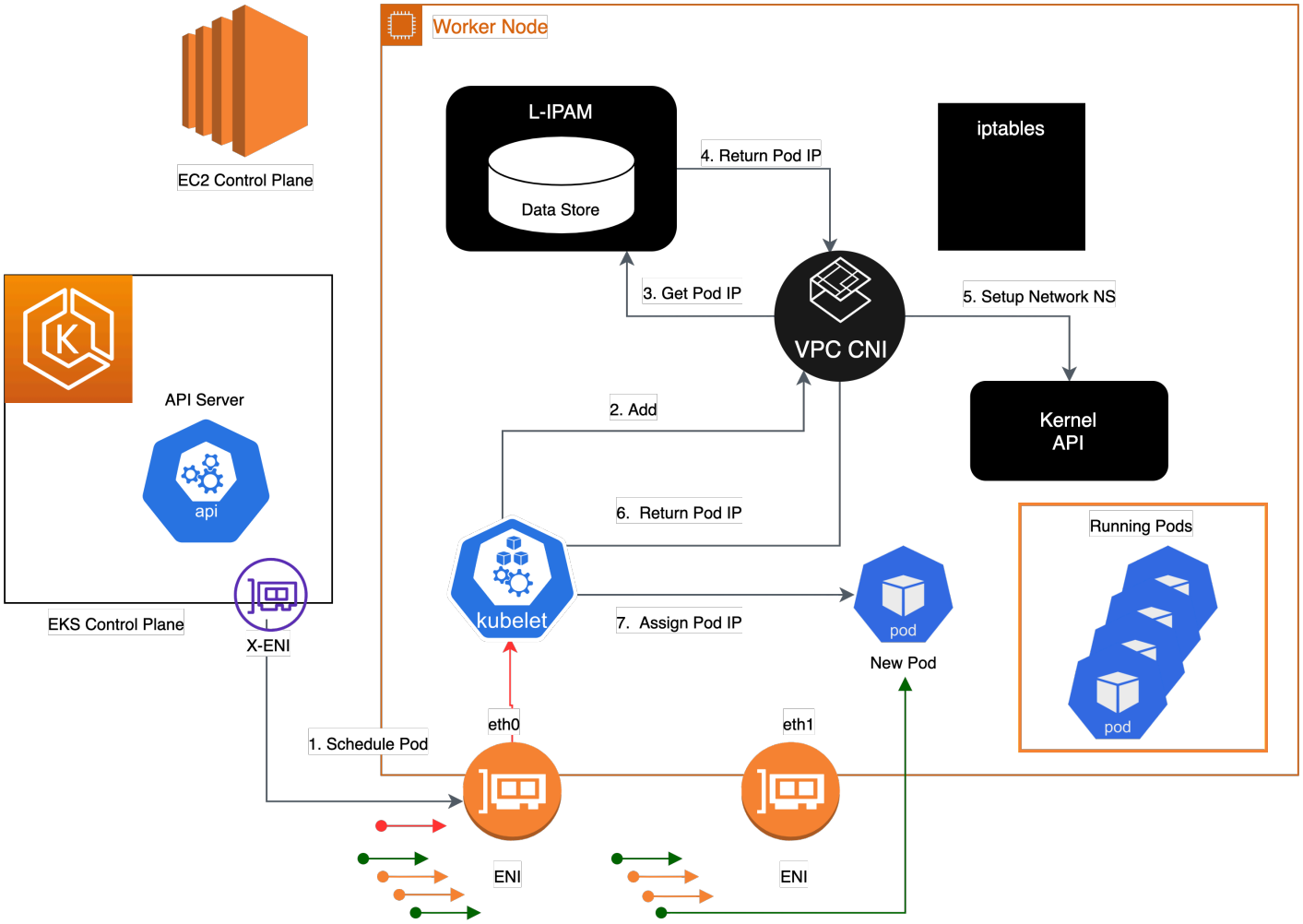
- The minimum number of IP addresses to be allocated at any time. This is commonly used to front-load the assignment of multiple ENIs at instance launch.
- Example: Consider a newly launched instance. It has 1 ENI and each ENI supports 10 IP addresses. MINIMUM_IP_TARGET is set to 100. The ENI immediately attaches 9 more ENIs for a total of 100 addresses. This happens regardless of any WARM_IP_TARGET or WARM_ENI_TARGET values.

This project includes a Subnet Calculator Excel Document. This calculator document simulates the IP address consumption of a specified workload under different ENI configuration options, such as `WARM_IP_TARGET` and `WARM_ENI_TARGET`.

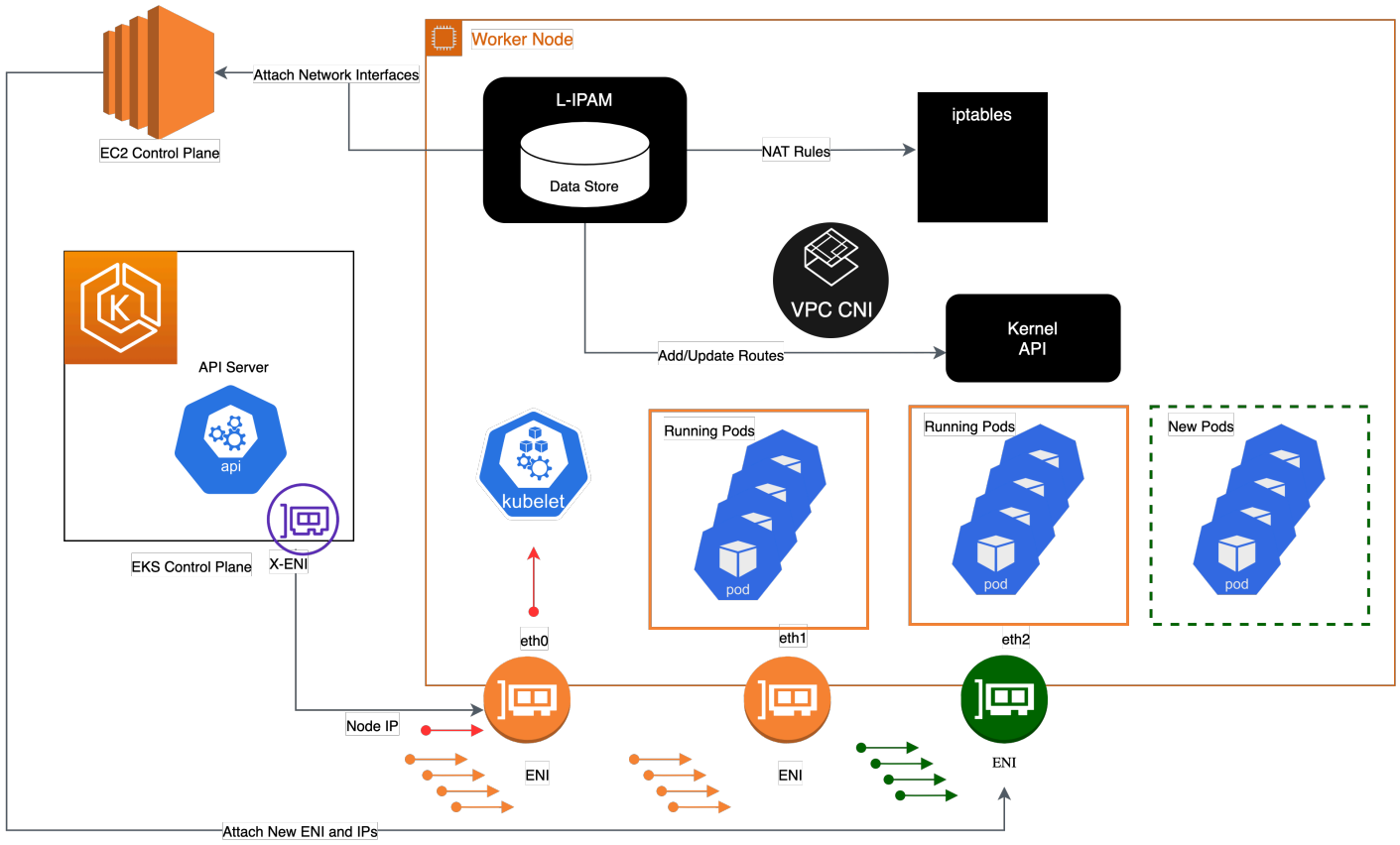


When Kubelet receives an add Pod request, the CNI binary queries ipamd for an available IP address, which ipamd then provides to the Pod. The CNI binary wires up the host and Pod network.

Pods deployed on a node are, by default, assigned to the same security groups as the primary ENI. Alternatively, Pods may be configured with different security groups.



As the pool of IP addresses is depleted, the plugin automatically attaches another elastic network interface to the instance and allocates another set of secondary IP addresses to that interface. This process continues until the node can no longer support additional elastic network interfaces.



When a Pod is deleted, VPC CNI places the Pod's IP address in a 30-second cool down cache. The IPs in a cool down cache are not assigned to new Pods. When the cooling-off period is over, VPC CNI moves Pod IP back to the warm pool. The cooling-off period prevents Pod IP addresses from being recycled prematurely and allows kube-proxy on all cluster nodes to finish updating the iptables rules. When the number of IPs or ENIs exceeds the number of warm pool settings, the ipamd plugin returns IPs and ENIs to the VPC.

As described above in Secondary IP mode, each Pod receives one secondary private IP address from one of the ENIs attached to an instance. Since each Pod uses an IP address, the number of Pods you can run on a particular EC2 Instance depends on how many ENIs can be attached to it and how many IP addresses it supports. The VPC CNI checks the limits file to find out how many ENIs and IP addresses are allowed for each type of instance.

You can use the following formula to determine maximum number of Pods you can deploy on a node.

```
(Number of network interfaces for the instance type * (the number of IP addresses per
 network interface - 1)) + 2
```

The +2 indicates Pods that require host networking, such as kube-proxy and VPC CNI. Amazon EKS requires kube-proxy and VPC CNI to be operating on each node, and these requirements are factored into the max-pods value. If you want to run additional host networking pods, consider updating the max-pods value. You can specify `--kubelet-extra-args "–max-pods=110"` as user data in the launch template.

As an example, on a cluster with 3 c5.large nodes (3 ENIs and max 10 IPs per ENI), when the cluster starts up and has 2 CoreDNS pods, the CNI will consume 50 IP addresses and keep 43 IPs in warm pool. The warm pool enables faster Pod launches when the application is deployed.

Node 1 (with CoreDNS pod): 2 ENIs, 20 IPs assigned

Node 2 (with CoreDNS pod): 2 ENIs, 20 IPs assigned

Node 3 (no Pod): 1 ENI. 10 IPs assigned.

For Node 1 and Node 2 (identical configuration):

- 2 ENIs × 10 IPs per ENI = 20 IPs total
- Subtract 2 primary IPs (1 per ENI) = 18 IPs
- Subtract 1 IP for CoreDNS pod = 17 IPs available
- So each of these nodes has 17 IPs in warm pool

For Node 3:

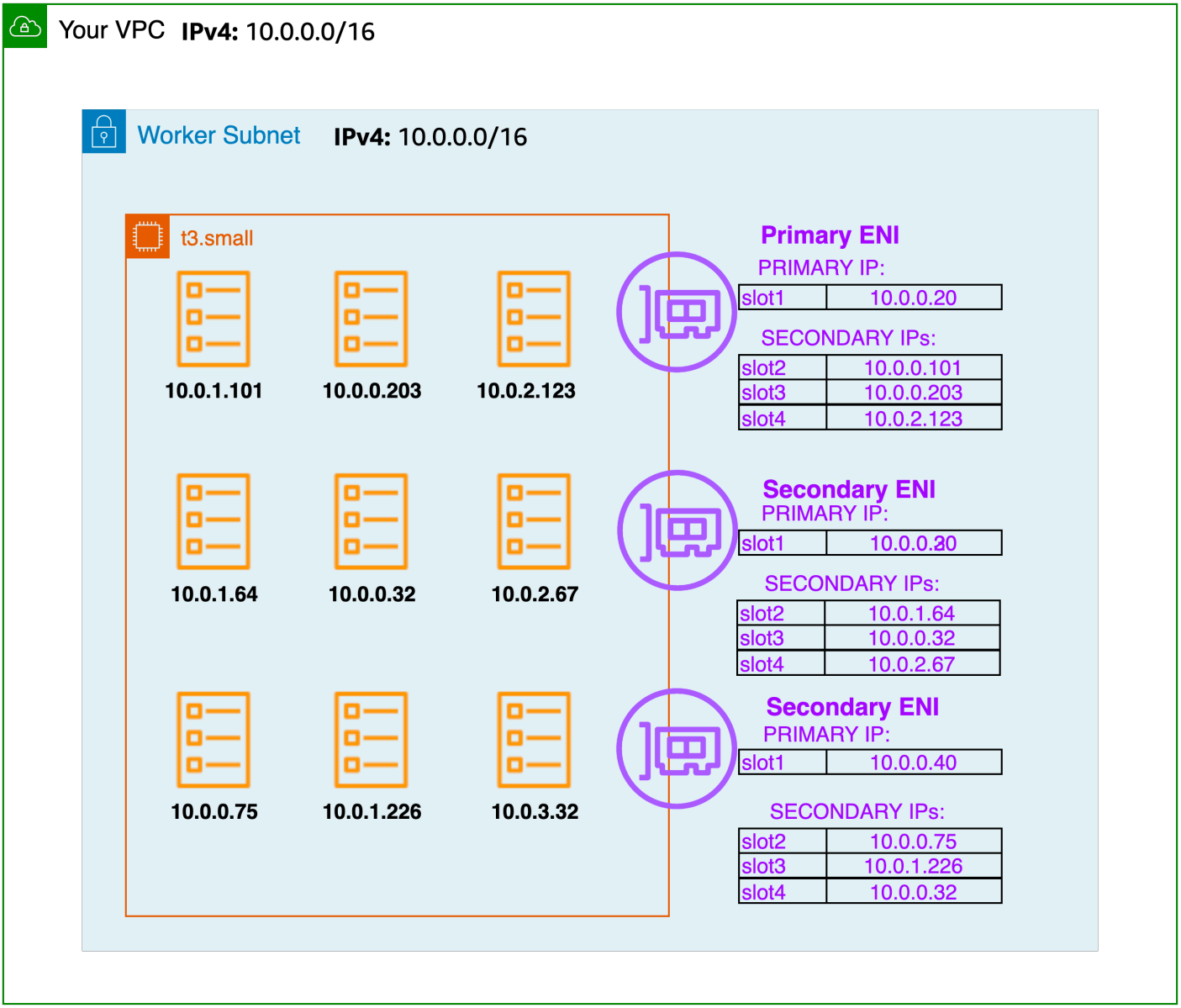
- 1 ENI × 10 IPs = 10 IPs total
- Subtract 1 primary IP = 9 IPs available in warm pool

Total warm pool calculation: - 17 (Node 1) + 17 (Node 2) + 9 (Node 3) = 43 IPs

Keep in mind that infrastructure pods, often running as daemon sets, each contribute to the max-pod count. These can include:

- CoreDNS
- Amazon Elastic LoadBalancer
- Operational pods for metrics-server

We suggest that you plan your infrastructure by combining these Pods' capacities. For a list of the maximum number of Pods supported by each instance type, see eni-max-pods.txt on GitHub.



Recommendations

Deploy EKS cluster with Auto Mode

When you use EKS Auto Mode to create a cluster, AWS manages the VPC Container Network Interface (CNI) configuration for your cluster. With Amazon EKS Auto Mode, you don't need to install or upgrade networking add-ons. However, ensure your workloads are compatible with the managed VPC CNI configuration.

Deploy VPC CNI Managed Add-On

When you provision a cluster, Amazon EKS installs VPC CNI automatically. Amazon EKS nevertheless supports managed add-ons that enable the cluster to interact with underlying AWS resources such as computing, storage, and networking. We highly recommend that you deploy clusters with managed add-ons including VPC CNI.

Amazon EKS managed add-on offer VPC CNI installation and management for Amazon EKS clusters. Amazon EKS add-ons include the latest security patches, bug fixes, and are validated by AWS to work with Amazon EKS. The VPC CNI add-on enables you to continuously ensure the security and stability of your Amazon EKS clusters and decrease the amount of effort required to install, configure, and update add-ons. Additionally, a managed add-on can be added, updated, or deleted via the Amazon EKS API, AWS Management Console, AWS CLI, and eksctl.

You can find the managed fields of VPC CNI using `--show-managed-fields` flag with the `kubectl get` command.

```
kubectl get daemonset aws-node --show-managed-fields -n kube-system -o yaml
```

Managed add-ons prevents configuration drift by automatically overwriting configurations every 15 minutes. This means that any changes to managed add-ons, made via the Kubernetes API after add-on creation, will overwrite by the automated drift-prevention process and also set to defaults during add-on update process.

The fields managed by EKS are listed under managedFields with manager as EKS. Fields managed by EKS include service account, image, image url, liveness probe, readiness probe, labels, volumes, and volume mounts.

> **Note**
>
> The most frequently used fields such as WARM_ENI_TARGET, WARM_IP_TARGET, and MINIMUM_IP_TARGET are not managed and will not be reconciled. The changes to these fields will be preserved upon updating of the add-on.

We suggest testing the add-on behavior in your non-production clusters for a specific configuration before updating production clusters. Additionally, follow the steps in the EKS user guide for add-on configurations.

Migrate to Managed Add-On

You will manage the version compatibility and update the security patches of self-managed VPC CNI. To update a self-managed add-on, you must use the Kubernetes APIs and instructions outlined in the EKS user guide. We recommend migrating to a managed add-on for existing EKS clusters and highly suggest creating a backup of your current CNI settings prior to migration. To configure managed add-ons, you can utilize the Amazon EKS API, AWS Management Console, or AWS Command Line Interface.

```
kubectl apply view-last-applied daemonset aws-node -n kube-system  aws-k8s-cni-old.yaml
```

Amazon EKS will replace the CNI configuration settings if the field is listed as managed with default settings. We caution against modifying the managed fields. The add-on does not reconcile configuration fields such as the *warm* environment variables and CNI modes. The Pods and applications will continue to run while you migrate to a managed CNI.

Backup CNI Settings Before Update

VPC CNI runs on customer data plane (nodes), and hence Amazon EKS does not automatically update the add-on (managed and self-managed) when new versions are released or after you update your cluster to a new Kubernetes minor version. To update the add-on for an existing cluster, you must trigger an update via update-addon API or clicking update now link in the EKS console for add-ons. If you have deployed self-managed add-on, follow steps mentioned under updating self-managed VPC CNI add-on.

We strongly recommend that you update one minor version at a time. For example, if your current minor version is `1.9` and you want to update to `1.11`, you should update to the latest patch version of `1.10` first, then update to the latest patch version of `1.11`.

Perform an inspection of the aws-node Daemonset before updating Amazon VPC CNI. Take a backup of existing settings. If using a managed add-on, confirm that you have not updated any settings that Amazon EKS might override. We recommend a post update hook in your automation workflow or a manual apply step after an add-on update.

```
kubectl apply view-last-applied daemonset aws-node -n kube-system  aws-k8s-cni-old.yaml
```

For a self-managed add-on, compare the backup with `releases` on GitHub to see the available versions and familiarize yourself with the changes in the version that you want to update to. We

recommend using Helm to manage self-managed add-ons and leverage values files to apply settings. Any update operations involving Daemonset delete will result in application downtime and must be avoided.

Understand Security Context

We strongly suggest you to understand the security contexts configured for managing VPC CNI efficiently. Amazon VPC CNI has two components CNI binary and ipamd (aws-node) Daemonset. The CNI runs as a binary on a node and has access to node root file system, also has privileged access as it deals with iptables at the node level. The CNI binary is invoked by the kubelet when Pods gets added or removed.

The aws-node Daemonset is a long-running process responsible for IP address management at the node level. The aws-node runs in `hostNetwork` mode and allows access to the loopback device, and network activity of other pods on the same node. The aws-node init-container runs in privileged mode and mounts the CRI socket allowing the Daemonset to monitor IP usage by the Pods running on the node. Amazon EKS is working to remove the privileged requirement of aws-node init container. Additionally, the aws-node needs to update NAT entries and to load the iptables modules and hence runs with NET_ADMIN privileges.

Amazon EKS recommends deploying the security policies as defined by the aws-node manifest for IP management for the Pods and networking settings. Please consider updating to the latest version of VPC CNI. Furthermore, please consider opening a GitHub issue if you have a specific security requirement.

Use separate IAM role for CNI

The AWS VPC CNI requires AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) permissions. The CNI policy needs to be set up before the IAM role can be used. You can use `AmazonEKS_CNI_Policy`, which is an AWS managed policy for IPv4 clusters. AmazonEKS CNI managed policy only has permissions for IPv4 clusters. You must create a separate IAM policy for IPv6 clusters with the permissions listed here.

By default, VPC CNI inherits the Amazon EKS node IAM role (both managed and self-managed node groups).

Configuring a separate IAM role with the relevant policies for Amazon VPC CNI is **strongly** recommended. If not, the pods of Amazon VPC CNI gets the permission assigned to the node IAM role and have access to the instance profile assigned to the node.

The VPC CNI plugin creates and configures a service account called aws-node. By default, the service account binds to the Amazon EKS node IAM role with Amazon EKS CNI policy attached. To use the separate IAM role, we recommend that you create a new service account with Amazon EKS CNI policy attached. To use a new service account you must redeploy the CNI pods. Consider specifying a `--service-account-role-arn` for VPC CNI managed add-on when creating new clusters. Make sure you remove Amazon EKS CNI policy for both IPv4 and IPv6 from Amazon EKS node role.

It is advised that you block access instance metadata to minimize the blast radius of security breach.

Handle Liveness/Readiness Probe failures

We advise increasing the liveness and readiness probe timeout values (default `timeoutSeconds: 10`) for EKS 1.20 and later clusters to prevent probe failures from causing your application's Pod to become stuck in a containerCreating state. This problem has been seen in data-intensive and batch-processing clusters. High CPU use causes aws-node probe health failures, leading to unfulfilled Pod CPU requests. In addition to modifying the probe timeout, ensure that the CPU resource requests (default `CPU: 25m`) for aws-node are correctly configured. We do not suggest updating the settings unless your node is having issues.

We highly encourage you to run sudo `bash /opt/cni/bin/aws-cni-support.sh` on a node while you engage Amazon EKS support. The script will assist in evaluating kubelet logs and memory utilization on the node. Please consider installing SSM Agent on Amazon EKS worker nodes to run the script.

Configure IPTables Forward Policy on non-EKS Optimized AMI Instances

If you are using custom AMI, make sure to set iptables forward policy to ACCEPT under kubelet.service. Many systems set the iptables forward policy to DROP. You can build custom AMI using HashiCorp Packer and a build specification with resources and configuration scripts from the Amazon EKS AMI repository on AWS GitHub. You can update the kubelet.service and follow the instructions specified here to create a custom AMI.

Routinely Upgrade CNI Version

The VPC CNI is backward compatible. The latest version works with all Amazon EKS supported Kubernetes versions. Additionally, the VPC CNI is offered as an EKS add-on (see "Deploy VPC CNI Managed Add-On" above). While EKS add-ons orchestrates upgrades of add-ons, it will

not automatically upgrade add-ons like the CNI because they run on the data plane. You are responsible for upgrading the VPC CNI add-on following managed and self-managed worker node upgrades.

Optimizing IP Address Utilization

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Containerized environments are growing in scale at a rapid pace, thanks to application modernization. This means that more and more worker nodes and pods are being deployed.

The Amazon VPC CNI plugin assigns each pod an IP address from the VPC's CIDR(s). This approach provides full visibility of the Pod addresses with tools such as VPC Flow Logs and other monitoring solutions. Depending on your workload type this can cause a substantial number of IP addresses to be consumed by the pods.

When designing your AWS networking architecture, it is important to optimize Amazon EKS IP consumption at the VPC and at the node level. This will help you mitigate IP exhaustion issues and increase the pod density per node.

In this section, we will discuss techniques that can help you achieve these goals.

Optimize node-level IP consumption

Prefix delegation is a feature of Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC) that allows you to assign IPv4 or IPv6 prefixes to your Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances. It increases the IP addresses per network interface (ENI), which increases the pod density per node and improves your compute efficiency. Prefix delegation is also supported with Custom Networking.

For detailed information please see Prefix Delegation with Linux nodes and Prefix Delegation with Windows nodes sections.

Mitigate IP exhaustion

To prevent your clusters from consuming all available IP addresses, we strongly recommend sizing your VPCs and subnets with growth in mind.

Adopting IPv6 is a great way to avoid these problems from the very beginning. However, for organizations whose scalability needs exceed the initial planning and cannot adopt IPv6, improving the VPC design is the recommended response to IP address exhaustion. The most commonly used technique among Amazon EKS customers is adding non-routable Secondary CIDRs to the VPC and configuring the VPC CNI to use this additional IP space when allocating IP addresses to Pods. This is commonly referred to as Custom Networking.

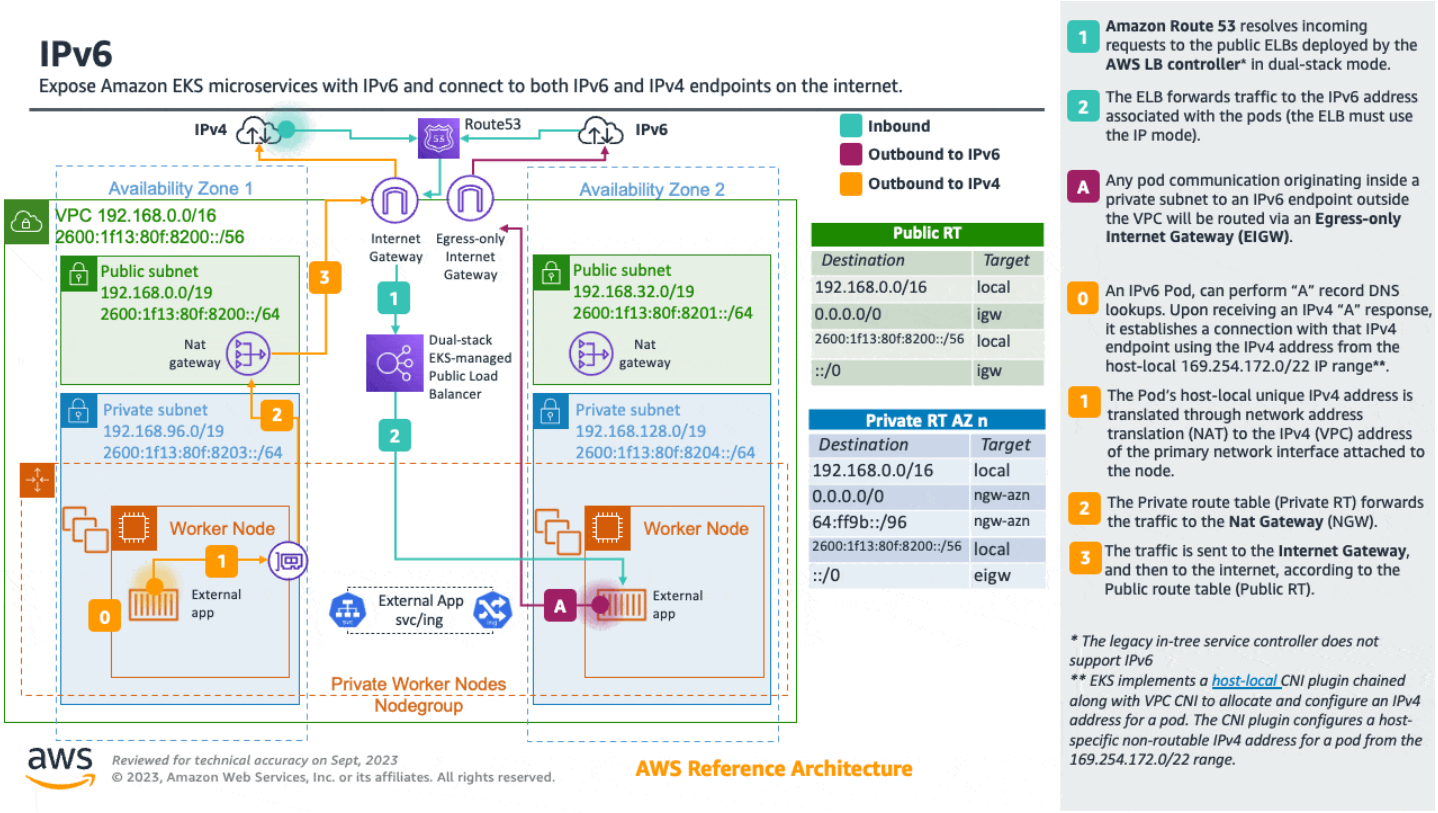
We will cover which variables of the Amazon VPC CNI you can use to optimize the warm pool of IPs assigned to your nodes. We will close this section with some other architectural patterns that are not intrinsic to Amazon EKS but can help mitigate IP exhaustion.

Use IPv6 (recommended)

Adopting IPv6 is the easiest way to work around the RFC1918 limitations; we strongly recommend you consider adopting IPv6 as your first option when choosing a network architecture. IPv6 provides a significantly larger total IP address space, and cluster administrators can focus on migrating and scaling applications without devoting effort towards working around IPv4 limits.

Amazon EKS clusters support both IPv4 and IPv6. By default, EKS clusters use IPv4 address space. Specifying an IPv6 based address space at cluster creation time will enable the use of IPv6. In an IPv6 EKS cluster, pods and services receive IPv6 addresses while **maintaining the ability for legacy IPv4 endpoints to connect to services running on IPv6 clusters and vice versa**. All the pod-to-pod communication within a cluster always occurs over IPv6. Within a VPC (/56), the IPv6 CIDR block size for IPv6 subnets is fixed at /64. This provides 2^64 (approximately 18 quintillion) IPv6 addresses allowing to scale your deployments on EKS.

For detailed information please see the Running IPv6 EKS Clusters section and for hands-on experience please see the Understanding IPv6 on Amazon EKS section of the Get hands-on with IPv6 workshop.



Optimize IP consumption in IPv4 clusters

This section is dedicated to customers that are running legacy applications, and/or are not ready to migrate to IPv6. While we encourage all organizations to migrate to IPv6 as soon as possible, we recognize that some may still need to look into alternative approaches to scale their container workloads with IPv4. For this reason, we will also walk you through the architectural patterns to optimize IPv4 (RFC1918) address space consumption with Amazon EKS clusters.

Plan for Growth

As a first line of defense against IP exhaustion, we strongly recommend to size your IPv4 VPCs and subnets with growth in mind, to prevent your clusters to consume all the available IP addresses. You will not be able to create new Pods or nodes if the subnets don't have enough available IP addresses.

Before building VPC and subnets, it is advised to work backwards from the required workload scale. For example, when clusters are built using eksctl (a simple CLI tool for creating and managing clusters on EKS) /19 subnets are created by default. A netmask of /19 is suitable for the majority of workload types allowing more than 8000 addresses to be allocated.

> **Important**
>
> When you size VPCs and subnets, there might be a number of elements (other than pods and nodes) which can consume IP addresses, for example Load Balancers, RDS Databases and other in-vpc services.

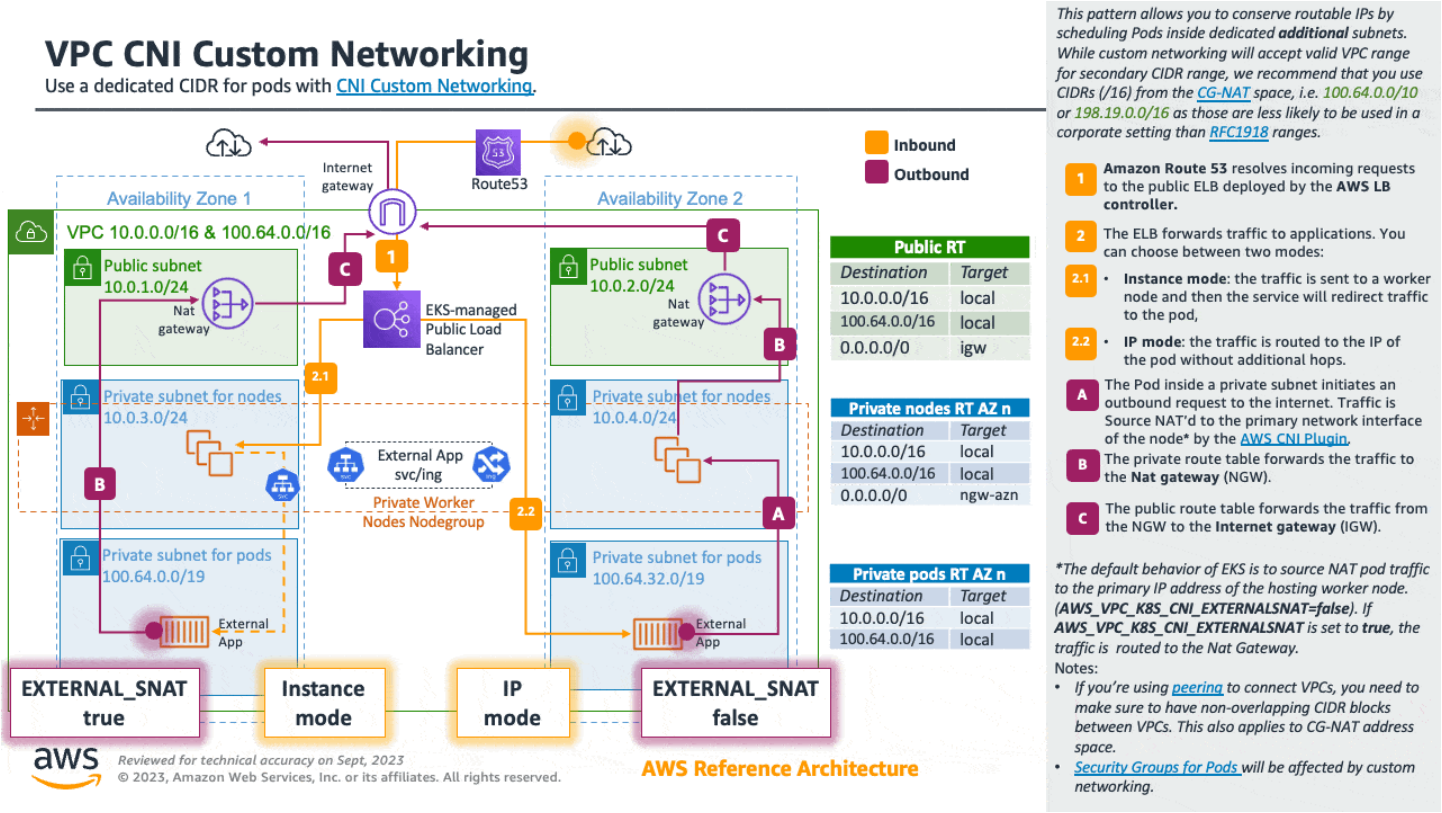
Additionally, Amazon EKS, can create up to 4 elastic network interfaces (X-ENI) that are required to allow communication towards the control plane (more info here). During cluster upgrades, Amazon EKS creates new X-ENIs and deletes the old ones when the upgrade is successful. For this reason we recommend a netmask of at least /28 (16 IP addresses) for subnets associated with an EKS cluster.

You can use the sample EKS Subnet Calculator spreadsheet to plan for your network. The spreadsheet calculates IP usage based on workloads and VPC ENI configuration. The IP usage is compared to an IPv4 subnet to determine if the configuration and subnet size is sufficient for your workload. Keep in mind that, if subnets in your VPC run out of available IP addresses, we suggest creating a new subnet using the VPC's original CIDR blocks. Notice that now Amazon EKS now allows modification of cluster subnets and security groups.

Custom Networking

If you are about to exhaust the RFC1918 IP space, you can use the Custom Networking pattern to conserve routable IPs by scheduling Pods inside dedicated additional subnets. While custom networking will accept valid VPC range for secondary CIDR range, we recommend that you use CIDRs (/16) from the CG-NAT space, i.e. `100.64.0.0/10` or `198.19.0.0/16` as those are less likely to be used in a corporate setting than RFC1918 ranges.

For detailed information please see the dedicated section for Custom Networking.



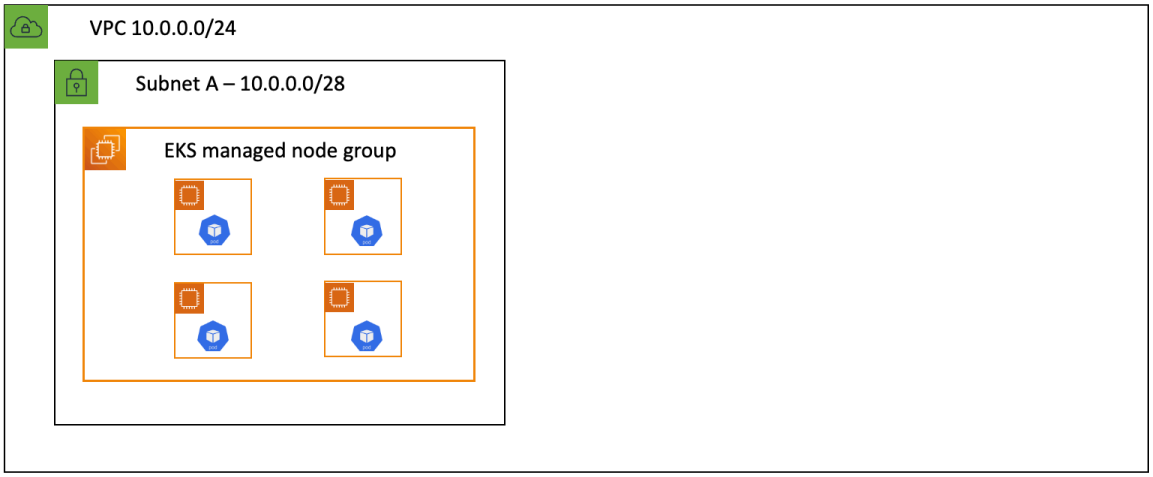
Enhanced Subnet Discovery

Enhanced Subnet Discovery provides a streamlined network configuration alternative for IP exhaustion, by tagging new subnets so they will be discoverable by the Amazon VPC CNI. With Enhanced Subnet Discovery, the current workloads can keep running on the same subnets and Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service (Amazon EKS) can now schedule additional pods on the new "usable subnet(s)".

If your cluster's current subnets are running out of IP addresses, you can simply add additional subnets to your Amazon EKS cluster as follows:

1. Associate a new CIDR block to your VPC.
2. Create a new subnet in the new CIDR block and tag it with "kubernetes.io/role/cni" = "1".
3. Enable the ENABLE_SUBNET_DISCOVERY configuration of Amazon VPC CNI add-on to "true" (default since version 1.18.0).

Once Enhanced Subnet Discovery is enabled on your VPC and Amazon EKS clusters, new Elastic Network Interfaces (ENIs) will be attached to your Amazon EKS nodes as described in the following diagram:



For more information, see Amazon VPC CNI introduces Enhanced Subnet Discovery on the AWS containers blog.

Optimize the IPs warm pool

With the default configuration, the VPC CNI keeps an entire ENI (and associated IPs) in the warm pool. This may consume a large number of IPs, especially on larger instance types.

If your cluster subnet has a limited number of IP addresses available, scrutinize these VPC CNI configuration environment variables:

- `WARM_IP_TARGET`
- `MINIMUM_IP_TARGET`
- `WARM_ENI_TARGET`

You can configure the value of `MINIMUM_IP_TARGET` to closely match the number of Pods you expect to run on your nodes. Doing so will ensure that as Pods get created, and the CNI can assign IP addresses from the warm pool without calling the EC2 API.

Please be mindful that setting the value of `WARM_IP_TARGET` too low, will cause additional calls to the EC2 API, and that might cause throttling of the requests. For large clusters use along with `MINIMUM_IP_TARGET` to avoid throttling of the requests.

To configure these options, you can download the `aws-k8s-cni.yaml` manifest and set the environment variables. At the time of writing, the latest release is located here. Check the version of the configuration value matches the installed VPC CNI version.

> **Warning**
>
> These settings will be reset to defaults when you update the CNI. Please take a backup of the CNI, before you update it. Review the configuration settings to determine if you need to reapply them after update is successful.

You can adjust the CNI parameters on the fly without downtime for your existing applications, but you should choose values that will support your scalability needs. For example, if you're working with batch workloads, we recommend updating the default `WARM_ENI_TARGET` to match the Pod scale needs. Setting `WARM_ENI_TARGET` to a high value always maintains the warm IP pool required to run large batch workloads and hence avoid data processing delays.

> **Warning**
>
> Improving your VPC design is the recommended response to IP address exhaustion. Consider solutions like IPv6 and Secondary CIDRs. Adjusting these values to minimize the number of Warm IPs should be a temporary solution after other options are excluded. Misconfiguring these values may interfere with cluster operation. Before making any changes to a production system, be sure to review the considerations on this page.

Monitor IP Address Inventory

In addition to the solutions described above, it is also important to have visibility over IP utilization. You can monitor the IP addresses inventory of subnets using CNI Metrics Helper. Some of the metrics available are:

- maximum number of ENIs the cluster can support
- number of ENIs already allocated

- number of IP addresses currently assigned to Pods
- total and maximum number of IP address available

You can also set CloudWatch alarms to get notified if a subnet is running out of IP addresses.

> **Warning**
>
> Make sure `DISABLE_METRICS` variable for VPC CNI is set to false.

Further considerations

There are other architectural patterns not intrinsic to Amazon EKS that can help with IP exhaustion. For example, you can optimize communication across VPCs or share a VPC across multiple accounts to limit the IPv4 address allocation.

Learn more about these patterns here:

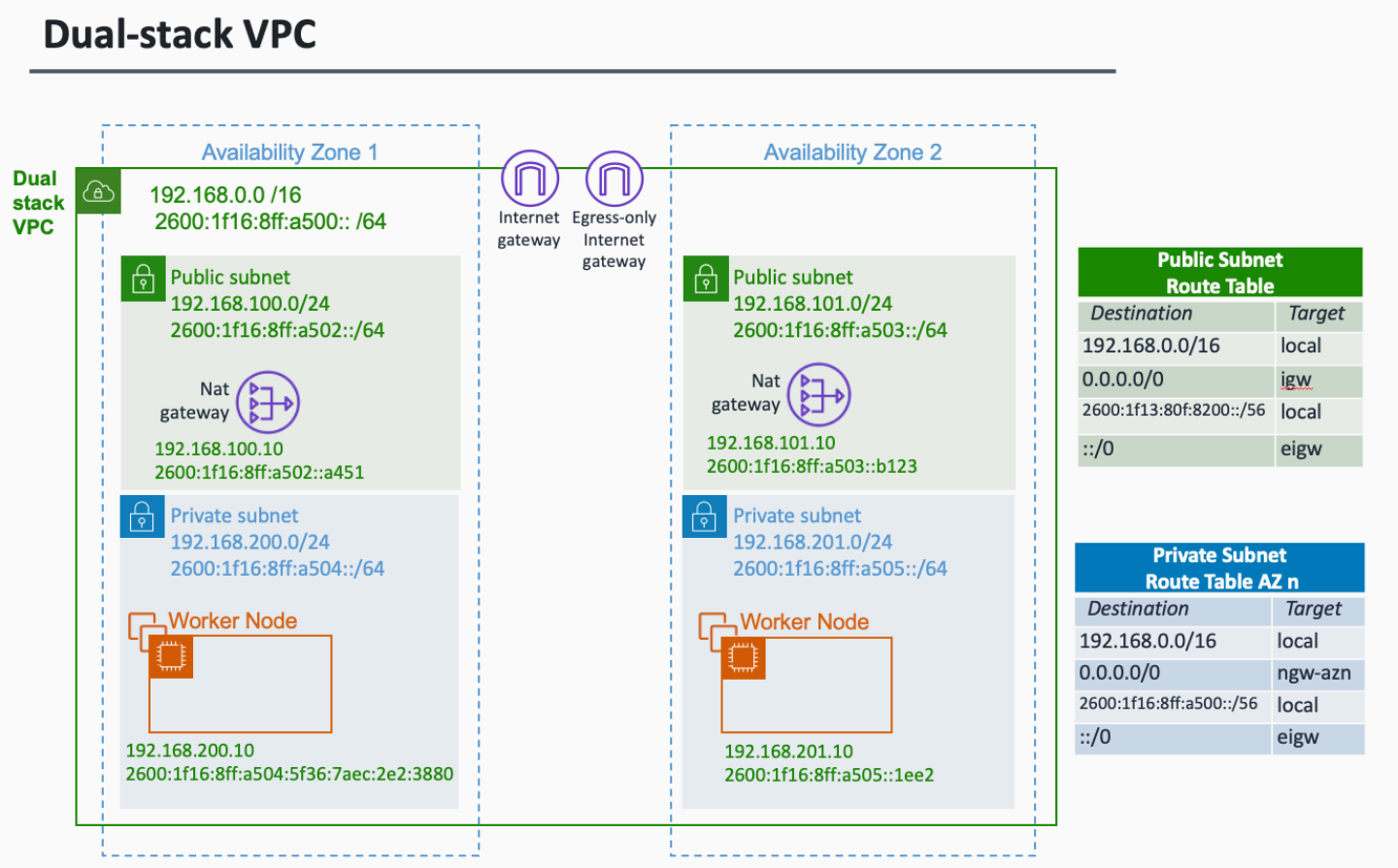
- Designing hyperscale Amazon VPC networks,
- Build secure multi-account multi-VPC connectivity with Amazon VPC Lattice.

Running IPv6 EKS Clusters

EKS in IPv6 mode solves the IPv4 exhaustion challenge often manifested in large scale EKS clusters. EKS's support for IPv6 is focused on resolving the IPv4 exhaustion problem, which stems from the limited size of the IPv4 address space. This is a significant concern raised by a number of our customers and is distinct from Kubernetes IPv4/IPv6 dual-stack feature. EKS/IPv6 will also provide the flexability to inter-connect network boundaries using IPv6 CIDRs hence minimizing the chances to suffer from CIDR overlap, therefor solving a 2-Fold problem (In-Cluster, Cross-Cluster). When deploying EKS clusters in IPv6 mode (--ip-family ipv6), the action is not a reversible. In simple words EKS IPv6 support is enabled for the entire lifetime of your cluster.

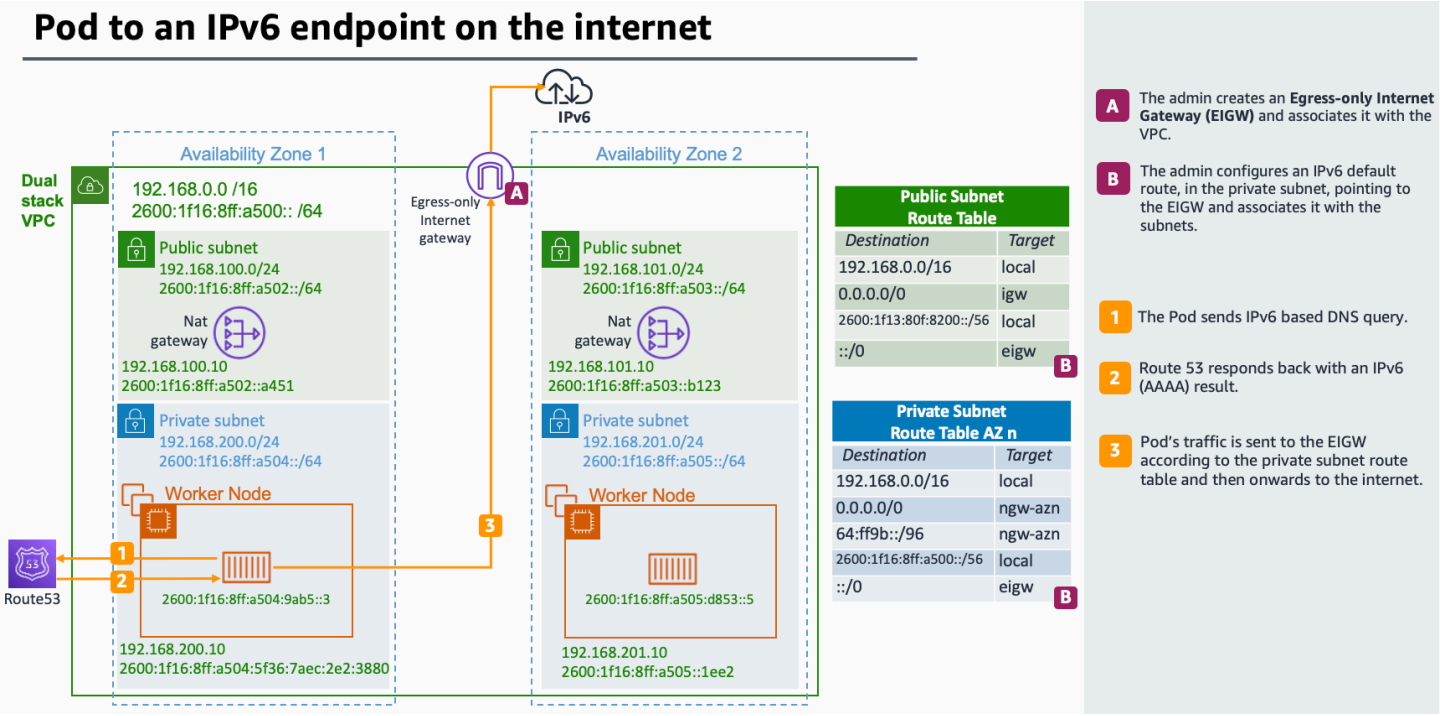
In an IPv6 EKS cluster, Pods and Services will receive IPv6 addresses while maintaining compatibility with legacy IPv4 Endpoints. This includes the ability for external IPv4 endpoints to access in-cluster services, and Pods to access external IPv4 endpoints.

Amazon EKS IPv6 support leverages the native VPC IPv6 capabilities. Each VPC is allocated with an IPv4 address prefix (CIDR block size can be from /16 to /28) and a unique /56 IPv6 address prefix (fixed) from within Amazon's GUA (Global Unicast Address); you can assign a /64 address prefix to each subnet in your VPC. IPv4 features, like Route Tables, Network Access Control Lists, Peering, and DNS resolution, work the same way in an IPv6 enabled VPC. The VPC is then referred as dual-stack VPC, following dual-stack subnets, the following diagram depict the IPV4IPv6 VPC foundation pattern that support EKS/IPv6 based clusters:



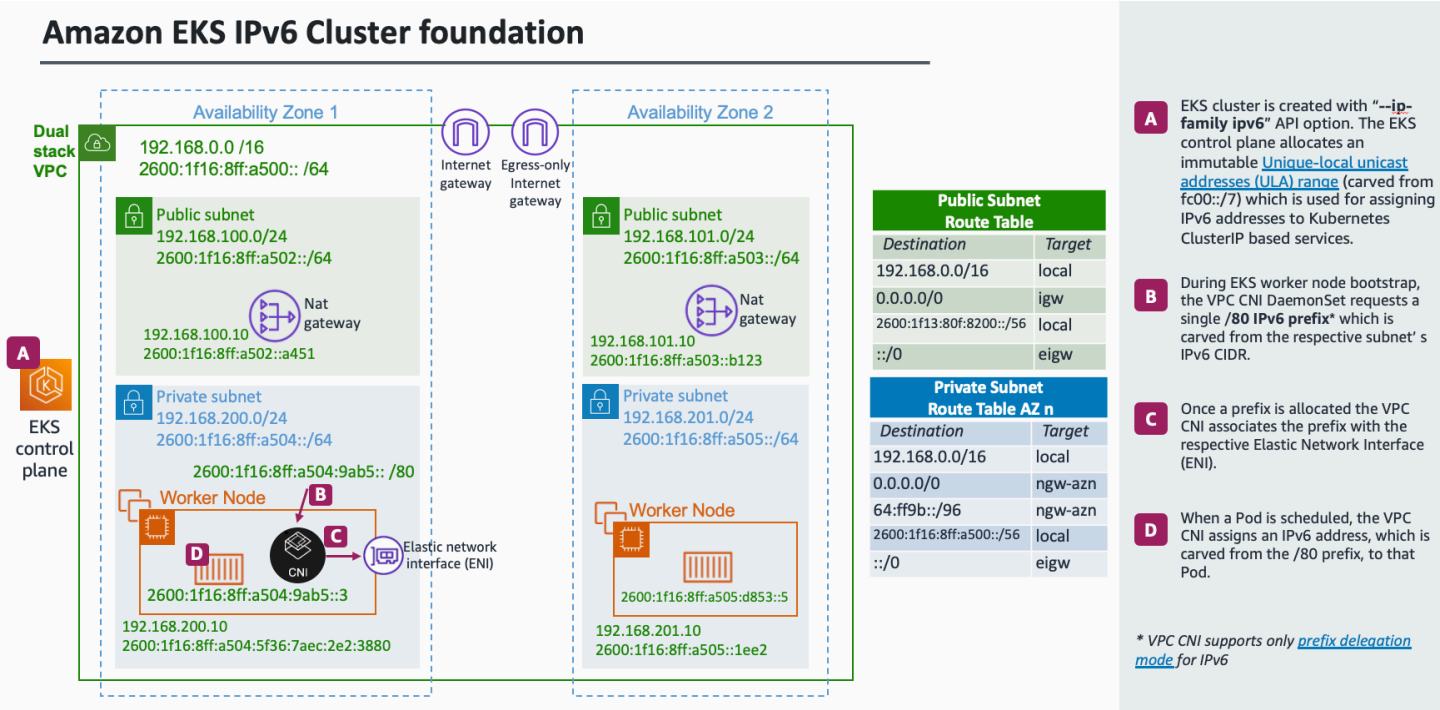
In the IPv6 world, every address is internet routable. By default, VPC allocates IPv6 CIDR from the public GUA range. However since August 2024 you can also use private IPv6 addressing for VPCs and subnets with Amazon VPC IP Address Manager (IPAM). Please see the this AWS Networking blog post and VPC documentation for more information.

The following diagram depict a Pod IPv6 Internet egress flow inside an EKS/IPv6 cluster:



Best practices for implementing IPv6 subnets can be found in the VPC user guide.

In an IPv6 EKS cluster, nodes and Pods receive public IPv6 addresses. EKS assigns IPv6 addresses to services based on Unique Local IPv6 Unicast Addresses (ULA). The ULA Service CIDR for an IPv6 cluster is automatically assigned during the cluster creation stage and cannot be specified, unlike IPv4. The following diagram depict an EKS/IPv6 based cluster control-plane data-plan foundation pattern:



Overview

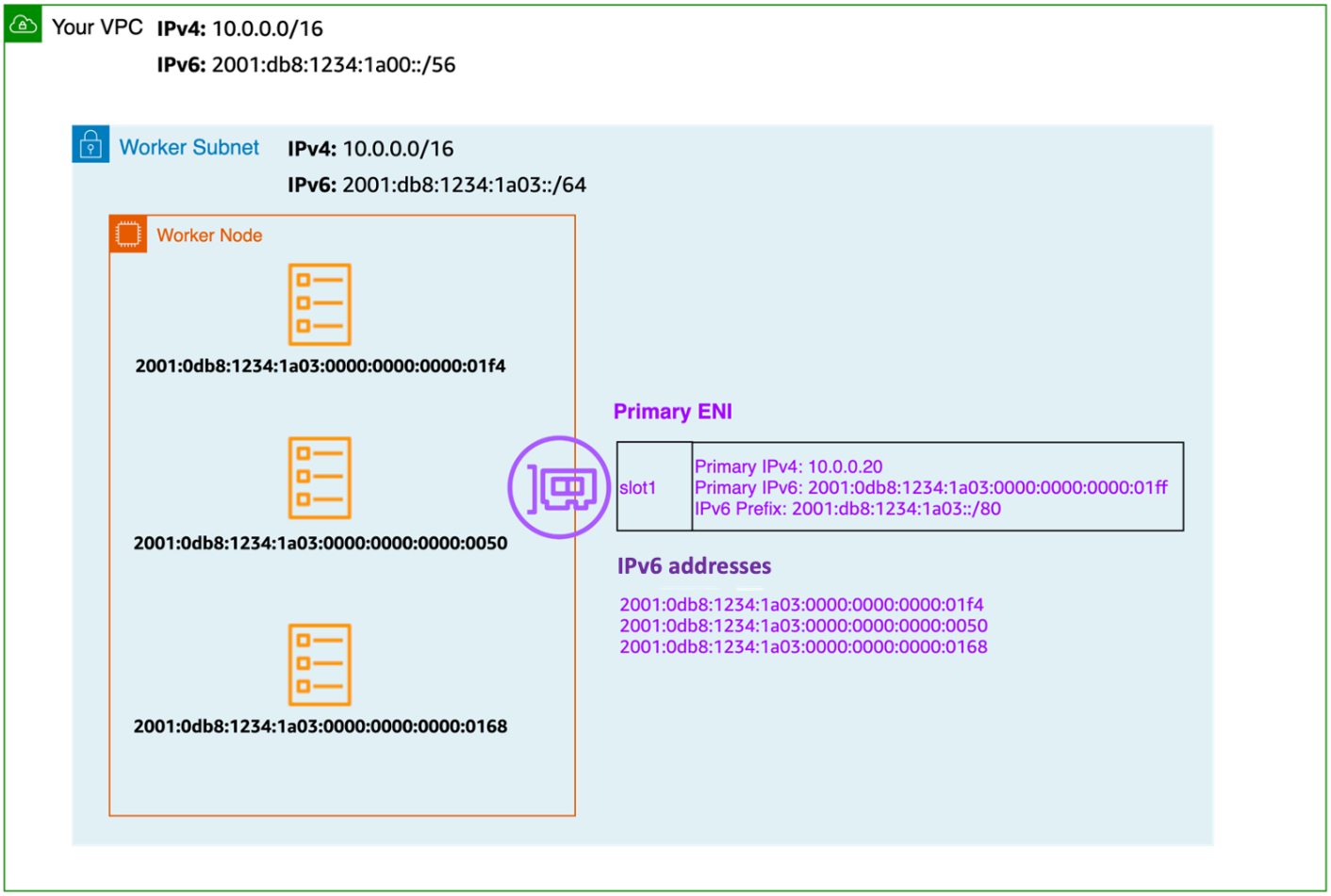
EKS/IPv6 is only supported in prefix mode (VPC-CNI Plug-in ENI IP assign mode). Learn more on Prefix Mode.

Prefix assignment only works on Nitro-based EC2 instances, hence EKS/IPv6 is only supported when the cluster data-plane uses EC2 Nitro-based instances.

In simple words an IPv6 prefix of /80 (Per worker-node) will yield ~10^14 IPv6 addresses, the limiting factor will no longer be IPs but Pod density (Resources wise).

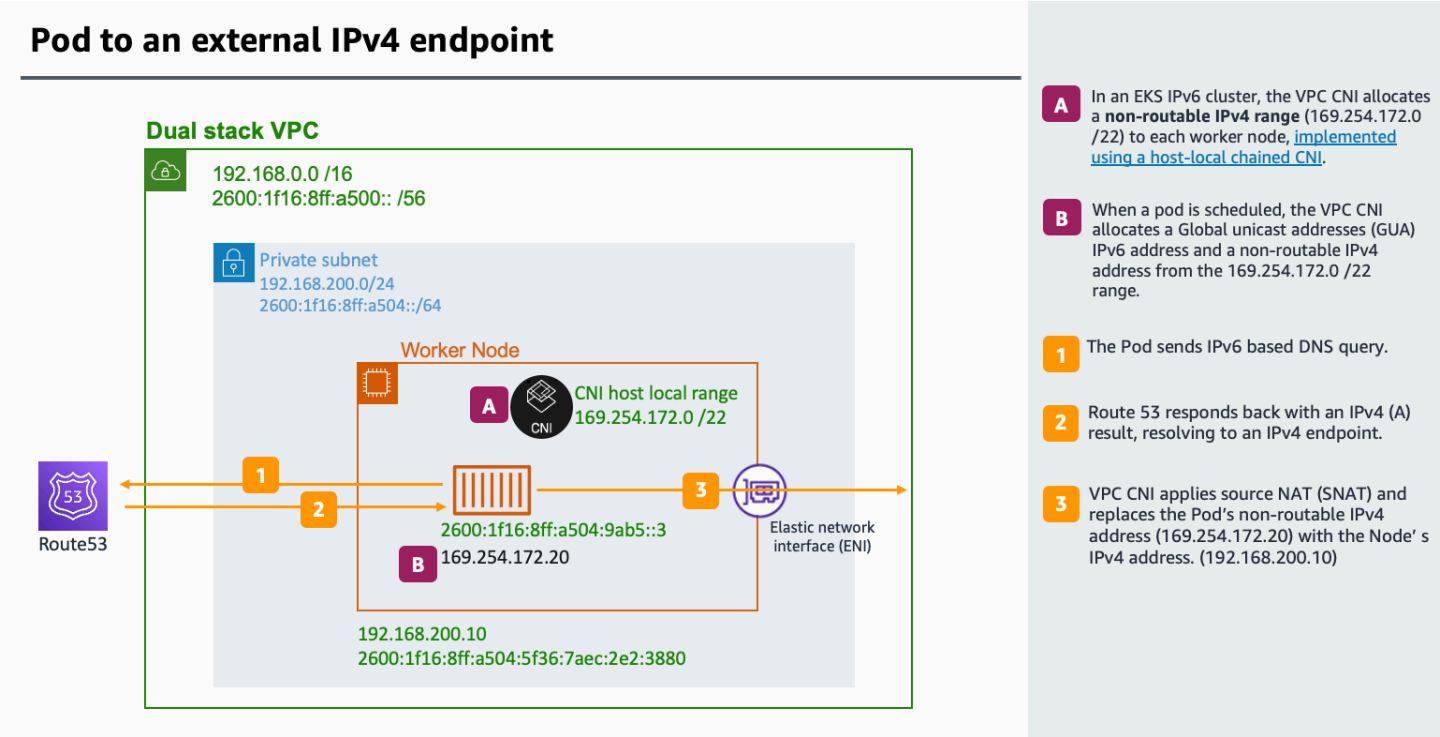
IPv6 prefix assignment only occurs at the EKS worker-node bootstrap time. This behaviour is known to mitigate scenarios where high Pod churn EKS/IPv4 clusters are often delayed in Pod scheduling due to throttled API calls generated by the VPC CNI plug-in (ipamd) aimed to allocate Private IPv4 addresses in a timely fashion. It is also known to make the VPC-CNI plug-in advanced knobs tuning WARM_IP/ENI, *MINIMUM_IP* unnecessarily.

The following diagram zooms into an IPv6 worker-node Elastic Network Interface (ENI):



Every EKS worker-node is assigned with IPv4 and IPv6 addresses, along with corresponding DNS entries. For a given worker-node, only a single IPv4 address from the dual-stack subnet is consumed. EKS support for IPv6 enables you to communicate with IPv4 endpoints (AWS, on-premise, internet) through a highly opinionated egress-only IPv4 model. EKS implements a host-local CNI plugin, secondary to the VPC CNI plugin, which allocates and configures an IPv4 address for a Pod. The CNI plugin configures a host-specific non-routable IPv4 address for a Pod from the 169.254.172.0/22 range. The IPv4 address assigned to the Pod is *unique to the worker-node* and is *not advertised beyond the worker-node*. 169.254.172.0/22 provides up to 1024 unique IPv4 addresses which can support large instance types.

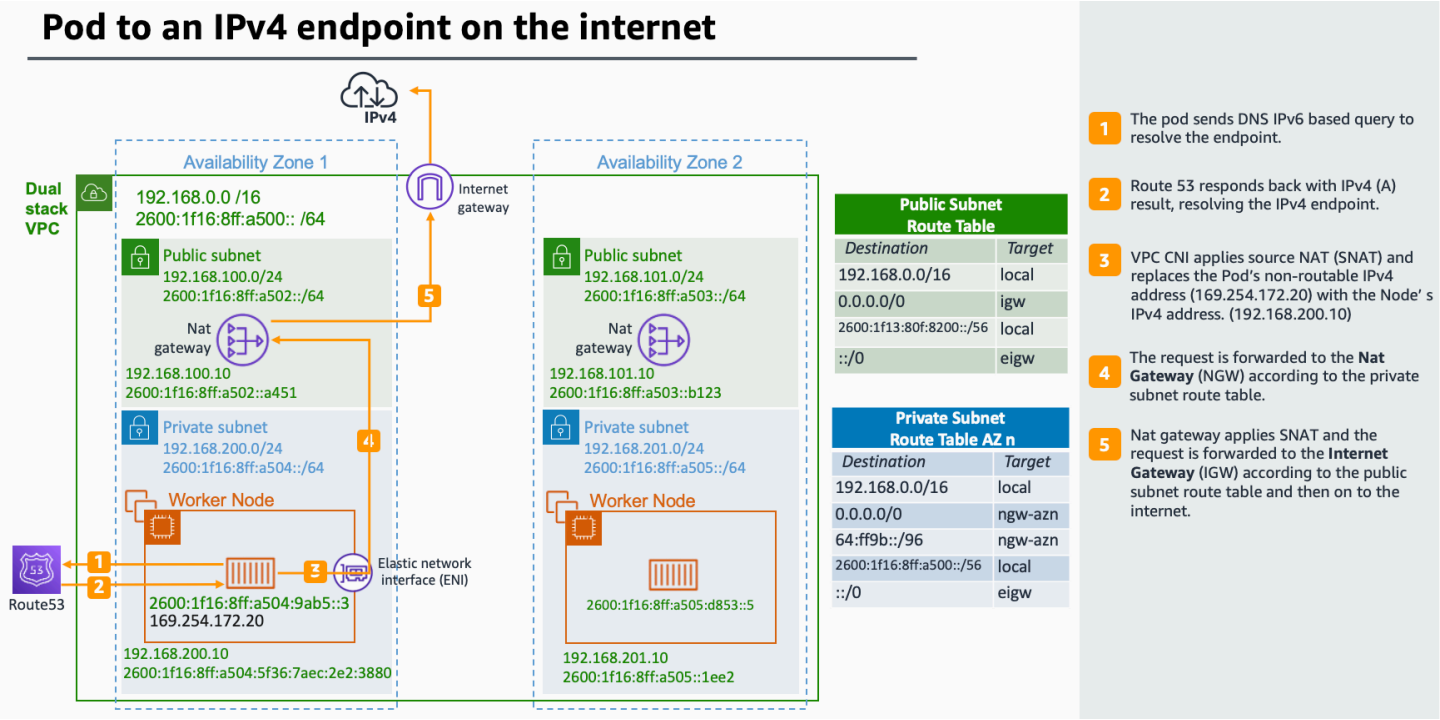
The following diagram depict the flow of an IPv6 Pod connecting to an IPv4 endpoint outside the cluster boundary (non-internet):



In the above diagram Pods will perform a DNS lookup for the endpoint and, upon receiving an IPv4 "A" response, Pod's node-only unique IPv4 address is translated through source network address translation (SNAT) to the Private IPv4 (VPC) address of the primary network interface attached to the EC2 Worker-node.

> **Note**
>
> The above pattern requires DNS64 being disabled on subnets where EKS/IPv6 Pods are running. When DNS64 is enabled, the DNS resolver returns a synthesized IPv6 address for IPv4-only endpoints along with an IPv4 address. As a result, traffic routes through the NAT Gateway's (if included in the architecture) NAT64 functionality instead of staying within the VPC as shown in the pattern above. This may lead to unexpected NAT Gateway usage and associated costs.

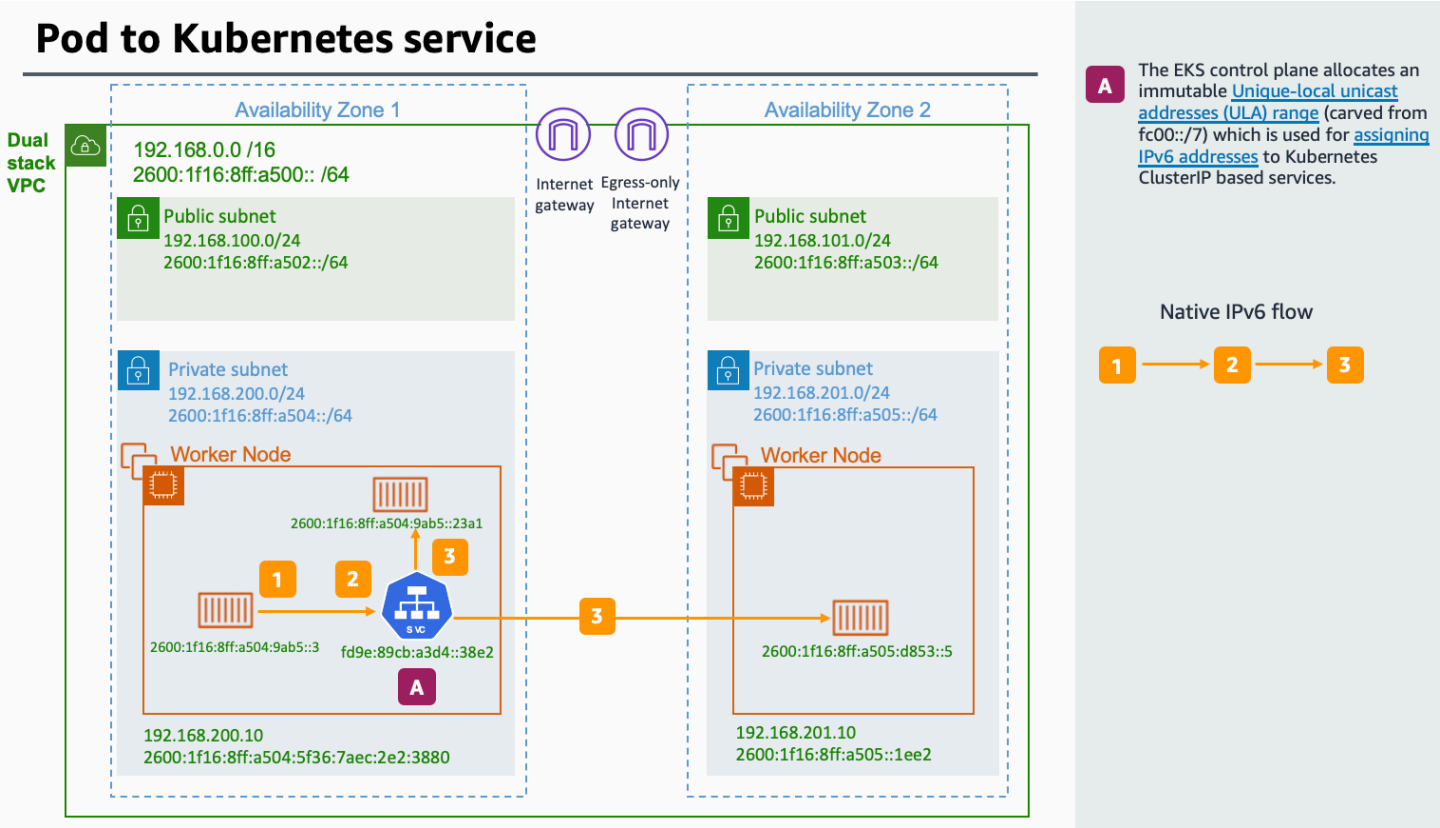
EKS/IPv6 Pods will also need to connect to IPv4 endpoints over the internet using public IPv4 Addresses, to achieve that a similar flow exists. The following diagram depict the flow of an IPv6 Pod connecting to an IPv4 endpoint outside the cluster boundary (internet routable):



In the above diagram Pods will perform a DNS lookup for the endpoint and, upon receiving an IPv4 "A" response, Pod's node-only unique IPv4 address is translated through source network address translation (SNAT) to the Private IPv4 (VPC) address of the primary network interface attached to the EC2 Worker-node. The Pod IPv4 Address (Source IPv4: EC2 Primary IP) is then routed to the IPv4 NAT Gateway where the EC2 Primary IP is translated (SNAT) into a valid internet routable IPv4 Public IP Address (NAT Gateway Assigned Public IP).

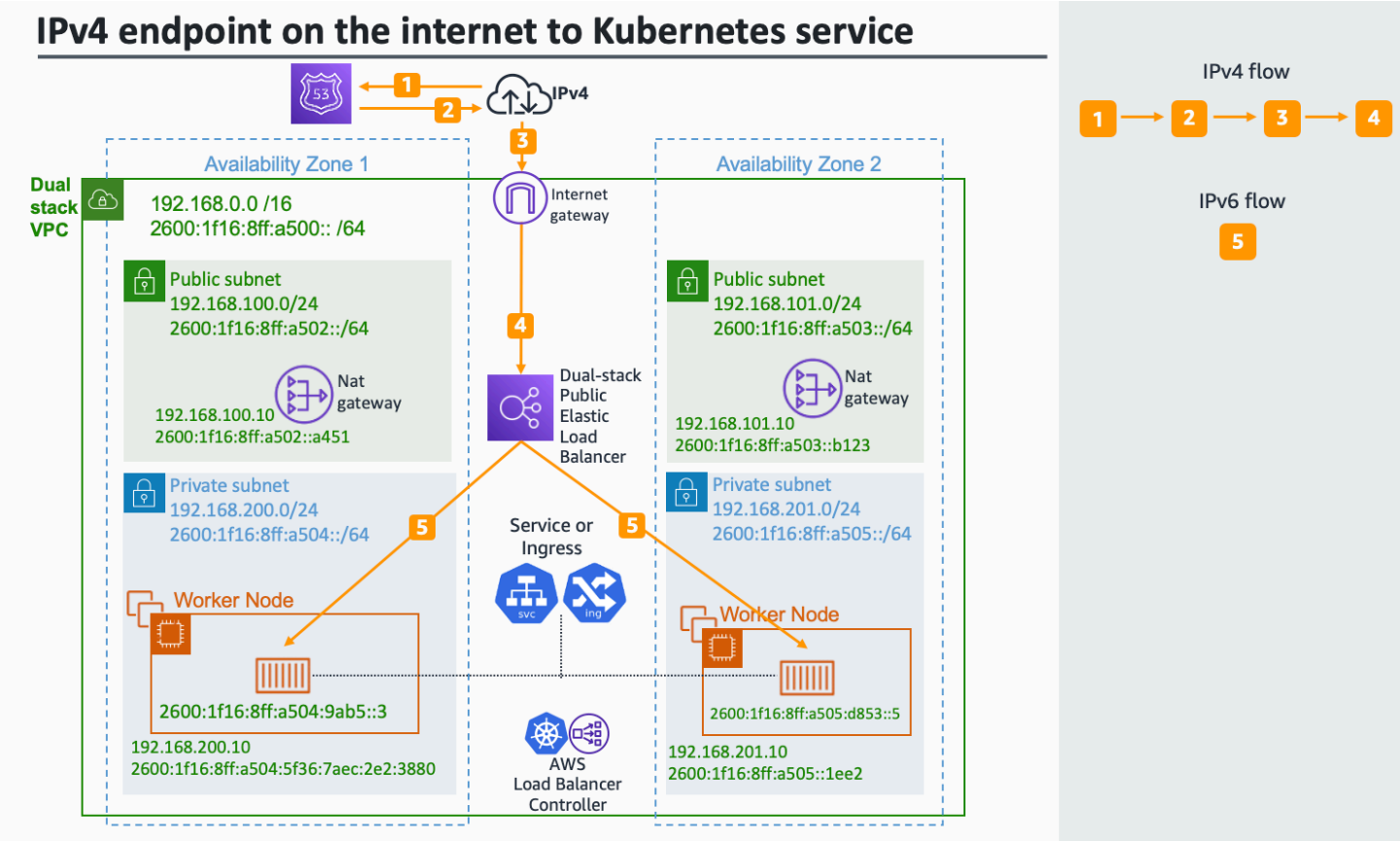
Any Pod-to-Pod communication across the nodes always uses an IPv6 address. VPC CNI configures iptables to handle IPv6 while blocking any IPv4 connections.

Kubernetes services will receive only IPv6 addresses (ClusterIP) from Unique Local IPv6 Unicast Addresses (ULA). The ULA Service CIDR for an IPv6 cluster is automatically assigned during EKS cluster creation stage and cannot be modified. The following diagram depict the Pod to Kubernetes Service flow:



Services are exposed to the internet using an AWS load balancer. The load balancer receives public IPv4 and IPv6 addresses, a.k.a dual-stack load balancer. For IPv4 clients accessing IPv6 cluster kubernetes services, the load balancer does IPv4 to IPv6 translation.

Amazon EKS recommends running worker nodes and Pods in private subnets. You can create public load balancers in the public subnets that load balance traffic to Pods running on nodes that are in private subnets. The following diagram depict an internet IPv4 user accessing an EKS/IPv6 Ingress based service:

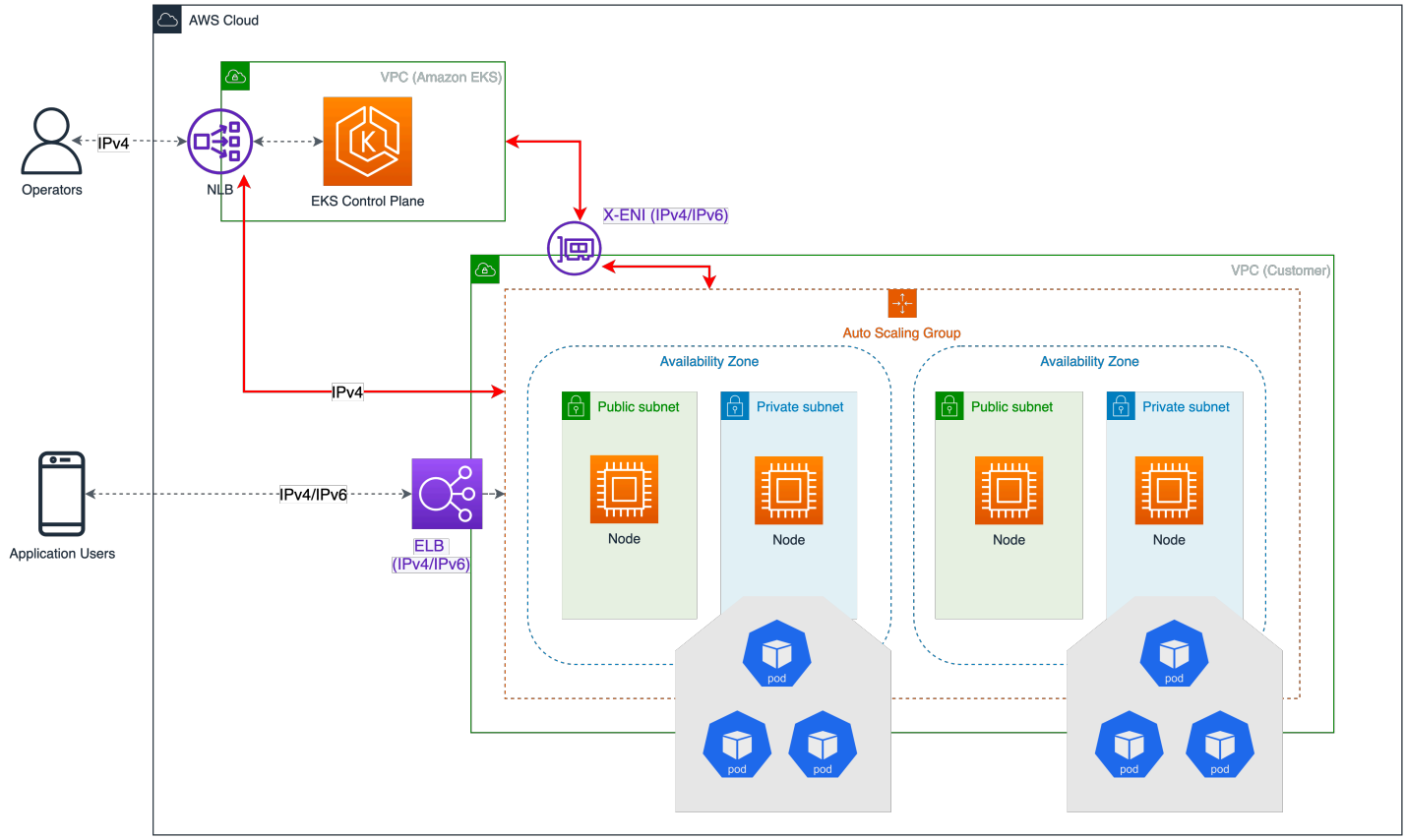


Note

The above pattern requires to deploy the most recent version of the AWS load balancer controller

EKS Control Plane Data Plane communication

EKS will provision Cross-Account ENIs (X-ENIs) in dual stack mode (IPv4/IPv6). Kubernetes node components such as kubelet and kube-proxy are configured to support dual stack. Kubelet and kube-proxy run in a hostNetwork mode and bind to both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses attached to the primary network interface of a node. The Kubernetes api-server communicates to Pods and node components via the X-ENIs is IPv6 based. Pods communicate with the api-servers via the X-ENIs, and Pod to api-server communication always uses IPv6 mode.



Recommendations

Schedule Based on Compute Resources

A single IPv6 prefix is sufficient to run many Pods on a single node. This also effectively removes ENI and IP limitations on the maximum number of Pods on a node. Although IPv6 removes direct dependency on max-Pods, when using prefix attachments with smaller instance types like the m5.large, you're likely to exhaust the instance's CPU and memory resources long before you exhaust its IP addresses. You must set the EKS recommended maximum Pod value by hand if you are using self-managed node groups or a managed node group with a custom AMI ID.

You can use the following formula to determine the maximum number of Pods you can deploy on a node for a IPv6 EKS cluster.

```
((Number of network interfaces for instance type (number of prefixes per network
 interface-1)* 16) + 2
```

```
((3 ENIs)_((10 secondary IPs per ENI-1)_ 16)) + 2 = 460 (real)
```

Managed node groups automatically calculate the maximum number of Pods for you. Avoid changing EKS's recommended value for the maximum number of Pods to avoid Pod scheduling failures due to resource limitations.

Evaluate Purpose of Existing Custom Networking

If custom networking is currently enabled, Amazon EKS recommends re-evaluating your need for it with IPv6. If you chose to use custom networking to address the IPv4 exhaustion issue, it is no longer necessary with IPv6. If you are utilizing custom networking to satisfy a security requirement, such as a separate network for nodes and Pods, you are encouraged to submit an EKS roadmap request.

Fargate Pods in EKS/IPv6 Cluster

EKS supports IPv6 for Pods running on Fargate. Pods running on Fargate will consume IPv6 and VPC Routable Private IPv4 addresses carved from the VPC CIDR ranges (IPv4IPv6). In simple words your EKS/Fargate Pods cluster wide density will be limited to the available IPv4 and IPv6 addresses. It is recommended to size your dual-stack subnets/VPC CIDRs for future growth. You will not be able to schedule new Fargate Pods if the underlying subnet does not contain an available IPv4 address, irrespective of IPv6 available addresses.

Deploy the AWS Load Balancer Controller (LBC)

The upstream in-tree Kubernetes service controller does not support IPv6. We recommend using the most recent version of the AWS Load Balancer Controller add-on. The LBC will only deploy a dual-stack NLB or a dual-stack ALB upon consuming corresponding kubernetes service/ingress definition annotated with: `"alb.ingress.kubernetes.io/ip-address-type: dualstack"` and `"alb.ingress.kubernetes.io/target-type: ip"`

Custom Networking

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

By default, Amazon VPC CNI will assign Pods an IP address selected from the primary subnet. The primary subnet is the subnet CIDR that the primary ENI is attached to, usually the subnet of the node/host.

If the subnet CIDR is too small, the CNI may not be able to acquire enough secondary IP addresses to assign to your Pods. This is a common challenge for EKS IPv4 clusters.

Custom networking is one solution to this problem.

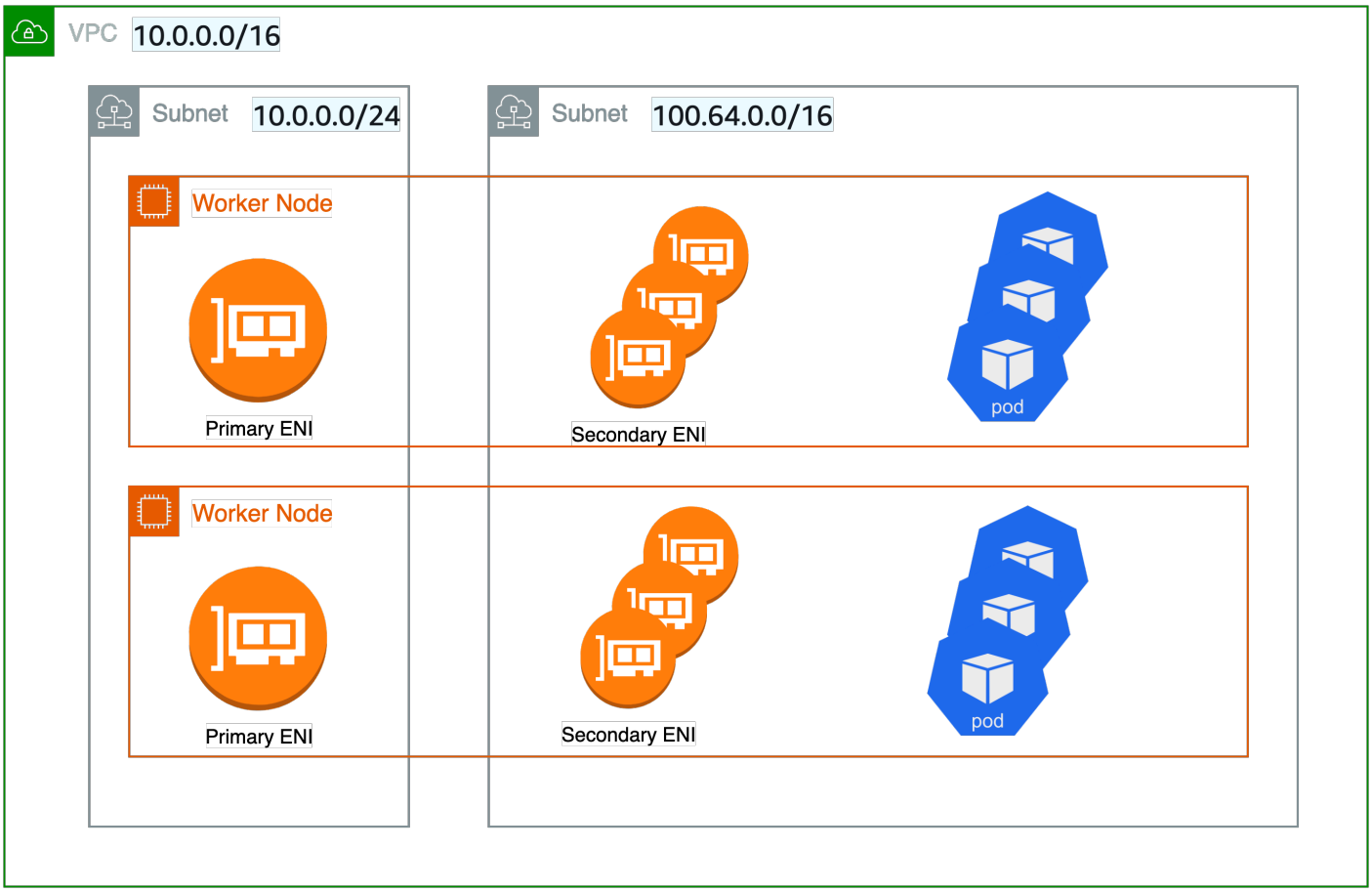
Custom networking addresses the IP exhaustion issue by assigning the node and Pod IPs from secondary VPC address spaces (CIDR). Custom networking support supports ENIConfig custom resource. The ENIConfig includes an alternate subnet CIDR range (carved from a secondary VPC CIDR), along with the security group(s) that the Pods will belong to. When custom networking is enabled, the VPC CNI creates secondary ENIs in the subnet defined under ENIConfig. The CNI assigns Pods an IP addresses from a CIDR range defined in a ENIConfig CRD.

Since the primary ENI is not used by custom networking, the maximum number of Pods you can run on a node is lower. The host network Pods continue to use IP address assigned to the primary ENI. Additionally, the primary ENI is used to handle source network translation and route Pods traffic outside the node.

Example Configuration

While custom networking will accept valid VPC range for secondary CIDR range, we recommend that you use CIDRs (/16) from the CG-NAT space, i.e. 100.64.0.0/10 or 198.19.0.0/16 as those are less likely to be used in a corporate setting than other RFC1918 ranges. For additional information about the permitted and restricted CIDR block associations you can use with your VPC, see IPv4 CIDR block association restrictions in the VPC and subnet sizing section of the VPC documentation.

As shown in the diagram below, the primary Elastic Network Interface (ENI) of the worker node still uses the primary VPC CIDR range (in this case 10.0.0.0/16) but the secondary ENIs use the secondary VPC CIDR Range (in this case 100.64.0.0/16). Now, in order to have the Pods use the 100.64.0.0/16 CIDR range, you must configure the CNI plugin to use custom networking. You can follow through the steps as documented here.



If you want the CNI to use custom networking, set the `AWS_VPC_K8S_CNI_CUSTOM_NETWORK_CFG` environment variable to `true`.

```
kubectl set env daemonset aws-node -n kube-system
 AWS_VPC_K8S_CNI_CUSTOM_NETWORK_CFG=true
```

When `AWS_VPC_K8S_CNI_CUSTOM_NETWORK_CFG=true`, the CNI will assign Pod IP address from a subnet defined in `ENIConfig`. The `ENIConfig` custom resource is used to define the subnet in which Pods will be scheduled.

```
apiVersion : crd.k8s.amazonaws.com/v1alpha1
kind : ENIConfig
metadata:
  name: us-west-2a
spec:
  securityGroups:
    - sg-0dff111a1d11c1c11
```

```
  subnet: subnet-011b111c1f11fdf11
```

Upon creating the `ENIconfig` custom resources, you will need to create new worker nodes and drain the existing nodes. The existing worker nodes and Pods will remain unaffected.

Recommendations

Use Custom Networking When

We recommend you to consider custom networking if you are dealing with IPv4 exhaustion and can't use IPv6 yet. Amazon EKS support for RFC6598 space enables you to scale Pods beyond RFC1918 address exhaustion challenges. Please consider using prefix delegation with custom networking to increase the Pods density on a node.

You might consider custom networking if you have a security requirement to run Pods on a different network with different security group requirements. When custom networking enabled, the pods use different subnet or security groups as defined in the ENIConfig than the node's primary network interface.

Custom networking is indeed an ideal option for deploying multiple EKS clusters and applications to connect on-premise datacenter services. You can increase the number of private addresses (RFC1918) accessible to EKS in your VPC for services such as Amazon Elastic Load Balancing and NAT-GW, while using non-routable CG-NAT space for your Pods across multiple clusters. Custom networking with the transit gateway and a Shared Services VPC (including NAT gateways across several Availability Zones for high availability) enables you to deliver scalable and predictable traffic flows. This blog post describes an architectural pattern that is one of the most recommended ways to connect EKS Pods to a datacenter network using custom networking.

Avoid Custom Networking When

Ready to Implement IPv6

Custom networking can mitigate IP exhaustion issues, but it requires additional operational overhead. If you are currently deploying a dual-stack (IPv4/IPv6) VPC or if your plan includes IPv6 support, we recommend implementing IPv6 clusters instead. You can set up IPv6 EKS clusters and migrate your apps. In an IPv6 EKS cluster, both Kubernetes and Pods get an IPv6 address and can communicate in and out to both IPv4 and IPv6 endpoints. Please review best practices for Running IPv6 EKS Clusters.

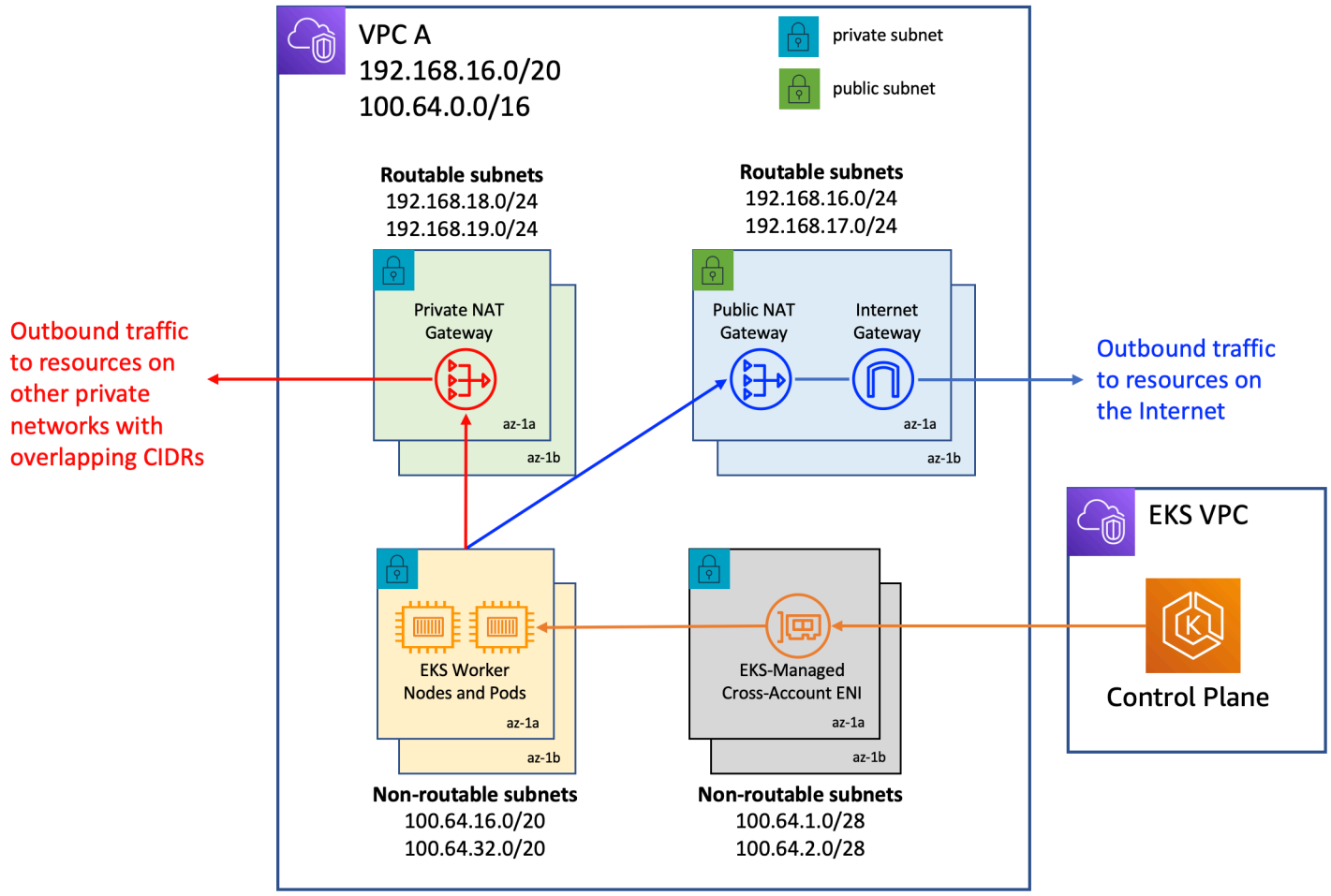
Exhausted CG-NAT Space

Furthermore, if you're currently utilizing CIDRs from the CG-NAT space or are unable to link a secondary CIDR with your cluster VPC, you may need to explore other options, such as using an alternative CNI. We strongly recommend that you either obtain commercial support or possess the in-house knowledge to debug and submit patches to the open source CNI plugin project. Refer Alternate CNI Plugins user guide for more details.

Use Private NAT Gateway

Amazon VPC now offers private NAT gateway capabilities. Amazon's private NAT Gateway enables instances in private subnets to connect to other VPCs and on-premises networks with overlapping CIDRs. Consider utilizing the method described on this blog post to employ a private NAT gateway to overcome communication issues for the EKS workloads caused by overlapping CIDRs, a significant complaint expressed by our clients. Custom networking cannot address the overlapping CIDR difficulties on its own, and it adds to the configuration challenges.

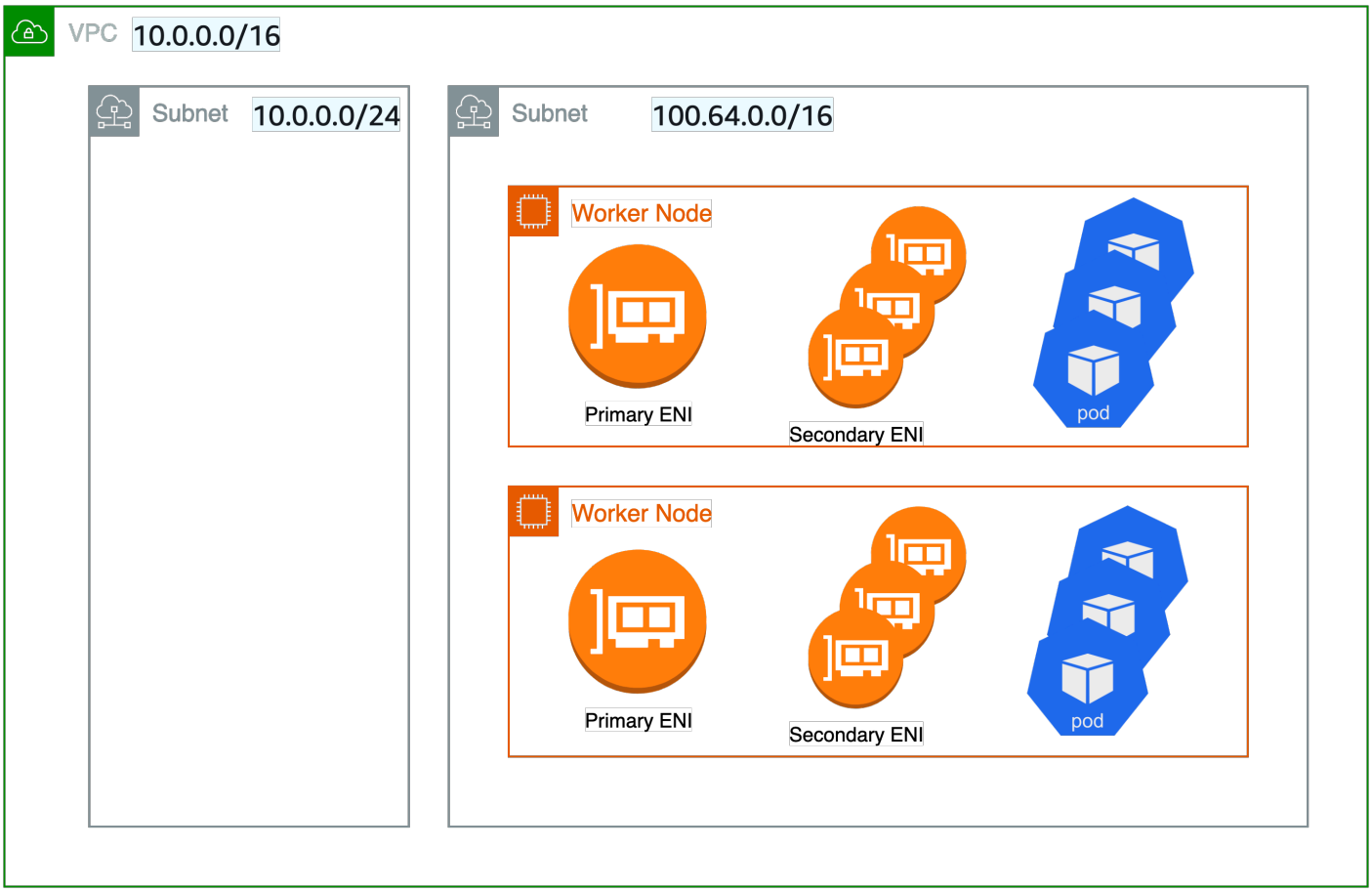
The network architecture used in this blog post implementation follows the recommendations under Enable communication between overlapping networks in Amazon VPC documentation. As demonstrated in this blog post, you may expand the usage of private NAT Gateway in conjunction with RFC6598 addresses to manage customers' private IP exhaustion issues. The EKS clusters, worker nodes are deployed in the non-routable 100.64.0.0/16 VPC secondary CIDR range, whereas the private NAT gateway, NAT gateway are deployed to the routable RFC1918 CIDR ranges. The blog explains how a transit gateway is used to connect VPCs in order to facilitate communication across VPCs with overlapping non-routable CIDR ranges. For use cases in which EKS resources in a VPC's non-routable address range need to communicate with other VPCs that do not have overlapping address ranges, customers have the option of using VPC Peering to interconnect such VPCs. This method could provide potential cost savings as all data transit within an Availability Zone via a VPC peering connection is now free.



Unique network for nodes and Pods

If you need to isolate your nodes and Pods to a specific network for security reasons, we recommend that you deploy nodes and Pods to a subnet from a larger secondary CIDR block (e.g. 100.64.0.0/8). Following the installation of the new CIDR in your VPC, you can deploy another node group using the secondary CIDR and drain the original nodes to automatically redeploy the pods to the new worker nodes. For more information on how to implement this, see this blog post.

Custom networking is not used in the setup represented in the diagram below. Rather, Kubernetes worker nodes are deployed on subnets from your VPC's secondary VPC CIDR range, such as 100.64.0.0/10. You can keep the EKS cluster running (the control plane will remain on the original subnet/s), but the nodes and Pods will be moved to a secondary subnet/s. This is yet another, albeit unconventional, technique to mitigate the danger of IP exhaustion in a VPC. We propose draining the old nodes before redeploying the pods to the new worker nodes.



Automate Configuration with Availability Zone Labels

You can enable Kubernetes to automatically apply the corresponding ENIConfig for the worker node Availability Zone (AZ).

Kubernetes automatically adds the tag topology.kubernetes.io/zone to your worker nodes. Amazon EKS recommends using the availability zone as your ENI config name when you only have one secondary subnet (alternate CIDR) per AZ. You can then set label used to discover the ENI config name to `topology.kubernetes.io/zone`. Note that tag `failure-domain.beta.kubernetes.io/zone` is deprecated and replaced with the tag `topology.kubernetes.io/zone`.

1. Set `name` field to the Availability Zone of your VPC.
2. Enable automatic configuration via the following command
3. Set the configuration label via the following command

```
kubectl set env daemonset aws-node -n kube-system
 "AWS_VPC_K8S_CNI_CUSTOM_NETWORK_CFG=true"
kubectl set env daemonset aws-node -n kube-system
 "ENI_CONFIG_LABEL_DEF=topology.kubernetes.io/zone"
```

If you have multiple secondary subnets per availability zone, you need create a specific `ENI_CONFIG_LABEL_DEF`. You might consider configuring `ENI_CONFIG_LABEL_DEF` as `k8s.amazonaws.com/eniConfig` and label nodes with custom eniConfig names, such as `k8s.amazonaws.com/eniConfig=us-west-2a-subnet-1` and `k8s.amazonaws.com/eniConfig=us-west-2a-subnet-2`.

Replace Pods when Configuring Secondary Networking

Enabling custom networking does not modify existing nodes. Custom networking is a disruptive action. Rather than doing a rolling replacement of all the worker nodes in your cluster after enabling custom networking, we suggest updating the AWS CloudFormation template in the EKS Getting Started Guide with a custom resource that calls a Lambda function to update the `aws-node` Daemonset with the environment variable to enable custom networking before the worker nodes are provisioned.

If you had any nodes in your cluster with running Pods before you switched to the custom CNI networking feature, you should cordon and drain the nodes to gracefully shutdown the Pods and then terminate the nodes. Only new nodes matching the ENIConfig label or annotations use custom networking, and hence the Pods scheduled on these new nodes can be assigned an IP from secondary CIDR.

Calculate Max Pods per Node

Since the node's primary ENI is no longer used to assign Pod IP addresses, there is a decrease in the number of Pods you can run on a given EC2 instance type. To work around this limitation you can use prefix assignment with custom networking. With prefix assignment, each secondary IP is replaced with a /28 prefix on secondary ENIs.

Consider the maximum number of Pods for an m5.large instance with custom networking.

The maximum number of Pods you can run without prefix assignment is 29

- `3 ENIs - 1) * (10 secondary IPs per ENI - 1 + 2 = 20`

Enabling prefix attachments increases the number of Pods to 290.

- `(3 ENIs - 1) * ((10 secondary IPs per ENI - 1) * 16 + 2 = 290`

However, we suggest setting max-pods to 110 rather than 290 because the instance has a rather small number of virtual CPUs. On bigger instances, EKS recommends a max pods value of 250. When utilizing prefix attachments with smaller instance types (e.g. m5.large), it is possible that you will exhaust the instance's CPU and memory resources well before its IP addresses.

> **Note**
>
> When the CNI prefix allocates a /28 prefix to an ENI, it has to be a contiguous block of IP addresses. If the subnet that the prefix is generated from is highly fragmented, the prefix attachment may fail. You can mitigate this from happening by creating a new dedicated VPC for the cluster or by reserving subnet a set of CIDR exclusively for prefix attachments. Visit Subnet CIDR reservations for more information on this topic.

Identify Existing Usage of CG-NAT Space

Custom networking allows you to mitigate IP exhaustion issue, however it can't solve all the challenges. If you already using CG-NAT space for your cluster, or simply don't have the ability to associate a secondary CIDR with your cluster VPC, we suggest you to explore other options, like using an alternate CNI or moving to IPv6 clusters.

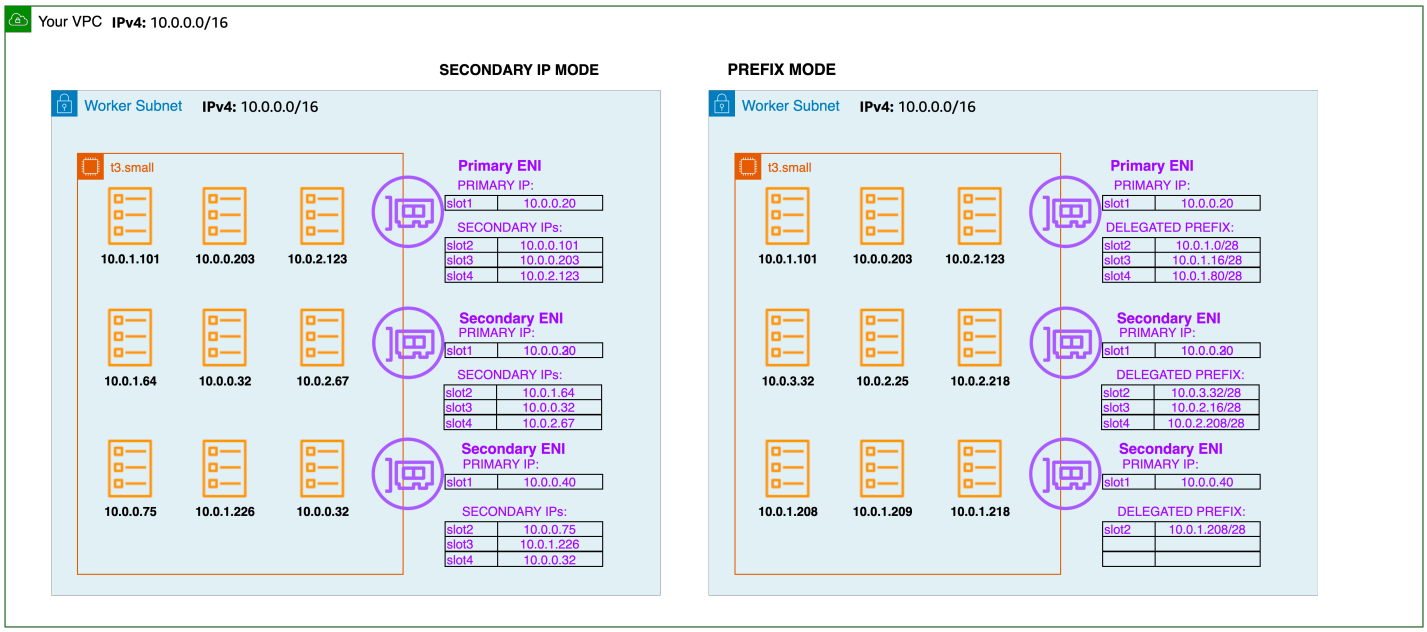
Prefix Mode for Linux

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Amazon VPC CNI assigns network prefixes to Amazon EC2 network interfaces to increase the number of IP addresses available to nodes and increase pod density per node. You can configure version 1.9.0 or later of the Amazon VPC CNI add-on to assign IPv4 and IPv6 CIDRs instead of assigning individual secondary IP addresses to network interfaces.

Prefix mode is enabled by default on IPv6 clusters and is the only option supported. The VPC CNI assigns a /80 IPv6 prefix to a slot on an ENI. Please refer to the IPv6 section of this guide for further information.

With prefix assignment mode, the maximum number of elastic network interfaces per instance type remains the same, but you can now configure Amazon VPC CNI to assign /28 (16 IP addresses) IPv4 address prefixes, instead of assigning individual IPv4 addresses to the slots on network interfaces. When `ENABLE_PREFIX_DELEGATION` is set to true VPC CNI allocates an IP address to a Pod from the prefix assigned to an ENI. Please follow the instructions mentioned in the EKS user guide to enable Prefix IP mode.



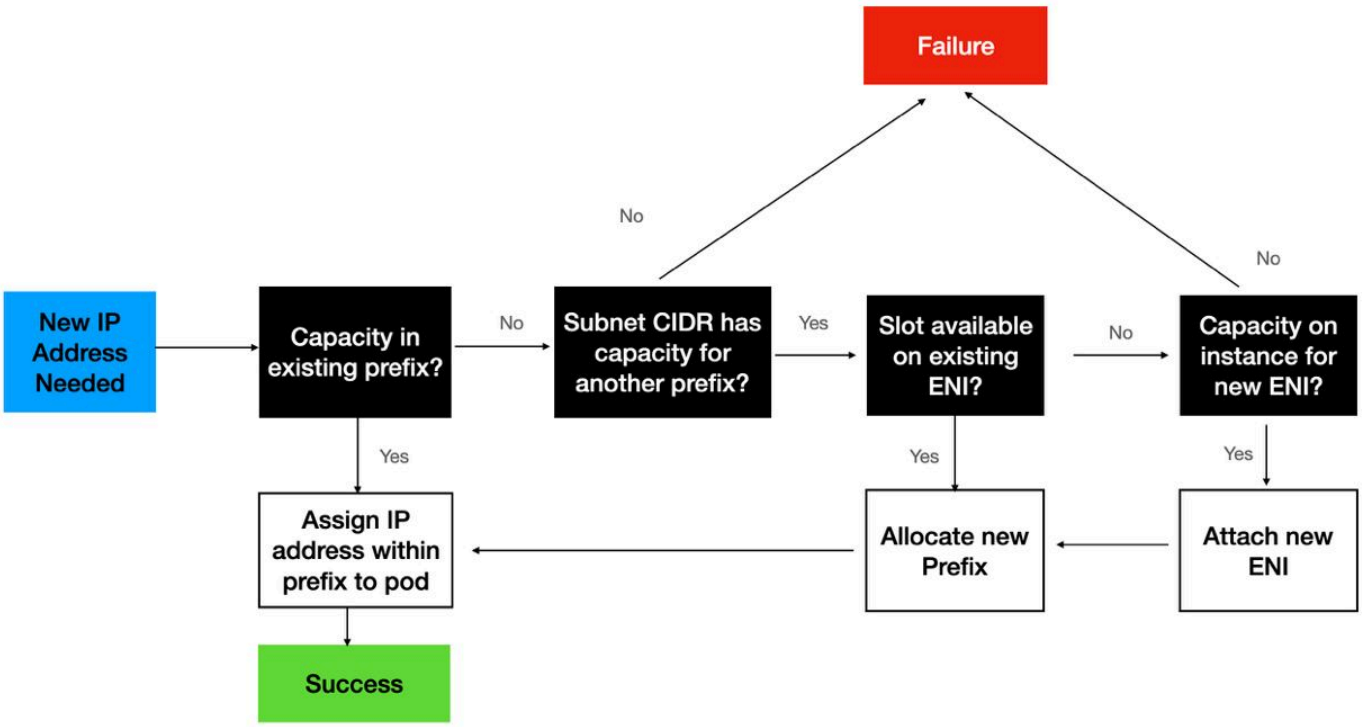
The maximum number of IP addresses that you can assign to a network interface depends on the instance type. Each prefix that you assign to a network interface counts as one IP address. For example, a `c5.large` instance has a limit of `10` IPv4 addresses per network interface. Each network interface for this instance has a primary IPv4 address. If a network interface has no secondary IPv4 addresses, you can assign up to 9 prefixes to the network interface. For each additional IPv4 address that you assign to a network interface, you can assign one less prefix to the network interface. Review the AWS EC2 documentation on IP addresses per network interface per instance type and assigning prefixes to network interfaces.

During worker node initialization, the VPC CNI assigns one or more prefixes to the primary ENI. The CNI pre-allocates a prefix for faster pod startup by maintaining a warm pool. The number of prefixes to be held in warm pool can be controlled by setting environment variables.

- `WARM_PREFIX_TARGET`, the number of prefixes to be allocated in excess of current need.
- `WARM_IP_TARGET`, the number of IP addresses to be allocated in excess of current need.
- `MINIMUM_IP_TARGET`, the minimum number of IP addresses to be available at any time.

- `WARM_IP_TARGET` and `MINIMUM_IP_TARGET` if set will override `WARM_PREFIX_TARGET`.

As more Pods scheduled additional prefixes will be requested for the existing ENI. First, the VPC CNI attempts to allocate a new prefix to an existing ENI. If the ENI is at capacity, the VPC CNI attempts to allocate a new ENI to the node. New ENIs will be attached until the maximum ENI limit (defined by the instance type) is reached. When a new ENI is attached, ipamd will allocate one or more prefixes needed to maintain the `WARM_PREFIX_TARGET`, `WARM_IP_TARGET`, and `MINIMUM_IP_TARGET` setting.



Recommendations

Use Prefix Mode when

Use prefix mode if you are experiencing Pod density issue on the worker nodes. To avoid VPC CNI errors, we recommend examining the subnets for contiguous block of addresses for /28 prefix before migrate to prefix mode. Please refer " Use Subnet Reservations to Avoid Subnet Fragmentation (IPv4) " section for Subnet reservation details.

For backward compatibility, the max-pods limit is set to support secondary IP mode. To increase the pod density, specify the `max-pods` value to Kubelet and `--use-max-pods=false` as the user

data for the nodes. For more information, see How maxPods is determined in the Amazon EKS User Guide. Refer to the EKS user guide for example user data.

```
./max-pods-calculator.sh --instance-type m5.large --cni-version ``1.9``.0 --cni-prefix-delegation-enabled
```

Prefix assignment mode is especially relevant for users of CNI custom networking where the primary ENI is not used for pods. With prefix assignment, you can still attach more IPs on nearly every Nitro instance type, even without the primary ENI used for pods.

Avoid Prefix Mode when

If your subnet is very fragmented and has insufficient available IP addresses to create /28 prefixes, avoid using prefix mode. The prefix attachment may fail if the subnet from which the prefix is produced is fragmented (a heavily used subnet with scattered secondary IP addresses). This problem may be avoided by creating a new subnet and reserving a prefix.

In prefix mode, the security group assigned to the worker nodes is shared by the Pods. Consider using Security groups for Podsif you have a security requirement to achieve compliance by running applications with varying network security requirements on shared compute resources.

Use Similar Instance Types in the same Node Group

Your node group may contain instances of many types. If an instance has a low maximum pod count, that value is applied to all nodes in the node group. Consider using similar instance types in a node group to maximize node use. We recommend configuring node.kubernetes.io/instance-type in the requirements part of the provisioner API if you are using Karpenter for automated node scaling.

> **Warning**
>
> The maximum pod count for all nodes in a particular node group is defined by the *lowest* maximum pod count of any single instance type in the node group.

Configure `WARM_PREFIX_TARGET` to conserve IPv4 addresses

The installation manifest's default value for `WARM_PREFIX_TARGET` is 1. In most cases, the recommended value of 1 for `WARM_PREFIX_TARGET` will provide a good mix of fast pod launch times while minimizing unused IP addresses assigned to the instance.

If you have a need to further conserve IPv4 addresses per node use `WARM_IP_TARGET` and `MINIMUM_IP_TARGET` settings, which override `WARM_PREFIX_TARGET` when configured. By setting `WARM_IP_TARGET` to a value less than 16, you can prevent the CNI from keeping an entire excess prefix attached.

Prefer allocating new prefixes over attaching a new ENI

Allocating an additional prefix to an existing ENI is a faster EC2 API operation than creating and attaching a new ENI to the instance. Using prefixes improves performance while being frugal with IPv4 address allocation. Attaching a prefix typically completes in under a second, whereas attaching a new ENI can take up to 10 seconds. For most use cases, the CNI will only need a single ENI per worker node when running in prefix mode. If you can afford (in the worst case) up to 15 unused IPs per node, we strongly recommend using the newer prefix assignment networking mode, and realizing the performance and efficiency gains that come with it.

Use Subnet Reservations to Avoid Subnet Fragmentation (IPv4)

When EC2 allocates a /28 IPv4 prefix to an ENI, it has to be a contiguous block of IP addresses from your subnet. If the subnet that the prefix is generated from is fragmented (a highly used subnet with scattered secondary IP addresses), the prefix attachment may fail, and you will see the following error message in the VPC CNI logs:

```
failed to allocate a private IP/Prefix address: InsufficientCidrBlocks: There are not
 enough free cidr blocks in the specified subnet to satisfy the request.
```

To avoid fragmentation and have sufficient contiguous space for creating prefixes, you may use VPC Subnet CIDR reservations to reserve IP space within a subnet for exclusive use by prefixes. Once you create a reservation, the VPC CNI plugin will call EC2 APIs to assign prefixes that are automatically allocated from the reserved space.

It is recommended to create a new subnet, reserve space for prefixes, and enable prefix assignment with VPC CNI for worker nodes running in that subnet. If the new subnet is dedicated only to Pods running in your EKS cluster with VPC CNI prefix assignment enabled, then you can skip the prefix reservation step.

Avoid downgrading VPC CNI

Prefix mode works with VPC CNI version 1.9.0 and later. Downgrading of the Amazon VPC CNI add-on to a version lower than 1.9.0 must be avoided once the prefix mode is enabled and prefixes are assigned to ENIs. You must delete and recreate nodes if you decide to downgrade the VPC CNI.

Replace all nodes during the transition to Prefix Delegation

It is highly recommended that you create new node groups to increase the number of available IP addresses rather than doing rolling replacement of existing worker nodes. Cordon and drain all the existing nodes to safely evict all of your existing Pods. To prevent service disruptions, we suggest implementing Pod Disruption Budgets on your production clusters for critical workloads. Pods on new nodes will be assigned an IP from a prefix assigned to an ENI. After you confirm the Pods are running, you can delete the old nodes and node groups. If you are using managed node groups, please follow steps mentioned here to safely delete a node group.

Prefix Mode for Windows

In Amazon EKS, each Pod that runs on a Windows host is assigned a secondary IP address by the VPC resource controller by default. This IP address is a VPC-routable address that is allocated from the host's subnet. On Linux, each ENI attached to the instance has multiple slots that can be populated by a secondary IP address or a /28 CIDR (a prefix). Windows hosts, however, only support a single ENI and its available slots. Using only secondary IP addresses can artifically limit the number of pods you can run on a Windows host, even when there is an abundance of IP addresses available for assignment.

In order to increase the pod density on Windows hosts, especially when using smaller instance types, you can enable **Prefix Delegation** for Windows nodes. When prefix delegation is enabled, /28 IPv4 prefixes are assigned to ENI slots rather than secondary IP addresses. Prefix delegation can be enabled by adding the `enable-windows-prefix-delegation: "true"` entry to the `amazon-vpc-cni` config map. This is the same config map where you need to set `enable-windows-ipam: "true"` entry for enabling Windows support.

Please follow the instructions mentioned in the EKS user guide to enable Prefix Delegation mode for Windows nodes.

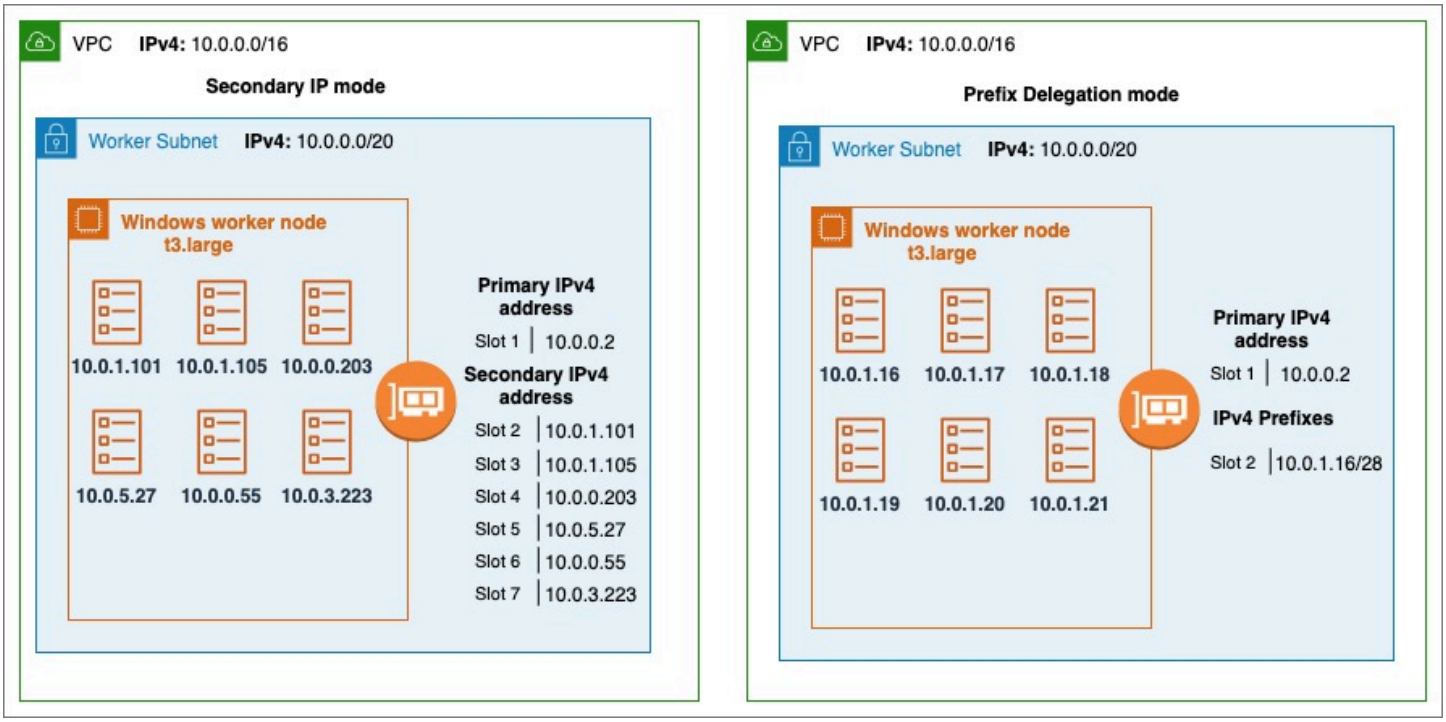


Figure: Comparison of Secondary IP mode with Prefix Delegation mode

The maximum number of IP addresses you can assign to a network interface depends on the instance type and its size. Each prefix assigned to a network interface consumes an available slot. For example, a `c5.large` instance has a limit of `10` slots per network interface. The first slot on a network interface is always consumed by the interface's primary IP address, leaving you with 9 slots for prefixes and/or secondary IP addresses. If these slots are assigned prefixes, the node can support (9 * 16) 144 IP address whereas if they're assigned secondary IP addresses it can only support 9 IP addresses. See the documentation on IP addresses per network interface per instance type and assigning prefixes to network interfaces for further information.

During worker node initialization, the VPC Resource Controller assigns one or more prefixes to the primary ENI for faster pod startup by maintaining a warm pool of the IP addresses. The number of prefixes to be held in warm pool can be controlled by setting the following configuration parameters in `amazon-vpc-cni` config map.

- `warm-prefix-target`, the number of prefixes to be allocated in excess of current need.
- `warm-ip-target`, the number of IP addresses to be allocated in excess of current need.
- `minimum-ip-target`, the minimum number of IP addresses to be available at any time.
- `warm-ip-target` and/or `minimum-ip-target` if set will override `warm-prefix-target`.

As more Pods are scheduled on the node, additional prefixes will be requested for the existing ENI. When a Pod is scheduled on the node, VPC Resource Controller would first try to assign an IPv4 address from the existing prefixes on the node. If that is not possible, then a new IPv4 prefix will be requested as long as the subnet has the required capacity.

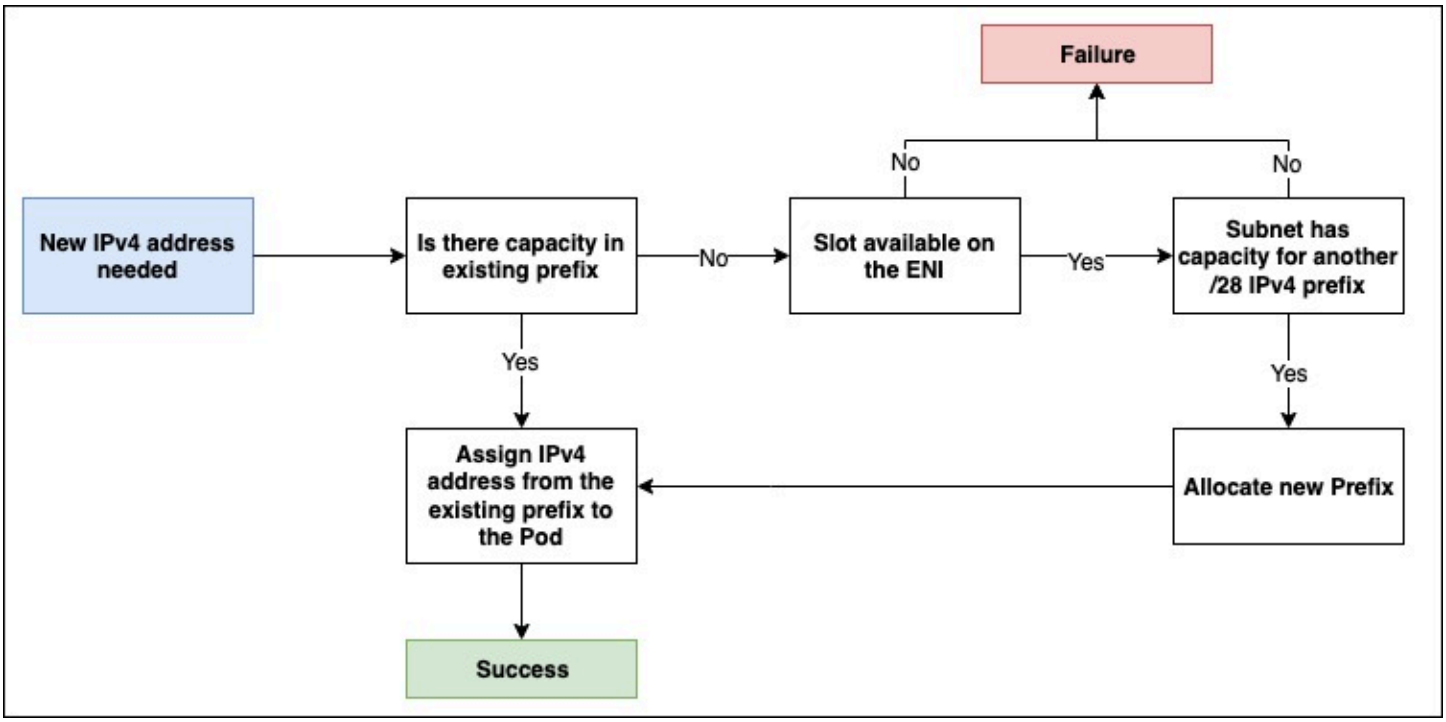


Figure: Workflow during assignment of IPv4 address to the Pod

Recommendations

Use Prefix Delegation when

Use prefix delegation if you are experiencing Pod density issues on the worker nodes. To avoid errors, we recommend examining the subnets for contiguous block of addresses for /28 prefix before migrating to prefix mode. Please refer " Use Subnet Reservations to Avoid Subnet Fragmentation (IPv4) " section for Subnet reservation details.

By default, the `max-pods` on Windows nodes is set to `110`. For the vast majority of instance types, this should be sufficient. If you want to increase or decrease this limit, then add the following to the bootstrap command in your user data:

```
-KubeletExtraArgs '--max-pods=example-value'
```

For more details about the bootstrap configuration parameters for Windows nodes, please visit the documentation here.

Avoid Prefix Delegation when

If your subnet is very fragmented and has insufficient available IP addresses to create /28 prefixes, avoid using prefix mode. The prefix attachment may fail if the subnet from which the prefix is produced is fragmented (a heavily used subnet with scattered secondary IP addresses). This problem may be avoided by creating a new subnet and reserving a prefix.

Configure parameters for prefix delegation to conserve IPv4 addresses

`warm-prefix-target`, `warm-ip-target`, and `minimum-ip-target` can be used to fine tune the behaviour of pre-scaling and dynamic scaling with prefixes. By default, the following values are used:

```
warm-ip-target: "1"
minimum-ip-target: "3"
```

By fine tuning these configuration parameters, you can achieve an optimal balance of conserving the IP addresses and ensuring decreased Pod latency due to assignment of IP address. For more information about these configuration parameters, visit the documentation here.

Use Subnet Reservations to Avoid Subnet Fragmentation (IPv4)

When EC2 allocates a /28 IPv4 prefix to an ENI, it has to be a contiguous block of IP addresses from your subnet. If the subnet that the prefix is generated from is fragmented (a highly used subnet with scattered secondary IP addresses), the prefix attachment may fail, and you will see the following node event:

```
InsufficientCidrBlocks: The specified subnet does not have enough free cidr blocks to
 satisfy the request
```

To avoid fragmentation and have sufficient contiguous space for creating prefixes, use VPC Subnet CIDR reservations to reserve IP space within a subnet for exclusive use by prefixes. Once you create a reservation, the IP addresses from the reserved blocks will not be assigned to other resources. That way, VPC Resource Controller will be able to get available prefixes during the assignment call to the node ENI.

It is recommended to create a new subnet, reserve space for prefixes, and enable prefix assignment for worker nodes running in that subnet. If the new subnet is dedicated only to Pods running in your EKS cluster with prefix delegation enabled, then you can skip the prefix reservation step.

Replace all nodes when migrating from Secondary IP mode to Prefix Delegation mode or vice versa

It is highly recommended that you create new node groups to increase the number of available IP addresses rather than doing rolling replacement of existing worker nodes.

When using self-managed node groups, the steps for transition would be:

- Increase the capacity in your cluster such that the new nodes would be able to accomodate your workloads
- Enable/Disable the Prefix Delegation feature for Windows
- Cordon and drain all the existing nodes to safely evict all of your existing Pods. To prevent service disruptions, we suggest implementing Pod Disruption Budgets on your production clusters for critical workloads.
- After you confirm the Pods are running, you can delete the old nodes and node groups. Pods on new nodes will be assigned an IPv4 address from a prefix assigned to the node ENI.

When using managed node groups, the steps for transition would be:

- Enable/Disable the Prefix Delegation feature for Windows
- Update the node group using the steps mentioned here. This performs similar steps as above but are managed by EKS.

> **Warning**
>
> Run all Pods on a node in the same mode

For Windows, we recommend that you avoid running Pods in both secondary IP mode and prefix delegation mode at the same time. Such a situation can arise when you migrate from secondary IP mode to prefix delegation mode or vice versa with running Windows workloads.

While this will not impact your running Pods, there can be inconsistency with respect to the node's IP address capacity. For example, consider that a t3.xlarge node which has 14 slots for secondary IPv4 addresses. If you are running 10 Pods, then 10 slots on the ENI will be consumed by secondary IP addresses. After you enable prefix delegation the capacity advertised to the kube-api server would be (14 slots * 16 ip addresses per prefix) 244 but the actual capacity at that moment would be (4 remaining slots * 16 addresses per prefix) 64. This inconsistency between the amount of capacity advertised and the actual amount of capacity (remaining slots) can cause issues if you run more Pods than there are IP addresses available for assignment.

That being said, you can use the migration strategy as described above to safely transition your Pods from secondary IP address to addresses obtained from prefixes. When toggling between the modes, the Pods will continue running normally and:

- When toggling from secondary IP mode to prefix delegation mode, the secondary IP addresses assigned to the running pods will not be released. Prefixes will be assigned to the free slots. Once a pod is terminated, the secondary IP and slot it was using will be released.
- When toggling from prefix delegation mode to secondary IP mode, a prefix will be released when all the IPs within its range are no longer allocated to pods. If any IP from the prefix is assigned to a pod then that prefix will be kept until the pods are terminated.

Debugging Issues with Prefix Delegation

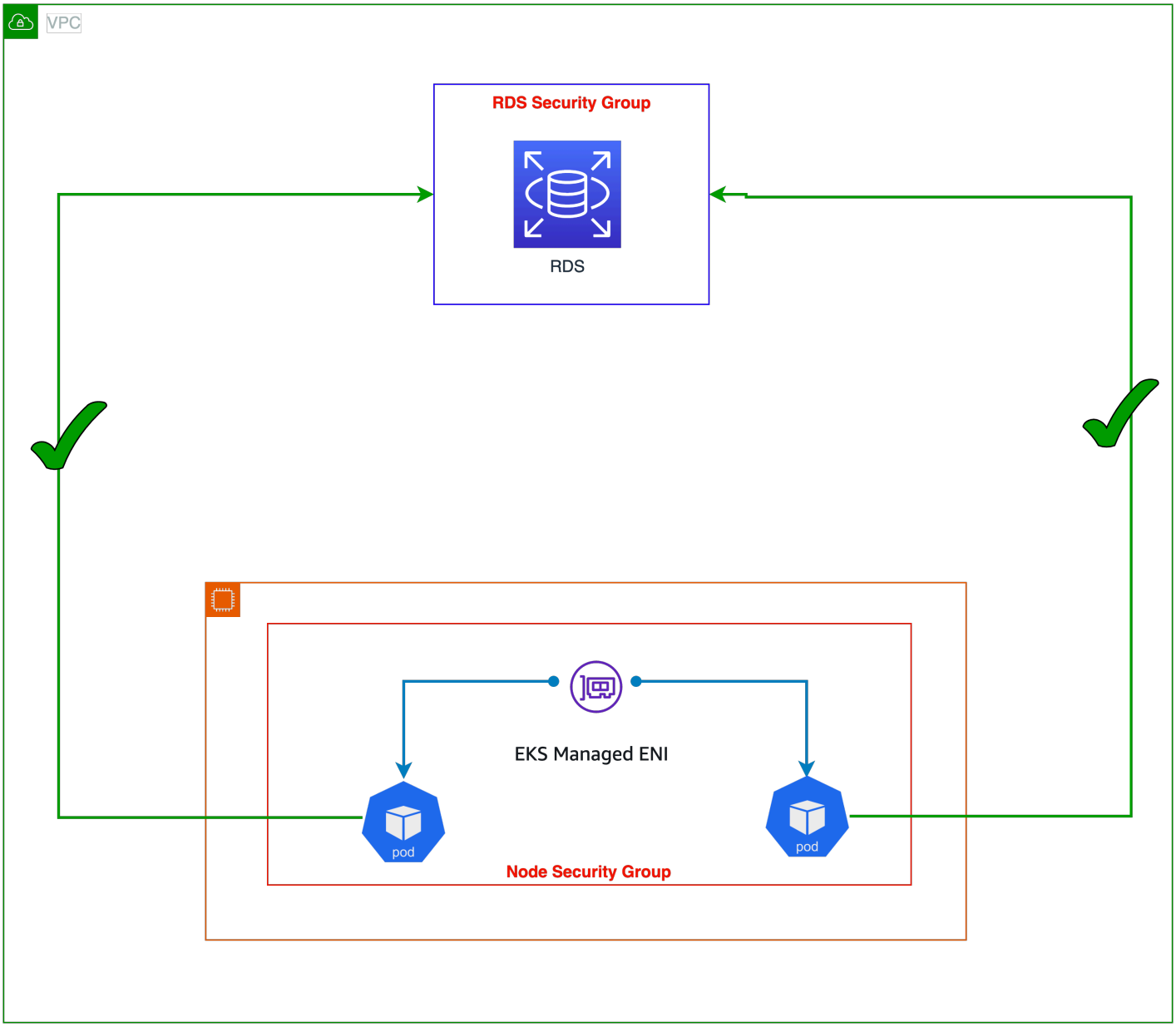
You can use our debugging guide here to deep dive into the issue you are facing with prefix delegation on Windows.

Security Groups Per Pod

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

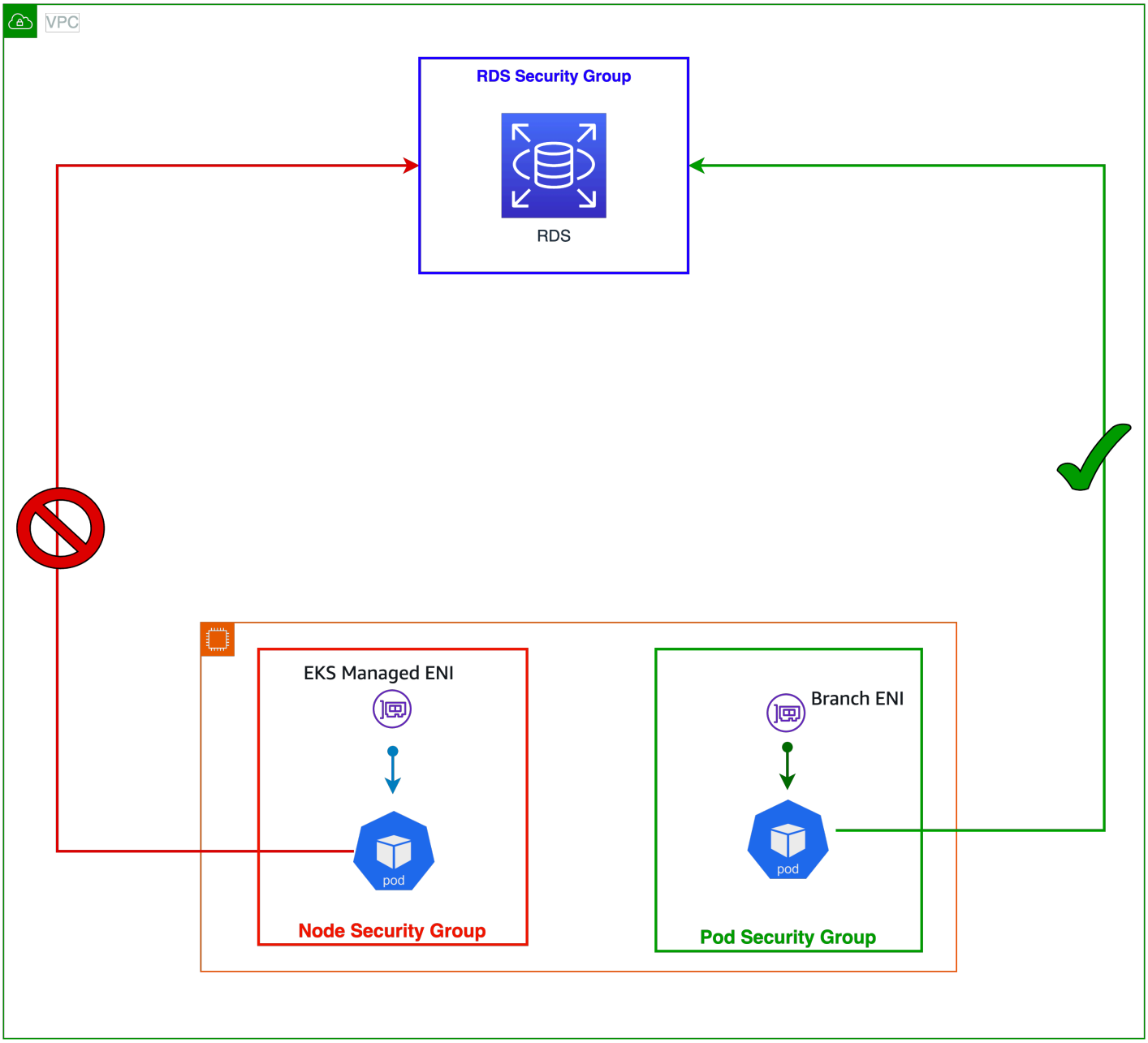
An AWS security group acts as a virtual firewall for EC2 instances to control inbound and outbound traffic. By default, the Amazon VPC CNI will use security groups associated with the primary ENI on the node. More specifically, every ENI associated with the instance will have the same EC2 Security Groups. Thus, every Pod on a node shares the same security groups as the node it runs on.

As seen in the image below, all application Pods operating on worker nodes will have access to the RDS database service (considering RDS inbound allows node security group). Security groups are too coarse grained because they apply to all Pods running on a node. Security groups for Pods provides network segmentation for workloads which is an essential part a good defense in depth strategy.



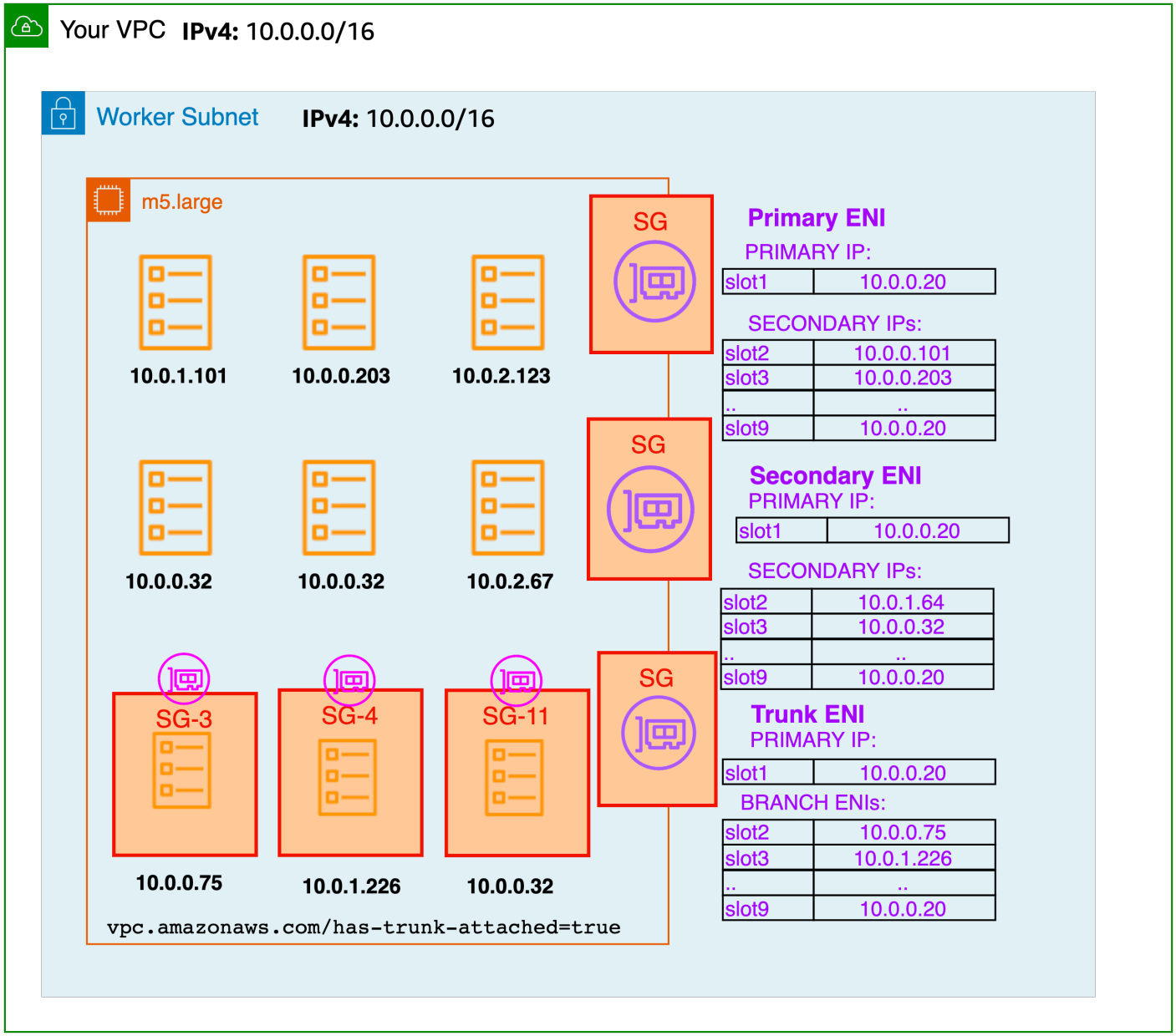
With security groups for Pods, you can improve compute efficiency by running applications with varying network security requirements on shared compute resources. Multiple types of security rules, such as Pod-to-Pod and Pod-to-External AWS services, can be defined in a single place with EC2 security groups and applied to workloads with Kubernetes native APIs. The image below shows

security groups applied at the Pod level and how they simplify your application deployment and node architecture. The Pod can now access Amazon RDS database.



You can enable security groups for Pods by setting `ENABLE_POD_ENI=true` for VPC CNI. Once enabled, the [VPC Resource Controller] running on the control plane (managed by EKS) creates and attaches a trunk interface called "`aws-k8s-trunk-eni"` to the node. The trunk interface acts as a standard network interface attached to the instance. To manage trunk interfaces, you must add the `AmazonEKSVPCResourceController` managed policy to the cluster role that goes with your Amazon EKS cluster.

The controller also creates branch interfaces named "aws-k8s-branch-eni" and associates them with the trunk interface. Pods are assigned a security group using the SecurityGroupPolicy custom resource and are associated with a branch interface. Since security groups are specified with network interfaces, we are now able to schedule Pods requiring specific security groups on these additional network interfaces. Review the EKS User Guide Section on Security Groups for Pods, including deployment prerequisites.



Branch interface capacity is *additive* to existing instance type limits for secondary IP addresses. Pods that use security groups are not accounted for in the max-pods formula and when you use

security group for pods you need to consider raising the max-pods value or be ok with running fewer pods than the node can actually support.

A m5.large can have up to 9 branch network interfaces and up to 27 secondary IP addresses assigned to its standard network interfaces. As shown in the example below, the default max-pods for a m5.large is 29, and EKS counts the Pods that use security groups towards the maximum Pods. Please see the EKS user guide for instructions on how to change the max-pods for nodes.

When security groups for Pods are used in combination with custom networking, the security group defined in security groups for Pods is used rather than the security group specified in the ENIConfig. As a result, when custom networking is enabled, carefully assess security group ordering while using security groups per Pod.

Recommendations

Disable TCP Early Demux for Liveness Probe

If are you using liveness or readiness probes, you also need to disable TCP early demux, so that the kubelet can connect to Pods on branch network interfaces via TCP. This is only required in strict mode. To do this run the following command:

```
kubectl edit daemonset aws-node -n kube-system
```

Under the `initContainer` section, change the value for `DISABLE_TCP_EARLY_DEMUX` to `true`.

Use Security Group For Pods to leverage existing AWS configuration investment.

Security groups makes it easier to restrict network access to VPC resources, such as RDS databases or EC2 instances. One clear advantage of security groups per Pod is the opportunity to reuse existing AWS security group resources. If you are using security groups as a network firewall to limit access to your AWS services, we propose applying security groups to Pods using branch ENIs. Consider using security groups for Pods if you are transferring apps from EC2 instances to EKS and limit access to other AWS services with security groups.

Configure Pod Security Group Enforcing Mode

Amazon VPC CNI plugin version 1.11 added a new setting named `POD_SECURITY_GROUP_ENFORCING_MODE` ("enforcing mode"). The enforcing mode controls both which security groups apply to the pod, and if source NAT is enabled. You may specify the

enforcing mode as either strict or standard. Strict is the default, reflecting the previous behavior of the VPC CNI with `ENABLE_POD_ENI` set to `true`.

In Strict Mode, only the branch ENI security groups are enforced. The source NAT is also disabled.

In Standard Mode, the security groups associated with both the primary ENI and branch ENI (associated with the pod) are applied. Network traffic must comply with both security groups.

> **Warning**
>
> Any mode change will only impact newly launched Pods. Existing Pods will use the mode that was configured when the Pod was created. Customers will need to recycle existing Pods with security groups if they want to change the traffic behavior.

Enforcing Mode: Use Strict mode for isolating pod and node traffic:

By default, security groups for Pods is set to "strict mode." Use this setting if you must completely separate Pod traffic from the rest of the node's traffic. In strict mode, the source NAT is turned off so the branch ENI outbound security groups can be used.

> **Warning**
>
> When strict mode is enabled, all outbound traffic from a pod will leave the node and enter the VPC network. Traffic between pods on the same node will go over the VPC. This increases VPC traffic and limits node-based features. The NodeLocal DNSCache is not supported with strict mode.

Enforcing Mode: Use Standard mode in the following situations

Client source IP visible to the containers in the Pod

If you need to keep the client source IP visible to the containers in the Pod, consider setting `POD_SECURITY_GROUP_ENFORCING_MODE` to `standard`. Kubernetes services support externalTrafficPolicy=local to support preservation of the client source IP (default type cluster). You can now run Kubernetes services of type NodePort and LoadBalancer using instance targets with an externalTrafficPolicy set to Local in the standard mode. `Local` preserves the client source IP and avoids a second hop for LoadBalancer and NodePort type Services.

Deploying NodeLocal DNSCache

When using security groups for pods, configure standard mode to support Pods that use NodeLocal DNSCache. NodeLocal DNSCache improves Cluster DNS performance by running a DNS caching agent on cluster nodes as a DaemonSet. This will help the pods that have the highest DNS QPS requirements to query local kube-dns/CoreDNS having a local cache, which will improve the latency.

NodeLocal DNSCache is not supported in strict mode as all network traffic, even to the node, enters the VPC.

Supporting Kubernetes Network Policy

We recommend using standard enforcing mode when using network policy with Pods that have associated security groups.

We strongly recommend to utilize security groups for Pods to limit network-level access to AWS services that are not part of a cluster. Consider network policies to restrict network traffic between Pods inside a cluster, often known as East/West traffic.

Identify Incompatibilities with Security Groups per Pod

Windows-based and non-nitro instances do not support security groups for Pods. To utilize security groups with Pods, the instances must be tagged with isTrunkingEnabled. Use network policies to manage access between Pods rather than security groups if your Pods do not depend on any AWS services within or outside of your VPC.

Use Security Groups per Pod to efficiently control traffic to AWS Services

If an application running within the EKS cluster has to communicate with another resource within the VPC, e.g. an RDS database, then consider using SGs for pods. While there are policy engines that allow you to specify an CIDR or a DNS name, they are a less optimal choice when communicating with AWS services that have endpoints that reside within a VPC.

In contrast, Kubernetes network policies provide a mechanism for controlling ingress and egress traffic both within and outside the cluster. Kubernetes network policies should be considered if your application has limited dependencies on other AWS services. You may configure network policies that specify egress rules based on CIDR ranges to limit access to AWS services as opposed to AWS native semantics like SGs. You may use Kubernetes network policies to control network

traffic between Pods (often referred to as East/West traffic) and between Pods and external services. Kubernetes network policies are implemented at OSI levels 3 and 4.

Amazon EKS allows you to use network policy engines such as Calico and Cilium. By default, the network policy engines are not installed. Please check the respective install guides for instructions on how to set up. For more information on how to use network policy, see EKS Security best practices. The DNS hostnames feature is available in the enterprise versions of network policy engines, which could be useful for controlling traffic between Kubernetes Services/Pods and resources that run outside of AWS. Also, you can consider DNS hostname support for AWS services that don't support security groups by default.

Tag a single Security Group to use AWS Loadbalancer Controller

When many security groups are allocated to a Pod, Amazon EKS recommends tagging a single security group with `kubernetes.io/cluster/$name` shared or owned. The tag allows the AWS Loadbalancer Controller to update the rules of security groups to route traffic to the Pods. If just one security group is given to a Pod, the assignment of a tag is optional. Permissions set in a security group are additive, therefore tagging a single security group is sufficient for the loadbalancer controller to locate and reconcile the rules. It also helps to adhere to the default quotas defined by security groups.

Configure NAT for Outbound Traffic

Source NAT is disabled for outbound traffic from Pods that are assigned security groups. For Pods using security groups that require access the internet launch worker nodes on private subnets configured with a NAT gateway or instance and enable external SNAT in the CNI.

```
kubectl set env daemonset -n kube-system aws-node AWS_VPC_K8S_CNI_EXTERNALSNAT=true
```

Deploy Pods with Security Groups to Private Subnets

Pods that are assigned security groups must be run on nodes that are deployed on to private subnets. Note that Pods with assigned security groups deployed to public subnets will not able to access the internet.

Verify *terminationGracePeriodSeconds* in Pod Specification File

Ensure that `terminationGracePeriodSeconds` is non-zero in your Pod specification file (default 30 seconds). This is essential in order for Amazon VPC CNI to delete the Pod network from

the worker node. When set to zero, the CNI plugin does not remove the Pod network from the host, and the branch ENI is not effectively cleaned up.

Using Security Groups for Pods with Fargate

Security groups for Pods that run on Fargate work very similarly to Pods that run on EC2 worker nodes. For example, you have to create the security group before referencing it in the SecurityGroupPolicy you associate with your Fargate Pod. By default, the cluster security group is assiged to all Fargate Pods when you don't explicitly assign a SecurityGroupPolicy to a Fargate Pod. For simplicity's sake, you may want to add the cluster security group to a Fagate Pod's SecurityGroupPolicy otherwise you will have to add the minimum security group rules to your security group. You can find the cluster security group using the describe-cluster API.

```
aws eks describe-cluster --name CLUSTER_NAME --query
'cluster.resourcesVpcConfig.clusterSecurityGroupId'
```

```
cat >my-fargate-sg-policy.yaml <<EOF
apiVersion: vpcresources.k8s.aws/v1beta1
kind: SecurityGroupPolicy
metadata:
  name: my-fargate-sg-policy
  namespace: my-fargate-namespace
spec:
  podSelector:
    matchLabels:
      role: my-fargate-role
  securityGroups:
    groupIds:
      - cluster_security_group_id
      - my_fargate_pod_security_group_id
EOF
```

The minimum security group rules are listed here. These rules allow Fargate Pods to communicate with in-cluster services like kube-apiserver, kubelet, and CoreDNS. You also need add rules to allow inbound and outbound connections to and from your Fargate Pod. This will allow your Pod to communicate with other Pods or resources in your VPC. Additionally, you have to include rules for Fargate to pull container images from Amazon ECR or other container registries such as DockerHub. For more information, see AWS IP address ranges in the AWS General Reference.

You can use the below commands to find the security groups applied to a Fargate Pod.

```
kubectl get pod FARGATE_POD -o jsonpath='{.metadata.annotations.fargate\.amazonaws
\.com/pod-sg}{"\n"}'
```

Note down the eniId from above command.

```
aws ec2 describe-network-interfaces --network-interface-ids ENI_ID --query
 'NetworkInterfaces[*].Groups[*]'
```

Existing Fargate pods must be deleted and recreated in order for new security groups to be applied. For instance, the following command initiates the deployment of the example-app. To update specific pods, you can change the namespace and deployment name in the below command.

```
kubectl rollout restart -n example-ns deployment example-pod
```

Load Balancing

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Load Balancers receive incoming traffic and distribute it across targets of the intended application hosted in an EKS Cluster. This improves the resilience of the application. When deployed in an EKS Cluster the AWS Load Balancer controller will create and manage AWS Elastic Load Balancers for that cluster. When a Kubernetes Service of type LoadBalancer is created, the AWS Load Balancer Controller creates a Network Load Balancer (NLB) which load balances received traffic at Layer 4 of the OSI model. While when a Kubernetes Ingress object is created, the AWS Load Balancer Controller creates an Application Load Balancer (ALB) which load balances traffic at Layer 7 of the OSI model.

Choosing Load Balancer Type

The AWS Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) portfolio supports the following load balancers: Application Load Balancers (ALB), Network Load Balancers (NLB), Gateway Load Balancers (GWLB), and Classic Load Balancers (CLB). This best practices section will focus on the ALB and NLB which are the two which are most relevant for EKS Clusters.

The main consideration in choosing the type of load balancer is the workload requirements.

For more detailed information and as a reference for all AWS Load balancers, see Product Comparisons

Choose the Application Load Balancer (ALB) if your workload is HTTP/HTTPS

If a workloads requires load balancing at Layer 7 of the OSI Model, the AWS Load Balancer Controller can be used to provision an ALB; we cover the provisioning in the following section. The ALB is controlled and configured by the Ingress resource mentioned earlier and routes HTTP or HTTPS traffic to different Pods within the cluster. The ALB provides customers with the flexibility to change the application traffic routing algorithm; the default routing algorithm is round robin with the least outstanding requests routing algorithm also an alternative.

Choose the Network Load Balancer (NLB) if your workload is TCP, or if your workload requires Source IP Preservation of Clients

A Network Load Balancer functions at the fourth layer (Transport) of the Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) model. It is suited for TCP & UDP based workloads. Network Load Balancer also by default preserves the Source IP of address of the clients when presenting the traffic to the pod.

Choose the Network Load Balancer (NLB) if your workload cannot utilize DNS

Another key reason to use the NLB is if your clients cannot utilize DNS. In this case, the NLB may be a better fit for your workload as the IPs on a Network Load Balancer are static. While clients are recommended to use DNS when resolving Domain Names to IP Addresses when connecting to Load Balancers, if a client's application doesn't support DNS resolution and only accepts hard-coded IPs then an NLB is a better fit as the IPs are static and remain same for the life of the NLB.

Provisioning Load Balancers

After determining the Load Balancer best suited for your workloads, customers have a number of options for provisioning a load balancer.

Provision Load Balancers by deploying the AWS Load Balancer Controller

There are two key methods of provisioning load balancers within an EKS Cluster.

- Leveraging the Service Controller in the AWS Cloud Provider (legacy)

- Leveraging the AWS Load Balancer Controller (recommended)

By default, the Kubernetes Service Controller, also known as the in-tree controller, reconciles the Kubernetes Service resource of type LoadBalancer. This controller is built into the AWS Cloud Provider component which functions as the Kubernetes Cloud Controller Manager.

The configuration of the provisioned Elastic Load Balancer is controlled by annotations that must be added to the Kubernetes Service manifest. The annotations that are used by the Service Controller and AWS Load Balancer Controller are different.

The Service Controller is legacy and is currently only receiving critical bug fixes. When you create a Kubernetes Service of type LoadBalancer, the Service Controller creates an AWS CLB by default, but can also create AWS NLB if you use the right annotation. It is worth noting that Service Controller does not support Kubernetes Ingress resources and it also does not support IPv6.

We recommend using the AWS Load Balancer Controller in your EKS clusters to reconcile Kubernetes Service and Ingress resources. You must use the right annotations in your Kubernetes Service or Ingress manifest so that AWS Load Balancer Controller owns the reconciliation process. (instead of Service Controller)

If you are utilizing EKS Auto Mode the the AWS Load Balancer Controller is provided for you automatically; no installation is necessary.

Choosing Load Balancer Target-Type

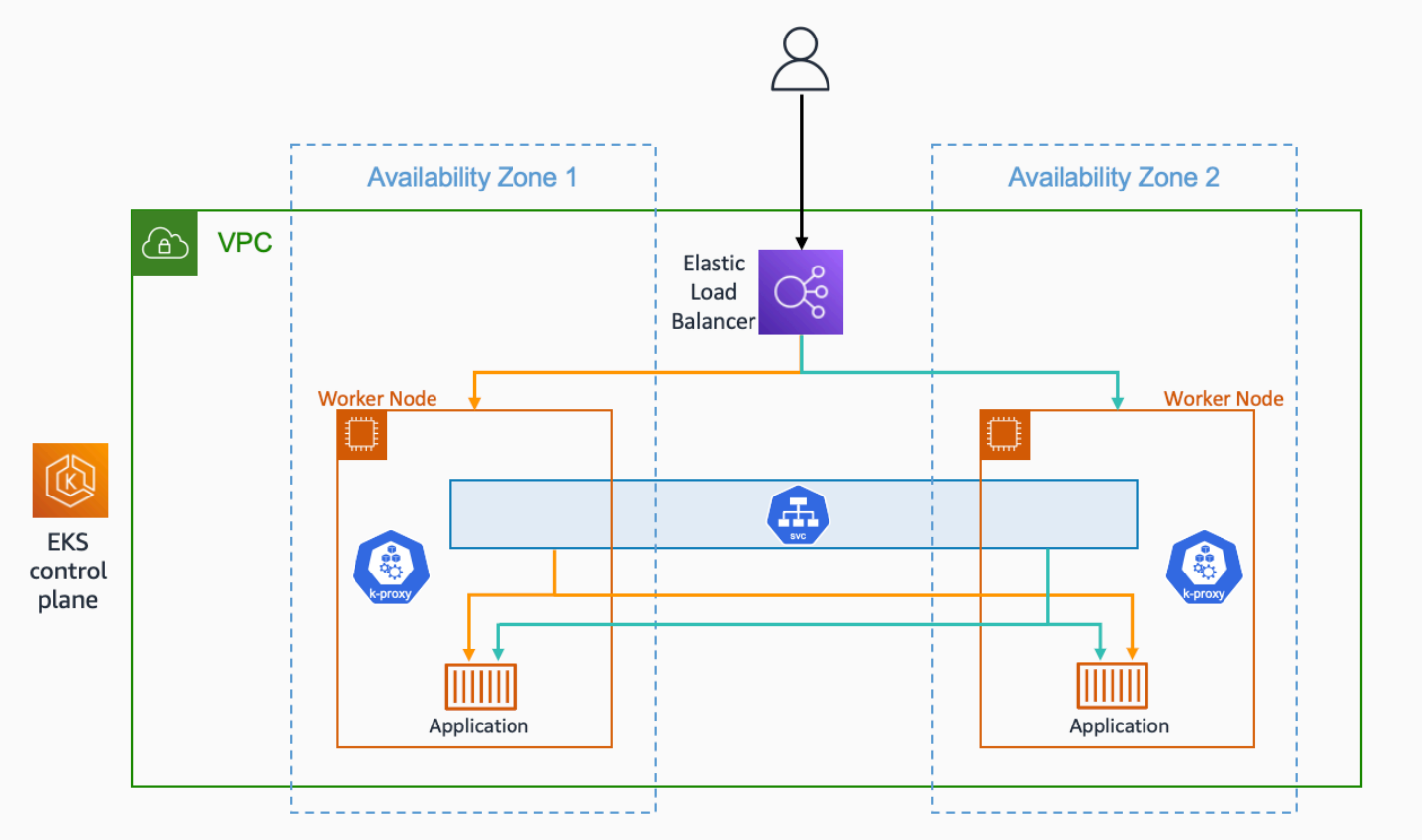
Register Pods as targets using IP Target-Type

An AWS Elastic Load Balancer: Network & Application, sends received traffic to registered targets in a target group. For an EKS Cluster there are 2 types of targets you can register in the target group: Instance & IP, which target type is used has implications on what gets registered and how traffic is routed from the Load Balancer to the pod. By default the AWS Load Balancer controller will register targets using "Instance" type and this target will be the Worker Node's IP and NodePort, implication of this include:

- Traffic from the Load Balancer will be forwarded to the Worker Node on the NodePort, this gets processed by iptables rules (configured by kube-proxy running on the node), and gets forwarded to the Service on its ClusterIP (still on the node), finally the Service randomly selects a pod registered to it and forwards the traffic to it. This flow involves multiple hops and extra latency

can be incurred especially because the Service will sometimes select a pod running on another worker node which might also be in another AZ.

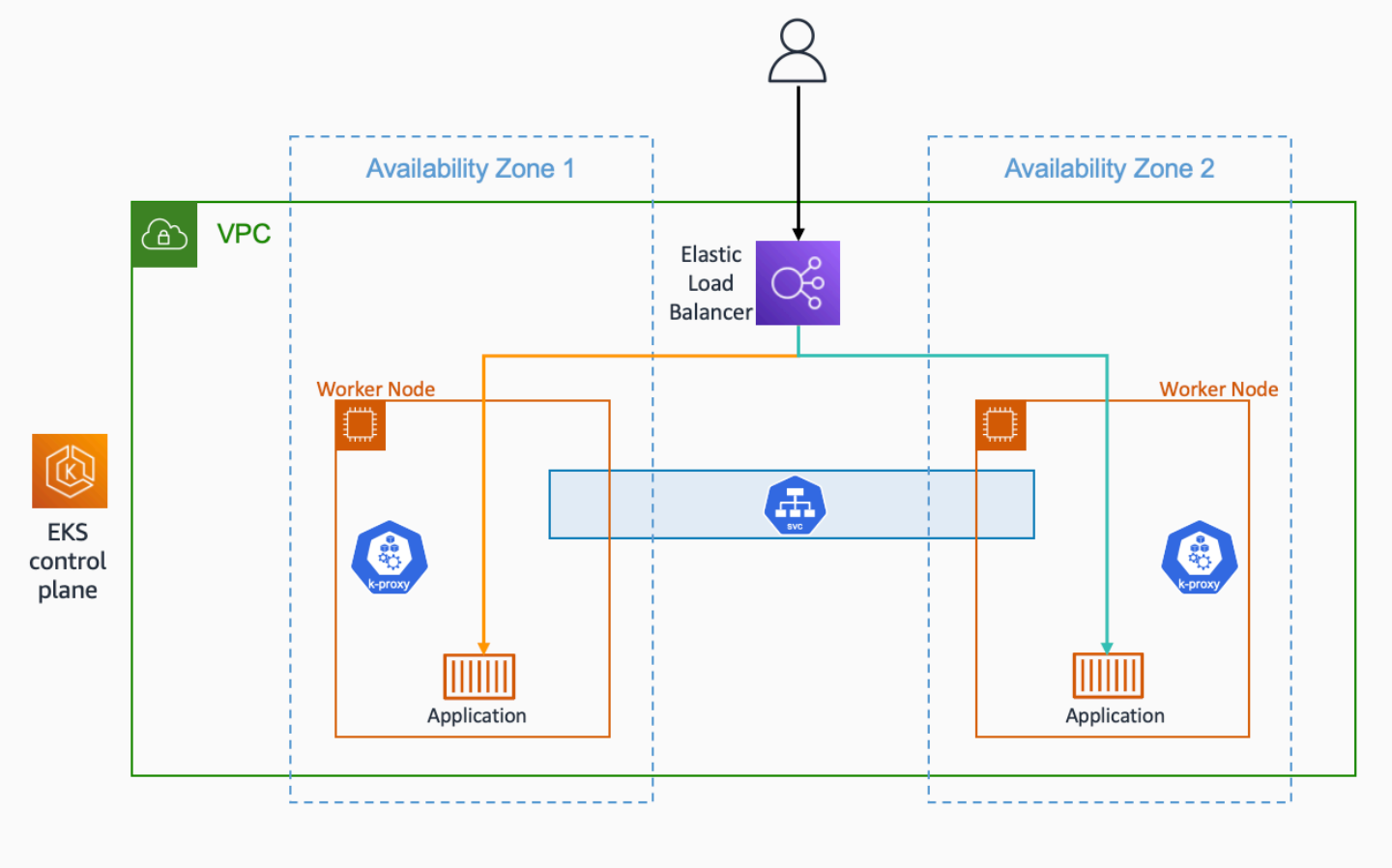
- Because the Load Balancer registers the Worker Node as its target this means its health check which gets sent to the target will not be directly received by the pod but by the Worker Node on its NodePort and health check traffic will follow the same path described above.
- Monitoring and Troubleshooting is more complex since traffic forwarded by the Load Balancer isn't directly sent to the pods and you'd have to carefully correlate the packet received on the Worker Node to to the Service ClusterIP and eventually the pod to have full end-to-end visibility into the packet's path for proper troubleshooting.



By contrast if you configure the target type as "IP" as we recommend the implication will be the following:

- Traffic from the Load Balancer will be forwarded directly to the pod, this simplifies the network path as it bypasses the previous extra hops of Worker Nodes and Service Cluster IP, it reduces latency that would otherwise have been incurred if the Service forwarded traffic to a pod in another AZ and lastly it removes the iptables rules overhead processing on the Worker Nodes.

- The Load Balancer's health check is directly received and responded to by the pod, this means the target status "healthy" or "unhealthy" are a direct representation of the pod's health status.
- Monitoring and Troubleshooting is easier and any tool used that captures packet IP address will directly reveal the bi-directional traffic between the Load Balancer and the pod in its source and destination fields.



To create an AWS Elastic Load Balancing that uses IP Targets you add:

- `alb.ingress.kubernetes.io/target-type: ip` annotation to your Ingress' manifest when configuring your Kubernetes Ingress (Application Load Balancer)
- `service.beta.kubernetes.io/aws-load-balancer-nlb-target-type: ip` annotation to your Service's Manifest when configuring your Kubernetes Service of type LoadBalancer (Network Load Balancer).

Configuring Load Balancer Health Checks

While Kubernetes provides its own health check mechanisms (detailed in the next section), we recommend implementing ELB health checks as a complementary safeguard that functions outside the Kubernetes control plane. This independent layer continues monitoring your application even during:

- Kubernetes control plane disruptions
- Probe execution delays
- Network partitions between kubelet and pod

For critical workloads requiring maximum availability accelerated recovery during the scenarios mentioned above, ELB health checks provide an essential safety net that works alongside — not in place of — Kubernetes' native mechanisms.

In order to configure and fine tune health checks on your ELB, you must use annotations in your Kubernetes Service or Ingress manifest that would be reconcilced by Service Controller or AWS Load Balancer Controller.

Availability and Pod Lifecycle

During an application upgrade you must make sure that your application is always available to process requests so users do not experience any downtime. One common challenge in this scenario is syncing the availability status of your workloads between the Kubernetes layer, and the infrastructure, for instance external Load Balancers. The next few sections highlight the best practices to address such scenarios.

> **Note**
>
> The explanations below are based on the EndpointSlices as it is the recommended replacement for the Endpoints in Kubernetes. The differences between the two are negligible in the context of the scenarios covered below. AWS Load Balancer Controller by default consumes Endpoints, you can enable EndpointSlices by enabling the enable-endpoint-sliceflag on the controller.

Use health checks

Kubernetes by default runs the process health check where the kubelet process on the node verifies whether or not the main process of the container is running. If not then by default it restarts that container. However you can also configure Kubernetes probes to identify when a container process is running but in a deadlock state, or whether an application has started successfully or not. Probes can be based on exec, grpc, httpGet and tcpSocket mechanisms. Based on the type and result of the probe the container can be restarted.

Please see the Pod Creation in the Appendix section below to revisit the sequence of events in Pod creation process.

Use readiness probes

By default when all the containers within a Pod are running the Pod condition is considered to be "Ready". However the application may still not be able to process client requests. For example the application may need to pull some data or configuration from an external resource to be able to process requests. In such a state you would neither want to kill the application nor forward any requests to it. Readiness probe enables you to make sure that the Pod is not considered to be "Ready", meaning that it will not be added to the EndpointSlice object, until the probe result is `success`. On the other hand if the probe fails further down the line then the Pod is removed from the EndpointSlice object. You can configure a readiness probe in the Pod manifest for each container. `kubelet` process on each node runs the readiness probe against the containers on that node.

Utilize Pod readiness gates

One aspect of the readiness probe is the fact that there is no external feedback/influence mechanism in it, kubelet process on the node executes the probe and defines the state of the probe. This does not have any impact on the requests between microservices themselves in the Kubernetes layer (east west traffic) since the EndpointSlice Controller keeps the list of endpoints (Pods) always up to date. Why and when would you need an external mechanism then ?

When you expose your applications using Kubernetes Service type of Load Balancer or Kubernetes Ingress (for north - south traffic) then the list of Pod IPs for the respective Kubernetes Service must be propagated to the external infrastructure load balancer so that the load balancer also has an up to date list targets. AWS Load Balancer Controller bridges the gap here. When you use AWS Load Balancer Controller and leverage `target group: IP` , just like `kube-proxy` the AWS Load

Balancer Controller also receives an update (via `watch`) and then it communicates with the ELB API to configure and start registering the Pod IP as a target on the ELB.

When you perform a rolling update of a Deployment, new Pods get created, and as soon as a new Pod's condition is "Ready" an old/existing Pod gets terminated. During this process, the Kubernetes EndpointSlice object is updated faster than the time it takes the ELB to register the new Pods as targets, see target registration. For a brief time you could have a state mismatch between the Kubernetes layer and the infrastructure layer where client requests could be dropped. During this period within the Kubernetes layer new Pods would be ready to process requests but from ELB point of view they are not.

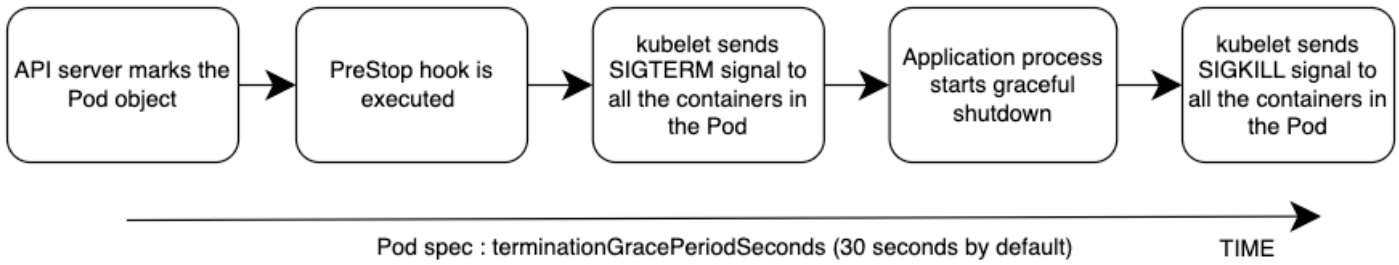
Pod Readiness Gates enables you to define additional requirements that must be met before the Pod condition is considered to be "Ready". In the case of AWS ELB, the AWS Load Balancer Controller monitors the status of the target (the Pod) on the AWS ELB and once the target registration completes and its status turns "Healthy" then the controller updates the Pod' s condition to "Ready". With this approach you influence the Pod condition based on the state of the external network, which is the target status on the AWS ELB. Pod Readiness Gates is crucial in rolling update scenarios as it enables you to prevent the rolling update of a deployment from terminating old pods until the newly created Pods target status turn "Healthy" on the AWS ELB.

Gracefully shutdown applications

Your application should respond to a SIGTERM signal by starting its graceful shutdown so that clients do not experience any downtime. What this means is your application should run cleanup procedures such as saving data, closing file descriptors, closing database connections, completing in-flight requests gracefully and exit in a timely manner to fulfill the Pod termination request. You should set the grace period to long enough so that cleanup can finish. To learn how to respond to the SIGTERM signal you can refer to the resources of the respective programming language that you use for your application.

If your application is unable to shutdown gracefully upon receipt of a SIGTERM signal or if it ignores/does not receive the signal, then you can instead leverage PreStop hook to initiate a graceful shutdown of the application. Prestop hook is executed immediately before the SIGTERM signal is sent and it can perform arbitrary operations without having to implement those operations in the application code itself.

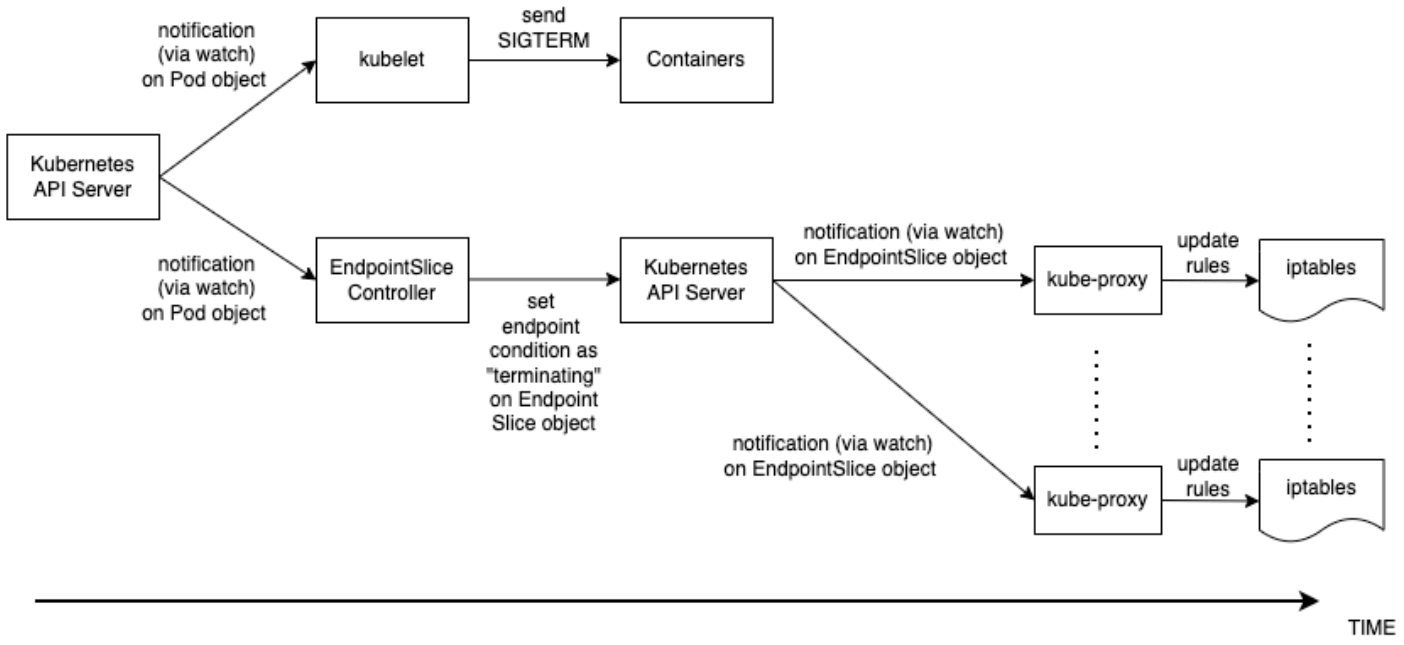
The overall sequence of events is shown in the diagram below. Note: regardless of the result of graceful shutdown procedure of the application, or the result of the PreStop hook, the application containers are eventually terminated at the end of the grace period via SIGKILL.



Please see the Pod Deletion in the Appendix section below to revisit the sequence of events in Pod deletion process.

Gracefully handle the client requests

The sequence of events in Pod deletion is different than Pod creation. When a Pod is created `kubelet` updates the Pod IP in Kubernetes API and only then the EndpointSlice object is updated. On the other hand when a Pod is being terminated Kubernetes API notifies both the kubelet and EndpointSlice controller at the same time. Carefully inspect the following diagram which shows the sequence of events.



The way the state propagates all the way from API server down to the iptables rules on the nodes explained above creates an interesting race condition. Because there is a high chance that the container receives the SIGKILL signal much earlier than the kube-proxy on each node updates the local iptables rules. In such an event two scenarios worth mentioning are :

- If your application immediately and bluntly drops the in-flight requests and connections upon receipt of SIGTERM which means the clients would see 50x errors all over the place.
- Even if your application ensures that all in-flight requests and connections are processed completely upon receipt of SIGTERM, during the grace period, new client requests would still be sent to the application container because iptables rules may still not be updated yet. Until the cleanup procedure closes the server socket on the container those new requests will result in new connections. When the grace period ends those connections, which are established after the SIGTERM, at that time are dropped unconditionally since SIGKILL is sent.

Setting the grace period in Pod spec long enough may address this challenge but depending on the propagation delay and the number of actual client requests it is hard to anticipate the time it takes for the application to close out the connections gracefully. Hence the not so perfect but most feasible approach here is to use a PreStop hook to delay the SIGTERM signal until the iptables rules are updated to make sure that no new client requests are sent to the application rather, only existing connections carry on. PreStop hook can be a simple Exec handler such as `sleep 10`.

The behavior and the recommendation mentioned above would be equally applicable when you expose your applications using Kubernetes Service type of Load Balancer or Kubernetes Ingress (for north - south traffic) using AWS Load Balancer Controller and leverage `target group: IP` . Because just like `kube-proxy` the AWS Load Balancer Controller also receives an update (via watch) on the EndpointSlice object and then it communicates with the ELB API to start deregistering the Pod IP from the ELB. However depending on the load on Kubernetes API or the ELB API this can also take time and the SIGTERM may have already been sent to the application long ago. Once the ELB starts deregistering the target it stops sending requests to that target so the application will not receive any new requests and the ELB also starts a Deregistration delay which is 300 seconds by default. During the deregistration process the target is `draining` where basically the ELB waits for the in-flight requests/existing connections to that target to drain. Once the deregistration delay expires then the target is unused and any in-flight requests to that target is forcibly dropped.

Use Pod disruption budget

Configure a Pod Disruption Budget (PDB) for your applications. PDBlimits the number of Pods of a replicated application that are down simultaneously from voluntary disruptions. It ensures that a minimum number or percentage of pods remain available in a StatefulSet or Deployment. For example, a quorum-based application needs to ensure that the number of replicas running is never brought below the number needed for a quorum. Or a web front end might ensure that the

number of replicas serving load never falls below a certain percentage of the total. PDB will protect the application against actions such as nodes being drained, or new versions of Deployments being rolled out. Keep in mind that PDB's will not protect the application against involuntary disruptions such as a failure of the node operating system or loss of network connectivity. For more information please refer to the Specifying a Disruption Budget for your Application in Kubernetes documentation.

References

- KubeCon Europe 2019 Session - Ready? A Deep Dive into Pod Readiness Gates for Service Health
- Book - Kubernetes in Action
- AWS Blog - How to rapidly scale your application with ALB on EKS (without losing traffic)

Appendix

Pod Creation

It is imperative to understand what is the sequence of events in a scenario where a Pod is deployed and then it becomes healthy/ready to receive and process client requests. Let's talk about the sequence of events.

1. A Pod is created on the Kubernetes control plane (i.e. by a kubectl command, or Deployment update, or scaling action).
2. `kube-scheduler` assigns the Pod to a node in the cluster.
3. The kubelet process running on the assigned node receives the update (via `watch`) and communicates with the container runtime to start the containers defined in the Pod spec.
4. When the containers starts running, the kubelet updates the Pod condition as `Ready` in the Pod object in the Kubernetes API.
5. The EndpointSlice Controller receives the Pod condition update (via `watch`) and adds the Pod IP/Port as a new endpoint to the EndpointSlice object (list of Pod IPs) of the respective Kubernetes Service.
6. kube-proxy process on each node receives the update (via `watch`) on the EndpointSlice object and then updates the iptables rules on each node, with the new Pod IP/port.

Pod Deletion

Just like Pod creation, it is imperative to understand what is the sequence of events during Pod deletion. Let' s talk about the sequence of events.

1. A Pod deletion request is sent to the Kubernetes API server (i.e. by a `kubectl` command, or Deployment update, or scaling action).
2. Kubernetes API server starts a grace period, which is 30 seconds by default, by setting the deletionTimestamp field in the Pod object. (Grace period can be configured in Pod spec through `terminationGracePeriodSeconds`)
3. The `kubelet` process running on the node receives the update (via watch) on the Pod object and sends a SIGTERM signal to process identifier 1 (PID 1) inside each container in that Pod. It then watches the `terminationGracePeriodSeconds`.
4. The EndpointSlice Controller also receives the update (via `watch`) from Step 2 and sets the endpoint condition to "terminating" in the EndpointSlice object (list of Pod IPs) of the respective Kubernetes Service.
5. kube-proxy process on each node receives the update (via `watch`) on the EndpointSlice object then iptables rules on each node get updated by the kube-proxy to stop forwarding clients requests to the Pod.
6. When the `terminationGracePeriodSeconds` expires then the `kubelet` sends SIGKILL signal to the parent process of each container in the Pod and forcibly terminates them.
7. TheEndpointSlice Controller removes the endpoint from the EndpointSlice object.
8. API server deletes the Pod object.

Monitoring EKS workloads for Network performance issues

Monitoring CoreDNS traffic for DNS throttling issues

Running DNS intensive workloads can sometimes experience intermittent CoreDNS failures due to DNS throttling, and this can impact applications where you may encounter occasional UnknownHostException errors.

The Deployment for CoreDNS has an anti-affinity policy that instructs the Kubernetes scheduler to run instances of CoreDNS on separate worker nodes in the cluster, i.e. it should avoid co-locating replicas on the same worker node. This effectively reduces the number of DNS queries per network interface because traffic from each replica is routed through a different ENI. If you notice that DNS

queries are being throttled because of the 1024 packets per second limit, you can 1) try increasing the number of CoreDNS replicas or 2) implement NodeLocal DNSCache. See Monitor CoreDNS Metrics for further information.

Challenge

- Packet drop happens in seconds and it can be tricky for us to properly monitor these patterns to determine if DNS throttling is actually happening.
- DNS queries are throttled at the elastic network interface level. So, throttled queries don't appear in the query logging.
- Flow logs do not capture all IP traffic. E.g. Traffic generated by instances when they contact the Amazon DNS server. If you use your own DNS server, then all traffic to that DNS server is logged

Solution

An easy way to identify the DNS throttling issues in worker nodes is by capturing `linklocal_allowance_exceeded` metric. The linklocal_allowance_exceeded is number of packets dropped because the PPS of the traffic to local proxy services exceeded the maximum for the network interface. This impacts traffic to the DNS service, the Instance Metadata Service, and the Amazon Time Sync Service. Instead of tracking this event real-time, we can stream this metric to Amazon Managed Service for Prometheus as well and can have them visualized in Amazon Managed Grafana

Monitoring DNS query delays using Conntrack metrics

Another metric that can help in monitoring the CoreDNS throttling / query delay are `conntrack_allowance_available` and `conntrack_allowance_exceeded`. Connectivity failures caused by exceeding Connections Tracked allowances can have a larger impact than those resulting from exceeding other allowances. When relying on TCP to transfer data, packets that are queued or dropped due to exceeding EC2 instance network allowances, such as Bandwidth, PPS, etc., are typically handled gracefully thanks to TCP's congestion control capabilities. Impacted flows will be slowed down, and lost packets will be retransmitted. However, when an instance exceeds its Connections Tracked allowance, no new connections can be established until some of the existing ones are closed to make room for new connections.

`conntrack_allowance_available` and `conntrack_allowance_exceeded` helps customers in monitoring the connections tracked allowance which varies for every instance. These network performance metrics give customers visibility into the number of packets queued or dropped

when an instance's networking allowances, such as Network Bandwidth, Packets-Per-Second (PPS), Connections Tracked, and Link-local service access (Amazon DNS, Instance Meta Data Service, Amazon Time Sync) are exceeded

`conntrack_allowance_available` is the number of tracked connections that can be established by the instance before hitting the Connections Tracked allowance of that instance type (supported for nitro-based instance only). `conntrack_allowance_exceeded` is the number of packets dropped because connection tracking exceeded the maximum for the instance and new connections could not be established.

Other important Network performance metrics

Other important network performance metrics include:

`bw_in_allowance_exceeded` (ideal value of the metric should be zero) is the number of packets queued and/or dropped because the inbound aggregate bandwidth exceeded the maximum for the instance

`bw_out_allowance_exceeded` (ideal value of the metric should be zero) is the number of packets queued and/or dropped because the outbound aggregate bandwidth exceeded the maximum for the instance

`pps_allowance_exceeded` (ideal value of the metric should be zero) is the number of packets queued and/or dropped because the bidirectional PPS exceeded the maximum for the instance

Capturing the metrics to monitor workloads for network performance issues

The Elastic Network Adapter (ENA) driver publishes network performance metrics discussed above from the instances where they are enabled. All the network performance metrics can be published to CloudWatch using the CloudWatch agent. Please refer to the blog for more information.

Let's now capture the metrics discussed above, store them in Amazon Managed Service for Prometheus and visualize using Amazon Managed Grafana

Prerequisites

- ethtool - Ensure the worker nodes have ethtool installed
- An AMP workspace configured in your AWS account. For instructions, see Create a workspace in the AMP User Guide.

- Amazon Managed Grafana Workspace

Deploying Prometheus Node Exporter

In order to collect the ethtool metrics for worker nodes, we need to deploy a collector which gathers the metrics and exposes them in Prometheus format. The following commands will add the `prometheus-community` Helm repository and install the `prometheus-node-exporter` chart with the `ethtool` collector enabled.

```
helm repo add prometheus-community https://prometheus-community.github.io/helm-charts

helm upgrade -i prometheus-node-exporter prometheus-community/prometheus-node-exporter
 \
  --set extraArgs[0]="--collector.ethtool" \
  --set extraArgs[1]="--collector.ethtool.device-include=(eth|em|eno|ens|enp)[0-9s]+" \
  --set extraArgs[2]="--collector.ethtool.metrics-include=.*" \
  --set podAnnotations."prometheus\.io/scrape='true'" \
  --set podAnnotations."prometheus\.io/port='9100'"
```

Deploy the ADOT collector to scrape the ethtool metrics and store in Amazon Managed Service for Prometheus workspace

Each cluster where you install AWS Distro for OpenTelemetry (ADOT) must have this role to grant your AWS service account permissions to store metrics into Amazon Managed Service for Prometheus. Follow these steps to create and associate your IAM role to your Amazon EKS service account using IRSA:

```
eksctl create iamserviceaccount --name adot-collector --namespace default
 --cluster <CLUSTER_NAME> --attach-policy-arn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/
AmazonPrometheusRemoteWriteAccess --attach-policy-arn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/
AWSXrayWriteOnlyAccess --attach-policy-arn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/
CloudWatchAgentServerPolicy --region <REGION> --approve  --override-existing-
serviceaccounts
```

Let's deploy the ADOT collector to scrape the metrcis from the prometheus ethtool exporter and store it in Amazon Managed Service for Prometheus

The following procedure uses an example YAML file with deployment as the mode value. This is the default mode and deploys the ADOT Collector similarly to a standalone application. This

configuration receives OTLP metrics from the sample application and Amazon Managed Service for Prometheus metrics scraped from pods on the cluster

```
curl -o collector-config-amp.yaml https://raw.githubusercontent.com/aws-observability/
aws-otel-community/master/sample-configs/operator/collector-config-amp.yaml
```

In collector-config-amp.yaml, replace the following with your own values:

- mode: deployment
- serviceAccount: adot-collector
- endpoint: <YOUR_REMOTE_WRITE_ENDPOINT>
- region: <YOUR_AWS_REGION>
- name: adot-collector

```
kubectl apply -f collector-config-amp.yaml
```

Once the adot collector is deployed, the metrics will be stored successfully in Amazon Prometheus

Configure alert manager in Amazon Managed Service for Prometheus to send notifications

You can use alert manager in Amazon Managed Service for Prometheus to set up alerting rules for critical alerts then you can send notifications to an Amazon SNS topic. Let's configure recording rules and alerting rules to check for the metrics discussed so far.

We will use the ACK Controller for Amazon Managed Service for Prometheus to provision the alerting and recording rules.

Let's deploy the ACL controller for the Amazon Managed Service for Prometheus service:

```
export SERVICE=prometheusservice
export RELEASE_VERSION=`curl -sL https://api.github.com/repos/aws-controllers-k8s/
$SERVICE-controller/releases/latest | grep '"tag_name":' | cut -d'"' -f4`
export ACK_SYSTEM_NAMESPACE=ack-system
export AWS_REGION=us-east-1
aws ecr-public get-login-password --region us-east-1 | helm registry login --username
 AWS --password-stdin public.ecr.aws
helm install --create-namespace -n $ACK_SYSTEM_NAMESPACE ack-$SERVICE-controller \
```

```
oci://public.ecr.aws/aws-controllers-k8s/$SERVICE-chart --version=$RELEASE_VERSION --
set=aws.region=$AWS_REGION
```

Run the command and after a few moments you should see the following message:

```
You are now able to create Amazon Managed Service for Prometheus (AMP) resources!

The controller is running in "cluster" mode.

The controller is configured to manage AWS resources in region: "us-east-1"

The ACK controller has been successfully installed and ACK can now be used to provision
 an Amazon Managed Service for Prometheus workspace.
```

Let's now create a yaml file for provisioning the alert manager definition and rule groups. Save the below file as `rulegroup.yaml`

```
apiVersion: prometheusservice.services.k8s.aws/v1alpha1
kind: RuleGroupsNamespace
metadata:
   name: default-rule
spec:
   workspaceID: <Your WORKSPACE-ID>
   name: default-rule
   configuration: |
     groups:
     - name: ppsallowance
       rules:
       - record: metric:pps_allowance_exceeded
         expr: rate(node_net_ethtool{device="eth0",type="pps_allowance_exceeded"}[30s])
       - alert: PPSAllowanceExceeded
         expr: rate(node_net_ethtool{device="eth0",type="pps_allowance_exceeded"}
 [30s]) > 0
         labels:
           severity: critical

         annotations:
           summary: Connections dropped due to total allowance exceeding for the
 (instance {{ $labels.instance }})
           description: "PPSAllowanceExceeded is greater than 0"
     - name: bw_in
       rules:
       - record: metric:bw_in_allowance_exceeded
```

```
          expr: rate(node_net_ethtool{device="eth0",type="bw_in_allowance_exceeded"}
[30s])
        - alert: BWINAllowanceExceeded
          expr: rate(node_net_ethtool{device="eth0",type="bw_in_allowance_exceeded"}
 [30s]) > 0
          labels:
            severity: critical

          annotations:
            summary: Connections dropped due to total allowance exceeding for the
 (instance {{ $labels.instance }})
            description: "BWInAllowanceExceeded is greater than 0"
      - name: bw_out
        rules:
        - record: metric:bw_out_allowance_exceeded
          expr: rate(node_net_ethtool{device="eth0",type="bw_out_allowance_exceeded"}
[30s])
        - alert: BWOutAllowanceExceeded
          expr: rate(node_net_ethtool{device="eth0",type="bw_out_allowance_exceeded"}
 [30s]) > 0
          labels:
            severity: critical

          annotations:
            summary: Connections dropped due to total allowance exceeding for the
 (instance {{ $labels.instance }})
            description: "BWoutAllowanceExceeded is greater than 0"
      - name: conntrack
        rules:
        - record: metric:conntrack_allowance_exceeded
          expr: rate(node_net_ethtool{device="eth0",type="conntrack_allowance_exceeded"}
[30s])
        - alert: ConntrackAllowanceExceeded
          expr: rate(node_net_ethtool{device="eth0",type="conntrack_allowance_exceeded"}
 [30s]) > 0
          labels:
            severity: critical

          annotations:
            summary: Connections dropped due to total allowance exceeding for the
 (instance {{ $labels.instance }})
            description: "ConnTrackAllowanceExceeded is greater than 0"
      - name: linklocal
        rules:
```

```
      - record: metric:linklocal_allowance_exceeded
        expr: rate(node_net_ethtool{device="eth0",type="linklocal_allowance_exceeded"}
[30s])
      - alert: LinkLocalAllowanceExceeded
        expr: rate(node_net_ethtool{device="eth0",type="linklocal_allowance_exceeded"}
 [30s]) > 0
        labels:
          severity: critical

        annotations:
          summary: Packets dropped due to PPS rate allowance exceeded for local
 services  (instance {{ $labels.instance }})
          description: "LinkLocalAllowanceExceeded is greater than 0"
```

Replace Your WORKSPACE-ID with the Workspace ID of the workspace you are using.

Let's now configure the alert manager definition. Save the below fie as `alertmanager.yaml`

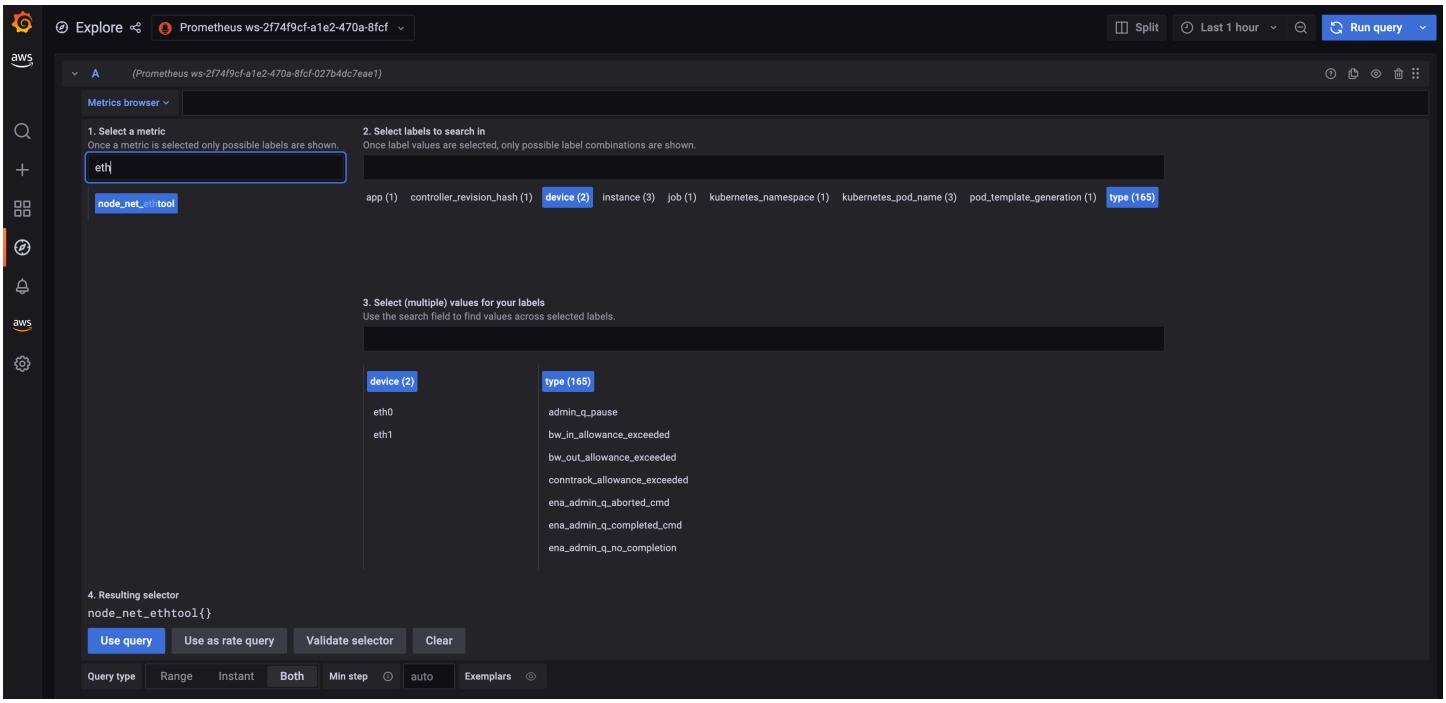
```
apiVersion: prometheusservice.services.k8s.aws/v1alpha1
kind: AlertManagerDefinition
metadata:
  name: alert-manager
spec:
  workspaceID: <Your WORKSPACE-ID >
  configuration: |
    alertmanager_config: |
      route:
         receiver: default_receiver
       receivers:
       - name: default_receiver
          sns_configs:
          - topic_arn: TOPIC-ARN
            sigv4:
              region: REGION
            message: |
              alert_type: {{ .CommonLabels.alertname }}
              event_type: {{ .CommonLabels.event_type }}
```

Replace You WORKSPACE-ID with the Workspace ID of the new workspace, TOPIC-ARN with the ARN of an Amazon Simple Notification Service topic where you want to send the alerts, and REGION with the current region of the workload. Make sure that your workspace has permissions to send messages to Amazon SNS.

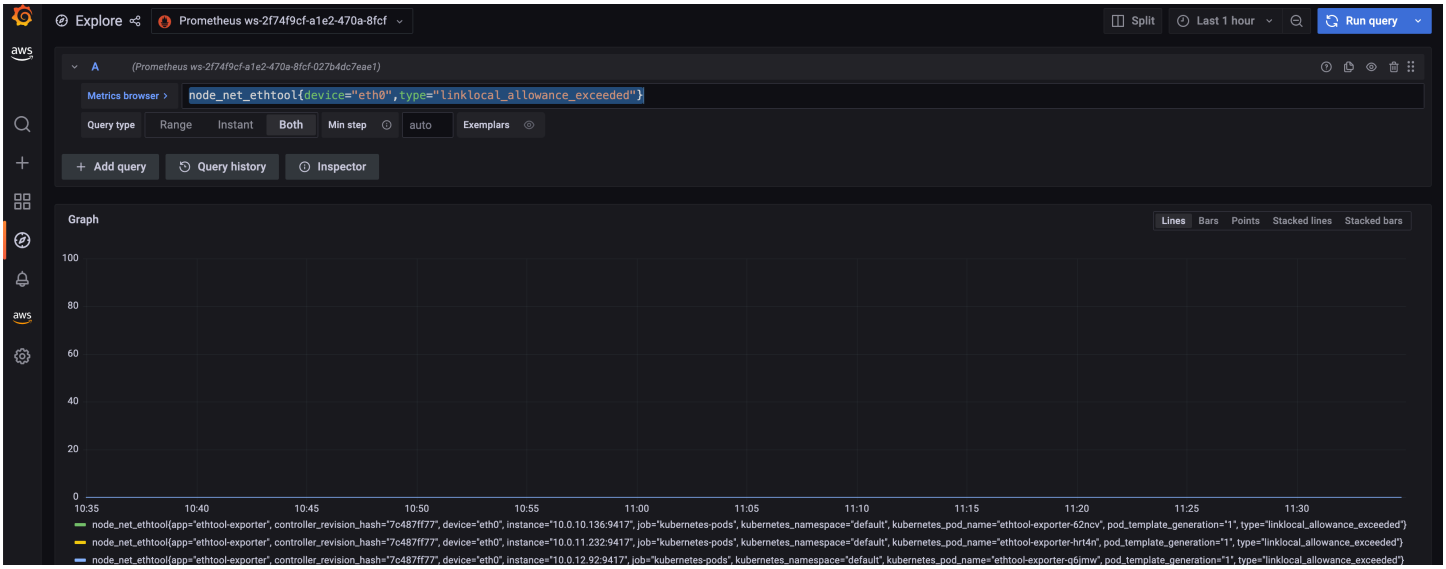
Visualize ethtool metrics in Amazon Managed Grafana

Let's visualize the metrics within the Amazon Managed Grafana and build a dashboard. Configure the Amazon Managed Service for Prometheus as a datasource inside the Amazon Managed Grafana console. For instructions, see Add Amazon Prometheus as a datasource

Let's explore the metrics in Amazon Managed Grafana now: Click the explore button, and search for ethtool:

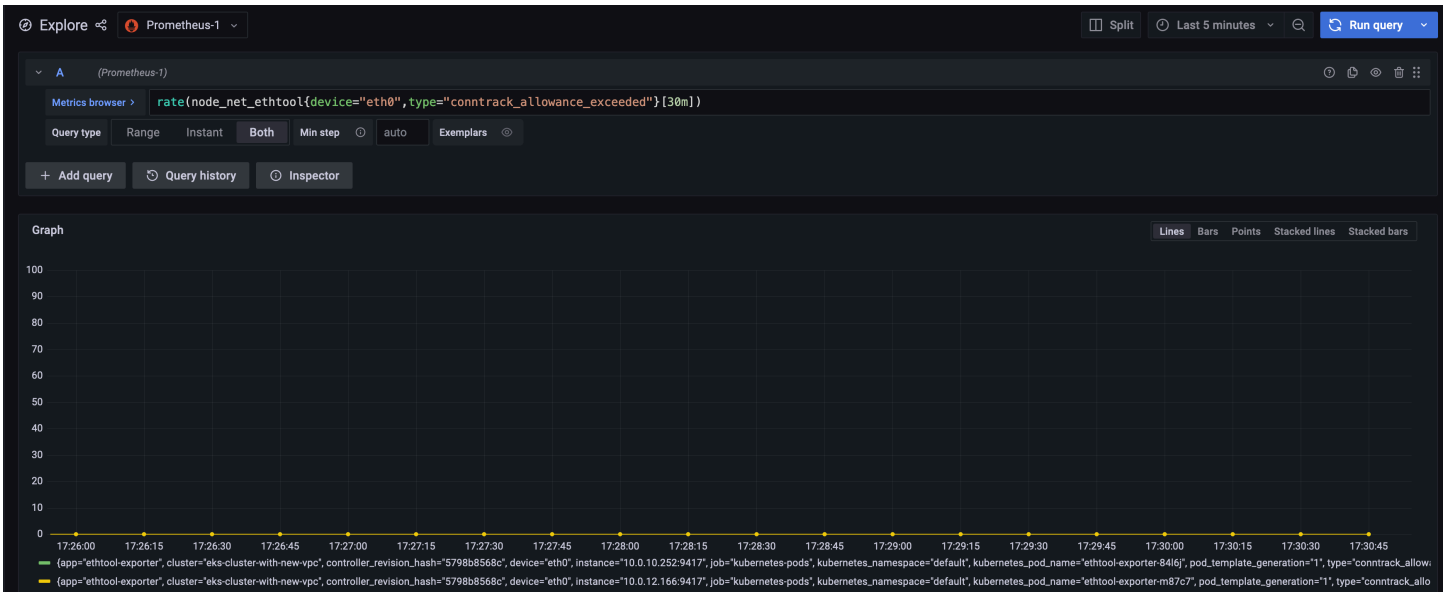


Let's build a dashboard for the linklocal_allowance_exceeded metric by using the query `rate(node_net_ethtool{device="eth0",type="linklocal_allowance_exceeded"}[30s])`. It will result in the below dashboard.

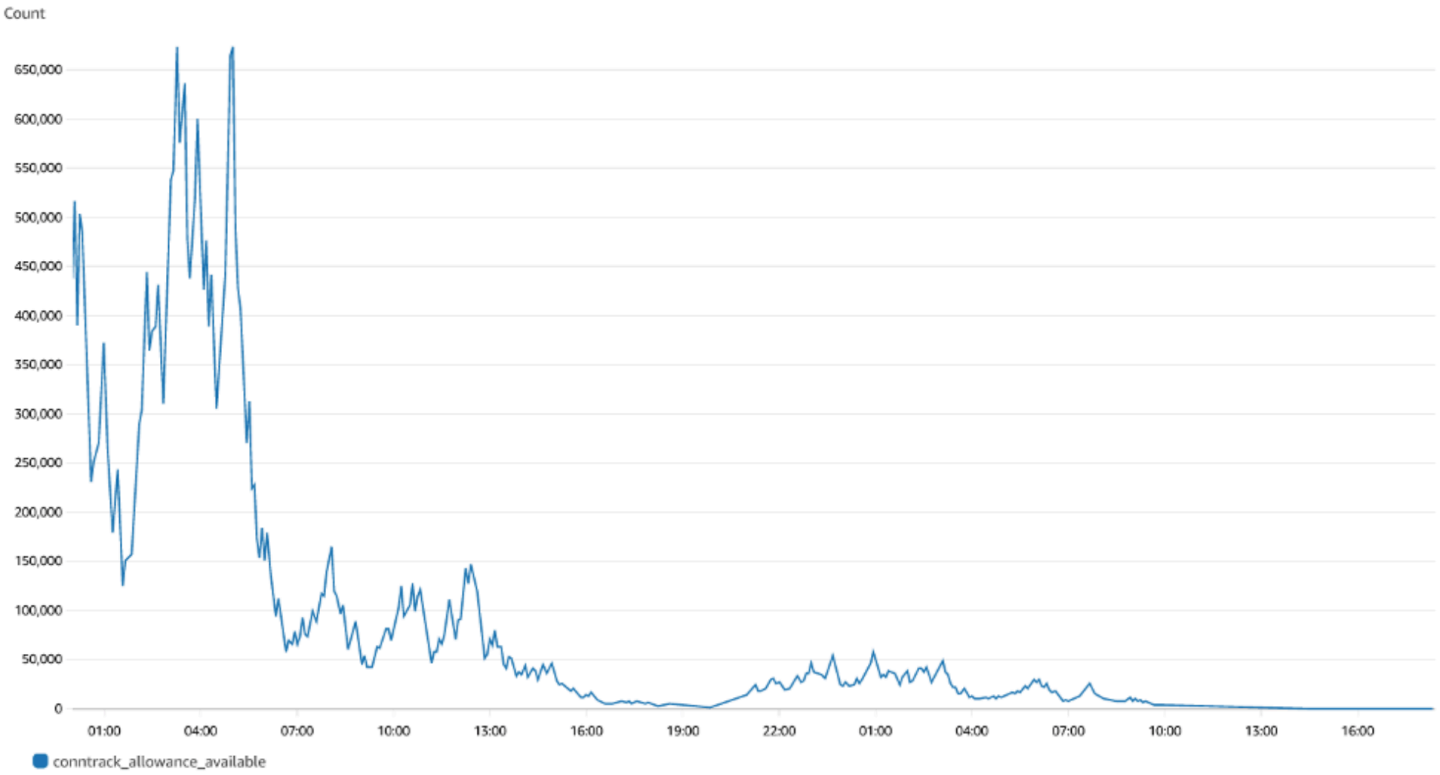


We can clearly see that there were no packets dropped as the value is zero.

Let's build a dashboard for the conntrack_allowance_exceeded metric by using the query `rate(node_net_ethtool{device="eth0",type="conntrack_allowance_exceeded"}[30s])`. It will result in the below dashboard.



The metric `conntrack_allowance_exceeded` can be visualized in CloudWatch, provided you run a cloudwatch agent as described here. The resulting dashboard in CloudWatch will look like below:



We can clearly see that there were no packets dropped as the value is zero. If you are using Nitro-based instances, you can create a similar dashboard for `conntrack_allowance_available` and pro-actively monitor the connections in your EC2 instance. You can further extend this by configuring alerts in Amazon Managed Grafana to send notifications to Slack, SNS, Pagerduty etc.

Running kube-proxy in IPVS Mode

EKS in IP Virtual Server (IPVS) mode solves the network latency issue often seen when running large clusters with over 1,000 services with kube-proxy running in legacy iptables mode. This performance issue is the result of sequential processing of iptables packet filtering rules for each packet. This latency issue has been addressed in nftables, the successor to iptables. However, as of the time of this writing, kube-proxy is still under development to make use of nftables. To get around this issue, you can configure your cluster to run `kube-proxy` in IPVS mode.

Overview

IPVS, which has been GA since Kubernetes version 1.11, uses hash tables rather than linear searching to process packets, providing efficiency for clusters with thousands of nodes and services. IPVS was designed for load balancing, making it a suitable solution for Kubernetes networking performance issues.

IPVS offers several options for distributing traffic to backend pods. Detailed information for each option can be found in the official Kubernetes documentation, but a simple list is shown below. Round Robin and Least Connections are among the most popular choices for IPVS load balancing options in Kubernetes.

```
- rr (Round Robin)
- wrr (Weighted Round Robin)
- lc (Least Connections)
- wlc (Weighted Least Connections)
- lblc (Locality Based Least Connections)
- lblcr (Locality Based Least Connections with Replication)
- sh (Source Hashing)
- dh (Destination Hashing)
- sed (Shortest Expected Delay)
- nq (Never Queue)
```

Implementation

Only a few steps are required to enable IPVS in your EKS cluster. The first thing you need to do is ensure your EKS worker node images have the Linux Virtual Server administration `ipvsadm` package installed. To install this package on a Fedora based image, such as Amazon Linux 2023, you can run the following command on the worker node instance.

```
sudo dnf install -y ipvsadm
```

On a Debian based image, such as Ubuntu, the installation command would look like this.

```
sudo apt-get install ipvsadm
```

Next, you need to load the kernel modules for the IPVS configuration options listed above. We recommend writing these modules to a file inside of the `/etc/modules-load.d/` directory so that they survive a reboot.

```
sudo sh -c 'cat << EOF > /etc/modules-load.d/ipvs.conf
ip_vs
ip_vs_rr
ip_vs_wrr
ip_vs_lc
ip_vs_wlc
```

```
ip_vs_lblc
ip_vs_lblcr
ip_vs_sh
ip_vs_dh
ip_vs_sed
ip_vs_nq
nf_conntrack
EOF'
```

You can run the following command to load these modules on a machine that is already running.

```
sudo modprobe ip_vs
sudo modprobe ip_vs_rr
sudo modprobe ip_vs_wrr
sudo modprobe ip_vs_lc
sudo modprobe ip_vs_wlc
sudo modprobe ip_vs_lblc
sudo modprobe ip_vs_lblcr
sudo modprobe ip_vs_sh
sudo modprobe ip_vs_dh
sudo modprobe ip_vs_sed
sudo modprobe ip_vs_nq
sudo modprobe nf_conntrack
```

Note

It is highly recommended to execute these worker node steps as part of you worker node's bootstrapping process via user data script or in any build scripts executed to build a custom worker node AMI.

Next, you will configure your cluster's `kube-proxy` DaemonSet to run in IPVS mode. This is done by setting the `kube-proxy mode` to `ipvs` and the `ipvs scheduler` to one of the load balancing options listed above, for example: `rr` for Round Robin.

Warning

This is a disruptive change and should be performed in off-hours. We recommend making these changes during initial EKS cluster creation to minimize impacts.

You can issue an AWS CLI command to enable IPVS by updating the `kube-proxy` EKS Add-on.

```
aws eks update-addon --cluster-name $CLUSTER_NAME --addon-name kube-proxy \
  --configuration-values '{"ipvs": {"scheduler": "rr"}, "mode": "ipvs"}' \
  --resolve-conflicts OVERWRITE
```

Or you can do this by modifying the `kube-proxy-config` ConfigMap in your cluster.

```
kubectl -n kube-system edit cm kube-proxy-config
```

Find the `scheduler` setting under `ipvs` and set the value to one of the ipvs load balancing options listed above, for example: `rr` for Round Robin. Find the `mode` setting, which defaults to `iptables`, and change the value to `ipvs`. The result of either option should look similar to the configuration below.

```
  iptables:
    masqueradeAll: false
    masqueradeBit: 14
    minSyncPeriod: 0s
    syncPeriod: 30s
  ipvs:
    excludeCIDRs: null
    minSyncPeriod: 0s
    scheduler: "rr"
    syncPeriod: 30s
  kind: KubeProxyConfiguration
  metricsBindAddress: 0.0.0.0:10249
  mode: "ipvs"
  nodePortAddresses: null
  oomScoreAdj: -998
  portRange: ""
  udpIdleTimeout: 250ms
```

If your worker nodes were joined to your cluster prior to making these changes, you will need to restart the kube-proxy DaemonSet.

```
kubectl -n kube-system rollout restart ds kube-proxy
```

Validation

You can validate that your cluster and worker nodes are running in IPVS mode by issuing the following command on one of your worker nodes.

```
sudo ipvsadm -L
```

At a minimum, you should see a result similar to the one below, showing entries for the Kubernetes API Server service at `10.100.0.1` and the CoreDNS service at `10.100.0.10`.

```
IP Virtual Server version 1.2.1 (size=4096)
Prot LocalAddress:Port Scheduler Flags
  -> RemoteAddress:Port           Forward Weight ActiveConn InActConn
TCP  ip-10-100-0-1.us-east-1. rr
  -> ip-192-168-113-81.us-eas Masq        1      0          0
  -> ip-192-168-162-166.us-ea Masq        1      1          0
TCP  ip-10-100-0-10.us-east-1 rr
  -> ip-192-168-104-215.us-ea Masq        1      0          0
  -> ip-192-168-123-227.us-ea Masq        1      0          0
UDP  ip-10-100-0-10.us-east-1 rr
  -> ip-192-168-104-215.us-ea Masq        1      0          0
  -> ip-192-168-123-227.us-ea Masq        1      0          0
```

Note

This example output comes from an EKS cluster with a service IP address range of `10.100.0.0/16`.

EKS Scalability best practices

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

This guide provides advice for scaling EKS clusters. The goal of scaling an EKS cluster is to maximize the amount of work a single cluster can perform. Using a single, large EKS cluster can reduce operational load compared to using multiple clusters, but it has trade-offs for things like multi-region deployments, tenant isolation, and cluster upgrades. In this document we will focus on how to achieve maximum scalability with a single cluster.

How to use this guide

This guide is meant for developers and administrators responsible for creating and managing EKS clusters in AWS. It focuses on some generic Kubernetes scaling practices, but it does not have specifics for self-managed Kubernetes clusters or clusters that run outside of an AWS region with EKS Anywhere.

Each topic has a brief overview, followed by recommendations and best practices for operating EKS clusters at scale. Topics do not need to be read in a particular order and recommendations should not be applied without testing and verifying they work in your clusters.

Understanding scaling dimensions

Scalability is different from performance and reliability, and all three should be considered when planning your cluster and workload needs. As clusters scale, they need to be monitored, but this guide will not cover monitoring best practices. EKS can scale to large sizes, but you will need to plan how you are going to scale a cluster beyond 300 nodes or 5,000 Pods. These are not absolute numbers, but they come from collaborating this guide with multiple users, engineers, and support professionals.

Scaling in Kubernetes is multi-dimensional and there are no specific settings or recommendations that work in every situation. The main areas areas where we can provide guidance for scaling include:

Kubernetes Control Plane in an EKS cluster includes all of the services AWS runs and scales for you automatically (e.g. Kubernetes API server). Scaling the Control Plane is AWS's responsibility, but using the Control Plane responsibly is your responsibility.

Kubernetes Data Plane scaling deals with AWS resources that are required for your cluster and workloads, but they are outside of the EKS Control Plane. Resources including EC2 instances, kubelet, and storage all need to be scaled as your cluster scales.

Cluster services are Kubernetes controllers and applications that run inside the cluster and provide functionality for your cluster and workloads. These can be EKS Add-ons and also other services or Helm charts you install for compliance and integrations. These services are often depended on by workloads and as your workloads scale your cluster services will need to scale with them.

Workloads are the reason you have a cluster and should scale horizontally with the cluster. There are integrations and settings that workloads have in Kubernetes that can help the cluster scale. There are also architectural considerations with Kubernetes abstractions such as namespaces and services.

Extra large scaling

If you are scaling a single cluster beyond 1,000 nodes or 50,000 Pods, we would love to talk to you. We recommend reaching out to your support team or technical account manager to get in touch with specialists who can help you plan and scale beyond the information provided in this guide. Amazon EKS can support up to 100,000 nodes in a single cluster if you are selected for onboarding.

Kubernetes Control Plane

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

The Kubernetes control plane consists of the Kubernetes API Server, Kubernetes Controller Manager, Scheduler and other components that are required for Kubernetes to function. Scalability limits of these components are different depending on what you're running in the cluster, but the areas with the biggest impact to scaling include the Kubernetes version, utilization, and individual Node scaling.

Limit workload and node bursting

> **Important**
>
> To avoid reaching API limits on the control plane you should limit scaling spikes that increase cluster size by double digit percentages at a time (e.g. 1000 nodes to 1100 nodes or 4000 to 4500 pods at once).

The EKS control plane will automatically scale as your cluster grows, but there are limits on how fast it will scale. When you first create an EKS cluster the Control Plane will not immediately be able to scale to hundreds of nodes or thousands of pods. To read more about how EKS has made scaling improvements see this blog post.

Scaling large applications requires infrastructure to adapt to become fully ready (e.g. warming load balancers). To control the speed of scaling make sure you are scaling based on the right metrics for your application. CPU and memory scaling may not accurately predict your application constraints and using custom metrics (e.g. requests per second) in Kubernetes Horizontal Pod Autoscaler (HPA) may be a better scaling option.

To use a custom metric see the examples in the Kubernetes documentation. If you have more advanced scaling needs or need to scale based on external sources (e.g. AWS SQS queue) then use KEDA for event based workload scaling.

Scale nodes and pods down safely

Replace long running instances

Replacing nodes regularly keeps your cluster healthy by avoiding configuration drift and issues that only happen after extended uptime (e.g. slow memory leaks). Automated replacement will give you good process and practices for node upgrades and security patching. If every node in your cluster is replaced regularly then there is less toil required to maintain separate processes for ongoing maintenance.

Use Karpenter's time to live (TTL) settings to replace instances after they've been running for a specified amount of time. Self managed node groups can use the `max-instance-lifetime` setting to cycle nodes automatically. Managed node groups do not currently have this feature but you can track the request here on GitHub.

Remove underutilized nodes

You can remove nodes when they have no running workloads using the scale down threshold in the Kubernetes Cluster Autoscaler with the `--scale-down-utilization-threshold` or in Karpenter you can use the `ttlSecondsAfterEmpty` provisioner setting.

Use pod disruption budgets and safe node shutdown

Removing pods and nodes from a Kubernetes cluster requires controllers to make updates to multiple resources (e.g. EndpointSlices). Doing this frequently or too quickly can cause API server throttling and application outages as changes propagate to controllers. Pod Disruption Budgets are a best practice to slow down churn to protect workload availability as nodes are removed or rescheduled in a cluster.

Use Client-Side Cache when running Kubectl

Using the kubectl command inefficiently can add additional load to the Kubernetes API Server. You should avoid running scripts or automation that uses kubectl repeatedly (e.g. in a for loop) or running commands without a local cache.

`kubectl` has a client-side cache that caches discovery information from the cluster to reduce the amount of API calls required. The cache is enabled by default and is refreshed every 10 minutes.

If you run kubectl from a container or without a client-side cache you may run into API throttling issues. It is recommended to retain your cluster cache by mounting the `--cache-dir` to avoid making uncessesary API calls.

Disable kubectl Compression

Disabling kubectl compression in your kubeconfig file can reduce API and client CPU usage. By default the server will compress data sent to the client to optimize network bandwidth. This adds CPU load on the client and server for every request and disabling compression can reduce the overhead and latency if you have adequate bandwidth. To disable compression you can use the `--disable-compression=true` flag or set `disable-compression: true` in your kubeconfig file.

```
apiVersion: v1
clusters:
```

```
- cluster:
    server: serverURL
    disable-compression: true
  name: cluster
```

Shard Cluster Autoscaler

The Kubernetes Cluster Autoscaler has been tested to scale up to 1000 nodes. On a large cluster with more than 1000 nodes, it is recommended to run multiple instances of the Cluster Autoscaler in shard mode. Each Cluster Autoscaler instance is configured to scale a set of node groups. The following example shows 2 cluster autoscaling configurations that are configured to each scale 4 node groups.

ClusterAutoscaler-1

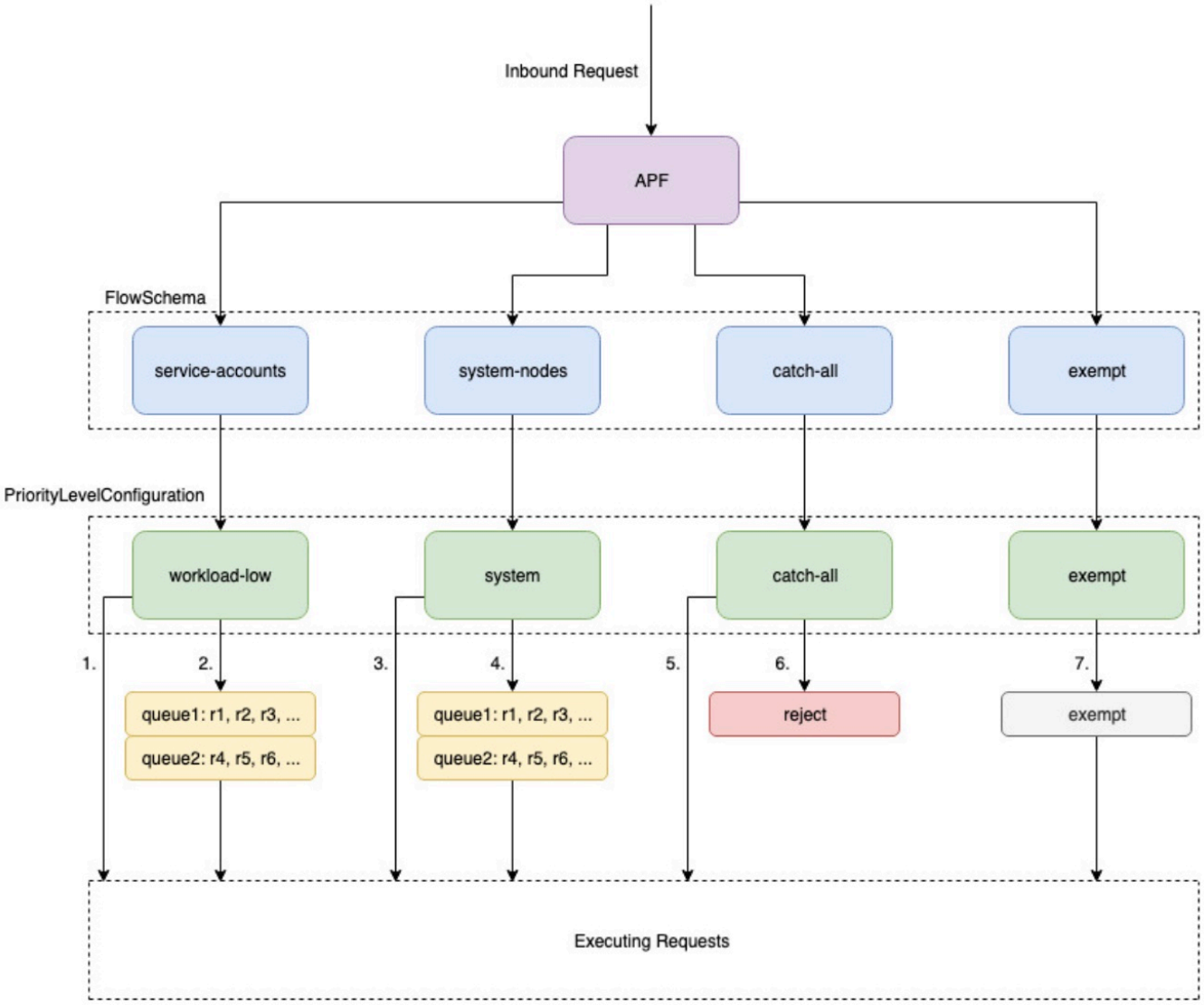
```
autoscalingGroups:
- name: eks-core-node-grp-20220823190924690000000011-80c1660e-030d-476d-cb0d-
d04d585a8fcb
  maxSize: 50
  minSize: 2
- name: eks-data_m1-20220824130553925600000011-5ec167fa-ca93-8ca4-53a5-003e1ed8d306
  maxSize: 450
  minSize: 2
- name: eks-data_m2-20220824130733258600000015-aac167fb-8bf7-429d-d032-e195af4e25f5
  maxSize: 450
  minSize: 2
- name: eks-data_m3-20220824130553914900000003-18c167fa-ca7f-23c9-0fea-f9edefbda002
  maxSize: 450
  minSize: 2
```

ClusterAutoscaler-2

```
autoscalingGroups:
- name: eks-data_m4-20220824130553925500000000f-5ec167fa-ca86-6b83-ae9d-1e07ade3e7c4
  maxSize: 450
  minSize: 2
- name: eks-data_m5-20220824130744542100000017-02c167fb-a1f7-3d9e-a583-43b4975c050c
  maxSize: 450
  minSize: 2
- name: eks-data_m6-20220824130553924300000000d-9cc167fa-ca94-132a-04ad-e43166cef41f
  maxSize: 450
```

```
  minSize: 2
- name: eks-data_m7-20220824130553921000000009-96c167fa-ca91-d767-0427-91c879ddf5af
  maxSize: 450
  minSize: 2
```

API Priority and Fairness



1. If workload-low has not reached its concurrency limit, the request will be dispatched immediately.
2. If workload-low has reached its concurrency limit, the request will be queued prior to dispatch.
3. If system has not reached its concurrency limit, the request will be dispatched immediately.
4. If system has reached its concurrency limit, the request will be queued prior to dispatch.
5. If catch-all has not reached its concurrency limit, the request will be dispatched immediately.
6. If catch-all has reached its concurrency limit, the request will be dropped.
7. Requests mapping to exempt will always be dispatched.

Overview

To protect itself from being overloaded during periods of increased requests, the API Server limits the number of inflight requests it can have outstanding at a given time. Once this limit is exceeded, the API Server will start rejecting requests and return a 429 HTTP response code for "Too Many Requests" back to clients. The server dropping requests and having clients try again later is preferable to having no server-side limits on the number of requests and overloading the control plane, which could result in degraded performance or unavailability.

The mechanism used by Kubernetes to configure how these inflights requests are divided among different request types is called API Priority and Fairness. The API Server configures the total number of inflight requests it can accept by summing together the values specified by the `--max-requests-inflight` and `--max-mutating-requests-inflight` flags. EKS uses the default values of 400 and 200 requests for these flags, allowing a total of 600 requests to be dispatched at a given time. However, as it scales the control-plane to larger sizes in response to increased utilization and workload churn, it correspondingly increases the inflight request quota all the way till 2000 (subject to change). APF specifies how these inflight request quota is further sub-divided among different request types. Note that EKS control planes are highly available with at least 2 API Servers registered to each cluster. This means the total number of inflight requests your cluster can handle is twice (or higher if horizontally scaled out further) the inflight quota set per kube-apiserver. This amounts to several thousands of requests/second on the largest EKS clusters.

Two kinds of Kubernetes objects, called PriorityLevelConfigurations and FlowSchemas, configure how the total number of requests is divided between different request types. These objects are maintained by the API Server automatically and EKS uses the default configuration of these objects for the given Kubernetes minor version. PriorityLevelConfigurations represent a fraction of the total number of allowed requests. For example, the workload-high PriorityLevelConfiguration is allocated 98 out of the total of 600 requests. The sum of requests allocated to all PriorityLevelConfigurations will equal 600 (or slightly above 600 because the API Server will round up if a given level is granted a fraction of a request). To check the PriorityLevelConfigurations in your cluster and the number of requests allocated to each, you can run the following command. These are the defaults on EKS 1.32:

```
$ kubectl get --raw /metrics | grep apiserver_flowcontrol_nominal_limit_seats
apiserver_flowcontrol_nominal_limit_seats{priority_level="catch-all"} 13
apiserver_flowcontrol_nominal_limit_seats{priority_level="exempt"} 0
apiserver_flowcontrol_nominal_limit_seats{priority_level="global-default"} 49
apiserver_flowcontrol_nominal_limit_seats{priority_level="leader-election"} 25
apiserver_flowcontrol_nominal_limit_seats{priority_level="node-high"} 98
```

```
apiserver_flowcontrol_nominal_limit_seats{priority_level="system"} 74
apiserver_flowcontrol_nominal_limit_seats{priority_level="workload-high"} 98
apiserver_flowcontrol_nominal_limit_seats{priority_level="workload-low"} 245
```

The second type of object are FlowSchemas. API Server requests with a given set of properties are classified under the same FlowSchema. These properties include either the authenticated user or attributes of the request, such as the API group, namespace, or resource. A FlowSchema also specifies which PriorityLevelConfiguration this type of request should map to. The two objects together say, "I want this type of request to count towards this share of inflight requests." When a request hits the API Server, it will check each of its FlowSchemas until it finds one that matches all the required properties. If multiple FlowSchemas match a request, the API Server will choose the FlowSchema with the smallest matching precedence which is specified as a property in the object.

The mapping of FlowSchemas to PriorityLevelConfigurations can be viewed using this command:

```
$ kubectl get flowschemas
NAME                           PRIORITYLEVEL     MATCHINGPRECEDENCE
 DISTINGUISHERMETHOD   AGE     MISSINGPL
exempt                         exempt            1                  <none>
     7h19m   False
eks-exempt                     exempt            2                  <none>
     7h19m   False
probes                         exempt            2                  <none>
     7h19m   False
system-leader-election         leader-election   100                ByUser
     7h19m   False
endpoint-controller            workload-high     150                ByUser
     7h19m   False
workload-leader-election       leader-election   200                ByUser
     7h19m   False
system-node-high               node-high         400                ByUser
     7h19m   False
system-nodes                   system            500                ByUser
     7h19m   False
kube-controller-manager        workload-high     800                ByNamespace
     7h19m   False
kube-scheduler                 workload-high     800                ByNamespace
     7h19m   False
kube-system-service-accounts   workload-high     900                ByNamespace
     7h19m   False
eks-workload-high              workload-high     1000               ByUser
     7h14m   False
```

```
service-accounts              workload-low      9000                ByUser
     7h19m   False
global-default                global-default    9900                ByUser
     7h19m   False
catch-all                     catch-all         10000               ByUser
     7h19m   False
```

PriorityLevelConfigurations can have a type of Queue, Reject, or Exempt. For types Queue and Reject, a limit is enforced on the maximum number of inflight requests for that priority level, however, the behavior differs when that limit is reached. For example, the workload-high PriorityLevelConfiguration uses type Queue and has 98 requests available for use by the controller-manager, endpoint-controller, scheduler,eks related controllers and from pods running in the kube-system namespace. Since type Queue is used, the API Server will attempt to keep requests in memory and hope that the number of inflight requests drops below 98 before these requests time out. If a given request times out in the queue or if too many requests are already queued, the API Server has no choice but to drop the request and return the client a 429. Note that queuing may prevent a request from receiving a 429, but it comes with the tradeoff of increased end-to-end latency on the request.

Now consider the catch-all FlowSchema that maps to the catch-all PriorityLevelConfiguration with type Reject. If clients reach the limit of 13 inflight requests, the API Server will not exercise queuing and will drop the requests instantly with a 429 response code. Finally, requests mapping to a PriorityLevelConfiguration with type Exempt will never receive a 429 and always be dispatched immediately. This is used for high-priority requests such as healthz requests or requests coming from the system:masters group.

Monitoring APF and Dropped Requests

To confirm if any requests are being dropped due to APF, the API Server metrics for `apiserver_flowcontrol_rejected_requests_total` can be monitored to check the impacted FlowSchemas and PriorityLevelConfigurations. For example, this metric shows that 100 requests from the service-accounts FlowSchema were dropped due to requests timing out in workload-low queues:

```
% kubectl get --raw /metrics | grep apiserver_flowcontrol_rejected_requests_total
apiserver_flowcontrol_rejected_requests_total{flow_schema="service-
accounts",priority_level="workload-low",reason="time-out"} 100
```

To check how close a given PriorityLevelConfiguration is to receiving 429s or experiencing increased latency due to queuing, you can compare the difference between the concurrency limit and the concurrency in use. In this example, we have a buffer of 100 requests.

```
% kubectl get --raw /metrics | grep
 'apiserver_flowcontrol_nominal_limit_seats.*workload-low'
apiserver_flowcontrol_nominal_limit_seats{priority_level="workload-low"} 245

% kubectl get --raw /metrics | grep
 'apiserver_flowcontrol_current_executing_seats.*workload-low'
apiserver_flowcontrol_current_executing_seats{flow_schema="service-
accounts",priority_level="workload-low"} 145
```

To check if a given PriorityLevelConfiguration is experiencing queuing but not necessarily dropped requests, the metric for `apiserver_flowcontrol_current_inqueue_requests` can be referenced:

```
% kubectl get --raw /metrics | grep
 'apiserver_flowcontrol_current_inqueue_requests.*workload-low'
apiserver_flowcontrol_current_inqueue_requests{flow_schema="service-
accounts",priority_level="workload-low"} 10
```

Other useful Prometheus metrics include:

- apiserver_flowcontrol_dispatched_requests_total
- apiserver_flowcontrol_request_execution_seconds
- apiserver_flowcontrol_request_wait_duration_seconds

See the upstream documentation for a complete list of APF metrics.

Preventing Dropped Requests

Prevent 429s by changing your workload

When APF is dropping requests due to a given PriorityLevelConfiguration exceeding its maximum number of allowed inflight requests, clients in the affected FlowSchemas can decrease the number of requests executing at a given time. This can be accomplished by reducing the total number of requests made over the period where 429s are occurring. Note that long-running requests such as expensive list calls are especially problematic because they count as an inflight request for the

entire duration they are executing. Reducing the number of these expensive requests or optimizing the latency of these list calls (for example, by reducing the number of objects fetched per request or switching to using a watch request) can help reduce the total concurrency required by the given workload.

Prevent 429s by changing your APF settings

> **Warning**
>
> Only change default APF settings if you know what you are doing. Misconfigured APF settings can result in dropped API Server requests and significant workload disruptions.

One other approach for preventing dropped requests is changing the default FlowSchemas or PriorityLevelConfigurations installed on EKS clusters. EKS installs the upstream default settings for FlowSchemas and PriorityLevelConfigurations for the given Kubernetes minor version. The API Server will automatically reconcile these objects back to their defaults if modified unless the following annotation on the objects is set to false:

```
metadata:
  annotations:
    apf.kubernetes.io/autoupdate-spec: "false"
```

At a high-level, APF settings can be modified to either:

- Allocate more inflight capacity to requests you care about.
- Isolate non-essential or expensive requests that can starve capacity for other request types.

This can be accomplished by either changing the default FlowSchemas and PriorityLevelConfigurations or by creating new objects of these types. Operators can increase the values for assuredConcurrencyShares for the relevant PriorityLevelConfigurations objects to increase the fraction of inflight requests they are allocated. Additionally, the number of requests that can be queued at a given time can also be increased if the application can handle the additional latency caused by requests being queued before they are dispatched.

Alternatively, new FlowSchema and PriorityLevelConfigurations objects can be created that are specific to the customer's workload. Be aware that allocating more assuredConcurrencyShares to either existing PriorityLevelConfigurations or to new PriorityLevelConfigurations will cause the

number of requests that can be handled by other buckets to be reduced as the overall limit will stay as 600 inflight per API Server.

When making changes to APF defaults, these metrics should be monitored on a non-production cluster to ensure changing the settings do not cause unintended 429s:

1. The metric for `apiserver_flowcontrol_rejected_requests_total` should be monitored for all FlowSchemas to ensure that no buckets start to drop requests.
2. The values for `apiserver_flowcontrol_nominal_limit_seats` and `apiserver_flowcontrol_current_executing_seats` should be compared to ensure that the concurrency in use is not at risk for breaching the limit for that priority level.

One common use-case for defining a new FlowSchema and PriorityLevelConfiguration is for isolation. Suppose we want to isolate long-running list event calls from pods to their own share of requests. This will prevent important requests from pods using the existing service-accounts FlowSchema from receiving 429s and being starved of request capacity. Recall that the total number of inflight requests is finite, however, this example shows APF settings can be modified to better divide request capacity for the given workload:

Example FlowSchema object to isolate list event requests:

```
apiVersion: flowcontrol.apiserver.k8s.io/v1
kind: FlowSchema
metadata:
  name: list-events-default-service-accounts
spec:
  distinguisherMethod:
    type: ByUser
  matchingPrecedence: 8000
  priorityLevelConfiguration:
    name: catch-all
  rules:
  - resourceRules:
    - apiGroups:
      - '*'
      namespaces:
      - default
      resources:
      - events
      verbs:
      - list
```

```
    subjects:
    - kind: ServiceAccount
      serviceAccount:
        name: default
        namespace: default
```

- This FlowSchema captures all list event calls made by service accounts in the default namespace.
- The matching precedence 8000 is lower than the value of 9000 used by the existing service-accounts FlowSchema so these list event calls will match list-events-default-service-accounts rather than service-accounts.
- We're using the catch-all PriorityLevelConfiguration to isolate these requests. This bucket only allows 13 inflight requests to be used by these long-running list event calls. Pods will start to receive 429s as soon they try to issue more than 13 of these requests concurrently.

Retrieving resources in the API server

Getting information from the API server is an expected behavior for clusters of any size. As you scale the number of resources in the cluster the frequency of requests and volume of data can quickly become a bottleneck for the control plane and will lead to API latency and slowness. Depending on the severity of the latency it cause unexpected downtime if you are not careful.

Being aware of what you are requesting and how often are the first steps to avoiding these types of problems. Here is guidance to limit the volume of queries based on the scaling best practices. Suggestions in this section are provided in order starting with the options that are known to scale the best.

Use Shared Informers

When building controllers and automation that integrate with the Kubernetes API you will often need to get information from Kubernetes resources. If you poll for these resources regularly it can cause a significant load on the API server.

Using an informer from the client-go library will give you benefits of watching for changes to the resources based on events instead of polling for changes. Informers further reduce the load by using shared cache for the events and changes so multiple controllers watching the same resources do not add additional load.

Controllers should avoid polling cluster wide resources without labels and field selectors especially in large clusters. Each un-filtered poll requires a lot of unnecessary data to be sent from etcd

through the API server to be filtered by the client. By filtering based on labels and namespaces you can reduce the amount of work the API server needs to perform to fullfil the request and data sent to the client.

Optimize Kubernetes API usage

When calling the Kubernetes API with custom controllers or automation it's important that you limit the calls to only the resources you need. Without limits you can cause unneeded load on the API server and etcd.

It is recommended that you use the watch argument whenever possible. With no arguments the default behavior is to list objects. To use watch instead of list you can append `?watch=true` to the end of your API request. For example, to get all pods in the default namespace with a watch use:

```
/api/v1/namespaces/default/pods?watch=true
```

If you are listing objects you should limit the scope of what you are listing and the amount of data returned. You can limit the returned data by adding `limit=500` argument to requests. The `fieldSelector` argument and `/namespace/` path can be useful to make sure your lists are as narrowly scoped as needed. For example, to list only running pods in the default namespace use the following API path and arguments.

```
/api/v1/namespaces/default/pods?fieldSelector=status.phase=Running&limit=500
```

Or list all pods that are running with:

```
/api/v1/pods?fieldSelector=status.phase=Running&limit=500
```

Another option to limit watch calls or listed objects is to use `resourceVersions` which you can read about in the Kubernetes documentation. Without a `resourceVersion` argument you will receive the most recent version available which requires an etcd quorum read which is the most expensive and slowest read for the database. The resourceVersion depends on what resources you are trying to query and can be found in the `metadata.resourseVersion` field. This is also recommended in case of using watch calls and not just list calls

There is a special `resourceVersion=0` available that will return results from the API server cache. This can reduce etcd load but it does not support pagination.

```
/api/v1/namespaces/default/pods?resourceVersion=0
```

It's recommended to use watch with a resourceVersion set to be the most recent known value received from its preceding list or watch. This is handled automatically in client-go. But it's suggested to double check it if you are using a k8s client in other languages.

```
/api/v1/namespaces/default/pods?watch=true&resourceVersion=362812295
```

If you call the API without any arguments it will be the most resource intensive for the API server and etcd. This call will get all pods in all namespaces without pagination or limiting the scope and require a quorum read from etcd.

```
/api/v1/pods
```

Prevent DaemonSet thundering herds

A DaemonSet ensures that all (or some) nodes run a copy of a pod. As nodes join the cluster, the daemonset-controller creates pods for those nodes. As nodes leave the cluster, those pods are garbage collected. Deleting a DaemonSet will clean up the pods it created.

Some typical uses of a DaemonSet are:

- Running a cluster storage daemon on every node
- Running a logs collection daemon on every node
- Running a node monitoring daemon on every node

On clusters with thousands of nodes, creating a new DaemonSet, updating a DaemonSet, or increasing the number of nodes can result in a high load placed on the control plane. If DaemonSet pods issue expensive API server requests on pod start-up, they can cause high resource use on the control plane from a large number of concurrent requests.

In normal operation, you can use a `RollingUpdate` to ensure a gradual rollout of new DaemonSet pods. With a `RollingUpdate` update strategy, after you update a DaemonSet template, the controller kills old DaemonSet pods and creates new DaemonSet pods automatically in a controlled fashion. At most one pod of the DaemonSet will be running on each node during the whole update process. You can perform a gradual rollout by setting `maxUnavailable` to 1, `maxSurge` to 0, and `minReadySeconds` to 60. If you do not specify an update strategy,

Kubernetes will default to a creating a `RollingUpdate` with `maxUnavailable` as 1, `maxSurge` as 0, and `minReadySeconds` as 0.

```
minReadySeconds: 60
strategy:
  type: RollingUpdate
  rollingUpdate:
    maxSurge: 0
    maxUnavailable: 1
```

A `RollingUpdate` ensures the gradual rollout of new DaemonSet pods if the DaemonSet is already created and has the expected number of `Ready` pods across all nodes. Thundering herd issues can result under certain conditions that are not covered by `RollingUpdate` strategies.

Prevent thundering herds on DaemonSet creation

By default, regardless of the `RollingUpdate` configuration, the daemonset-controller in the kube-controller-manager will create pods for all matching nodes simultaneously when you create a new DaemonSet. To force a gradual rollout of pods after you create a DaemonSet, you can use either a `NodeSelector` or `NodeAffinity`. This will create a DaemonSet that matches zero nodes and then you can gradually update nodes to make them eligible for running a pod from the DaemonSet at a controlled rate. You can follow this approach:

- Add a label to all nodes for `run-daemonset=false`.

```
kubectl label nodes --all run-daemonset=false
```

- Create your DaemonSet with a `NodeAffinity` setting to match any node without a `run-daemonset=false` label. Initially, this will result in your DaemonSet having no corresponding pods.

```
affinity:
  nodeAffinity:
    requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
      nodeSelectorTerms:
      - matchExpressions:
        - key: run-daemonset
          operator: NotIn
```

```
          values:
          - "false"
```

- Remove the `run-daemonset=false` label from your nodes at a controlled rate. You can use this bash script as an example:

```
#!/bin/bash

nodes=$(kubectl get --raw "/api/v1/nodes" | jq -r '.items | .[].metadata.name')

for node in ${nodes[@]}; do
   echo "Removing run-daemonset label from node $node"
   kubectl label nodes $node run-daemonset-
   sleep 5
done
```

- Optionally, remove the `NodeAffinity` setting from your DaemonSet object. Note that this will also trigger a `RollingUpdate` and gradually replace all existing DaemonSet pods because the DaemonSet template changed.

Prevent thundering herds on node scale-outs

Similarly to DaemonSet creation, creating new nodes at a fast rate can result in a large number of DaemonSet pods starting concurrently. You should create new nodes at a controlled rate so that the controller creates DaemonSet pods at this same rate. If this is not possible, you can make the new nodes initially ineligible for the existing DaemonSet by using `NodeAffinity`. Next, you can add a label to the new nodes gradually so that the daemonset-controller creates pods at a controlled rate. You can follow this approach:

- Add a label to all existing nodes for `run-daemonset=true`

```
kubectl label nodes --all run-daemonset=true
```

- Update your DaemonSet with a `NodeAffinity` setting to match any node with a `run-daemonset=true` label. Note that this will also trigger a `RollingUpdate` and gradually replace all existing DaemonSet pods because the DaemonSet template changed. You should wait for the `RollingUpdate` to complete before advancing to the next step.

```
affinity:
  nodeAffinity:
    requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
      nodeSelectorTerms:
      - matchExpressions:
        - key: run-daemonset
          operator: In
          values:
          - "true"
```

- Create new nodes in your cluster. Note that these nodes will not have the `run-daemonset=true` label so the DaemonSet will not match those nodes.
- Add the `run-daemonset=true` label to your new nodes (which currently do not have the `run-daemonset` label) at a controlled rate. You can use this bash script as an example:

```
#!/bin/bash

nodes=$(kubectl get --raw "/api/v1/nodes?labelSelector=%21run-daemonset" | jq -r
 '.items | .[].metadata.name')

for node in ${nodes[@]}; do
   echo "Adding run-daemonset=true label to node $node"
   kubectl label nodes $node run-daemonset=true
   sleep 5
done
```

- Optionally, remove the `NodeAffinity` setting from your DaemonSet object and remove the `run-daemonset` label from all nodes.

Prevent thundering herds on DaemonSet updates

A `RollingUpdate` policy will only respect the `maxUnavailable` setting for DaemonSet pods that are `Ready`. If a DaemonSet has only `NotReady` pods or a large percentage of `NotReady` pods and you update its template, the daemonset-controller will create new pods concurrently for any `NotReady` pods. This can result in thundering herd issues if there are a significant number of `NotReady` pods, for example if pods are continually crash looping or are failing to pull images.

To force a gradual rollout of pods when you update a DaemonSet and there are `NotReady` pods, you can temporarily change the update strategy on the DaemonSet from `RollingUpdate` to `OnDelete`. With `OnDelete`, after you update a DaemonSet template, the controller creates new pods after you manually delete the old ones so you can control the rollout of new pods. You can follow this approach:

- Check if you have any `NotReady` pods in your DaemonSet.
- If no, you can safely update the DaemonSet template and the `RollingUpdate` strategy will ensure a gradual rollout.
- If yes, you should first update your DaemonSet to use the `OnDelete` strategy.

```
updateStrategy:
  type: OnDelete
```

- Next, update your DaemonSet template with the needed changes.
- After this update, you can delete the old DaemonSet pods by issuing delete pod requests at a controlled rate. You can use this bash script as an example where the DaemonSet name is fluentd-elasticsearch in the kube-system namespace:

```
#!/bin/bash

daemonset_pods=$(kubectl get --raw "/api/v1/namespaces/kube-system/pods?
labelSelector=name%3Dfluentd-elasticsearch" | jq -r '.items | .[].metadata.name')

for pod in ${daemonset_pods[@]}; do
   echo "Deleting pod $pod"
   kubectl delete pod $pod -n kube-system
   sleep 5
done
```

- Finally, you can update your DaemonSet back to the earlier `RollingUpdate` strategy.

Kubernetes Data Plane

Selecting EC2 instance types is possibly one of the hardest decisions customers face because in clusters with multiple workloads. There is no one-size-fits all solution. Here are some tips to help you avoid common pitfalls with scaling compute.

Automatic node autoscaling

We recommend you use node autoscaling that reduces toil and integrates deeply with Kubernetes. Managed node groups and Karpenter are recommended for large scale clusters.

Managed node groups will give you the flexibility of Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling groups with added benefits for managed upgrades and configuration. It can be scaled with the Kubernetes Cluster Autoscaler and is a common option for clusters that have a variety of compute needs.

Karpenter is an open source, workload-native node autoscaler created by AWS. It scales nodes in a cluster based on the workload requirements for resources (e.g. GPU) and taints and tolerations (e.g. zone spread) without managing node groups. Nodes are created directly from EC2 which avoids default node group quotas—450 nodes per group—and provides greater instance selection flexibility with less operational overhead. We recommend customers use Karpenter when possible.

Use many different EC2 instance types

Each AWS region has a limited number of available instances per instance type. If you create a cluster that uses only one instance type and scale the number of nodes beyond the capacity of the region you will receive an error that no instances are available. To avoid this issue you should not arbitrarily limit the type of instances that can be use in your cluster.

Karpenter will use a broad set of compatible instance types by default and will pick an instance at provisioning time based on pending workload requirements, availability, and cost. You can broaden the list of instance types used in the `karpenter.k8s.aws/instance-category` key of NodePools.

The Kubernetes Cluster Autoscaler requires node groups to be similarly sized so they can be consistently scaled. You should create multiple groups based on CPU and memory size and scale them independently. Use the ec2-instance-selector to identify instances that are similarly sized for your node groups.

```
ec2-instance-selector --service eks --vcpus-min 8 --memory-min 16
a1.2xlarge
```

```
a1.4xlarge
a1.metal
c4.4xlarge
c4.8xlarge
c5.12xlarge
c5.18xlarge
c5.24xlarge
c5.2xlarge
c5.4xlarge
c5.9xlarge
c5.metal
```

Prefer larger nodes to reduce API server load

When deciding what instance types to use, fewer, large nodes will put less load on the Kubernetes Control Plane because there will be fewer kubelets and DaemonSets running. However, large nodes may not be utilized fully like smaller nodes. Node sizes should be evaluated based on your workload availability and scale requirements.

A cluster with three u-24tb1.metal instances (24 TB memory and 448 cores) has 3 kubelets, and would be limited to 110 pods per node by default. If your pods use 4 cores each then this might be expected (4 cores x 110 = 440 cores/node). With a 3 node cluster your ability to handle an instance incident would be low because 1 instance outage could impact 1/3 of the cluster. You should specify node requirements and pod spread in your workloads so the Kubernetes scheduler can place workloads properly.

Workloads should define the resources they need and the availability required via taints, tolerations, and PodTopologySpread. They should prefer the largest nodes that can be fully utilized and meet availability goals to reduce control plane load, lower operations, and reduce cost.

The Kubernetes Scheduler will automatically try to spread workloads across availability zones and hosts if resources are available. If no capacity is available the Kubernetes Cluster Autoscaler will attempt to add nodes in each Availability Zone evenly. Karpenter will attempt to add nodes as quickly and cheaply as possible unless the workload specifies other requirements.

To force workloads to spread with the scheduler and new nodes to be created across availability zones you should use topologySpreadConstraints:

```
spec:
  topologySpreadConstraints:
    - maxSkew: 3
```

```
      topologyKey: "topology.kubernetes.io/zone"
      whenUnsatisfiable: ScheduleAnyway
      labelSelector:
        matchLabels:
          dev: my-deployment
    - maxSkew: 2
      topologyKey: "kubernetes.io/hostname"
      whenUnsatisfiable: ScheduleAnyway
      labelSelector:
        matchLabels:
          dev: my-deployment
```

Use similar node sizes for consistent workload performance

Workloads should define what size nodes they need to be run on to allow consistent performance and predictable scaling. A workload requesting 500m CPU will perform differently on an instance with 4 cores vs one with 16 cores. Avoid instance types that use burstable CPUs like T series instances.

To make sure your workloads get consistent performance a workload can use the supported Karpenter labels to target specific instances sizes.

```
kind: deployment
...
spec:
  template:
    spec:
    containers:
    nodeSelector:
      karpenter.k8s.aws/instance-size: 8xlarge
```

Workloads being scheduled in a cluster with the Kubernetes Cluster Autoscaler should match a node selector to node groups based on label matching.

```
spec:
  affinity:
    nodeAffinity:
      requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
        nodeSelectorTerms:
        - matchExpressions:
          - key: eks.amazonaws.com/nodegroup
            operator: In
```

```
            values:
            - 8-core-node-group    # match your node group name
```

Use compute resources efficiently

Compute resources include EC2 instances and availability zones. Using compute resources effectively will increase your scalability, availability, performance, and reduce your total cost. Efficient resource usage is extremely difficult to predict in an autoscaling environment with multiple applications. Karpenter was created to provision instances on-demand based on the workload needs to maximize utilization and flexibility.

Karpenter allows workloads to declare the type of compute resources it needs without first creating node groups or configuring label taints for specific nodes. See the Karpenter best practices for more information. Consider enabling consolidation in your Karpenter provisioner to replace nodes that are under utilized.

Automate Amazon Machine Image (AMI) updates

Keeping worker node components up to date will make sure you have the latest security patches and compatible features with the Kubernetes API. Updating the kubelet is the most important component for Kubernetes functionality, but automating OS, kernel, and locally installed application patches will reduce maintenance as you scale.

It is recommended that you use the latest Amazon EKS optimized Amazon Linux 2 or Amazon EKS optimized Bottlerocket AMI for your node image. Karpenter will automatically use the latest available AMI to provision new nodes in the cluster. Managed node groups will update the AMI during a node group update but will not update the AMI ID at node provisioning time.

For Managed Node Groups you need to update the Auto Scaling Group (ASG) launch template with new AMI IDs when they are available for patch releases. AMI minor versions (e.g. 1.23.5 to 1.24.3) will be available in the EKS console and API as upgrades for the node group. Patch release versions (e.g. 1.23.5 to 1.23.6) will not be presented as upgrades for the node groups. If you want to keep your node group up to date with AMI patch releases you need to create new launch template version and let the node group replace instances with the new AMI release.

You can find the latest available AMI from this page or use the AWS CLI.

```
aws ssm get-parameter \
  --name /aws/service/eks/optimized-ami/1.24/amazon-linux-2/recommended/image_id \
  --query "Parameter.Value" \
```

```
  --output text
```

Use multiple EBS volumes for containers

EBS volumes have input/output (I/O) quota based on the type of volume (e.g. gp3) and the size of the disk. If your applications share a single EBS root volume with the host this can exhaust the disk quota for the entire host and cause other applications to wait for available capacity. Applications write to disk if they write files to their overlay partition, mount a local volume from the host, and also when they log to standard out (STDOUT) depending on the logging agent used.

To avoid disk I/O exhaustion you should mount a second volume to the container state folder (e.g. /run/containerd), use separate EBS volumes for workload storage, and disable unnecessary local logging.

To mount a second volume to your EC2 instances using eksctl you can use a node group with this configuration:

```
managedNodeGroups:
  - name: al2-workers
    amiFamily: AmazonLinux2
    desiredCapacity: 2
    volumeSize: 80
    additionalVolumes:
      - volumeName: '/dev/sdz'
        volumeSize: 100
    preBootstrapCommands:
    - |
      "systemctl stop containerd"
      "mkfs -t ext4 /dev/nvme1n1"
      "rm -rf /var/lib/containerd/*"
      "mount /dev/nvme1n1 /var/lib/containerd/"
      "systemctl start containerd"
```

If you are using terraform to provision your node groups please see examples in EKS Blueprints for terraform. If you are using Karpenter to provision nodes you can use `blockDeviceMappings` with node user-data to add additional volumes.

To mount an EBS volume directly to your pod you should use the AWS EBS CSI driver and consume a volume with a storage class.

```
---
```

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: ebs-sc
provisioner: ebs.csi.aws.com
volumeBindingMode: WaitForFirstConsumer
---
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
metadata:
  name: ebs-claim
spec:
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteOnce
  storageClassName: ebs-sc
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 4Gi
---
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: app
spec:
  containers:
  - name: app
    image: public.ecr.aws/docker/library/nginx
    volumeMounts:
    - name: persistent-storage
      mountPath: /data
  volumes:
  - name: persistent-storage
    persistentVolumeClaim:
      claimName: ebs-claim
```

Avoid instances with low EBS attach limits if workloads use EBS volumes

EBS is one of the easiest ways for workloads to have persistent storage, but it also comes with scalability limitations. Each instance type has a maximum number of EBS volumes that can be attached. Workloads need to declare what instance types they should run on and limit the number of replicas on a single instance with Kubernetes taints.

Disable unnecessary logging to disk

Avoid unnecessary local logging by not running your applications with debug logging in production and disabling logging that reads and writes to disk frequently. Journald is the local logging service that keeps a log buffer in memory and flushes to disk periodically. Journald is preferred over syslog which logs every line immediately to disk. Disabling syslog also lowers the total amount of storage you need and avoids needing complicated log rotation rules. To disable syslog you can add the following snippet to your cloud-init configuration:

```
runcmd:
  - [ systemctl, disable, --now, syslog.service ]
```

Patch instances in place when OS update speed is a necessity

> **Important**
>
> Patching instances in place should only be done when required. Amazon recommends treating infrastructure as immutable and thoroughly testing updates that are promoted through lower environments the same way applications are. This section applies when that is not possible.

It takes seconds to install a package on an existing Linux host without disrupting containerized workloads. The package can be installed and validated without cordoning, draining, or replacing the instance.

To replace an instance you first need to create, validate, and distribute new AMIs. The instance needs to have a replacement created, and the old instance needs to be cordoned and drained. Then workloads need to be created on the new instance, verified, and repeated for all instances that need to be patched. It takes hours, days, or weeks to replace instances safely without disrupting workloads.

Amazon recommends using immutable infrastructure that is built, tested, and promoted from an automated, declarative system, but if you have a requirement to patch systems quickly then you will need to patch systems in place and replace them as new AMIs are made available. Because of the large time differential between patching and replacing systems we recommend using AWS Systems Manager Patch Manager to automate patching nodes when required to do so.

Patching nodes will allow you to quickly roll out security updates and replace the instances on a regular schedule after your AMI has been updated. If you are using an operating system with a read-only root file system like Flatcar Container Linux or Bottlerocket OS we recommend using the update operators that work with those operating systems. The Flatcar Linux update operator and Bottlerocket update operator will reboot instances to keep nodes up to date automatically.

Cluster Services

Cluster services run inside an EKS cluster, but they are not user workloads. If you have a Linux server you often need to run services like NTP, syslog, and a container runtime to support your workloads. Cluster services are similar, supporting services that help you automate and operate your cluster. In Kubernetes these are usually run in the kube-system namespace and some are run as DaemonSets.

Cluster services are expected to have a high up-time and are often critical during outages and for troubleshooting. If a core cluster service is not available you may lose access to data that can help recover or prevent an outage (e.g. high disk utilization). They should run on dedicated compute instances such as a separate node group or AWS Fargate. This will ensure that the cluster services are not impacted on shared instances by workloads that may be scaling up or using more resources.

Scale CoreDNS

Scaling CoreDNS has two primary mechanisms. Reducing the number of calls to the CoreDNS service and increasing the number of replicas.

Reduce external queries by lowering ndots

The ndots setting specifies how many periods (a.k.a. "dots") in a domain name are considered enough to avoid querying DNS. If your application has an ndots setting of 5 (default) and you request resources from an external domain such as api.example.com (2 dots) then CoreDNS will be queried for each search domain defined in /etc/resolv.conf for a more specific domain. By default the following domains will be searched before making an external request.

```
api.example.<namespace>.svc.cluster.local
api.example.svc.cluster.local
api.example.cluster.local
api.example.<region>.compute.internal
```

The `namespace` and `region` values will be replaced with your workloads namespace and your compute region. You may have additional search domains based on your cluster settings.

You can reduce the number of requests to CoreDNS by lowering the ndots option of your workload or fully qualifying your domain requests by including a trailing . (e.g. `api.example.com.`). If your workload connects to external services via DNS we recommend setting ndots to 2 so workloads do not make unnecessary, cluster DNS queries inside the cluster. You can set a different DNS server and search domain if the workload doesn't require access to services inside the cluster.

```
spec:
  dnsPolicy: "None"
  dnsConfig:
    options:
      - name: ndots
        value: "2"
      - name: edns0
```

If you lower ndots to a value that is too low or the domains you are connecting to do not include enough specificity (including trailing .) then it is possible DNS lookups will fail. Make sure you test how this setting will impact your workloads.

Scale CoreDNS Horizontally

CoreDNS instances can scale by adding additional replicas to the deployment. It's recommended you use NodeLocal DNS or the cluster proportional autoscaler to scale CoreDNS.

NodeLocal DNS will require run one instance per node—as a DaemonSet—which requires more compute resources in the cluster, but it will avoid failed DNS requests and decrease the response time for DNS queries in the cluster. The cluster proportional autoscaler will scale CoreDNS based on the number of nodes or cores in the cluster. This isn't a direct correlation to request queries, but can be useful depending on your workloads and cluster size. The default proportional scale is to add an additional replica for every 256 cores or 16 nodes in the cluster—whichever happens first.

If using the CoreDNS EKS add-on, consider enabling the autoscaling option. The CoreDNS autoscaler dynamically adjusts the number of CoreDNS replicas by monitoring node count and CPU cores, using a formula that takes the maximum of (nodes÷16) or (CPU cores÷256), scaling up immediately when needed and down gradually to maintain stability.

Scale Kubernetes Metrics Server Vertically

The Kubernetes Metrics Server supports horizontal and vertical scaling. By horizontally scaling the Metrics Server it will be highly available, but it will not scale horizontally to handle more cluster metrics. You will need to vertically scale the Metrics Server based on their recommendations as nodes and collected metrics are added to the cluster.

The Metrics Server keeps the data it collects, aggregates, and serves in memory. As a cluster grows, the amount of data the Metrics Server stores increases. In large clusters the Metrics Server will require more compute resources than the memory and CPU reservation specified in the default installation. You can use the Vertical Pod Autoscaler (VPA) or Addon Resizer to scale the Metrics Server. The Addon Resizer scales vertically in proportion to worker nodes and VPA scales based on CPU and memory usage.

CoreDNS lameduck duration

Pods use the `kube-dns` Service for name resolution. Kubernetes uses destination NAT (DNAT) to redirect `kube-dns` traffic from nodes to CoreDNS backend pods. As you scale the CoreDNS Deployment, `kube-proxy` updates iptables rules and chains on nodes to redirect DNS traffic to CoreDNS pods. Propagating new endpoints when you scale up and deleting rules when you scale down CoreDNS can take between 1 to 10 seconds depending on the size of the cluster.

This propagation delay can cause DNS lookup failures when a CoreDNS pod gets terminated yet the node's iptables rules haven't been updated. In this scenario, the node may continue to send DNS queries to a terminated CoreDNS Pod.

You can reduce DNS lookup failures by setting a lameduck duration in your CoreDNS pods. While in lameduck mode, CoreDNS will continue to respond to in-flight requests. Setting a lameduck duration will delay the CoreDNS shutdown process, allowing nodes the time they need to update their iptables rules and chains.

We recommend setting CoreDNS lameduck duration to 30 seconds.

CoreDNS readiness probe

We recommend using `/ready` instead of `/health` for CoreDNS's readiness probe.

In alignment with the earlier recommendation to set the lameduck duration to 30 seconds, providing ample time for the node's iptables rules to be updated before pod termination,

employing `/ready` instead of `/health` for the CoreDNS readiness probe ensures that the CoreDNS pod is fully prepared at startup to promptly respond to DNS requests.

```
readinessProbe:
  httpGet:
    path: /ready
    port: 8181
    scheme: HTTP
```

For more information about the CoreDNS Ready plugin please refer to https://coredns.io/plugins/ready/

Logging and monitoring agents

Logging and monitoring agents can add significant load to your cluster control plane because the agents query the API server to enrich logs and metrics with workload metadata. The agent on a node only has access to the local node resources to see things like container and process name. Querying the API server it can add more details such as Kubernetes deployment name and labels. This can be extremely helpful for troubleshooting but detrimental to scaling.

Because there are so many different options for logging and monitoring we cannot show examples for every provider. With fluentbit we recommend enabling Use_Kubelet to fetch metadata from the local kubelet instead of the Kubernetes API Server and set `Kube_Meta_Cache_TTL` to a number that reduces repeated calls when data can be cached (e.g. 60).

Scaling monitoring and logging has two general options:

- Disable integrations
- Sampling and filtering

Disabling integrations is often not an option because you lose log metadata. This eliminates the API scaling problem, but it will introduce other issues by not having the required metadata when needed.

Sampling and filtering reduces the number of metrics and logs that are collected. This will lower the amount of requests to the Kubernetes API, and it will reduce the amount of storage needed for the metrics and logs that are collected. Reducing the storage costs will lower the cost for the overall system.

The ability to configure sampling depends on the agent software and can be implemented at different points of ingestion. It's important to add sampling as close to the agent as possible because that is likely where the API server calls happen. Contact your provider to find out more about sampling support.

If you are using CloudWatch and CloudWatch Logs you can add agent filtering using patterns described in the documentation.

To avoid losing logs and metrics you should send your data to a system that can buffer data in case of an outage on the receiving endpoint. With fluentbit you can use Amazon Kinesis Data Firehose to temporarily keep data which can reduce the chance of overloading your final data storage location.

Workloads

Workloads have an impact on how large your cluster can scale. Workloads that use the Kubernetes APIs heavily will limit the total amount of workloads you can have in a single cluster, but there are some defaults you can change to help reduce the load.

Workloads in a Kubernetes cluster have access to features that integrate with the Kubernetes API (e.g. Secrets and ServiceAccounts), but these features are not always required and should be disabled if they're not being used. Limiting workload access and dependence on the Kubernetes control plane will increase the number of workloads you can run in the cluster and improve the security of your clusters by removing unnecessary access to workloads and implementing least privilege practices. Please read the security best practices for more information.

Use IPv6 for pod networking

You cannot transition a VPC from IPv4 to IPv6 so enabling IPv6 before provisioning a cluster is important. If you enable IPv6 in a VPC it does not mean you have to use it and if your pods and services use IPv6 you can still route traffic to and from IPv4 addresses. Please see the EKS networking best practices for more information.

Using IPv6 in your cluster avoids some of the most common cluster and workload scaling limits. IPv6 avoids IP address exhaustion where pods and nodes cannot be created because no IP address is available. It also has per node performance improvements because pods receive IP addresses faster by reducing the number of ENI attachments per node. You can achieve similar node performance by using IPv4 prefix mode in the VPC CNI, but you still need to make sure you have enough IP addresses available in the VPC.

Limit number of services per namespace

The maximum number of services in a namespaces is 5,000 and the maximum number of services in a cluster is 10,000. To help organize workloads and services, increase performance, and to avoid cascading impact for namespace scoped resources we recommend limiting the number of services per namespace to 500.

The number of IP tables rules that are created per node with kube-proxy grows with the total number of services in the cluster. Generating thousands of IP tables rules and routing packets through those rules have a performance impact on the nodes and add network latency.

Create Kubernetes namespaces that encompass a single application environment so long as the number of services per namespace is under 500. This will keep service discovery small enough to avoid service discovery limits and can also help you avoid service naming collisions. Applications environments (e.g. dev, test, prod) should use separate EKS clusters instead of namespaces.

Understand Elastic Load Balancer Quotas

When creating your services consider what type of load balancing you will use (e.g. Network Load Balancer (NLB) or Application Load Balancer (ALB)). Each load balancer type provides different functionality and have different quotas. Some of the default quotas can be adjusted, but there are some quota maximums which cannot be changed. To view your account quotas and usage view the Service Quotas dashboard in the AWS console.

For example, the default ALB targets is 1000. If you have a service with more than 1000 endpoints you will need to increase the quota or split the service across multiple ALBs or use Kubernetes Ingress. The default NLB targets is 3000, but is limited to 500 targets per AZ. If your cluster runs more than 500 pods for an NLB service you will need to use multiple AZs or request a quota limit increase.

An alternative to using a load balancer coupled to a service is to use an ingress controller. The AWS Load Balancer controller can create ALBs for ingress resources, but you may consider running a dedicated controller in your cluster. An in-cluster ingress controller allows you to expose multiple Kubernetes services from a single load balancer by running a reverse proxy inside your cluster. Controllers have different features such as support for the Gateway API which may have benefits depending on how many and how large your workloads are.

Use Route 53, Global Accelerator, or CloudFront

To make a service using multiple load balancers available as a single endpoint you need to use Amazon CloudFront, AWS Global Accelerator, or Amazon Route 53 to expose all of the load balancers as a single, customer facing endpoint. Each options has different benefits and can be used separately or together depending on your needs.

Route 53 can expose multiple load balancers under a common name and can send traffic to each of them based on the weight assigned. You can read more about DNS weights in the documentation and you can read how to implement them with the Kubernetes external DNS controller in the AWS Load Balancer Controller documentation.

Global Accelerator can route workloads to the nearest region based on request IP address. This may be useful for workloads that are deployed to multiple regions, but it does not improve routing to a single cluster in a single region. Using Route 53 in combination with the Global Accelerator has additional benefits such as health checking and automatic failover if an AZ is not available. You can see an example of using Global Accelerator with Route 53 in this blog post.

CloudFront can be use with Route 53 and Global Accelerator or by itself to route traffic to multiple destinations. CloudFront caches assets being served from the origin sources which may reduce bandwidth requirements depending on what you are serving.

Use EndpointSlices instead of Endpoints

When discovering pods that match a service label you should use EndpointSlices instead of Endpoints. Endpoints were a simple way to expose services at small scales but large services that automatically scale or have updates causes a lot of traffic on the Kubernetes control plane. EndpointSlices have automatic grouping which enable things like topology aware hints.

Not all controllers use EndpointSlices by default. You should verify your controller settings and enable it if needed. For the AWS Load Balancer Controller you should enable the `--enable-endpoint-slices` optional flag to use EndpointSlices.

Use immutable and external secrets if possible

The kubelet keeps a cache of the current keys and values for the Secrets that are used in volumes for pods on that node. The kubelet sets a watch on the Secrets to detect changes. As the cluster scales, the growing number of watches can negatively impact the API server performance.

There are two strategies to reduce the number of watches on Secrets:

- For applications that don't need access to Kubernetes resources, you can disable auto-mounting service account secrets by setting automountServiceAccountToken: false
- If your application's secrets are static and will not be modified in the future, mark the secret as immutable. The kubelet does not maintain an API watch for immutable secrets.

To disable automatically mounting a service account to pods you can use the following setting in your workload. You can override these settings if specific workloads need a service account.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ServiceAccount
metadata:
  name: app
automountServiceAccountToken: true
```

Monitor the number of secrets in the cluster before it exceeds the limit of 10,000. You can see a total count of secrets in a cluster with the following command. You should monitor this limit through your cluster monitoring tooling.

```
kubectl get secrets -A | wc -l
```

You should set up monitoring to alert a cluster admin before this limit is reached. Consider using external secrets management options such as AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) or Hashicorp Vault with the Secrets Store CSI driver.

Limit Deployment history

Pods can be slow when creating, updating, or deleting because old objects are still tracked in the cluster. You can reduce the `revisionHistoryLimit` of deployments to cleanup older ReplicaSets which will lower to total amount of objects tracked by the Kubernetes Controller Manager. The default history limit for Deployments in 10.

If your cluster creates a lot of job objects through CronJobs or other mechanisms you should use the `ttlSecondsAfterFinished` setting to automatically clean up old pods in the cluster. This will remove successfully executed jobs from the job history after a specified amount of time.

Disable enableServiceLinks by default

When a Pod runs on a Node, the kubelet adds a set of environment variables for each active Service. Linux processes have a maximum size for their environment which can be reached if

you have too many services in your namespace. The number of services per namespace should not exceed 5,000. After this, the number of service environment variables outgrows shell limits, causing Pods to crash on startup.

There are other reasons pods should not use service environment variables for service discovery. Environment variable name clashes, leaking service names, and total environment size are a few. You should use CoreDNS for discovering service endpoints.

Limit dynamic admission webhooks per resource

Dynamic Admission Webhooks include admission webhooks and mutating webhooks. They are API endpoints not part of the Kubernetes Control Plane that are called in sequence when a resource is sent to the Kubernetes API. Each webhook has a default timeout of 10 seconds and can increase the amount of time an API request takes if you have multiple webhooks or any of them timeout.

Make sure your webhooks are highly available—especially during an AZ incident—and the failurePolicy is set properly to reject the resource or ignore the failure. Do not call webhooks when not needed by allowing --dry-run kubectl commands to bypass the webhook.

```
apiVersion: admission.k8s.io/v1
kind: AdmissionReview
request:
  dryRun: False
```

Mutating webhooks can modify resources in frequent succession. If you have 5 mutating webhooks and deploy 50 resources etcd will store all versions of each resource until compaction runs—every 5 minutes—to remove old versions of modified resources. In this scenario when etcd removes superseded resources there will be 200 resource version removed from etcd and depending on the size of the resources may use considerable space on the etcd host until defragmentation runs every 15 minutes.

This defragmentation may cause pauses in etcd which could have other affects on the Kubernetes API and controllers. You should avoid frequent modification of large resources or modifying hundreds of resources in quick succession.

Compare workloads across multiple clusters

If you have two clusters that should have similar performance but do not, try comparing the metrics to identify the reason.

For example, comparing cluster latency is a common issue. This is usually caused by difference in the volume of API requests. You can run the following CloudWatch LogInsight query to understand the difference.

```
filter @logStream like "kube-apiserver-audit"
| stats count(*) as cnt by objectRef.apiGroup, objectRef.apiVersion,
 objectRef.resource, userAgent, verb, responseStatus.code
| sort cnt desc
| limit 1000
```

You can add additional filters to narrow it down. e.g. focusing on all list request from `foo`.

```
filter @logStream like "kube-apiserver-audit"
| filter verb = "list"
| filter user.username like "foo"
| stats count(*) as cnt by objectRef.apiGroup, objectRef.apiVersion,
 objectRef.resource, responseStatus.code
| sort cnt desc
| limit 1000
```

Kubernetes Scaling Theory

Nodes vs. Churn Rate

Often when we discuss the scalability of Kubernetes, we do so in terms of how many nodes there are in a single cluster. Interestingly, this is seldom the most useful metric for understanding scalability. For example, a 5,000 node cluster with a large but fixed number of pods would not put a great deal of stress on the control plane after the initial setup. However, if we took a 1,000 node cluster and tried creating 10,000 short lived jobs in less than a minute, it would put a great deal of sustained pressure on the control plane.

Simply using the number of nodes to understand scaling can be misleading. It's better to think in terms of the rate of change that occurs within a specific period of time (let's use a 5 minute interval for this discussion, as this is what Prometheus queries typically use by default). Let's explore why framing the problem in terms of the rate of change can give us a better idea of what to tune to achieve our desired scale.

Thinking in Queries Per Second

Kubernetes has a number of protection mechanisms for each component - the Kubelet, Scheduler, Kube Controller Manager, and API server - to prevent overwhelming the next link in the Kubernetes chain. For example, the Kubelet has a flag to throttle calls to the API server at a certain rate. These protection mechanisms are generally, but not always, expressed in terms of queries allowed on a per second basis or QPS.

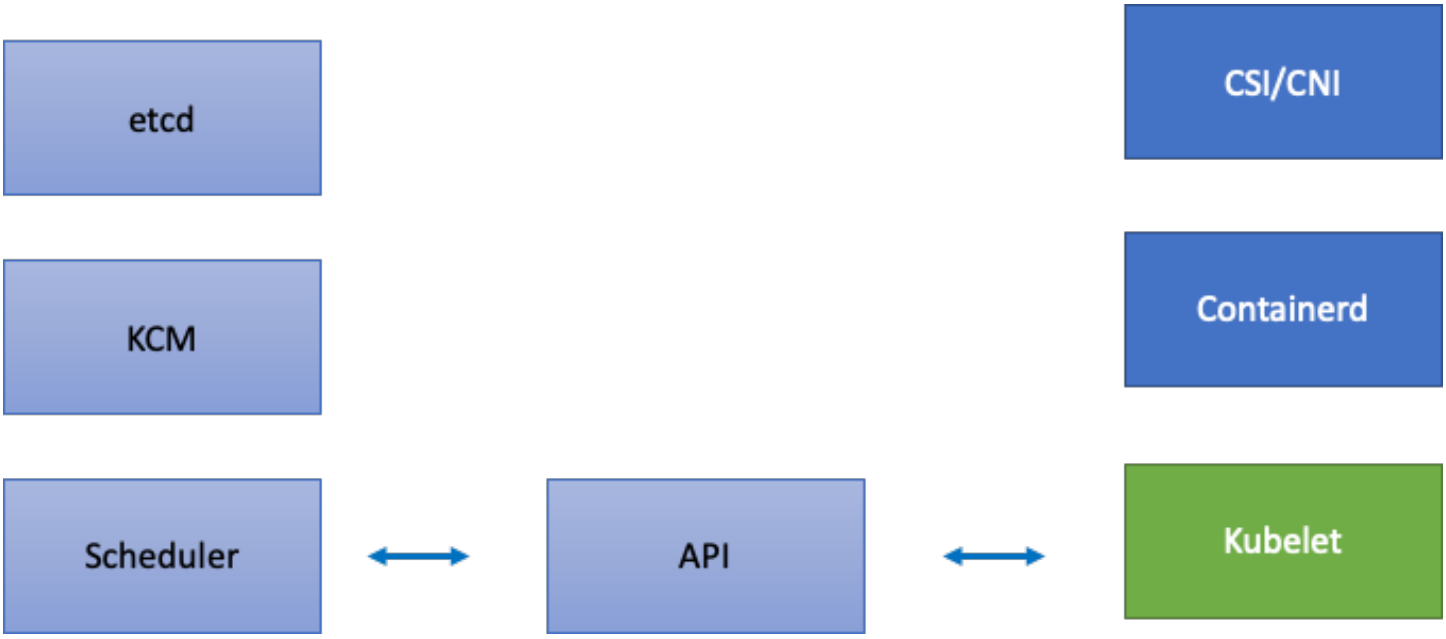
Great care must be taken when changing these QPS settings. Removing one bottleneck, such as the queries per second on a Kubelet will have an impact on other down stream components. This can and will overwhelm the system above a certain rate, so understanding and monitoring each part of the service chain is key to successfully scaling workloads on Kubernetes.

> **Note**
>
> The API server has a more complex system with introduction of API Priority and Fairness which we will discuss separately.

> **Note**
>
> Caution, some metrics seem like the right fit but are in fact measuring something else. As an example, `kubelet_http_inflight_requests` relates to just the metrics server in Kubelet, not the number of requests from Kubelet to apiserver requests. This could cause us to misconfigure the QPS flag on the Kubelet. A query on audit logs for a particular Kubelet would be a more reliable way to check metrics.

Scaling Distributed Components

Since EKS is a managed service, let's split the Kubernetes components into two categories: AWS managed components which include etcd, Kube Controller Manager, and the Scheduler (on the left part of diagram), and customer configurable components such as the Kubelet, Container Runtime, and the various operators that call AWS APIs such as the Networking and Storage drivers (on the right part of diagram). We leave the API server in the middle even though it is AWS managed, as the settings for API Priority and Fairness can be configured by customers.



Upstream and Downstream Bottlenecks

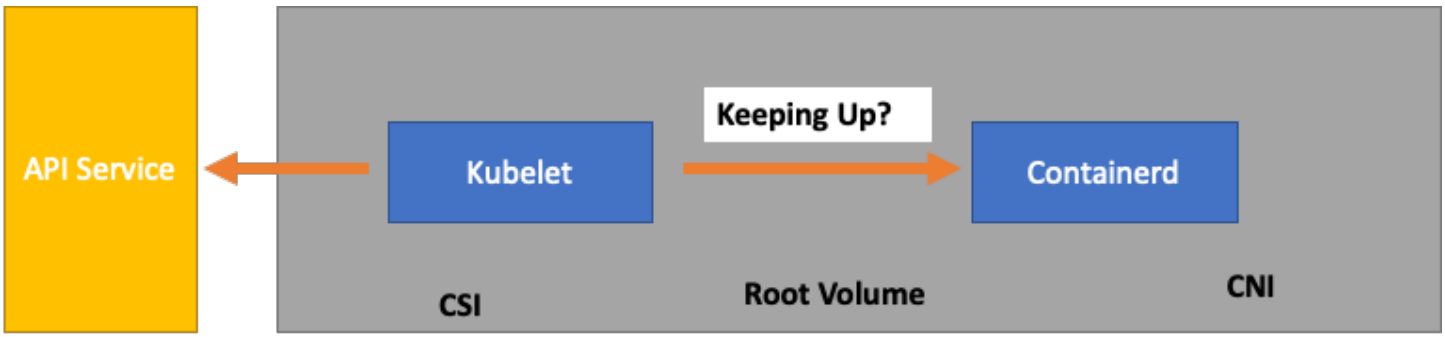
As we monitor each service, it's important to look at metrics in both directions to look for bottlenecks. Let's learn how to do this by using Kubelet as an example. Kubelet talks both to the API server and the container runtime; **how** and **what** do we need to monitor to detect whether either component is experiencing an issue?

How many Pods per Node

When we look at scaling numbers, such as how many pods can run on a node, we could take the 110 pods per node that upstream supports at face value.

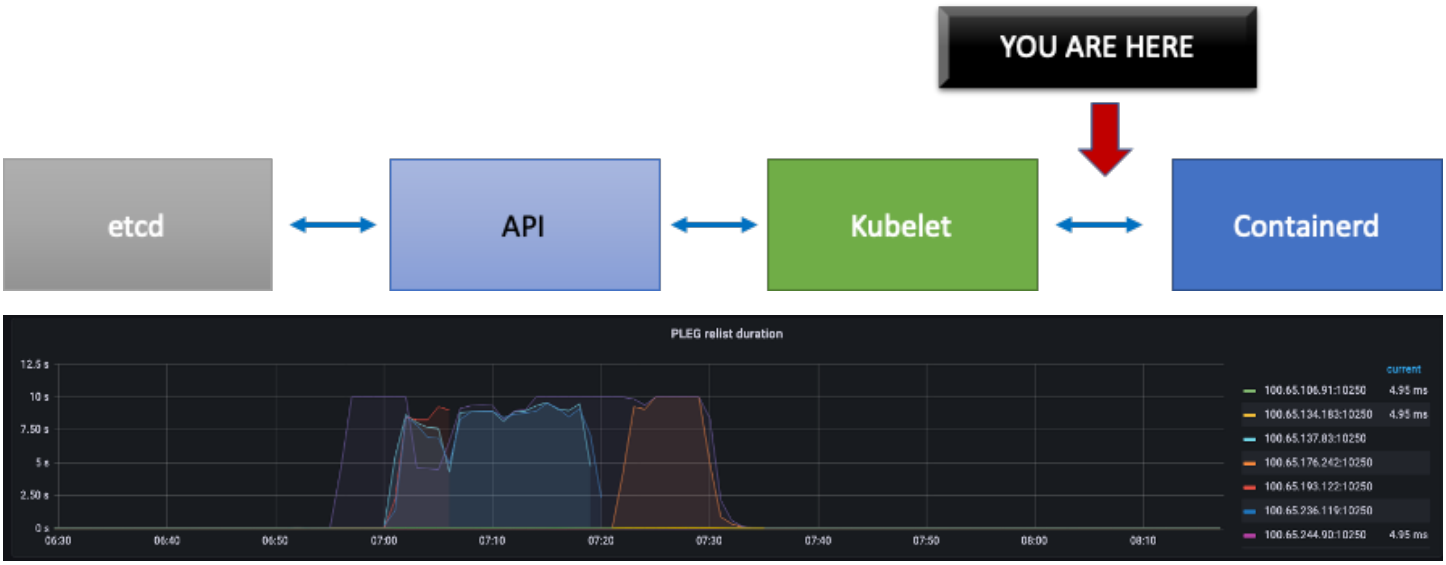
> **Note**
>
> https://kubernetes.io/docs/setup/best-practices/cluster-large/

However, your workload is likely more complex than what was tested in a scalability test in Upstream. To ensure we can service the number of pods we want to run in production, let's make sure that the Kubelet is "keeping up" with the Containerd runtime.



To oversimplify, the Kubelet is getting the status of the pods from the container runtime (in our case Containerd). What if we had too many pods changing status too quickly? If the rate of change is too high, requests [to the container runtime] can timeout.

> **Note**
>
> Kubernetes is constantly evolving, this subsystem is currently undergoing changes. https://github.com/kubernetes/enhancements/issues/3386



In the graph above, we see a flat line indicating we have just hit the timeout value for the pod lifecycle event generation duration metric. If you would like to see this in your own cluster you could use the following PromQL syntax.

```
increase(kubelet_pleg_relist_duration_seconds_bucket{instance="$instance"}
[$__rate_interval])
```

If we witness this timeout behavior, we know we pushed the node over the limit it was capable of. We need to fix the cause of the timeout before proceeding further. This could be achieved by reducing the number of pods per node, or looking for errors that might be causing a high volume of retries (thus effecting the churn rate). The important take-away is that metrics are the best way to understand if a node is able to handle the churn rate of the pods assigned vs. using a fixed number.

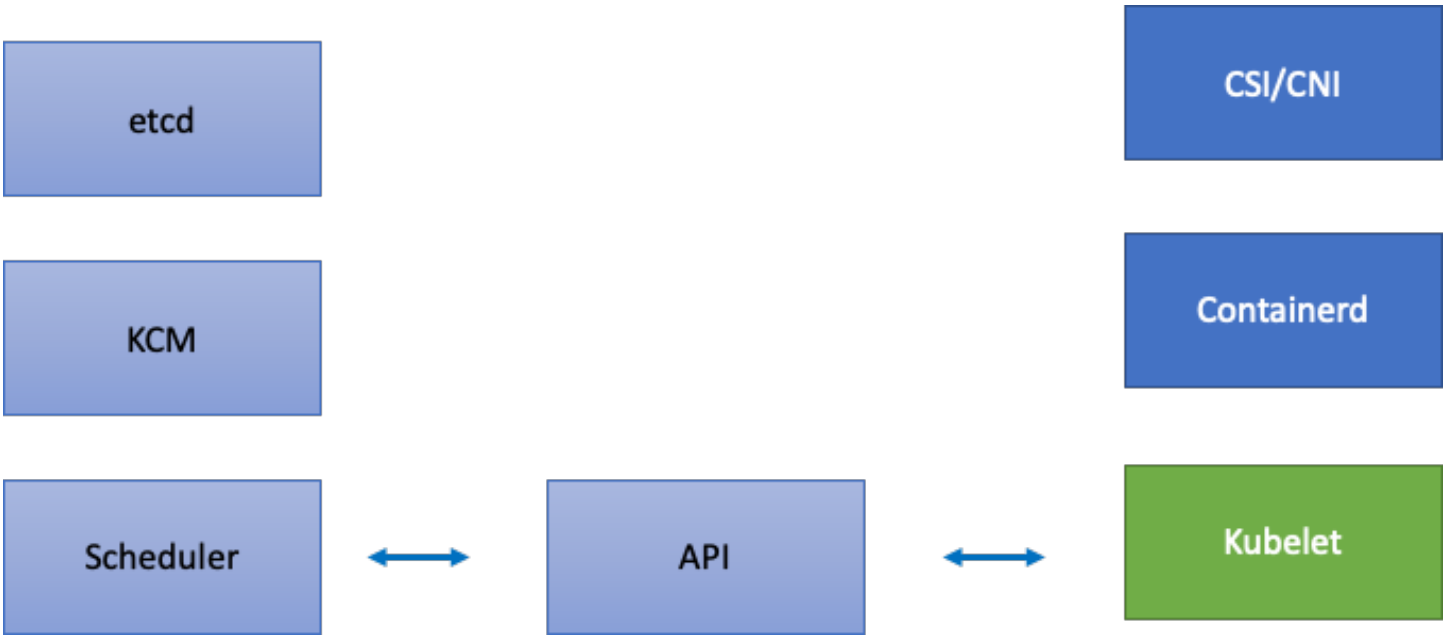
Scale by Metrics

While the concept of using metrics to optimize systems is an old one, it's often overlooked as people begin their Kubernetes journey. Instead of focusing on specific numbers (i.e. 110 pods per node), we focus our efforts on finding the metrics that help us find bottlenecks in our system. Understanding the right thresholds for these metrics can give us a high degree of confidence our system is optimally configured.

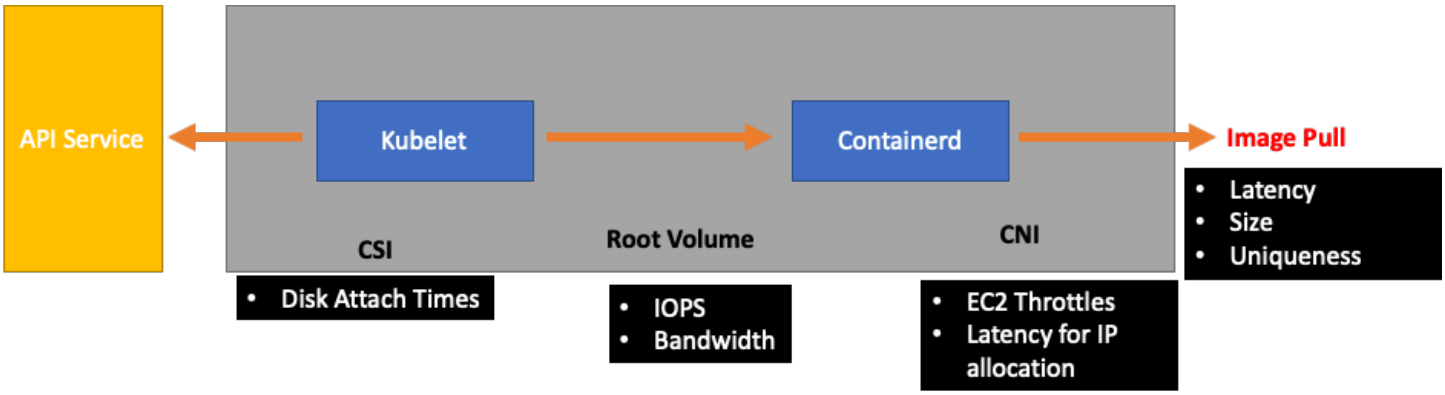
The Impact of Changes

A common pattern that could get us into trouble is focusing on the first metric or log error that looks suspect. When we saw that the Kubelet was timing out earlier, we could try random things, such as increasing the per second rate that the Kubelet is allowed to send, etc. However, it is wise to look at the whole picture of everything downstream of the error we find first. *Make each change with purpose and backed by data*.

Downstream of the Kubelet would be the Containerd runtime (pod errors), DaemonSets such as the storage driver (CSI) and the network driver (CNI) that talk to the EC2 API, etc.



Let's continue our earlier example of the Kubelet not keeping up with the runtime. There are a number of points where we could bin pack a node so densely that it triggers errors.



When designing the right node size for our workloads these are easy-to-overlook signals that might be putting unnecessary pressure on the system thus limiting both our scale and performance.

The Cost of Unnecessary Errors

Kubernetes controllers excel at retrying when error conditions arise, however this comes at a cost. These retries can increase the pressure on components such as the Kube Controller Manager. It is an important tenant of scale testing to monitor for such errors.

When fewer errors are occurring, it is easier spot issues in the system. By periodically ensuring that our clusters are error free before major operations (such as upgrades) we can simplify troubleshooting logs when unforeseen events happen.

Expanding Our View

In large scale clusters with 1,000's of nodes we don't want to look for bottlenecks individually. In PromQL we can find the highest values in a data set using a function called topk; K being a variable we place the number of items we want. Here we use three nodes to get an idea whether all of the Kubelets in the cluster are saturated. We have been looking at latency up to this point, now let's see if the Kubelet is discarding events.

```
topk(3, increase(kubelet_pleg_discard_events{}[$__rate_interval]))
```

Breaking this statement down.

- We use the Grafana variable `$__rate_interval` to ensure it gets the four samples it needs. This bypasses a complex topic in monitoring with a simple variable.

- `topk` give us just the top results and the number 3 limits those results to three. This is a useful function for cluster wide metrics.
- `{}` tell us there are no filters, normally you would put the job name of whatever the scraping rule, however since these names vary we will leave it blank.

Splitting the Problem in Half

To address a bottleneck in the system, we will take the approach of finding a metric that shows us there is a problem upstream or downstream as this allows us to split the problem in half. It will also be a core tenet of how we display our metrics data.

A good place to start with this process is the API server, as it allow us to see if there's a problem with a client application or the Control Plane.

Control Plane Monitoring

API Server

When looking at our API server it's important to remember that one of its functions is to throttle inbound requests to prevent overloading the control plane. What can seem like a bottleneck at the API server level might actually be protecting it from more serious issues. We need to factor in the pros and cons of increasing the volume of requests moving through the system. To make a determination if the API server values should be increased, here is small sampling of the things we need to be mindful of:

1. What is the latency of requests moving through the system?
2. Is that latency the API server itself, or something "downstream" like etcd?
3. Is the API server queue depth a factor in this latency?
4. Are the API Priority and Fairness (APF) queues setup correctly for the API call patterns we want?

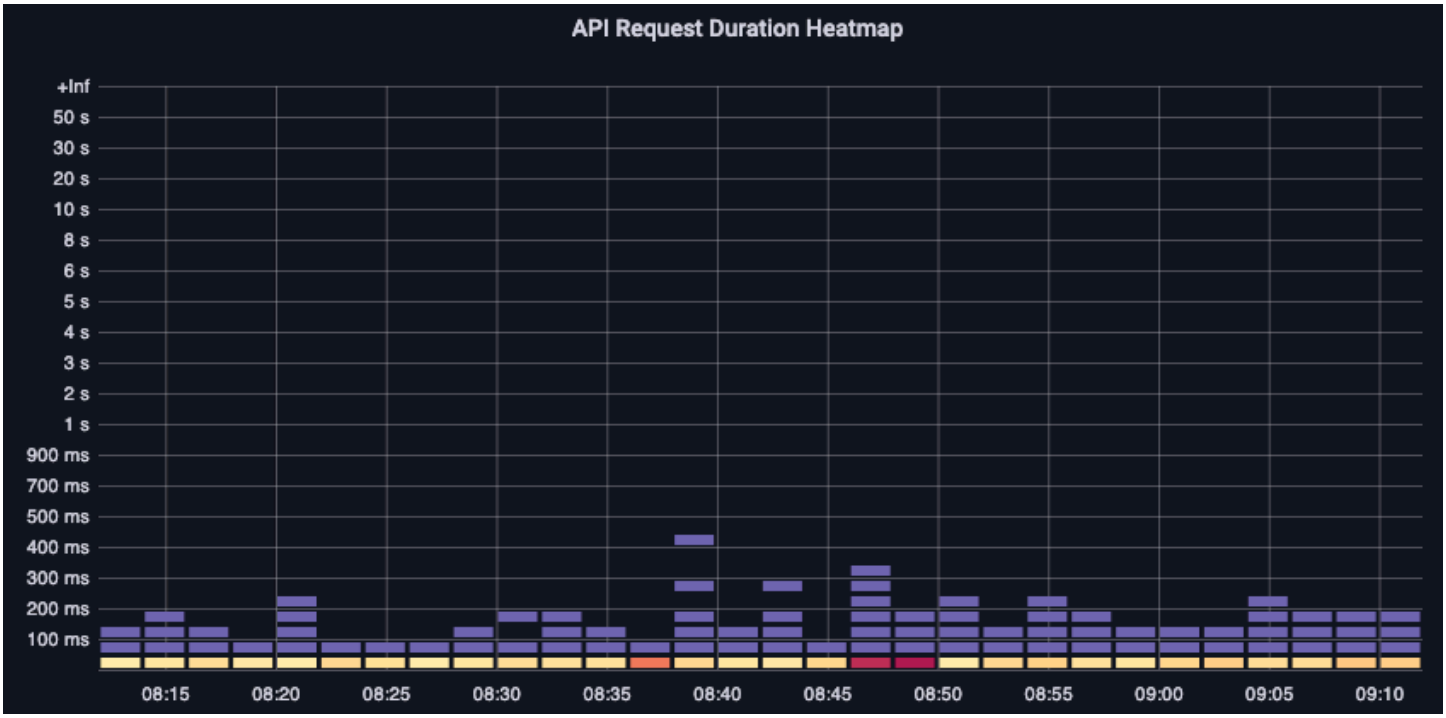
Where is the issue?

To start, we can use the metric for API latency to give us insight into how long it's taking the API server to service requests. Let's use the below PromQL and Grafana heatmap to display this data.

```
max(increase(apiserver_request_duration_seconds_bucket{subresource!
="status",subresource!="token",subresource!="scale",subresource!="/
```

```
healthz",subresource!="binding",subresource!="proxy",verb!="WATCH"}[$__rate_interval]))
 by (le)
```

> **Note**
>
> For an in depth write up on how to monitor the API server with the API dashboard used in this article, please see the following blog



These requests are all under the one second mark, which is a good indication that the control plane is handling requests in a timely fashion. But what if that was not the case?

The format we are using in the above API Request Duration is a heatmap. What's nice about the heatmap format, is that it tells us the timeout value for the API by default (60 sec). However, what we really need to know is at what threshold should this value be of concern before we reach the timeout threshold. For a rough guideline of what acceptable thresholds are we can use the upstream Kubernetes SLO, which can be found here

> **Note**
>
> Notice the max function on this statement? When using metrics that are aggregating multiple servers (by default two API servers on EKS) it's important not to average those servers together.

Asymmetrical traffic patterns

What if one API server [pod] was lightly loaded, and the other heavily loaded? If we averaged those two numbers together we might misinterpret what was happening. For example, here we have three API servers but all of the load is on one of these API servers. As a rule anything that has multiple servers such as etcd and API servers should be broken out when investing scale and performance issues.

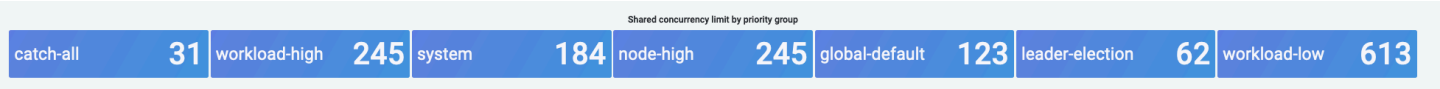
With the move to API Priority and Fairness the total number of requests on the system is only one factor to check to see if the API server is oversubscribed. Since the system now works off a series of queues, we must look to see if any of these queues are full and if the traffic for that queue is getting dropped.

Let's look at these queues with the following query:

```
max without(instance)(apiserver_flowcontrol_nominal_limit_seats{})
```

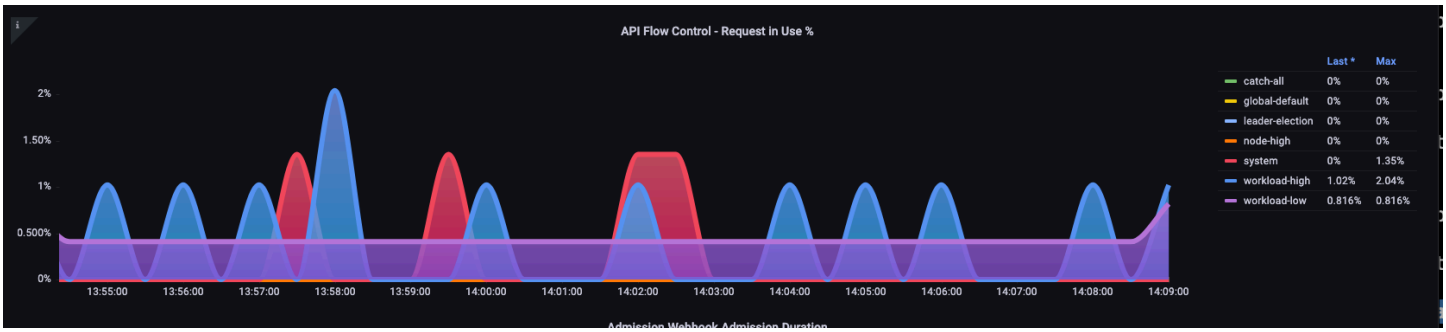
> **Note**
>
> For more information on how API A&F works please see the following best practices guide

Here we see the seven different priority groups that come by default on the cluster



Next we want to see what percentage of that priority group is being used, so that we can understand if a certain priority level is being saturated. Throttling requests in the workload-low level might be desirable, however drops in a leader election level would not be.

The API Priority and Fairness (APF) system has a number of complex options, some of those options can have unintended consequences. A common issue we see in the field is increasing the queue depth to the point it starts adding unnecessary latency. We can monitor this problem by using the `apiserver_flowcontrol_current_inqueue_request` metric. We can check for drops using the `apiserver_flowcontrol_rejected_requests_total`. These metrics will be a non-zero value if any bucket exceeds its concurrency.



Increasing the queue depth can make the API Server a significant source of latency and should be done with care. We recommend being judicious with the number of queues created. For example, the number of shares on a EKS system is 600, if we create too many queues, this can reduce the shares in important queues that need the throughput such as the leader-election queue or system queue. Creating too many extra queues can make it more difficult to size theses queues correctly.

To focus on a simple impactful change you can make in APF we simply take shares from underutilized buckets and increase the size of buckets that are at their max usage. By intelligently redistributing the shares among these buckets, you can make drops less likely.

For more information, visit API Priority and Fairness settings in the EKS Best Practices Guide.

API vs. etcd latency

How can we use the metrics/logs of the API server to determine whether there's a problem with API server, or a problem that's upstream/downstream of the API server, or a combination of both.

To understand this better, lets look at how API Server and etcd can be related, and how easy it can be to troubleshoot the wrong system.

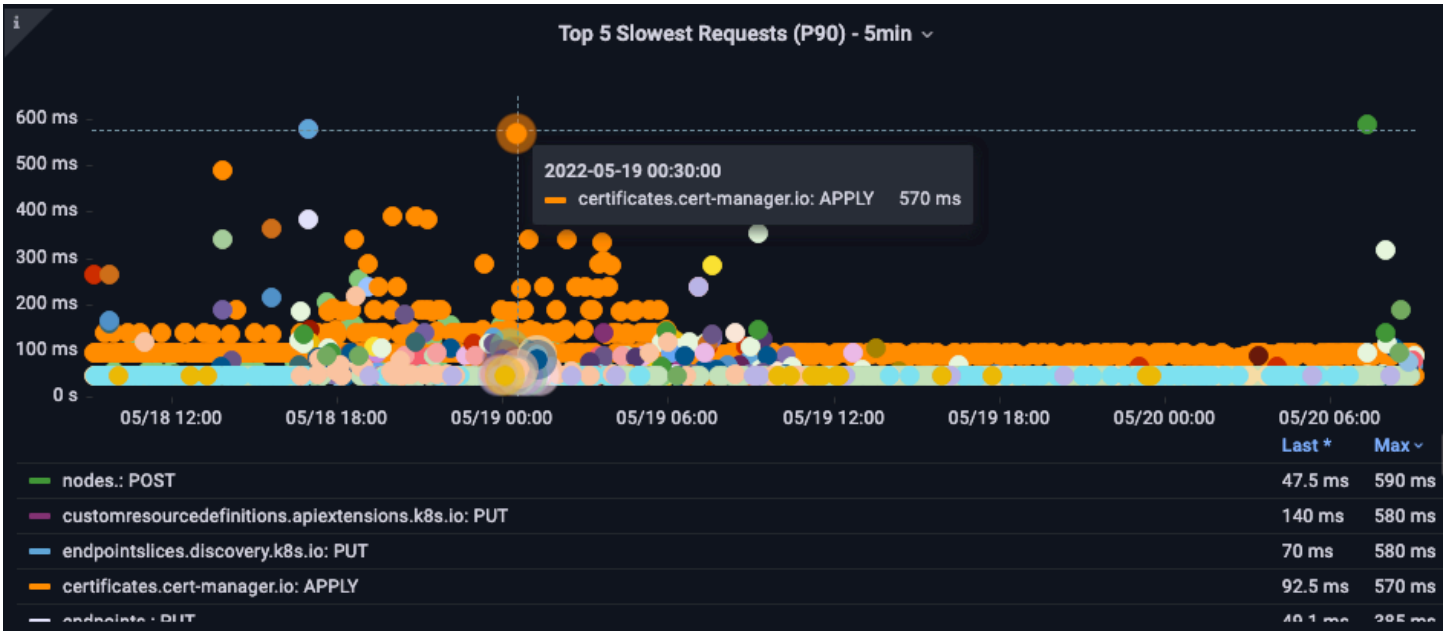
In the below chart we see API server latency, but we also see much of this latency is correlated to the etcd server due to the bars in the graph showing most of the latency at the etcd level. If there is 15 secs of etcd latency at the same time there is 20 seconds of API server latency, then the majority of the latency is actually at the etcd level.

By looking at the whole flow, we see that it's wise to not focus solely on the API Server, but also look for signals that indicate that etcd is under duress (i.e. slow apply counters increasing). Being able to quickly move to the right problem area with just a glance is what makes a dashboard powerful.

> **Note**
>
> The dashboard in section can be found at https://github.com/RiskyAdventure/Troubleshooting-Dashboards/blob/main/api-troubleshooter.json

Control plane vs. Client side issues

In this chart we are looking for the API calls that took the most time to complete for that period. In this case we see a custom resource (CRD) is calling a APPLY function that is the most latent call during the 05:40 time frame.



Armed with this data we can use an Ad-Hoc PromQL or a CloudWatch Insights query to pull LIST requests from the audit log during that time frame to see which application this might be.

Finding the Source with CloudWatch

Metrics are best used to find the problem area we want to look at and narrow both the timeframe and the search parameters of the problem. Once we have this data we want to transition to logs for more detailed times and errors. To do this we will turn our logs into metrics using CloudWatch Logs Insights.

For example, to investigate the issue above, we will use the following CloudWatch Logs Insights query to pull the userAgent and requestURI so that we can pin down which application is causing this latency.

> **Note**
>
> An appropriate Count needs to be used as to not pull normal List/Resync behavior on a Watch.

```
fields @timestamp, @message
| filter @logStream like "kube-apiserver-audit"
| filter ispresent(requestURI)
| filter verb = "list"
```

```
| parse requestReceivedTimestamp /\d+-\d+-(?<StartDay>\d+)T(?<StartHour>\d+):(?
<StartMinute>\d+):(?<StartSec>\d+).(?<StartMsec>\d+)Z/
| parse stageTimestamp /\d+-\d+-(?<EndDay>\d+)T(?<EndHour>\d+):(?<EndMinute>\d+):(?
<EndSec>\d+).(?<EndMsec>\d+)Z/
| fields (StartHour * 3600 + StartMinute * 60 + StartSec + StartMsec / 1000000) as
 StartTime, (EndHour * 3600 + EndMinute * 60 + EndSec + EndMsec / 1000000) as EndTime,
 (EndTime - StartTime) as DeltaTime
| stats avg(DeltaTime) as AverageDeltaTime, count(*) as CountTime by requestURI,
 userAgent
| filter CountTime >=50
| sort AverageDeltaTime desc
```

Using this query we found two different agents running a large number of high latency list operations. Splunk and CloudWatch agent. Armed with the data, we can make a decision to remove, update, or replace this controller with another project.

requestURI	AverageDeltaTime	AverageD	CountTime
/api/v1/pods	rest-client/2.1.0 (linux-gnu x86_64) ruby/2.5.5p157	9.1395	87
/api/v1/pods?limit=500&resourceVersion=0	amazon-cloudwatch-agent/v0.0.0 (linux/amd64) kubernetes/$Format	5.3976	929

> **Note**
>
> For more details on this subject please see the following blog

Scheduler

Since the EKS control plane instances are run in separate AWS account we will not be able to scrape those components for metrics (The API server being the exception). However, since we have access to the audit logs for these components, we can turn those logs into metrics to see if any of the sub-systems are causing a scaling bottleneck. Let's use CloudWatch Logs Insights to see how many unscheduled pods are in the scheduler queue.

Unscheduled pods in the scheduler log

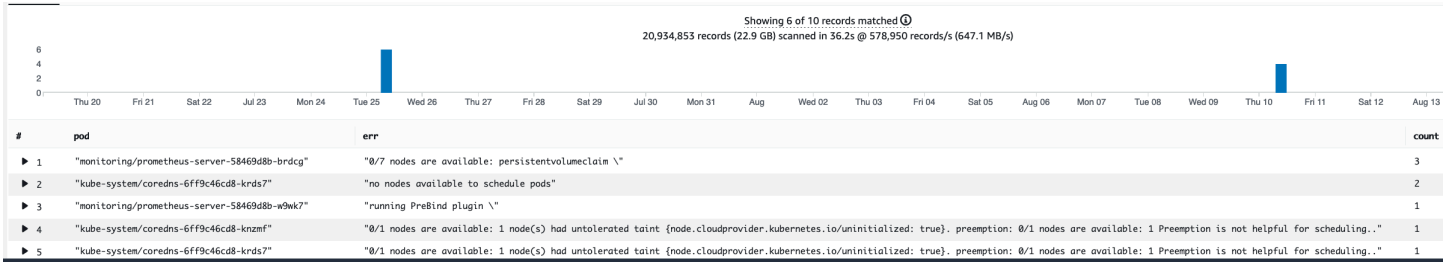
If we had access to scrape the scheduler metrics directly on a self managed Kubernetes (such as Kops) we would use the following PromQL to understand the scheduler backlog.

```
max without(instance)(scheduler_pending_pods)
```

Since we do not have access to the above metric in EKS, we will use the below CloudWatch Logs Insights query to see the backlog by checking for how many pods were unable to unscheduled during a particular time frame. Then we could dive further into into the messages at the peak time frame to understand the nature of the bottleneck. For example, nodes not spinning up fast enough, or the rate limiter in the scheduler itself.

```
fields timestamp, pod, err, @message
| filter @logStream like "scheduler"
| filter @message like "Unable to schedule pod"
| parse @message  /^.(?<date>\d{4})\s+(?<timestamp>\d+:\d+:\d+\.\d+)\s+\S*\s+\S+\]\s
\"(.*?)\"\s+pod=(?<pod>\"(.*?)\")\s+err=(?<err>\"(.*?)\")/
| count(*) as count by pod, err
| sort count desc
```

Here we see the errors from the scheduler saying the pod did not deploy because the storage PVC was unavailable.



#	pod	err	count
▶ 1	"monitoring/prometheus-server-58469d8b-brdcg"	"0/7 nodes are available: persistentvolumeclaim \"	3
▶ 2	"kube-system/coredns-6ff9c46cd8-krds7"	"no nodes available to schedule pods"	2
▶ 3	"monitoring/prometheus-server-58469d8b-w9wk7"	"running PreBind plugin \"	1
▶ 4	"kube-system/coredns-6ff9c46cd8-knzmf"	"0/1 nodes are available: 1 node(s) had untolerated taint {node.cloudprovider.kubernetes.io/uninitialized: true}. preemption: 0/1 nodes are available: 1 Preemption is not helpful for scheduling.."	1
▶ 5	"kube-system/coredns-6ff9c46cd8-krds7"	"0/1 nodes are available: 1 node(s) had untolerated taint {node.cloudprovider.kubernetes.io/uninitialized: true}. preemption: 0/1 nodes are available: 1 Preemption is not helpful for scheduling.."	1

Note

Audit logging must be turned on the control plane to enable this function. It is also a best practice to limit the log retention as to not drive up cost over time unnecessarily. An example for turning on all logging functions using the EKSCTL tool below.

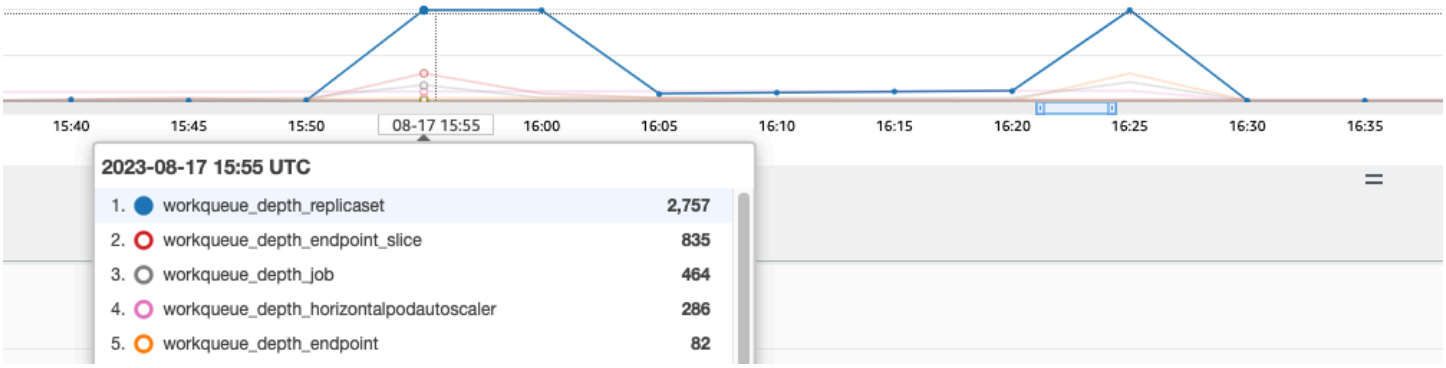
```
cloudWatch:
  clusterLogging:
    enableTypes: ["*"]
    logRetentionInDays: 10
```

Kube Controller Manager

Kube Controller Manager, like all other controllers, has limits on how many operations it can do at once. Let's review what some of those flags are by looking at a KOPS configuration where we can set these parameters.

```
kubeControllerManager:
  concurrentEndpointSyncs: 5
  concurrentReplicasetSyncs: 5
  concurrentNamespaceSyncs: 10
  concurrentServiceaccountTokenSyncs: 5
  concurrentServiceSyncs: 5
  concurrentResourceQuotaSyncs: 5
  concurrentGcSyncs: 20
  kubeAPIBurst: 30
  kubeAPIQPS: "20"
```

These controllers have queues that fill up during times of high churn on a cluster. In this case we see the replicaset set controller has a large backlog in its queue.



We have two different ways of addressing such a situation. If running self managed we could simply increase the concurrent goroutines, however this would have an impact on etcd by processing more data in the KCM. The other option would be to reduce the number of replicaset objects using `.spec.revisionHistoryLimit` on the deployment to reduce the number of replicaset objects we can rollback, thus reducing the pressure on this controller.

```
spec:
  revisionHistoryLimit: 2
```

Other Kubernetes features can be tuned or turned off to reduce pressure in high churn rate systems. For example, if the application in our pods doesn't need to speak to the k8s API directly then turning off the projected secret into those pods would decrease the load on ServiceaccountTokenSyncs. This is the more desirable way to address such issues if possible.

```
kind: Pod
spec:
  automountServiceAccountToken: false
```

In systems where we can't get access to the metrics, we can again look at the logs to detect contention. If we wanted to see the number of requests being being processed on a per controller or an aggregate level we would use the following CloudWatch Logs Insights Query.

Total Volume Processed by the KCM

```
# Query to count API qps coming from kube-controller-manager, split by controller type.
# If you're seeing values close to 20/sec for any particular controller, it's most
 likely seeing client-side API throttling.
fields @timestamp, @logStream, @message
| filter @logStream like /kube-apiserver-audit/
| filter userAgent like /kube-controller-manager/
# Exclude lease-related calls (not counted under kcm qps)
| filter requestURI not like "apis/coordination.k8s.io/v1/namespaces/kube-system/
leases/kube-controller-manager"
# Exclude API discovery calls (not counted under kcm qps)
| filter requestURI not like "?timeout=32s"
# Exclude watch calls (not counted under kcm qps)
| filter verb != "watch"
# If you want to get counts of API calls coming from a specific controller, uncomment
 the appropriate line below:
# | filter user.username like "system:serviceaccount:kube-system:job-controller"
# | filter user.username like "system:serviceaccount:kube-system:cronjob-controller"
# | filter user.username like "system:serviceaccount:kube-system:deployment-controller"
# | filter user.username like "system:serviceaccount:kube-system:replicaset-controller"
# | filter user.username like "system:serviceaccount:kube-system:horizontal-pod-
autoscaler"
# | filter user.username like "system:serviceaccount:kube-system:persistent-volume-
binder"
# | filter user.username like "system:serviceaccount:kube-system:endpointslice-
controller"
# | filter user.username like "system:serviceaccount:kube-system:endpoint-controller"
```

```
# | filter user.username like "system:serviceaccount:kube-system:generic-garbage-
controller"
| stats count(*) as count by user.username
| sort count desc
```

The key takeaway here is when looking into scalability issues, to look at every step in the path (API, scheduler, KCM, etcd) before moving to the detailed troubleshooting phase. Often in production you will find that it takes adjustments to more than one part of Kubernetes to allow the system to work at its most performant. It's easy to inadvertently troubleshoot what is just a symptom (such as a node timeout) of a much larger bottle neck.

ETCD

etcd uses a memory mapped file to store key value pairs efficiently. There is a protection mechanism to set the size of this memory space available set commonly at the 2, 4, and 8GB limits. Fewer objects in the database means less clean up etcd needs to do when objects are updated and older versions needs to be cleaned out. This process of cleaning old versions of an object out is referred to as compaction. After a number of compaction operations, there is a subsequent process that recovers usable space space called defragging that happens above a certain threshold or on a fixed schedule of time.

There are a couple user related items we can do to limit the number of objects in Kubernetes and thus reduce the impact of both the compaction and de-fragmentation process. For example, Helm keeps a high `revisionHistoryLimit`. This keeps older objects such as ReplicaSets on the system to be able to do rollbacks. By setting the history limits down to 2 we can reduce the number of objects (like ReplicaSets) from ten to two which in turn would put less load on the system.

```
apiVersion: apps/v1
kind: Deployment
spec:
  revisionHistoryLimit: 2
```

From a monitoring standpoint, if system latency spikes occur in a set pattern separated by hours, checking to see if this defragmentation process is the source can be helpful. We can see this by using CloudWatch Logs.

If you want to see start/end times of defrag use the following query:

```
fields @timestamp, @message
```

```
| filter @logStream like /etcd-manager/
| filter @message like /defraging|defraged/
| sort @timestamp asc
```

@message	@logStream
Oct 6 19:19:52 ip-172-16-176-9 etcdnanny: {"level":"info","ts":"2022-10-06T19:19:52.826Z","caller":"defrag/defrag.go:312","msg":"defraging","…	etcd-manager-i-0101a20d88e74fa5b
Oct 6 19:20:28 ip-172-16-176-9 etcdnanny: {"level":"info","ts":"2022-10-06T19:20:28.836Z","caller":"defrag/defrag.go:322","msg":"defraged"}	etcd-manager-i-0101a20d88e74fa5b
Oct 6 19:25:57 ip-172-16-101-191 etcdnanny: {"level":"info","ts":"2022-10-06T19:25:57.650Z","caller":"defrag/defrag.go:312","msg":"defraging"…	etcd-manager-i-0e3aa5c2ae801af44
Oct 6 19:26:34 ip-172-16-101-191 etcdnanny: {"level":"info","ts":"2022-10-06T19:26:34.457Z","caller":"defrag/defrag.go:322","msg":"defraged"}	etcd-manager-i-0e3aa5c2ae801af44
Oct 6 19:32:26 ip-172-16-50-136 etcdnanny: {"level":"info","ts":"2022-10-06T19:32:26.592Z","caller":"defrag/defrag.go:312","msg":"defraging",…	etcd-manager-i-025ebb6b463ee0f21
Oct 6 19:33:09 ip-172-16-50-136 etcdnanny: {"level":"info","ts":"2022-10-06T19:33:09.575Z","caller":"defrag/defrag.go:322","msg":"defraged"}	etcd-manager-i-025ebb6b463ee0f21

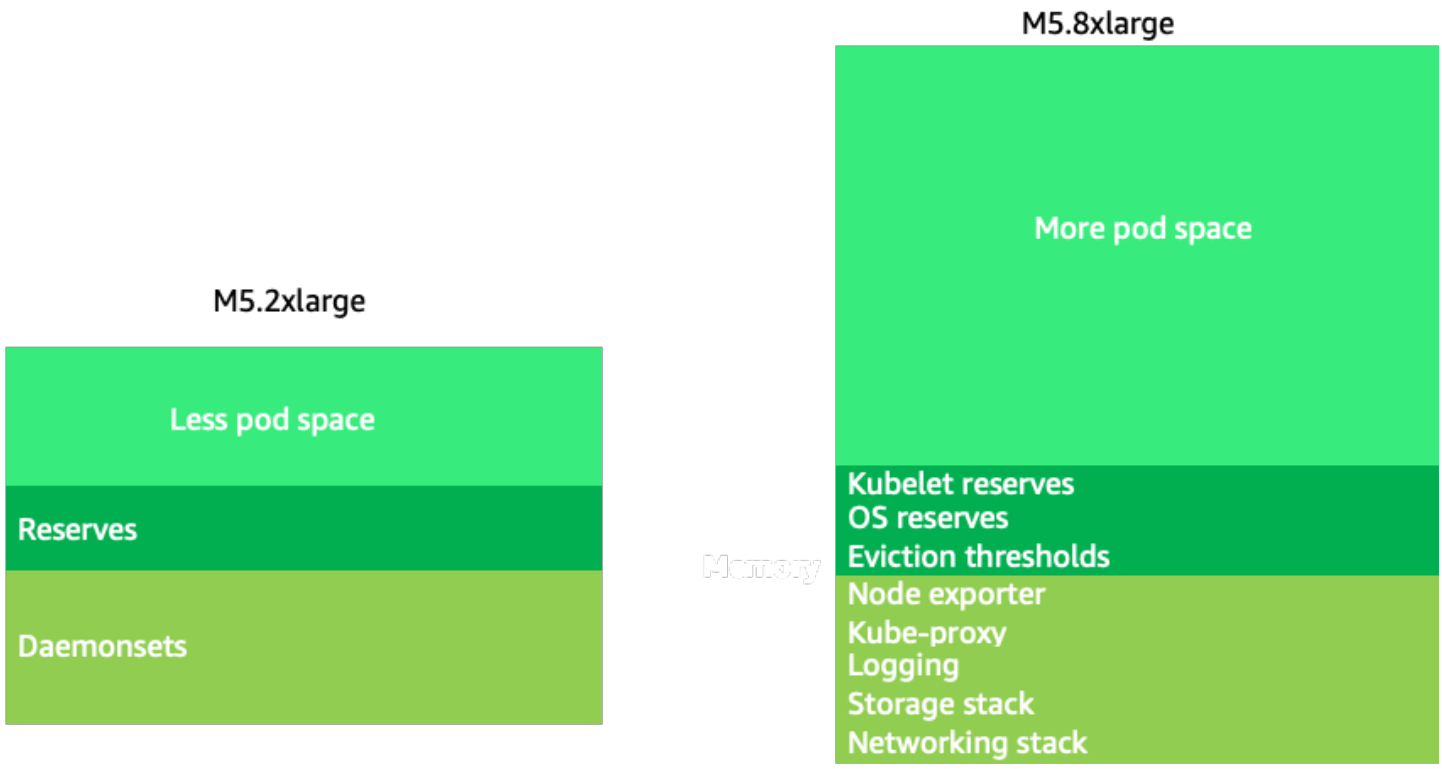
Node and Workload Efficiency

Being efficient with our workloads and nodes reduces complexity/cost while increasing performance and scale. There are many factors to consider when planning this efficiency, and it's easiest to think in terms of trade offs vs. one best practice setting for each feature. Let's explore these tradeoffs in depth in the following section.

Node Selection

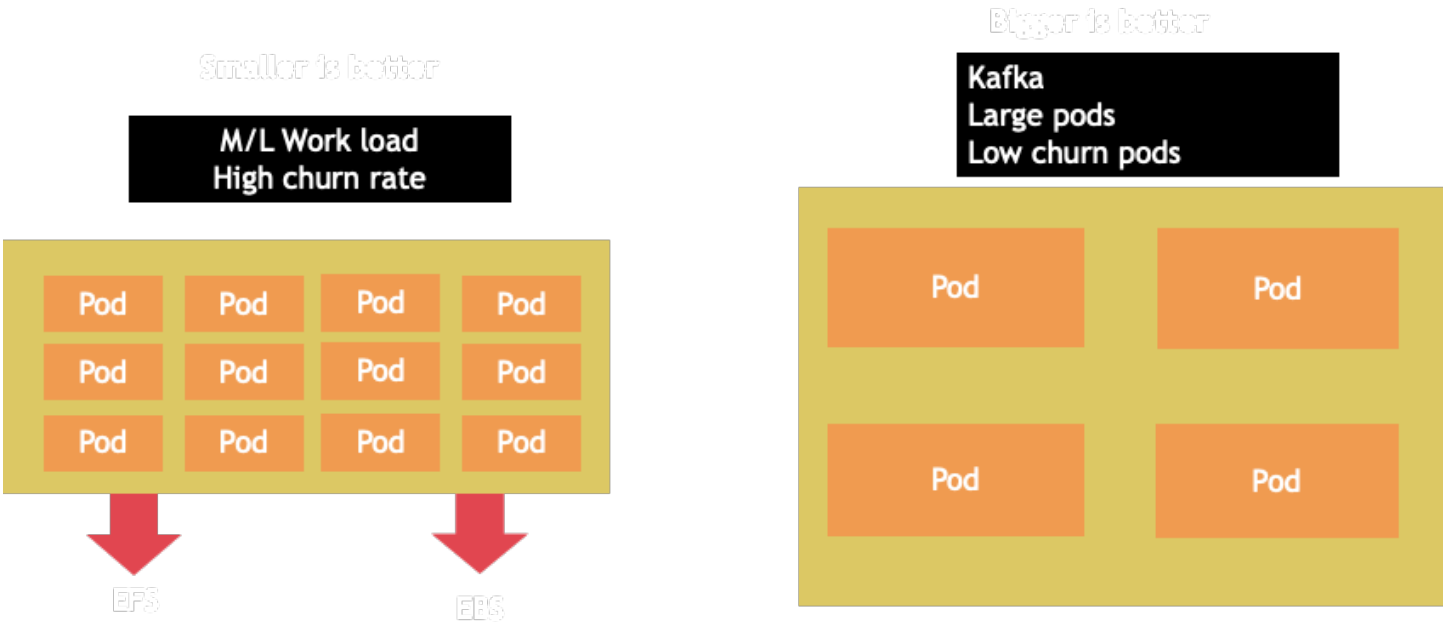
Using node sizes that are slightly larger (4-12xlarge) increases the available space that we have for running pods due to the fact it reduces the percentage of the node used for "overhead" such as DaemonSets and Reserves for system components. In the diagram below we see the difference between the usable space on a 2xlarge vs. a 8xlarge system with just a moderate number of DaemonSets.

> **Note**
>
> Since k8s scales horizontally as a general rule, for most applications it does not make sense to take the performance impact of NUMA sizes nodes, thus the recommendation of a range below that node size.



Large nodes sizes allow us to have a higher percentage of usable space per node. However, this model can be taken to to the extreme by packing the node with so many pods that it causes errors or saturates the node. Monitoring node saturation is key to successfully using larger node sizes.

Node selection is rarely a one-size-fits-all proposition. Often it is best to split workloads with dramatically different churn rates into different node groups. Small batch workloads with a high churn rate would be best served by the 4xlarge family of instances, while a large scale application such as Kafka which takes 8 vCPU and has a low churn rate would be better served by the 12xlarge family.



Note

Another factor to consider with very large node sizes is since CGROUPS do not hide the total number of vCPU from the containerized application. Dynamic runtimes can often spawn an unintentional number of OS threads, creating latency that is difficult to troubleshoot. For these application CPU pinning is recommend. For a deeper exploration of topic please see the following video https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=NqtfDy_KAqg

Node Bin-packing

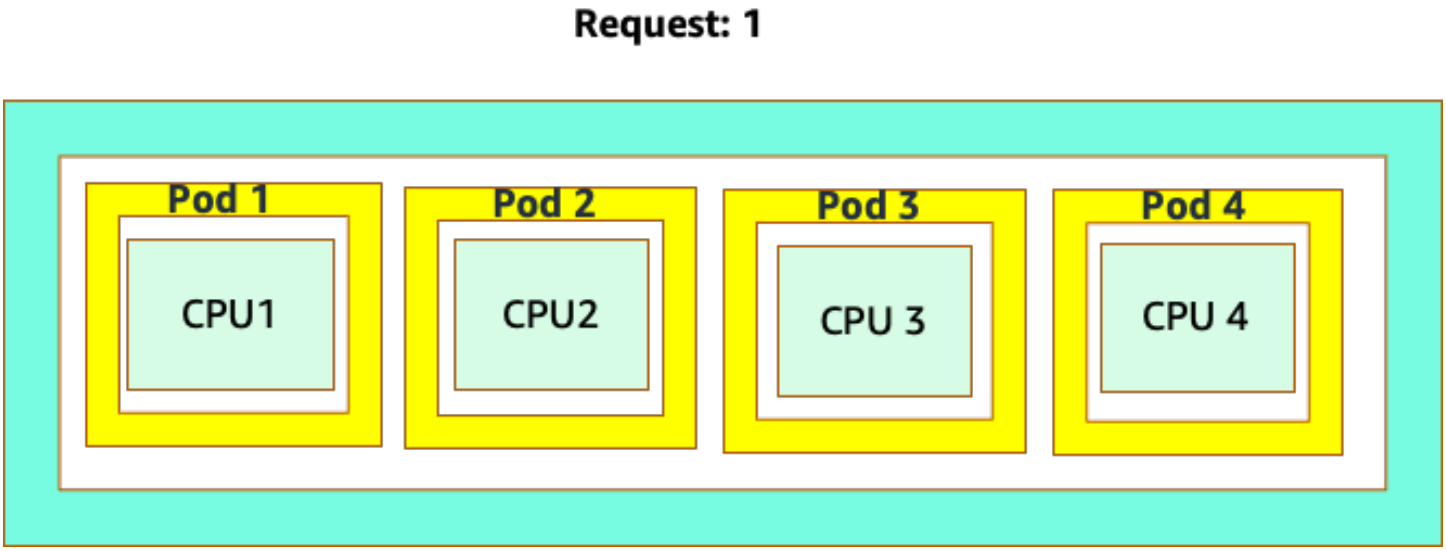
Kubernetes vs. Linux Rules

There are two sets of rules we need to be mindful of when dealing with workloads on Kubernetes. The rules of the Kubernetes Scheduler, which uses the request value to schedule pods on a node, and then what happens after the pod is scheduled, which is the realm of Linux, not Kubernetes.

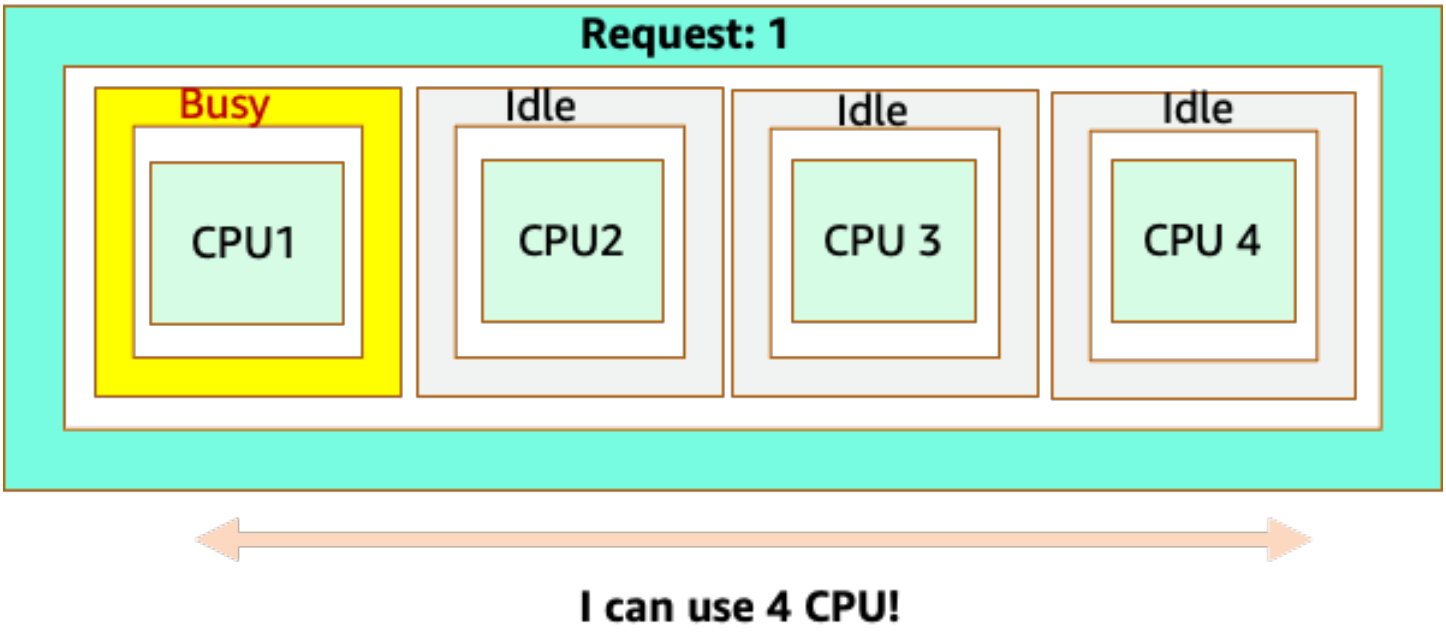
After Kubernetes scheduler is finished, a new set of rules takes over, the Linux Completely Fair Scheduler (CFS). The key take away is that Linux CFS doesn't have a the concept of a core. We will discuss why thinking in cores can lead to major problems with optimizing workloads for scale.

Thinking in Cores

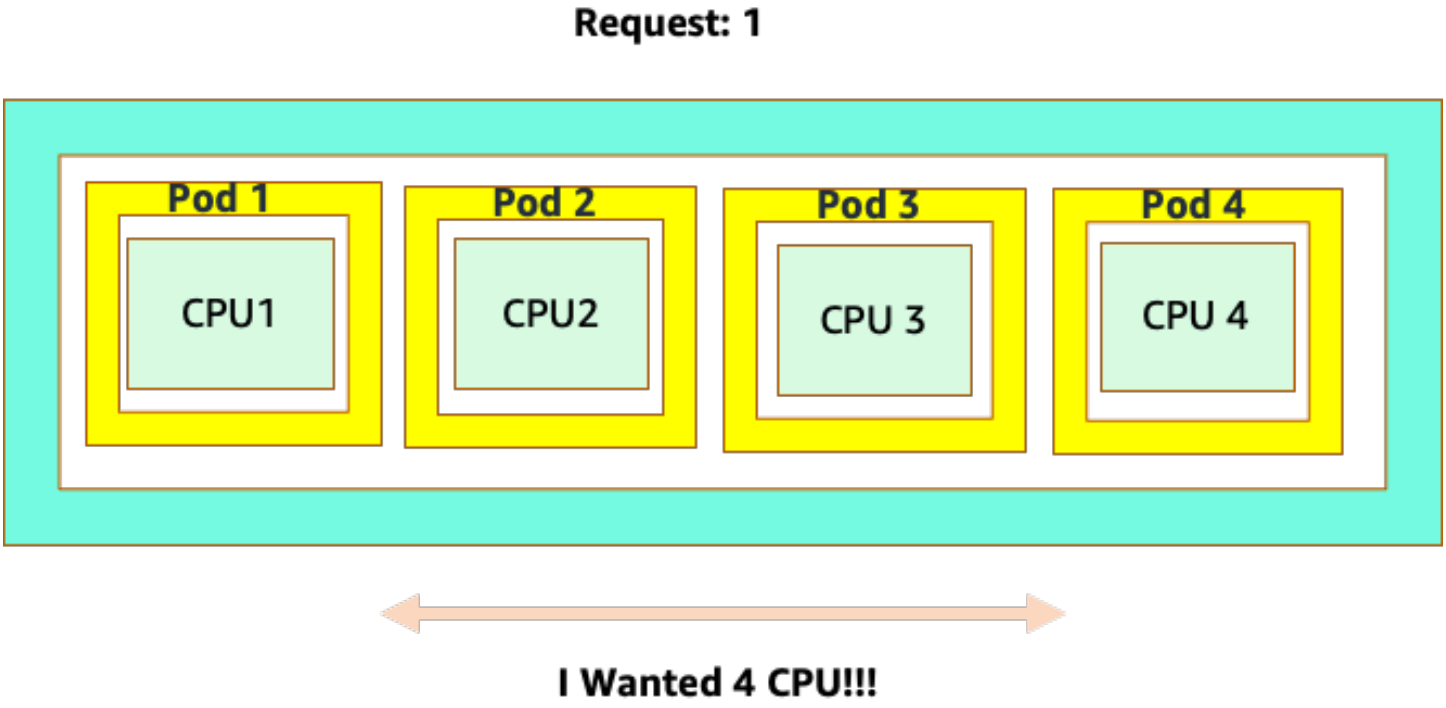
The confusion starts because the Kubernetes scheduler does have the concept of cores. From a Kubernetes scheduler perspective if we looked at a node with 4 NGINX pods, each with a request of one core set, the node would look like this.



However, let's do a thought experiment on how different this looks from a Linux CFS perspective. The most important thing to remember when using the Linux CFS system is: busy containers (CGROUPS) are the only containers that count toward the share system. In this case, only the first container is busy so it is allowed to use all 4 cores on the node.



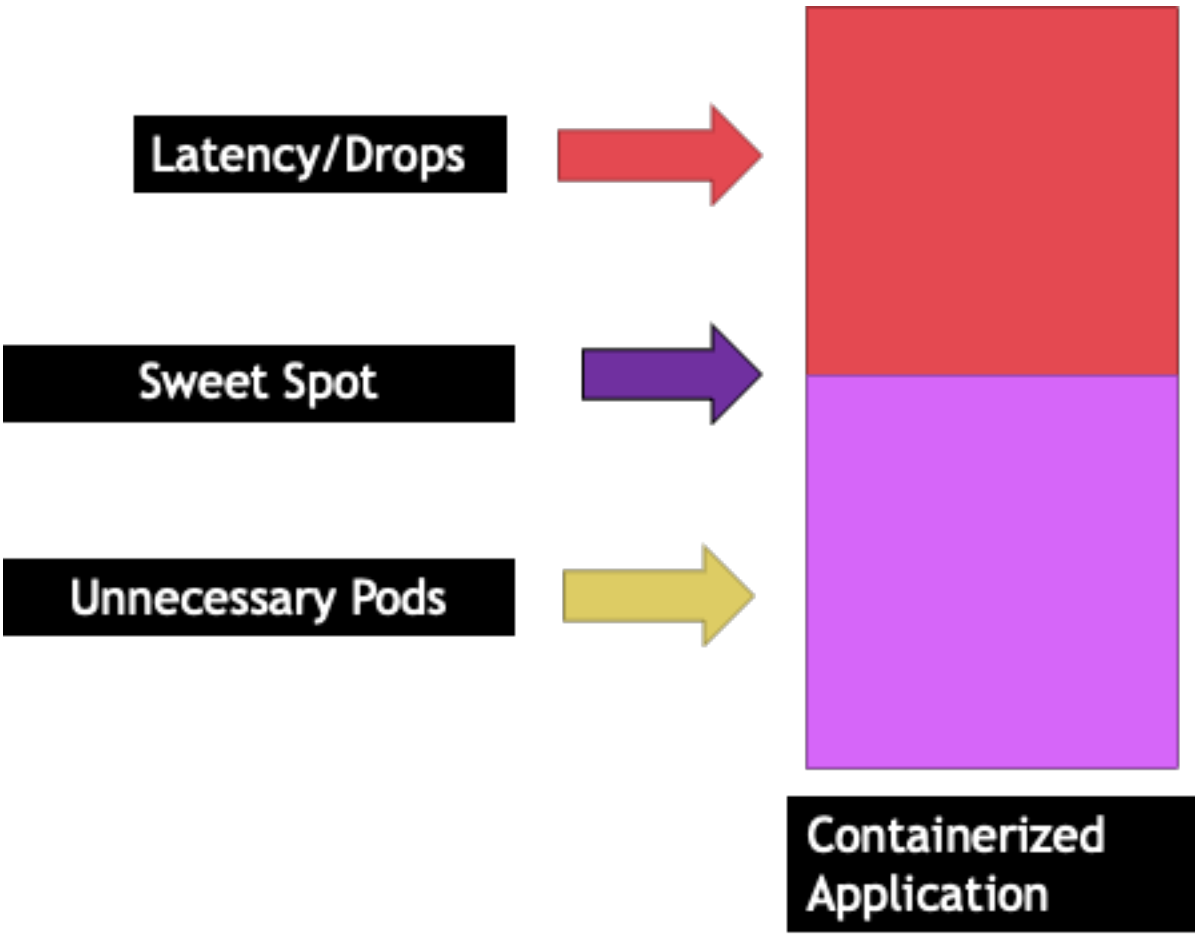
Why does this matter? Let's say we ran our performance testing in a development cluster where an NGINX application was the only busy container on that node. When we move the app to production, the following would happen: the NGINX application wants 4 vCPU of resources however, because all the other pods on the node are busy, our app's performance is constrained.



This situation would lead us to add more containers unnecessarily because we were not allowing our applications scale to their "`sweet spot"`. Let's explore this important concept of a "`sweet spot`" in a bit more detail.

Application right sizing

Each application has a certain point where it can not take anymore traffic. Going above this point can increase processing times and even drop traffic when pushed well beyond this point. This is known as the application's saturation point. To avoid scaling issues, we should attempt to scale the application **before** it reaches its saturation point. Let's call this point the sweet spot.



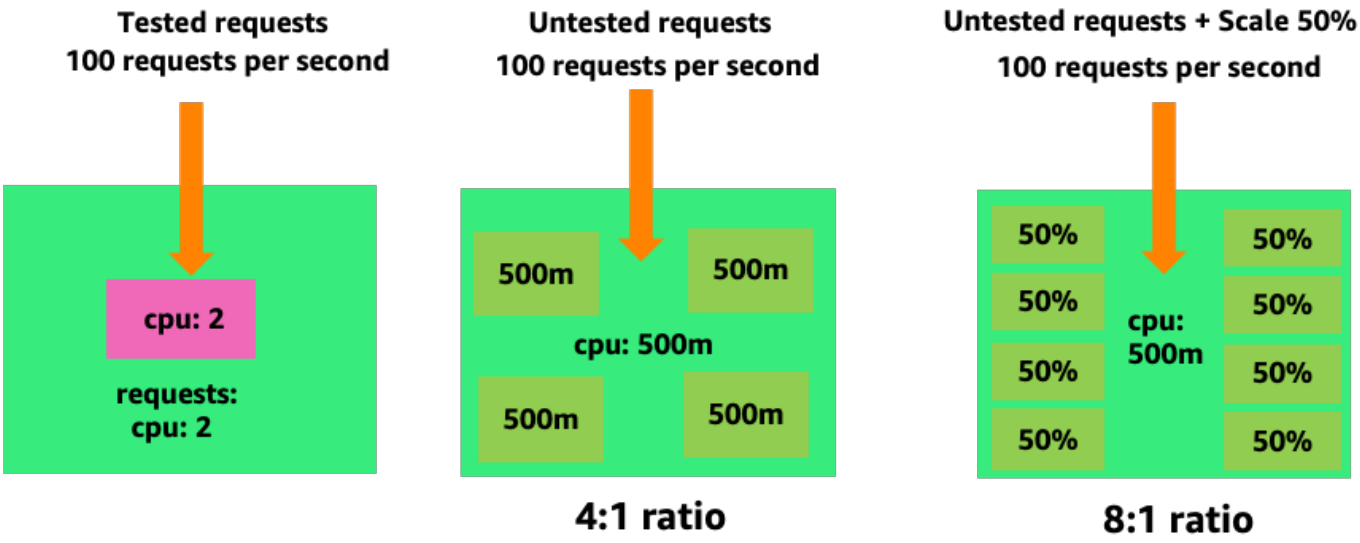
We need to test each of our applications to understand its sweet spot. There will be no universal guidance here as each application is different. During this testing we are trying to understand the best metric that shows our applications saturation point. Oftentimes, utilization metrics are used to indicate an application is saturated but this can quickly lead to scaling issues (We will explore this topic in detail in a later section). Once we have this "`sweet spot"` we can use it to efficiently scale our workloads.

Conversely, what would happen if we scale up well before the sweet spot and created unnecessary pods? Let's explore that in the next section.

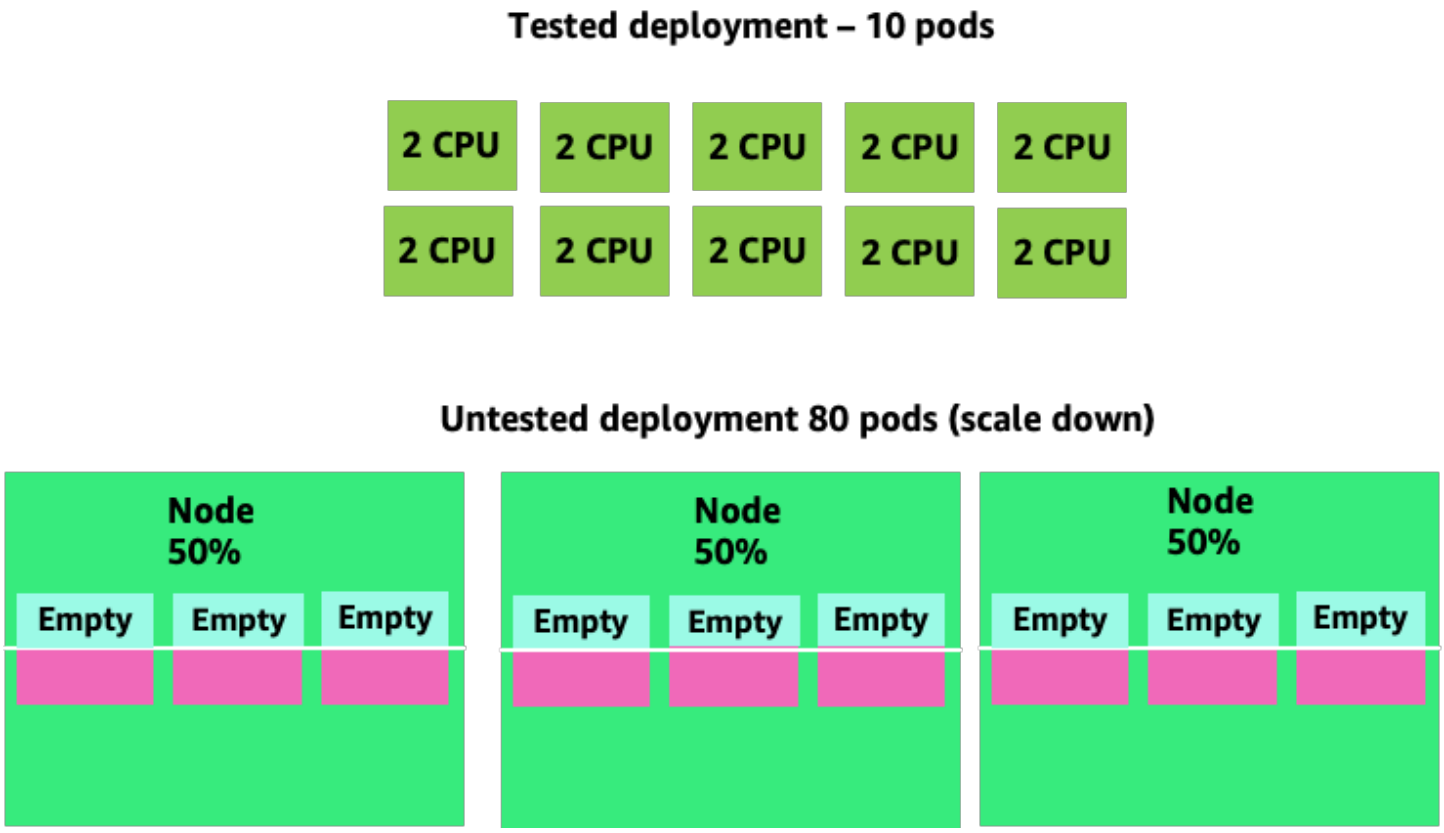
Pod sprawl

To see how creating unnecessary pods could quickly get out of hand, let's look at the first example on the left. The correct vertical scale of this container takes up about two vCPUs worth of utilization when handling 100 requests a second. However, If we were to under-provision the requests value by setting requests to half a core, we would now need 4 pods for each one pods we

actually needed. Exacerbating this problem further, if our HPA was set at the default of 50% CPU, those pods would scale half empty, creating an 8:1 ratio.

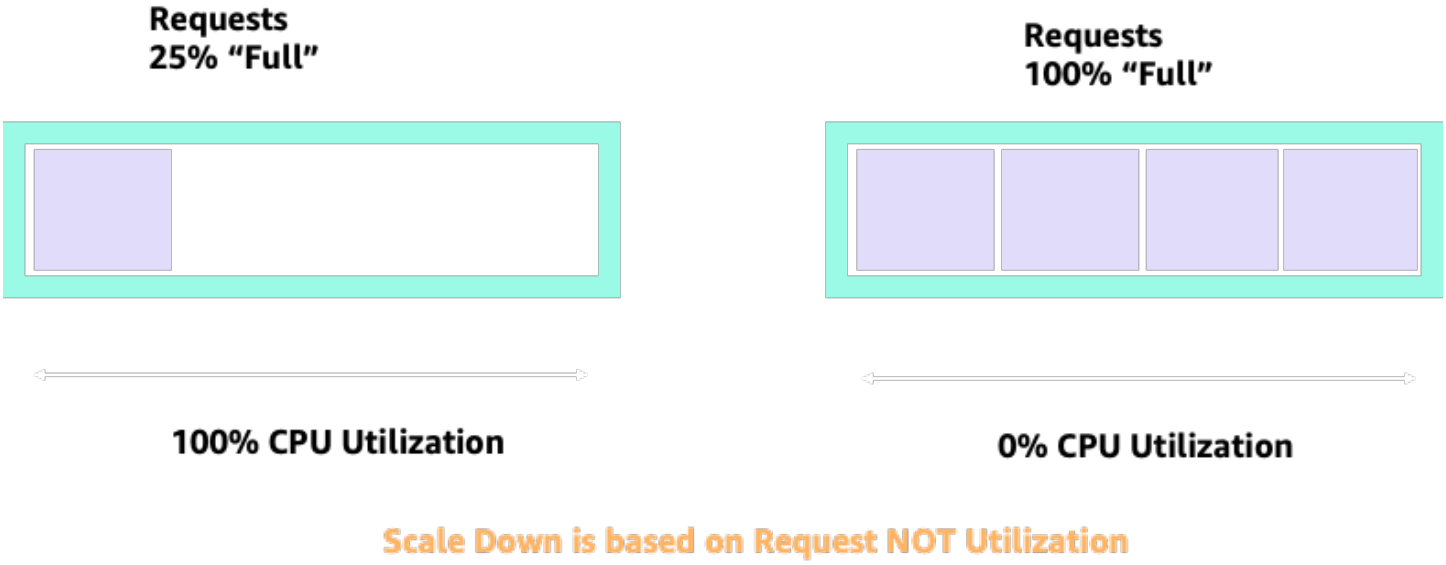


Scaling this problem up we can quickly see how this can get out of hand. A deployment of ten pods whose sweet spot was set incorrectly could quickly spiral to 80 pods and the additional infrastructure needed to run them.



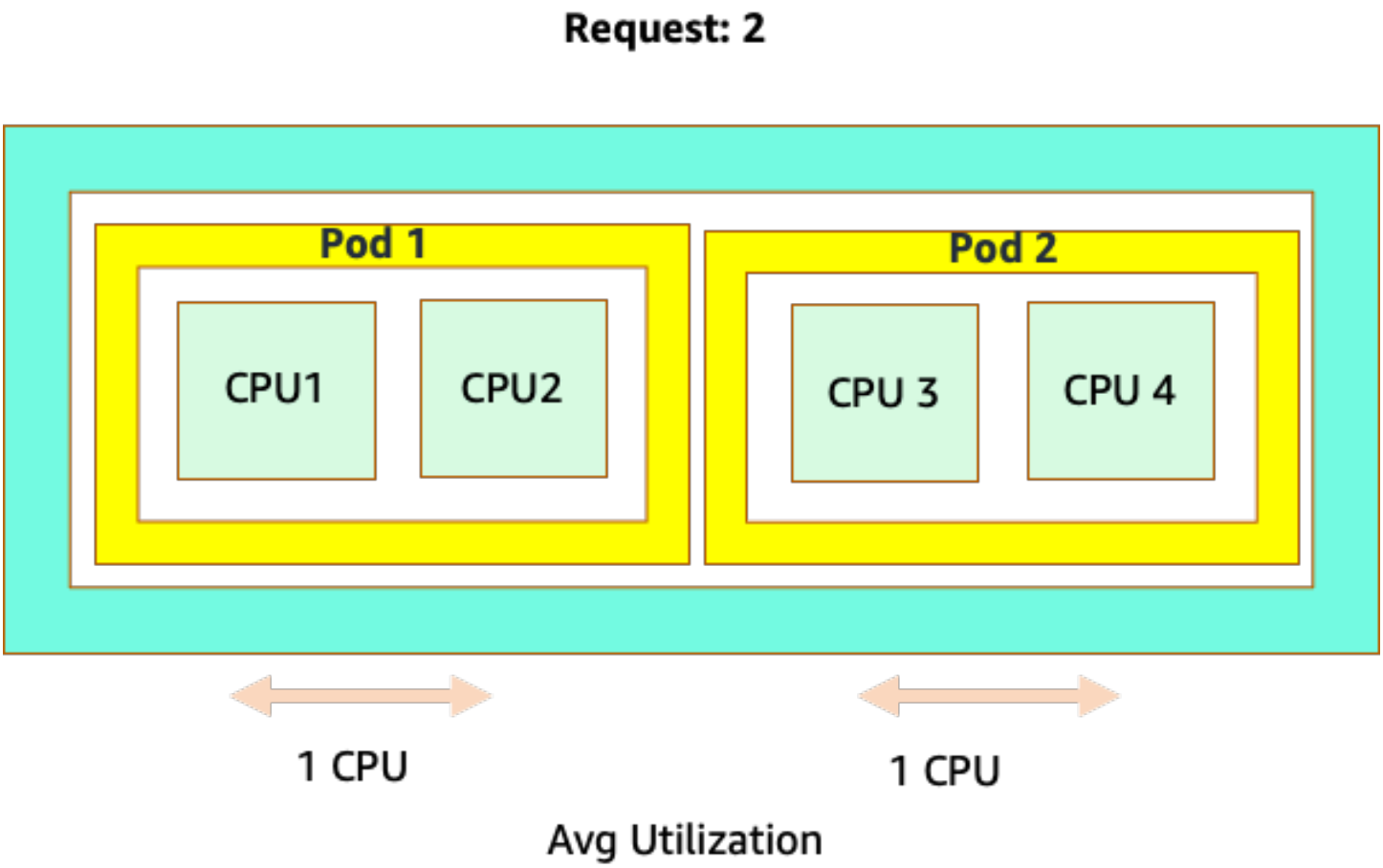
Now that we understand the impact of not allowing applications to operate in their sweet spot, let's return to the node level and ask why this difference between the Kubernetes scheduler and Linux CFS so important?

When scaling up and down with HPA, we can have a scenario where we have a lot of space to allocate more pods. This would be a bad decision because the node depicted on the left is already at 100% CPU utilization. In a unrealistic but theoretically possible scenario, we could have the other extreme where our node is completely full, yet our CPU utilization is zero.

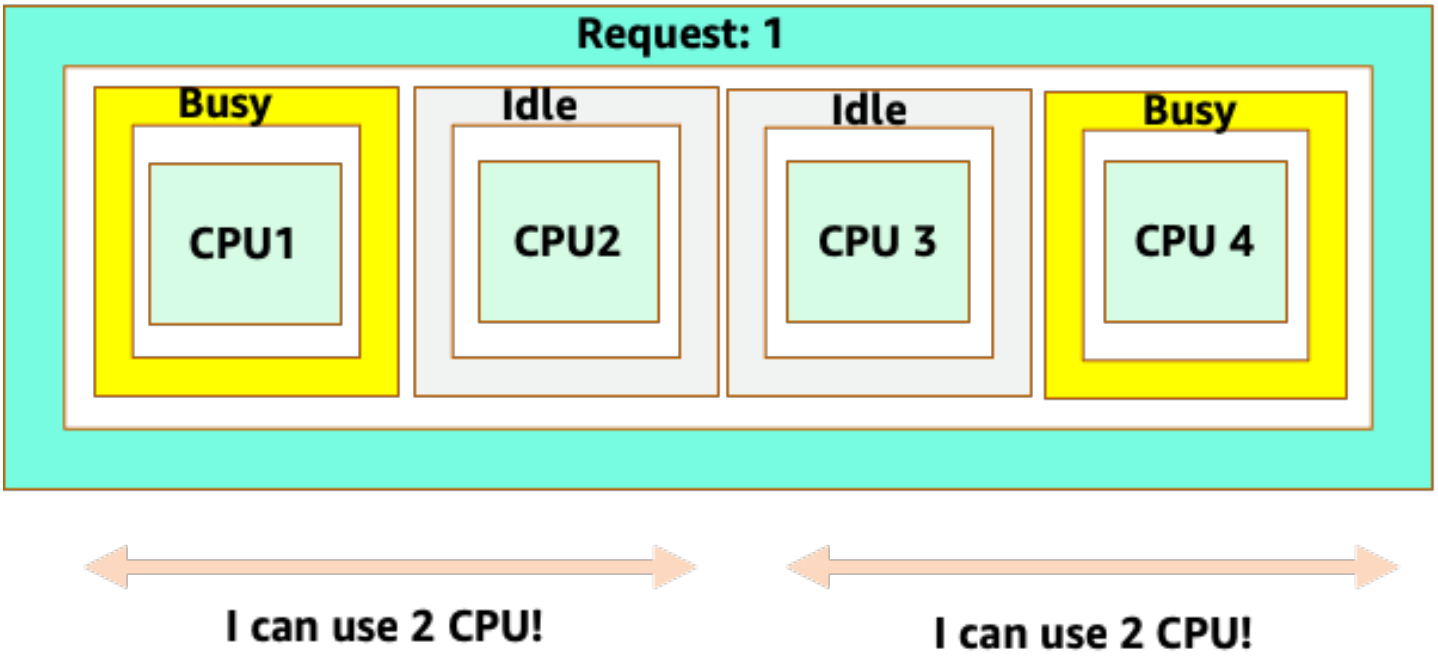


Setting Requests

It would tempting to set the request at the "sweet spot" value for that application, however this would cause inefficiencies as pictured in the diagram below. Here we have set the request value to 2 vCPU, however the average utilization of these pods runs only 1 CPU most of the time. This setting would cause us to waste 50% of our CPU cycles, which would be unacceptable.



This bring us to the complex answer to problem. Container utilization cannot be thought of in a vacuum; one must take into account the other applications running on the node. In the following example containers that are bursty in nature are mixed in with two low CPU utilization containers that might be memory constrained. In this way we allow the containers to hit their sweet spot without taxing the node.



The important concept to take away from all this is that using Kubernetes scheduler concept of cores to understand Linux container performance can lead to poor decision making as they are not related.

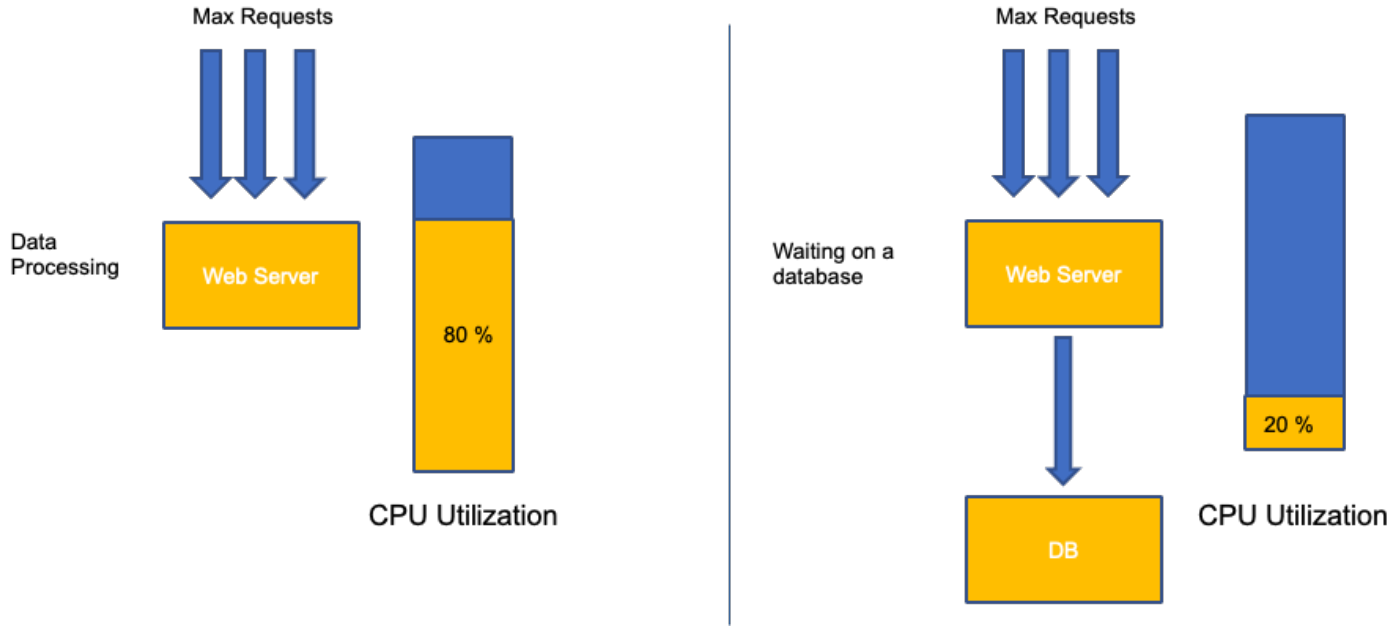
> **Note**
>
> Linux CFS has its strong points. This is especially true for I/O based workloads. However, if your application uses full cores without sidecars, and has no I/O requirements, CPU pinning can remove a great deal of complexity from this process and is encouraged with those caveats.

Utilization vs. Saturation

A common mistake in application scaling is only using CPU utilization for your scaling metric. In complex applications this is almost always a poor indicator that an application is actually saturated with requests. In the example on the left, we see all of our requests are actually hitting the web server, so CPU utilization is tracking well with saturation.

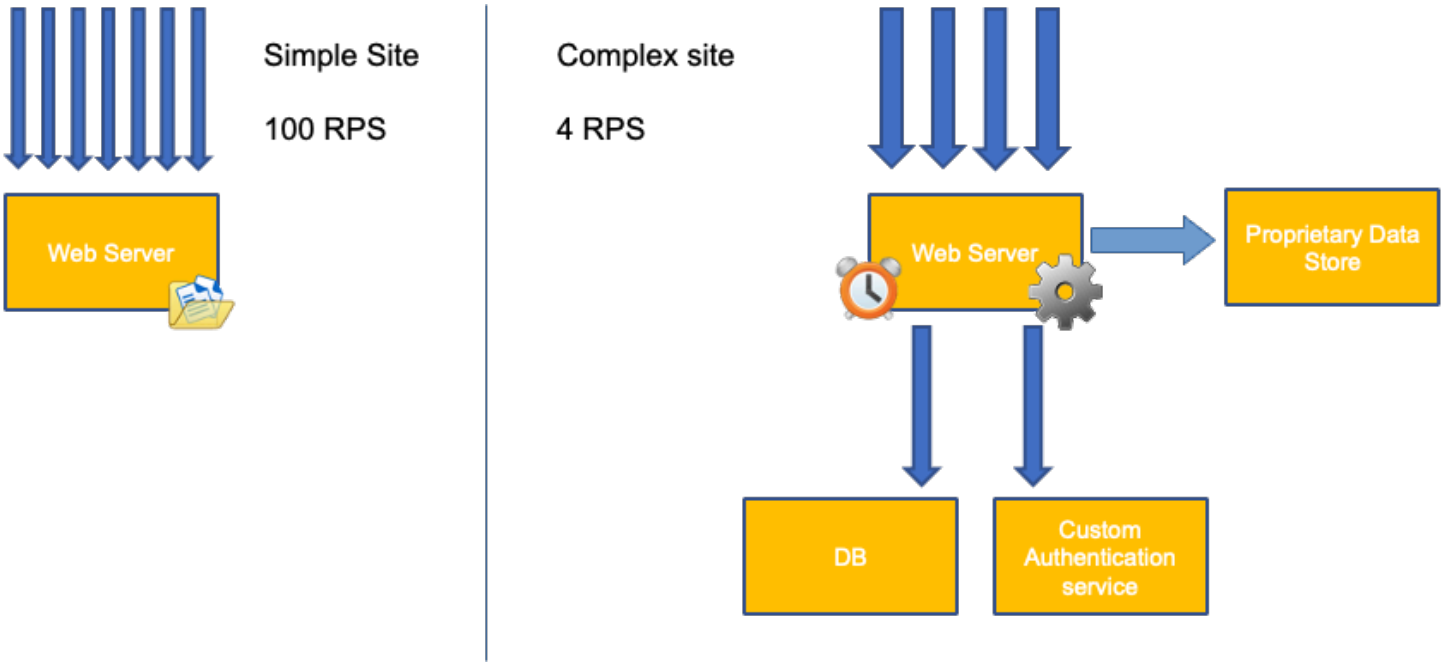
In real world applications, it's likely that some of those requests will be getting serviced by a database layer or an authentication layer, etc. In this more common case, notice CPU is not tracking

with saturation as the request is being serviced by other entities. In this case CPU is a very poor indicator for saturation.



Using the wrong metric in application performance is the number one reason for unnecessary and unpredictable scaling in Kubernetes. Great care must be taken in picking the correct saturation metric for the type of application that you're using. It is important to note that there is not a one size fits all recommendation that can be given. Depending on the language used and the type of application in question, there is a diverse set of metrics for saturation.

We might think this problem is only with CPU Utilization, however other common metrics such as request per second can also fall into the exact same problem as discussed above. Notice the request can also go to DB layers, auth layers, not being directly serviced by our web server, thus it's a poor metric for true saturation of the web server itself.



Unfortunately there are no easy answers when it comes to picking the right saturation metric. Here are some guidelines to take into consideration:

- Understand your language runtime - languages with multiple OS threads will react differently than single threaded applications, thus impacting the node differently.
- Understand the correct vertical scale - how much buffer do you want in your applications vertical scale before scaling a new pod?
- What metrics truly reflect the saturation of your application - The saturation metric for a Kafka Producer would be quite different than a complex web application.
- How do all the other applications on the node effect each other - Application performance is not done in a vacuum the other workloads on the node have a major impact.

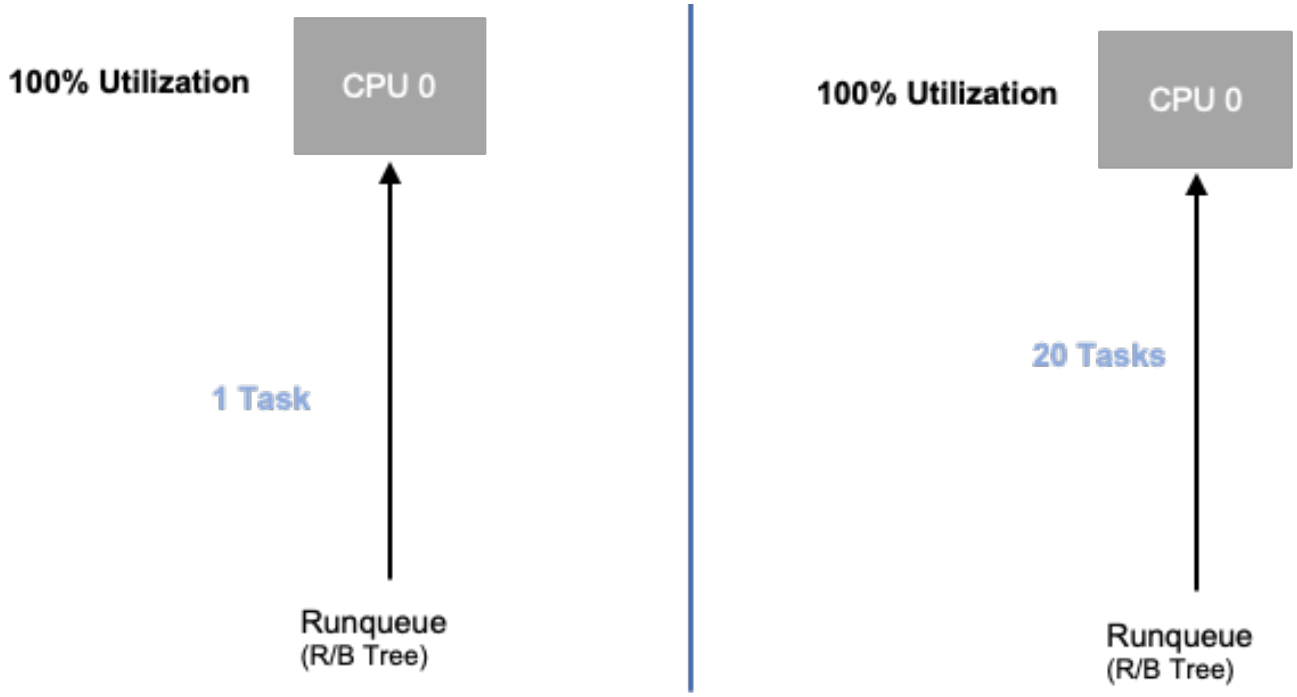
To close out this section, it would be easy to dismiss the above as overly complex and unnecessary. It can often be the case that we are experiencing an issue but we are unaware of the true nature of the problem because we are looking at the wrong metrics. In the next section we will look at how that could happen.

Node Saturation

Now that we have explored application saturation, let's look at this same concept from a node point of view. Let's take two CPUs that are 100% utilized to see the difference between utilization vs. saturation.

The vCPU on the left is 100% utilized, however no other tasks are waiting to run on this vCPU, so in a purely theoretical sense, this is quite efficient. Meanwhile, we have 20 single threaded applications waiting to get processed by a vCPU in the second example. All 20 applications now will experience some type of latency while they're waiting their turn to be processed by the vCPU. In other words, the vCPU on the right is saturated.

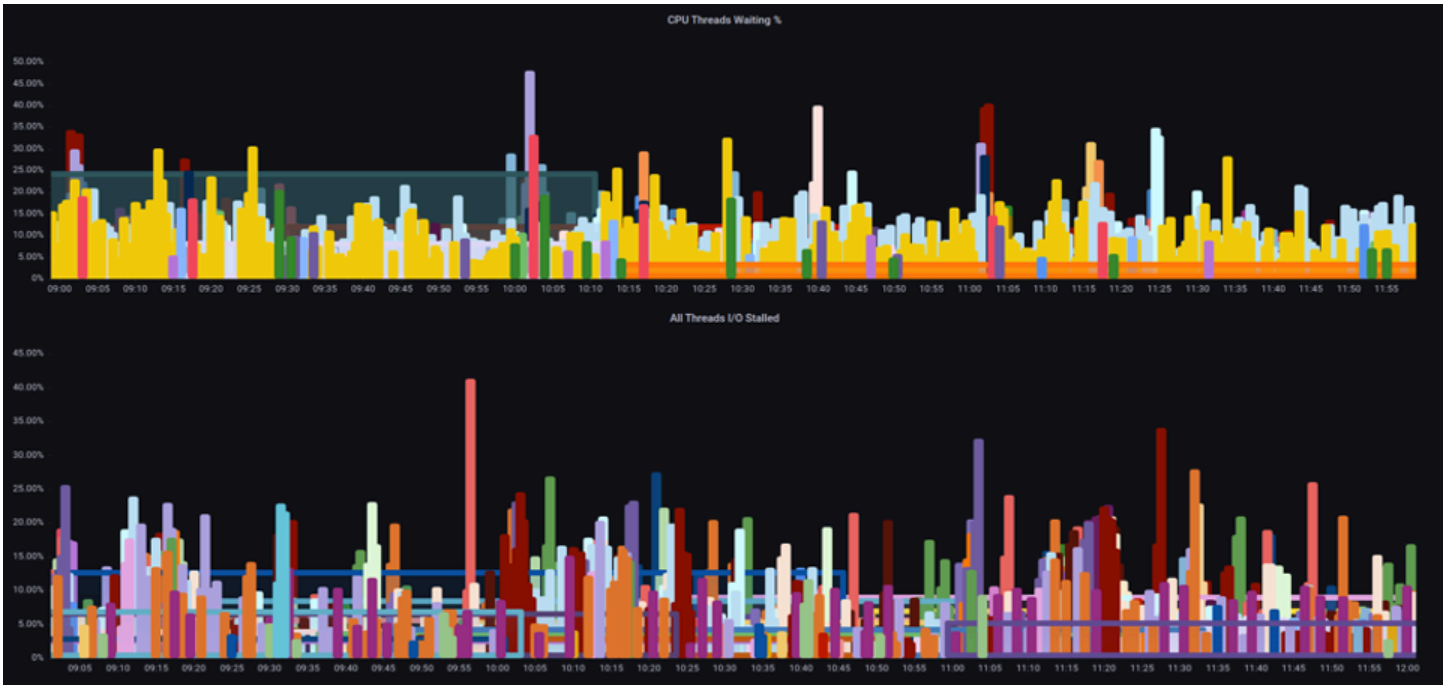
Not only would we not see this problem if we where just looking at utilization, but we might attribute this latency to something unrelated such as networking which would lead us down the wrong path.



It is important to view saturation metrics, not just utilization metrics when increasing the total number of pods running on a node at any given time as we can easily miss the fact we have over-saturated a node. For this task we can use pressure stall information metrics as seen in the below chart.

PromQL - Stalled I/O

```
topk(3, ((irate(node_pressure_io_stalled_seconds_total[1m])) * 100))
```



> **Note**
>
> For more on Pressure stall metrics, see https://facebookmicrosites.github.io/psi/docs/overview*

With these metrics we can tell if threads are waiting on CPU, or even if every thread on the box is stalled waiting on resource like memory or I/O. For example, we could see what percentage every thread on the instance was stalled waiting on I/O over the period of 1 min.

```
topk(3, ((irate(node_pressure_io_stalled_seconds_total[1m])) * 100))
```

Using this metric, we can see in the above chart every thread on the box was stalled 45% of the time waiting on I/O at the high water mark, meaning we were throwing away all of those CPU cycles in that minute. Understanding that this is happening can help us reclaim a significant amount of vCPU time, thus making scaling more efficient.

HPA V2

It is recommended to use the autoscaling/v2 version of the HPA API. The older versions of the HPA API could get stuck scaling in certain edge cases. It was also limited to pods only doubling during each scaling step, which created issues for small deployments that needed to scale rapidly.

Autoscaling/v2 allows us more flexibility to include multiple criteria to scale on and allows us a great deal of flexibility when using custom and external metrics (non K8s metrics).

As an example, we can scaling on the highest of three values (see below). We scale if the average utilization of all the pods are over 50%, if custom metrics the packets per second of the ingress exceed an average of 1,000, or ingress object exceeds 10K request per second.

> **Note**
>
> This is just to show the flexibility of the auto-scaling API, we recommend against overly complex rules that can be difficult to troubleshoot in production.

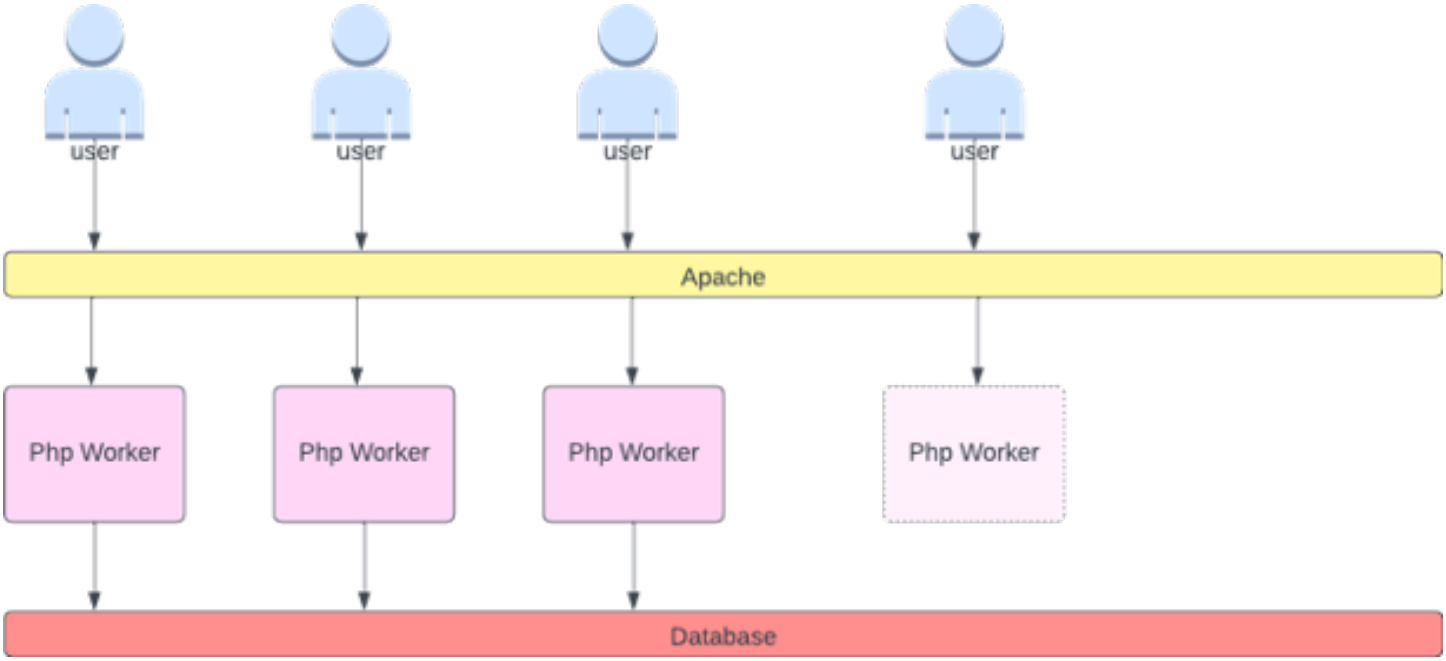
```
apiVersion: autoscaling/v2
kind: HorizontalPodAutoscaler
metadata:
  name: php-apache
spec:
  scaleTargetRef:
    apiVersion: apps/v1
    kind: Deployment
    name: php-apache
  minReplicas: 1
  maxReplicas: 10
  metrics:
  - type: Resource
    resource:
      name: cpu
      target:
        type: Utilization
        averageUtilization: 50
  - type: Pods
    pods:
      metric:
        name: packets-per-second
      target:
        type: AverageValue
        averageValue: 1k
  - type: Object
    object:
      metric:
        name: requests-per-second
```

```
    describedObject:
      apiVersion: networking.k8s.io/v1
      kind: Ingress
      name: main-route
    target:
      type: Value
      value: 10k
```

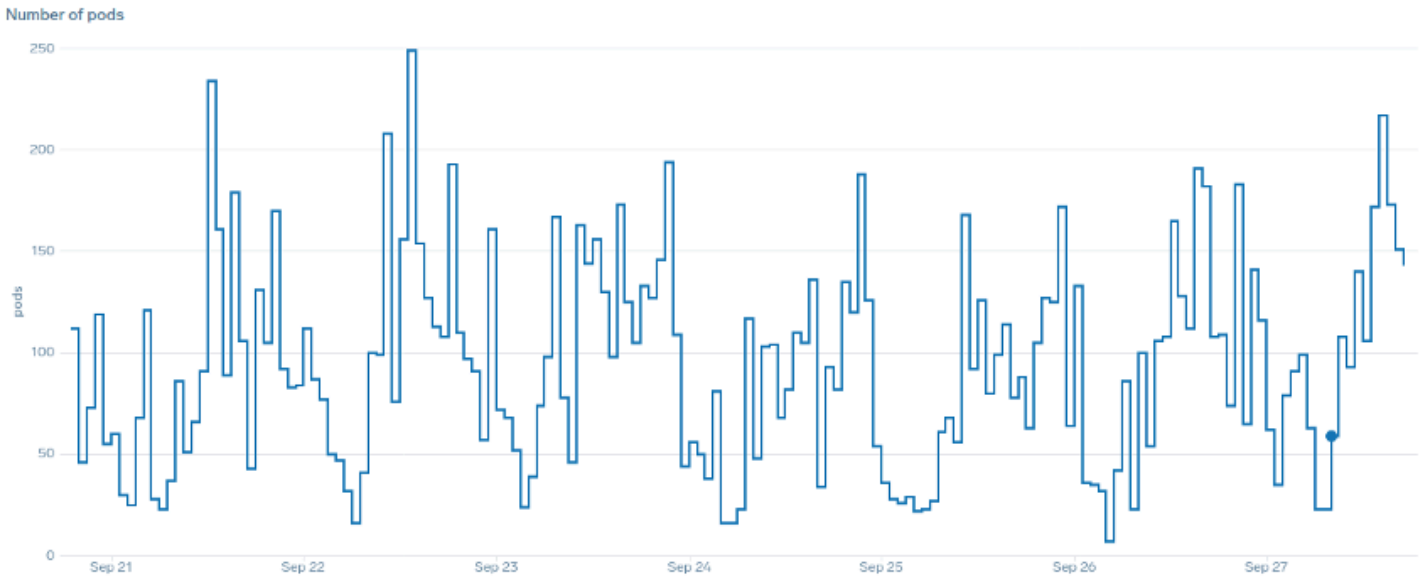
However, we learned the danger of using such metrics for complex web applications. In this case we would be better served by using custom or external metric that accurately reflects the saturation of our application vs. the utilization. HPAv2 allows for this by having the ability to scale according to any metric, however we still need to find and export that metric to Kubernetes for use.

For example, we can look at the active thread queue count in Apache. This often creates a "smoother" scaling profile (more on that term soon). If a thread is active, it doesn't matter if that thread is waiting on a database layer or servicing a request locally, if all of the applications threads are being used, it's a great indication that application is saturated.

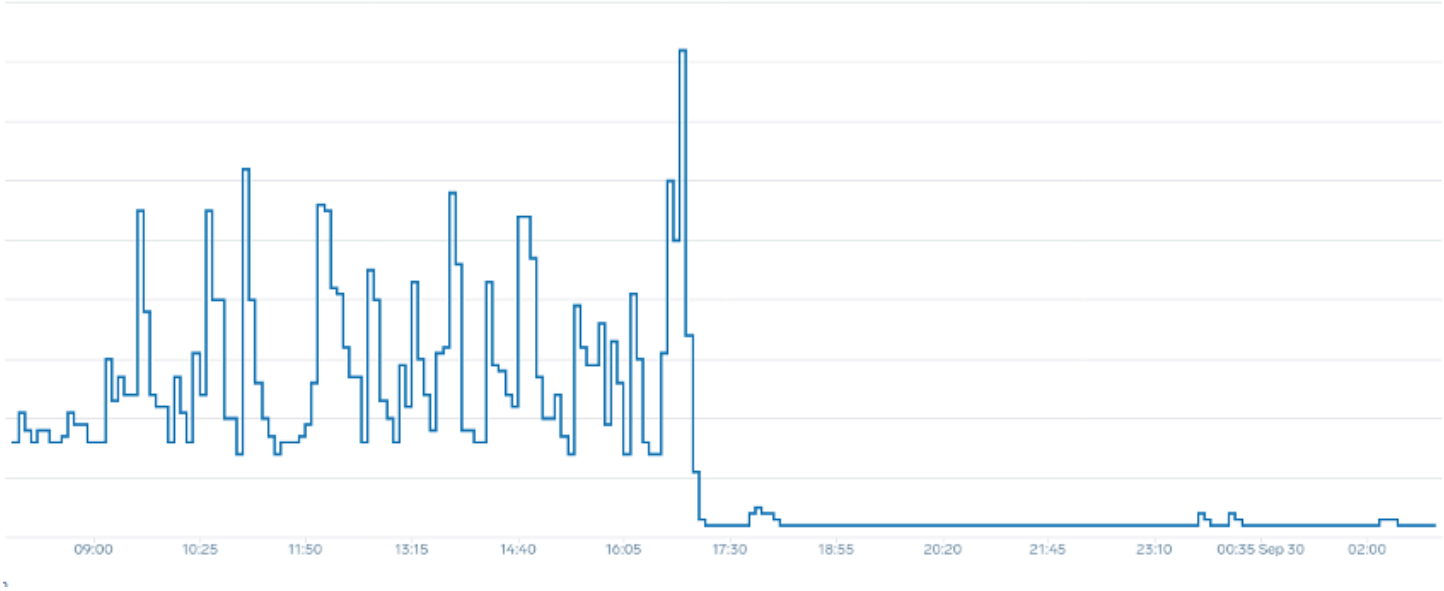
We can use this thread exhaustion as a signal to create a new pod with a fully available thread pool. This also gives us control over how big a buffer we want in the application to absorb during times of heavy traffic. For example, if we had a total thread pool of 10, scaling at 4 threads used vs. 8 threads used would have a major impact on the buffer we have available when scaling the application. A setting of 4 would make sense for an application that needs to rapidly scale under heavy load, where a setting of 8 would be more efficient with our resources if we had plenty of time to scale due to the number of requests increasing slowly vs. sharply over time.



What do we mean by the term "smooth" when it comes to scaling? Notice the below chart where we are using CPU as a metric. The pods in this deployment are spiking in a short period for from 50 pods, all the way up to 250 pods only to immediately scale down again. This is highly inefficient scaling is the leading cause on churn on clusters.



Notice how after we change to a metric that reflects the correct sweet spot of our application (mid-part of chart), we are able to scale smoothly. Our scaling is now efficient, and our pods are allowed to fully scale with the headroom we provided by adjusting requests settings. Now a smaller group of pods are doing the work the hundreds of pods were doing before. Real world data shows that this is the number one factor in scalability of Kubernetes clusters.

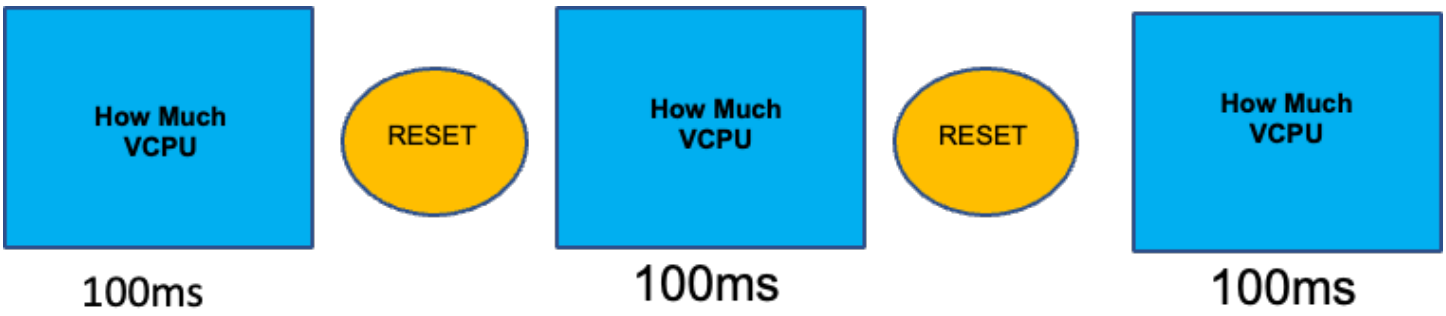


The key takeaway is CPU utilization is only one dimension of both application and node performance. Using CPU utilization as a sole health indicator for our nodes and applications creates problems in scaling, performance and cost which are all tightly linked concepts. The more performant the application and nodes are, the less that you need to scale, which in turn lowers your costs.

Finding and using the correct saturation metrics for scaling your particular application also allows you to monitor and alarm on the true bottlenecks for that application. If this critical step is skipped, reports of performance problems will be difficult, if not impossible, to understand.

Setting CPU Limits

To round out this section on misunderstood topics, we will cover CPU limits. In short, limits are metadata associated with the container that has a counter that resets every 100ms. This helps Linux keep track of how many CPU resources are used node-wide by a specific container in a 100ms period of time.



A common error with setting limits is assuming that the application is single threaded and only running on it's "`assigned"` vCPU. In the above section we learned that CFS doesn't assign cores, and in reality a container running large thread pools will schedule on all available vCPU's on the box.

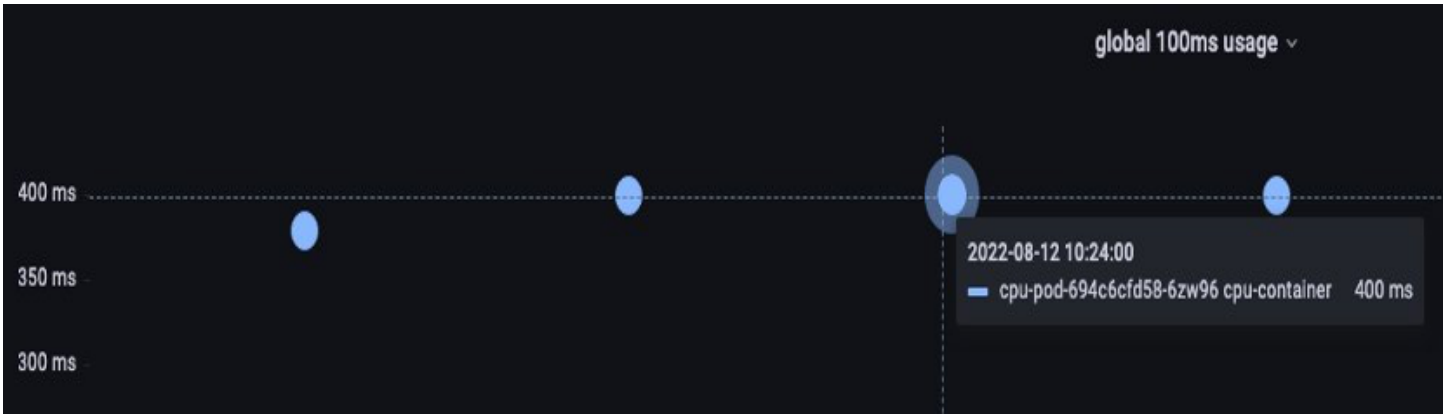
If 64 OS threads are running across 64 available cores (from a Linux node perspective) we will make the total bill of used CPU time in a 100ms period quite large after the time running on all of those 64 cores are added up. Since this might only occur during a garbage collection process it can be quite easy to miss something like this. This is why it is necessary to use metrics to ensure we have the correct usage over time before attempting to set a limit.

Fortunately, we have a way to see exactly how much vCPU is being used by all the threads in a application. We will use the metric `container_cpu_usage_seconds_total` for this purpose.

Since throttling logic happens every 100ms and this metric is a per second metric, we will PromQL to match this 100ms period. If you would like to dive deep into this PromQL statement work please see the following blog.

PromQL query:

```
topk(3, max by (pod, container)(rate(container_cpu_usage_seconds_total{image!="",
 instance="$instance"}[$__rate_interval]))) / 10
```



Once we feel we have the right value, we can put the limit in production. It then becomes necessary to see if our application is being throttled due to something unexpected. We can do this by looking at `container_cpu_throttled_seconds_total`

```
topk(3, max by (pod, container)(rate(container_cpu_cfs_throttled_seconds_total{image!
=``""``, instance=``"$instance"``}[$__rate_interval]))) / 10
```

Memory

The memory allocation is another example where it is easy to confuse Kubernetes scheduling behavior for Linux CGroup behavior. This is a more nuanced topic as there have been major changes in the way that CGroup v2 handles memory in Linux and Kubernetes has changed its syntax to reflect this; read this blog for further details.

Unlike CPU requests, memory requests go unused after the scheduling process completes. This is because we can not compress memory in CGroup v1 the same way we can with CPU. That leaves us with just memory limits, which are designed to act as a fail safe for memory leaks by terminating the pod completely. This is an all or nothing style proposition, however we have now been given new ways to address this problem.

First, it is important to understand that setting the right amount of memory for containers is not a straightforward as it appears. The file system in Linux will use memory as a cache to improve performance. This cache will grow over time, and it can be hard to know how much memory is just nice to have for the cache but can be reclaimed without a significant impact to application performance. This often results in misinterpreting memory usage.

Having the ability to "compress" memory was one of the primary drivers behind CGroup v2. For more history on why CGroup V2 was necessary, please see Chris Down's presentation at LISA21 where he covers why being unable to set the minimum memory correctly was one of the reasons that drove him to create CGroup v2 and pressure stall metrics.

Fortunately, Kubernetes now has the concept of `memory.min` and `memory.high` under `requests.memory`. This gives us the option of aggressive releasing this cached memory for other containers to use. Once the container hits the memory high limit, the kernel can aggressively reclaim that container's memory up to the value set at `memory.min`. Thus giving us more flexibility when a node comes under memory pressure.

The key question becomes, what value to set `memory.min` to? This is where memory pressure stall metrics come into play. We can use these metrics to detect memory "thrashing" at a container level. Then we can use controllers such as fbtax to detect the correct values for `memory.min` by looking for this memory thrashing, and dynamically set the `memory.min` value to this setting.

Summary

To sum up the section, it is easy to conflate the following concepts:

- Utilization and Saturation
- Linux performance rules with Kubernetes Scheduler logic

Great care must be taken to keep these concepts separated. Performance and scale are linked on a deep level. Unnecessary scaling creates performance problems, which in turn creates scaling problems.

Kubernetes Upstream SLOs

Amazon EKS runs the same code as the upstream Kubernetes releases and ensures that EKS clusters operate within the SLOs defined by the Kubernetes community. The Kubernetes

Scalability Special Interest Group (SIG) defines the scalability goals and investigates bottlenecks in performance through SLIs and SLOs.

SLIs are how we measure a system like metrics or measures that can be used to determine how "well" the system is running, e.g. request latency or count. SLOs define the values that are expected for when the system is running "well", e.g. request latency remains less than 3 seconds. The Kubernetes SLOs and SLIs focus on the performance of the Kubernetes components and are completely independent from the Amazon EKS Service SLAs which focus on availability of the EKS cluster endpoint.

Kubernetes has a number of features that allow users to extend the system with custom add-ons or drivers, like CSI drivers, admission webhooks, and auto-scalers. These extensions can drastically impact the performance of a Kubernetes cluster in different ways, i.e. an admission webhook with `failurePolicy=Ignore` could add latency to K8s API requests if the webhook target is unavailable. The Kubernetes Scalability SIG defines scalability using a "you promise, we promise" framework:

> If you promise to: - correctly configure your cluster - use extensibility features "reasonably" - keep the load in the cluster within recommended limits
>
> then we promise that your cluster scales, i.e.: - all the SLOs are satisfied.

Kubernetes SLOs

The Kubernetes SLOs don't account for all of the plugins and external limitations that could impact a cluster, such as worker node scaling or admission webhooks. These SLOs focus on Kubernetes components and ensure that Kubernetes actions and resources are operating within expectations. The SLOs help Kubernetes developers ensure that changes to Kubernetes code do not degrade performance for the entire system.

The Kuberntes Scalability SIG defines the following official SLO/SLIs. The Amazon EKS team regularly runs scalability tests on EKS clusters for these SLOs/SLIs to monitor for performance degradation as changes are made and new versions are released.

Objective	Definition	SLO
API request latency (mutating)	Latency of processing mutating API calls for single objects for every (resource,	In default Kubernetes installation, for every (resource, verb) pair,

Objective	Definition	SLO
	verb) pair, measured as 99th percentile over last 5 minutes	excluding virtual and aggregated resources and Custom Resource Definitions, 99th percentile per cluster-day <= 1s
API request latency (read-only)	Latency of processing non-streaming read-only API calls for every (resource, scope) pair, measured as 99th percentile over last 5 minutes	In default Kubernetes installation, for every (resource, scope) pair, excluding virtual and aggregated resources and Custom Resource Definitions, 99th percentile per cluster-day: (a) <= 1s if `scope=resource` (b) <= 30s otherwise (if `scope=namespace` or `scope=cluster`)
Pod startup latency	Startup latency of schedulable stateless pods, excluding time to pull images and run init containers, measured from pod creation timestamp to when all its containers are reported as started and observed via watch, measured as 99th percentile over last 5 minutes	In default Kubernetes installation, 99th percentile per cluster-day <= 5s

API Request Latency

The `kube-apiserver` has `--request-timeout` defined as `1m0s` by default, which means a request can run for up to one minute (60 seconds) before being timed out and cancelled. The SLOs defined for Latency are broken out by the type of request that is being made, which can be mutating or read-only:

Mutating

Mutating requests in Kubernetes make changes to a resource, such as creations, deletions, or updates. These requests are expensive because those changes must be written to the etcd backend before the updated object is returned. Etcd is a distributed key-value store that is used for all Kubernetes cluster data.

This latency is measured as the 99th percentile over 5min for (resource, verb) pairs of Kubernetes resources, for example this would measure the latency for Create Pod requests and Update Node requests. The request latency must be <= 1 second to satisfy the SLO.

Read-only

Read-only requests retrieve a single resource (such as Get Pod X) or a collection (such as "Get all Pods from Namespace X"). The `kube-apiserver` maintains a cache of objects, so the requested resources may be returned from cache or they may need to be retrieved from etcd first. These latencies are also measured by the 99th percentile over 5 minutes, however read-only requests can have separate scopes. The SLO defines two different objectives:

- For requests made for a *single* resource (i.e. `kubectl get pod -n mynamespace my-controller-xxx`), the request latency should remain <= 1 second.
- For requests that are made for multiple resources in a namespace or a cluster (for example, `kubectl get pods -A`) the latency should remain <= 30 seconds

The SLO has different target values for different request scopes because requests made for a list of Kubernetes resources expect the details of all objects in the request to be returned within the SLO. On large clusters, or large collections of resources, this can result in large response sizes which can take some time to return. For example, in a cluster running tens of thousands of Pods with each Pod being roughly 1 KiB when encoded in JSON, returning all Pods in the cluster would consist of 10MB or more. Kubernetes clients can help reduce this response size using APIListChunking to retrieve large collections of resources.

Pod Startup Latency

This SLO is primarily concerned with the time it takes from Pod creation to when the containers in that Pod actually begin execution. To measure this the difference from the creation timestamp recorded on the Pod, and when a WATCH on that Pod reports the containers have started is calculated (excluding time for container image pulls and init container execution). To satisfy the SLO the 99th percentile per cluster-day of this Pod Startup Latency must remain <=5 seconds.

Note that this SLO assumes that the worker nodes already exist in this cluster in a ready state for the Pod to be scheduled on. This SLO does not account for image pulls or init container executions, and also limits the test to "stateless pods" which don't leverage persistent storage plugins.

Kubernetes SLI Metrics

Kubernetes is also improving the Observability around the SLIs by adding Prometheus metrics to Kubernetes components that track these SLIs over time. Using Prometheus Query Language (PromQL) we can build queries that display the SLI performance over time in tools like Prometheus or Grafana dashboards, below are some examples for the SLOs above.

API Server Request Latency

Metric	Definition
apiserver_request_sli_duration_seconds	Response latency distribution (not counting webhook duration and priority & fairness queue wait times) in seconds for each verb, group, version, resource, subresource, scope and component.
apiserver_request_duration_seconds	Response latency distribution in seconds for each verb, dry run value, group, version, resource, subresource, scope and component.

> **Note**
>
> The `apiserver_request_sli_duration_seconds` metric is available starting in Kubernetes 1.27.

You can use these metrics to investigate the API Server response times and if there are bottlenecks in the Kubernetes components or other plugins/components. The queries below are based on the community SLO dashboard.

API Request latency SLI (mutating) - this time does *not* include webhook execution or time waiting in queue. `histogram_quantile(0.99, sum(rate(apiserver_request_sli_duration_seconds_bucket{verb=~"CREATE|`

```
DELETE|PATCH|POST|PUT", subresource!~"proxy|attach|log|exec|portforward"}
[5m])) by (resource, subresource, verb, scope, le)) > 0
```

API Request latency Total (mutating) - this is the total time the request took on the API server, this time may be longer than the SLI time because it includes webhook execution and API Priority and Fairness wait times. `histogram_quantile(0.99, sum(rate(apiserver_request_duration_seconds_bucket{verb=~"CREATE|DELETE|PATCH|POST|PUT", subresource!~"proxy|attach|log|exec|portforward"}[5m])) by (resource, subresource, verb, scope, le)) > 0`

In these queries we are excluding the streaming API requests which do not return immediately, such as `kubectl port-forward` or `kubectl exec` requests (`subresource!~"proxy|attach|log|exec|portforward"`), and we are filtering for only the Kubernetes verbs that modify objects (`verb=~"CREATE|DELETE|PATCH|POST|PUT"`). We are then calculating the 99th percentile of that latency over the last 5 minutes.

We can use a similar query for the read only API requests, we simply modify the verbs we're filtering for to include the Read only actions `LIST` and `GET`. There are also different SLO thresholds depending on the scope of the request, i.e. getting a single resource or listing a number of resources.

API Request latency SLI (read-only) - this time does *not* include webhook execution or time waiting in queue. For a single resource (scope=resource, threshold=1s) `histogram_quantile(0.99, sum(rate(apiserver_request_sli_duration_seconds_bucket{verb=~"GET", scope=~"resource"}[5m])) by (resource, subresource, verb, scope, le))`

For a collection of resources in the same namespace (scope=namespace, threshold=5s) `histogram_quantile(0.99, sum(rate(apiserver_request_sli_duration_seconds_bucket{verb=~"LIST", scope=~"namespace"}[5m])) by (resource, subresource, verb, scope, le))`

For a collection of resources across the entire cluster (scope=cluster, threshold=30s) `histogram_quantile(0.99, sum(rate(apiserver_request_sli_duration_seconds_bucket{verb=~"LIST", scope=~"cluster"}[5m])) by (resource, subresource, verb, scope, le))`

API Request latency Total (read-only) - this is the total time the request took on the API server, this time may be longer than the SLI time because it includes webhook execution and wait

times. For a single resource (scope=resource, threshold=1s) `histogram_quantile(0.99, sum(rate(apiserver_request_duration_seconds_bucket{verb=~"GET", scope=~"resource"}[5m])) by (resource, subresource, verb, scope, le))`

For a collection of resources in the same namespace (scope=namespace, threshold=5s) `histogram_quantile(0.99, sum(rate(apiserver_request_duration_seconds_bucket{verb=~"LIST", scope=~"namespace"}[5m])) by (resource, subresource, verb, scope, le))`

For a collection of resources across the entire cluster (scope=cluster, threshold=30s) `histogram_quantile(0.99, sum(rate(apiserver_request_duration_seconds_bucket{verb=~"LIST", scope=~"cluster"}[5m])) by (resource, subresource, verb, scope, le))`

The SLI metrics provide insight into how Kubernetes components are performing by excluding the time that requests spend waiting in API Priority and Fairness queues, working through admission webhooks, or other Kubernetes extensions. The total metrics provide a more holistic view as it reflects the time your applications would be waiting for a response from the API server. Comparing these metrics can provide insight into where the delays in request processing are being introduced.

Pod Startup Latency

Metric	Definition
kubelet_pod_start_sli_duration_seconds	Duration in seconds to start a pod, excluding time to pull images and run init containers, measured from pod creation timestamp to when all its containers are reported as started and observed via watch
kubelet_pod_start_duration_seconds	Duration in seconds from kubelet seeing a pod for the first time to the pod starting to run. This does not include the time to schedule the pod or scale out worker node capacity.

> **Note**
>
> `kubelet_pod_start_sli_duration_seconds` is available starting in Kubernetes 1.27.

Similar to the queries above you can use these metrics to gain insight into how long node scaling, image pulls and init containers are delaying the pod launch compared to Kubelet actions.

Pod startup latency SLI - this is the time from the pod being created to when the application containers reported as running. This includes the time it takes for the worker node capacity to be available and the pod to be scheduled, but this does not include the time it takes to pull images or for the init containers to run. `histogram_quantile(0.99, sum(rate(kubelet_pod_start_sli_duration_seconds_bucket[5m])) by (le))`

Pod startup latency Total - this is the time it takes the kubelet to start the pod for the first time. This is measured from when the kubelet recieves the pod via WATCH, which does not include the time for worker node scaling or scheduling. This includes the time to pull images and init containers to run. `histogram_quantile(0.99, sum(rate(kubelet_pod_start_duration_seconds_bucket[5m])) by (le))`

SLOs on Your Cluster

If you are collecting the Prometheus metrics from the Kubernetes resources in your EKS cluster you can gain deeper insights into the performance of the Kubernetes control plane components.

The perf-tests repo includes Grafana dashboards that display the latencies and critical performance metrics for the cluster during tests. The perf-tests configuration leverages the kube-prometheus-stack, an open source project that comes configured to collect Kubernetes metrics, but you can also use Amazon Managed Prometheus and Amazon Managed Grafana.

If you are using the `kube-prometheus-stack` or similar Prometheus solution you can install the same dashboard to observe the SLOs on your cluster in real time.

1. You will first need to install the Prometheus Rules that are used in the dashboards with `kubectl apply -f prometheus-rules.yaml`. You can download a copy of the rules here: https://github.com/kubernetes/perf-tests/blob/master/clusterloader2/pkg/prometheus/manifests/prometheus-rules.yaml
   a. Be sure to check the namespace in the file matches your environment

   b. Verify that the labels match the `prometheus.prometheusSpec.ruleSelector` helm value if you are using `kube-prometheus-stack`

2. You can then install the dashboards in Grafana. The json dashboards and python scripts to generate them are available here: https://github.com/kubernetes/perf-tests/tree/master/clusterloader2/pkg/prometheus/manifests/dashboards

   a. the `slo.json` dashboard displays the performance of the cluster in relation to the Kubernetes SLOs

Consider that the SLOs are focused on the performance of the Kubernetes components in your clusters, but there are additional metrics you can review which provide different perspectives or insights in to your cluster. Kubernetes community projects like Kube-state-metrics can help you quickly analyze trends in your cluster. Most common plugins and drivers from the Kubernetes community also emit Prometheus metrics, allowing you to investigate things like autoscalers or custom schedulers.

The Observability Best Practices Guide has examples of other Kubernetes metrics you can use to gain further insight.

Known Limits and Service Quotas

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Amazon EKS can be used for a variety of workloads and can interact with a wide range of AWS services, and we have seen customer workloads encounter a similar range of AWS service quotas and other issues that hamper scalability.

Your AWS account has default quotas (an upper limit on the number of each AWS resource your team can request). Each AWS service defines their own quota, and quotas are generally region-specific. You can request increases for some quotas (soft limits), and other quotas cannot be increased (hard limits). You should consider these values when architecting your applications. Consider reviewing these service limits periodically and incorporate them during in your application design.

You can review the usage in your account and open a quota increase request at the AWS Service Quotas console, or using the AWS CLI. Refer to the AWS documentation from the respective AWS Service for more details on the Service Quotas and any further restrictions or notices on their increase.

> **Note**
>
> Amazon EKS Service Quotas lists the service quotas and has links to request increases where available.

Other AWS Service Quotas

We have seen EKS customers impacted by the quotas listed below for other AWS services. Some of these may only apply to specific use cases or configurations, however you may consider if your solution will encounter any of these as it scales. The Quotas are organized by Service and each Quota has an ID in the format of L-XXXXXXXX you can use to look it up in the AWS Service Quotas console

Service	Quota (L-xxxxx)	Impact	ID (L-xxxxx)	default
IAM	Roles per account	Can limit the number of clusters or IRSA roles in an account.	L-FE177D64	1,000
IAM	OpenId connect providers per account	Can limit the number of Clusters per account, OpenID Connect is used by IRSA	L-858F3967	100
IAM	Role trust policy length	Can limit the number of of clusters an IAM	L-C07B4B0D	2,048

Service	Quota (L-xxxxx)	Impact	ID (L-xxxxx)	default
		role is associated with for IRSA		
VPC	Security groups per network interface	Can limit the control or connectivity of the networking for your cluster	L-2AFB9258	5
VPC	IPv4 CIDR blocks per VPC	Can limit the number of EKS Worker Nodes	L-83CA0A9D	5
VPC	Routes per route table	Can limit the control or connectivity of the networking for your cluster	L-93826ACB	50
VPC	Active VPC peering connections per VPC	Can limit the control or connectivity of the networking for your cluster	L-7E9ECCDB	50
VPC	Inbound or outbound rules per security group.	Can limit the control or connectivity of the networking for your cluster, some controlle rs in EKS create new rules	L-0EA8095F	50

Service	Quota (L-xxxxx)	Impact	ID (L-xxxxx)	default
VPC	VPCs per Region	Can limit the number of Clusters per account or the control or connectivity of the networking for your cluster	L-F678F1CE	5
VPC	Internet gateways per Region	Can limit the number of Clusters per account or the control or connectivity of the networking for your cluster	L-A4707A72	5
VPC	Network interfaces per Region	Can limit the number of EKS Worker nodes, or Impact EKS control plane scaling/update activities.	L-DF5E4CA3	5,000
VPC	Network Address Usage	Can limit the number of Clusters per account or the control or connectivity of the networking for your cluster	L-BB24F6E5	64,000

Service	Quota (L-xxxxx)	Impact	ID (L-xxxxx)	default
VPC	Peered Network Address Usage	Can limit the number of Clusters per account or the control or connectivity of the networking for your cluster	L-CD17FD4B	128,000
ELB	Listeners per Network Load Balancer	Can limit the control of traffic ingress to the cluster.	L-57A373D6	50
ELB	Target Groups per Region	Can limit the control of traffic ingress to the cluster.	L-B22855CB	3,000
ELB	Targets per Application Load Balancer	Can limit the control of traffic ingress to the cluster.	L-7E6692B2	1,000
ELB	Targets per Network Load Balancer	Can limit the control of traffic ingress to the cluster.	L-EEF1AD04	3,000
ELB	Targets per Availability Zone per Network Load Balancer	Can limit the control of traffic ingress to the cluster.	L-B211E961	500

Service	Quota (L-xxxxx)	Impact	ID (L-xxxxx)	default
ELB	Targets per Target Group per Region	Can limit the control of traffic ingress to the cluster.	L-A0D0B863	1,000
ELB	Application Load Balancers per Region	Can limit the control of traffic ingress to the cluster.	L-53DA6B97	50
ELB	Classic Load Balancers per Region	Can limit the control of traffic ingress to the cluster.	L-E9E9831D	20
ELB	Network Load Balancers per Region	Can limit the control of traffic ingress to the cluster.	L-69A177A2	50
EC2	Running On-Demand Standard (A, C, D, H, I, M, R, T, Z) instances (as a maximum vCPU count)	Can limit the number of EKS Worker Nodes	L-1216C47A	5
EC2	All Standard (A, C, D, H, I, M, R, T, Z) Spot Instance Requests (as a maximum vCPU count)	Can limit the number of EKS Worker Nodes	L-34B43A08	5

Service	Quota (L-xxxxx)	Impact	ID (L-xxxxx)	default
EC2	EC2-VPC Elastic IPs	Can limit the number of NAT GWs (and thus VPCs), which may limit the number of clusters in a region	L-0263D0A3	5
EBS	Snapshots per Region	Can limit the backup strategy for stateful workloads	L-309BACF6	100,000
EBS	Storage for General Purpose SSD (gp3) volumes, in TiB	Can limit the number of EKS Worker Nodes, or Persisten tVolume storage	L-7A658B76	50
EBS	Storage for General Purpose SSD (gp2) volumes, in TiB	Can limit the number of EKS Worker Nodes, or Persisten tVolume storage	L-D18FCD1D	50
ECR	Registered repositories	Can limit the number of workloads in your clusters	L-CFEB8E8D	100,000
ECR	Images per repository	Can limit the number of workloads in your clusters	L-03A36CE1	20,000

Service	Quota (L-xxxxx)	Impact	ID (L-xxxxx)	default
SecretsManager	Secrets per Region	Can limit the number of workloads in your clusters	L-2F66C23C	500,000

AWS Request Throttling

AWS services also implement request throttling to ensure that they remain performant and available for all customers. Similar to Service Quotas, each AWS service maintains their own request throttling thresholds. Consider reviewing the respective AWS Service documentation if your workloads will need to quickly issue a large number of API calls or if you notice request throttling errors in your application.

EC2 API requests around provisioning EC2 network interfaces or IP addresses can encounter request throttling in large clusters or when clusters scale drastically. The table below shows some of the API actions that we have seen customers encounter request throttling from. You can review the EC2 rate limit defaults and the steps to request a rate limit increase in the EC2 documentation on Rate Throttling.

Mutating Actions	Read-only Actions
AssignPrivateIpAddresses	DescribeDhcpOptions
AttachNetworkInterface	DescribeInstances
CreateNetworkInterface	DescribeNetworkInterfaces
DeleteNetworkInterface	DescribeSecurityGroups
DeleteTags	DescribeTags
DetachNetworkInterface	DescribeVpcs
ModifyNetworkInterfaceAttribute	DescribeVolumes
UnassignPrivateIpAddresses	

Other Known Limits

- Route 53 also has a fairly low rate limit of 5 requests per second to the Route 53 API. If you have a large number of domains to update with a project like External DNS you may see rate throttling and delays in updating domains.
  - Some Nitro instance types have a volume attachment limit of 28 that is shared between Amazon EBS volumes, network interfaces, and NVMe instance store volumes. If your workloads are mounting numerous EBS volumes you may encounter limits to the pod density you can achieve with these instance types
  - There is a maximum number of connections that can be tracked per Ec2 instance. If your workloads are handling a large number of connections you may see communication failures or errors because this maximum has been hit. You can use the `conntrack_allowance_available` and `conntrack_allowance_exceeded` network performance metrics to monitor the number of tracked connections on your EKS worker nodes.
  - In EKS environment, etcd storage limit is **8 GiB** as per upstream guidance. Please monitor metric `apiserver_storage_size_bytes` to track etcd db size. You can refer to alert rules `etcdBackendQuotaLowSpace` and `etcdExcessiveDatabaseGrowth` to setup this monitoring.

Best Practices for Cluster Upgrades

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

This guide shows cluster administrators how to plan and execute their Amazon EKS upgrade strategy. It also describes how to upgrade self-managed nodes, managed node groups, Karpenter nodes, and Fargate nodes. It does not include guidance on EKS Anywhere, self-managed Kubernetes, AWS Outposts, or AWS Local Zones.

Overview

A Kubernetes version encompasses both the control plane and the data plane. To ensure smooth operation, both the control plane and the data plane should run the same Kubernetes minor version, such as 1.24. While AWS manages and upgrades the control plane, updating the worker nodes in the data plane is your responsibility.

- **Control plane** — The version of the control plane is determined by the Kubernetes API server. In Amazon EKS clusters, AWS takes care of managing this component. Control plane upgrades can be initiated via the AWS API.
- **Data plane** — The data plane version is associated with the Kubelet versions running on your individual nodes. It's possible to have nodes in the same cluster running different versions. You can check the versions of all nodes by running `kubectl get nodes`.

Before Upgrading

If you're planning to upgrade your Kubernetes version in Amazon EKS, there are a few important policies, tools, and procedures you should put in place before starting an upgrade.

- **Understand Deprecation Policies** — Gain a deep understanding of how the Kubernetes deprecation policy works. Be aware of any upcoming changes that may affect your existing applications. Newer versions of Kubernetes often phase out certain APIs and features, potentially causing issues for running applications.

- **Review Kubernetes Change Log** — Thoroughly review the Kubernetes change log alongside Amazon EKS Kubernetes versions to understand any possible impact to your cluster, such as breaking changes that may affect your workloads.
- **Assess Cluster Add-Ons Compatibility** — Amazon EKS doesn't automatically update an add-on when new versions are released or after you update your cluster to a new Kubernetes minor version. Review Updating an add-on to understand the compatibility of any existing cluster add-ons with the cluster version you intend to upgrade to.
- **Enable Control Plane Logging** — Enable control plane logging to capture logs, errors, or issues that can arise during the upgrade process. Consider reviewing these logs for any anomalies. Test cluster upgrades in a non-production environment, or integrate automated tests into your continuous integration workflow to assess version compatibility with your applications, controllers, and custom integrations.
- **Explore eksctl for Cluster Management** — Consider using eksctl to manage your EKS cluster. It provides you with the ability to update the control plane, manage add-ons, and handle worker node updates out-of-the-box.
- **Opt for Auto Mode or Managed Node Groups** — Streamline and automate worker node upgrades by using Auto Mode or EKS managed node groups. These options simplify the process and reduce manual intervention.
- **Utilize kubectl Convert Plugin** — Leverage the kubectl convert plugin to facilitate the conversion of Kubernetes manifest files between different API versions. This can help ensure that your configurations remain compatible with the new Kubernetes version.

Keep your cluster up-to-date

Staying current with Kubernetes updates is paramount for a secure and efficient EKS environment, reflecting the shared responsibility model in Amazon EKS. By integrating these strategies into your operational workflow, you're positioning yourself to maintain up-to-date, secure clusters that take full advantage of the latest features and improvements. Tactics:

- **Supported Version Policy** — Aligned with the Kubernetes community, Amazon EKS typically provides three active Kubernetes versions. A Kubernetes minor version is under standard support in Amazon EKS for the first 14 months after it's released. Once a version is past the end of standard support date, it enters extended support for the next 12 months. Deprecation notices are issued at least 60 days before a version reaches its end of standard support date. For more details, refer to the EKS Version Lifecycle docs.

- **Auto-Upgrade Policy** — We strongly recommend staying in sync with Kubernetes updates in your EKS cluster. Clusters running on a Kubernetes version that has completed its 26-month lifecycle (14 months of standard support plus 12 months of extended support) will be auto-upgraded to the next version. Note that you can disable extended support. Failure to proactively upgrade before a version's end-of-life triggers an automatic upgrade, which could disrupt your workloads and systems. For additional information, consult the EKS Version FAQs.
- **Create Upgrade Runbooks** — Establish a well-documented process for managing upgrades. As part of your proactive approach, develop runbooks and specialized tools tailored to your upgrade process. This not only enhances your preparedness but also simplifies complex transitions. Make it a standard practice to upgrade your clusters at least once a year. This practice aligns you with ongoing technological advancements, thereby boosting the efficiency and security of your environment.

Review the EKS release calendar

Review the EKS Kubernetes release calendar to learn when new versions are coming, and when support for specific versions end. Generally, EKS releases three minor versions of Kubernetes annually, and each minor version is supported for about 14 months.

Additionally, review the upstream Kubernetes release information.

Understand how the shared responsibility model applies to cluster upgrades

You are responsible for initiating upgrade for both cluster control plane as well as the data plane. Learn how to initiate an upgrade. When you initiate a cluster upgrade, AWS manages upgrading the cluster control plane. You are responsible for upgrading the data plane, including Fargate pods and addons. You must validate and plan upgrades for workloads running on your cluster to ensure their availability and operations are not impacted after cluster upgrade

Upgrade clusters in-place

EKS supports an in-place cluster upgrade strategy. This maintains cluster resources, and keeps cluster configuration consistent (e.g., API endpoint, OIDC, ENIs, load balancers). This is less disruptive for cluster users, and it will use the existing workloads and resources in the cluster without requiring you to redeploy workloads or migrate external resources (e.g., DNS, storage).

When performing an in-place cluster upgrade, it is important to note that only one minor version upgrade can be executed at a time (e.g., from 1.24 to 1.25).

This means that if you need to update multiple versions, a series of sequential upgrades will be required. Planning sequential upgrades is more complicated, and has a higher risk of downtime. In this situation, see the section called “Evaluate Blue/Green Clusters as an alternative to in-place cluster upgrades”.

Upgrade your control plane and data plane in sequence

To upgrade a cluster you will need to take the following actions:

1. Review the Kubernetes and EKS release notes.
2. Take a backup of the cluster. (optional)
3. Identify and remediate deprecated and removed API usage in your workloads.
4. Ensure Managed Node Groups, if used, are on the same Kubernetes version as the control plane. EKS managed node groups and nodes created by EKS Fargate Profiles support 2 minor version skew between the control plane and data plane for Kubernetes version 1.27 and below. Starting 1.28 and above, EKS managed node groups and nodes created by EKS Fargate Profiles support 3 minor version skew betweeen control plane and data plane. For example, if your EKS control plane version is 1.28, you can safely use kubelet versions as old as 1.25. If your EKS version is 1.27, the oldest kubelet version you can use is 1.25.
5. Upgrade the cluster control plane using the AWS console or cli.
6. Review add-on compatibility. Upgrade your Kubernetes add-ons and custom controllers, as required.
7. Update kubectl.
8. Upgrade the cluster data plane. Upgrade your nodes to the same Kubernetes minor version as your upgraded cluster.

> **Tip**
>
> If your cluster was created using EKS Auto Mode you do not need to upgrade your cluster data plane. After upgrading your control plane, EKS Auto Mode will begin incrementally updating managed nodes while respecting all pod disruption budgets. Ensure to monitor these updates to verify compliance with your operational requirements.

Use the EKS Documentation to create an upgrade checklist

The EKS Kubernetes version documentation includes a detailed list of changes for each version. Build a checklist for each upgrade.

For specific EKS version upgrade guidance, review the documentation for notable changes and considerations for each version.

- Review release notes for Kubernetes versions on standard support
- Review release notes for Kubernetes versions on extended support

Upgrade add-ons and components using the Kubernetes API

Before you upgrade a cluster, you should understand what versions of Kubernetes components you are using. Inventory cluster components, and identify components that use the Kubernetes API directly. This includes critical cluster components such as monitoring and logging agents, cluster autoscalers, container storage drivers (e.g. EBS CSI, EFS CSI), ingress controllers, and any other workloads or add-ons that rely on the Kubernetes API directly.

> **Tip**
>
> Critical cluster components are often installed in a `*-system` namespace

```
kubectl get ns | grep '-system'
```

Once you have identified components that rely the Kubernetes API, check their documentation for version compatibility and upgrade requirements. For example, see the AWS Load Balancer Controller documentation for version compatibility. Some components may need to be upgraded or configuration changed before proceeding with a cluster upgrade. Some critical components to check include CoreDNS, kube-proxy, VPC CNI, and storage drivers.

Clusters often contain many workloads that use the Kubernetes API and are required for workload functionality such as ingress controllers, continuous delivery systems, and monitoring tools. When you upgrade an EKS cluster, you must also upgrade your add-ons and third-party tools to make sure they are compatible.

See the following examples of common add-ons and their relevant upgrade documentation:

- **Amazon VPC CNI:** For the recommended version of the Amazon VPC CNI add-on for each cluster version, see Updating the Amazon VPC CNI plugin for Kubernetes self-managed add-on. **When installed as an Amazon EKS Add-on, it can only be upgraded one minor version at a time.**
- **kube-proxy:** See Updating the Kubernetes kube-proxy self-managed add-on.
- **CoreDNS:** See Updating the CoreDNS self-managed add-on.
- **AWS Load Balancer Controller:** The AWS Load Balancer Controller needs to be compatible with the EKS version you have deployed. See the installation guide for more information.
- **Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) Container Storage Interface (CSI) driver:** For installation and upgrade information, see Managing the Amazon EBS CSI driver as an Amazon EKS add-on.
- **Amazon Elastic File System (Amazon EFS) Container Storage Interface (CSI) driver:** For installation and upgrade information, see Amazon EFS CSI driver.
- **Kubernetes Metrics Server:** For more information, see metrics-server on GitHub.
- **Kubernetes Cluster Autoscaler:** To upgrade the version of Kubernetes Cluster Autoscaler, change the version of the image in the deployment. The Cluster Autoscaler is tightly coupled with the Kubernetes scheduler. You will always need to upgrade it when you upgrade the cluster. Review the GitHub releases to find the address of the latest release corresponding to your Kubernetes minor version.
- **Karpenter:** For installation and upgrade information, see the Karpenter documentation.

> **Tip**
>
> You do not have to manually upgrade any of the capabilities of Amazon EKS Auto Mode, including the compute autoscaling, block storage, and load balancing capabilities.

Verify basic EKS requirements before upgrading

AWS requires certain resources in your account to complete the upgrade process. If these resources aren't present, the cluster cannot be upgraded. A control plane upgrade requires the following resources:

1. Available IP addresses: Amazon EKS requires up to five available IP addresses from the subnets you specified when you created the cluster in order to update the cluster. If not, update your cluster configuration to include new cluster subnets prior to performing the version update.

2. EKS IAM role: The control plane IAM role is still present in the account with the necessary permissions.
3. If your cluster has secret encryption enabled, then make sure that the cluster IAM role has permission to use the AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key.

Verify available IP addresses

To update the cluster, Amazon EKS requires up to five available IP addresses from the subnets that you specified when you created your cluster.

To verify that your subnets have enough IP addresses to upgrade the cluster you can run the following command:

```
CLUSTER=<cluster name>
aws ec2 describe-subnets --subnet-ids \
  $(aws eks describe-cluster --name ${CLUSTER} \
  --query 'cluster.resourcesVpcConfig.subnetIds' \
  --output text) \
  --query 'Subnets[*].[SubnetId,AvailabilityZone,AvailableIpAddressCount]' \
  --output table

-------------------------------------------------------
|                  DescribeSubnets                    |
+---------------------------+--------------+-------+
|  subnet-067fa8ee8476abbd6 |  us-east-1a  |  8184 |
|  subnet-0056f7403b17d2b43 |  us-east-1b  |  8153 |
|  subnet-09586f8fb3addbc8c |  us-east-1a  |  8120 |
|  subnet-047f3d276a22c6bce |  us-east-1b  |  8184 |
+---------------------------+--------------+-------+
```

The VPC CNI Metrics Helper may be used to create a CloudWatch dashboard for VPC metrics. Amazon EKS recommends updating the cluster subnets using the "UpdateClusterConfiguration" API prior to beginning a Kubernetes version upgrade if you are running out of IP addresses in the subnets initially specified during cluster creation. Please verify that the new subnets you will be provided:

- belong to same set of AZs that are selected during cluster creation.
- belong to the same VPC provided during cluster creation

Please consider associating additional CIDR blocks if the IP addresses in the existing VPC CIDR block run out. AWS enables the association of additional CIDR blocks with your existing cluster VPC, effectively expanding your IP address pool. This expansion can be accomplished by introducing additional private IP ranges (RFC 1918) or, if necessary, public IP ranges (non-RFC 1918). You must add new VPC CIDR blocks and allow VPC refresh to complete before Amazon EKS can use the new CIDR. After that, you can update the subnets based on the newly set up CIDR blocks to the VPC.

Verify EKS IAM role

To verify that the IAM role is available and has the correct assume role policy in your account you can run the following commands:

```
CLUSTER=<cluster name>
ROLE_ARN=$(aws eks describe-cluster --name ${CLUSTER} \
  --query 'cluster.roleArn' --output text)
aws iam get-role --role-name ${ROLE_ARN##*/} \
  --query 'Role.AssumeRolePolicyDocument'

{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": {
                "Service": "eks.amazonaws.com"
            },
            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
        }
    ]
}
```

Migrate to EKS Add-ons

Amazon EKS automatically installs add-ons such as the Amazon VPC CNI plugin for Kubernetes, `kube-proxy`, and CoreDNS for every cluster. Add-ons may be self-managed, or installed as Amazon EKS Add-ons. Amazon EKS Add-ons is an alternate way to manage add-ons using the EKS API.

You can use Amazon EKS Add-ons to update versions with a single command. For Example:

```
aws eks update-addon –cluster-name my-cluster –addon-name vpc-cni –addon-version
 version-number \
--service-account-role-arn arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name –configuration-
values '{}' –resolve-conflicts PRESERVE
```

Check if you have any EKS Add-ons with:

```
aws eks list-addons --cluster-name <cluster name>
```

> **Warning**
>
> EKS Add-ons are not automatically upgraded during a control plane upgrade. You must initiate EKS add-on updates, and select the desired version.

- You are responsible for selecting a compatible version from all available versions. Review the guidance on add-on version compatibility.
- Amazon EKS Add-ons may only be upgraded one minor version at a time.

Learn more about what components are available as EKS Add-ons, and how to get started.

Learn how to supply a custom configuration to an EKS Add-on.

Identify and remediate removed API usage before upgrading the control plane

You should identify API usage of removed APIs before upgrading your EKS control plane. To do that we recommend using tools that can check a running cluster or static, rendered Kubernetes manifest files.

Running the check against static manifest files is generally more accurate. If run against live clusters, these tools may return false positives.

A deprecated Kubernetes API does not mean the API has been removed. You should check the Kubernetes Deprecation Policy to understand how API removal affects your workloads.

Cluster Insights

Cluster Insights is a feature that provides findings on issues that may impact the ability to upgrade an EKS cluster to newer versions of Kubernetes. These findings are curated and managed by Amazon EKS and offer recommendations on how to remediate them. By leveraging Cluster Insights, you can minimize the effort spent to upgrade to newer Kubernetes versions.

To view insights of an EKS cluster, you can run the command:

```
aws eks list-insights --region <region-code> --cluster-name <my-cluster>

{
    "insights": [
        {
            "category": "UPGRADE_READINESS",
            "name": "Deprecated APIs removed in Kubernetes v1.29",
            "insightStatus": {
                "status": "PASSING",
                "reason": "No deprecated API usage detected within the last 30 days."
            },
            "kubernetesVersion": "1.29",
            "lastTransitionTime": 1698774710.0,
            "lastRefreshTime": 1700157422.0,
            "id": "123e4567-e89b-42d3-a456-579642341238",
            "description": "Checks for usage of deprecated APIs that are scheduled for
 removal in Kubernetes v1.29. Upgrading your cluster before migrating to the updated
 APIs supported by v1.29 could cause application impact."
        }
    ]
}
```

For a more descriptive output about the insight received, you can run the command:

```
aws eks describe-insight --region <region-code> --id <insight-id> --cluster-name <my-
cluster>
```

You also have the option to view insights in the Amazon EKS Console. After selecting your cluster from the cluster list, insight findings are located under the `Upgrade Insights` tab.

If you find a cluster insight with `"status": ERROR`, you must address the issue prior to performing the cluster upgrade. Run the `aws eks describe-insight` command which will share the following remediation advice:

Resources affected:

```
"resources": [
      {
        "insightStatus": {
          "status": "ERROR"
        },
        "kubernetesResourceUri": "/apis/policy/v1beta1/podsecuritypolicies/null"
      }
]
```

APIs deprecated:

```
"deprecationDetails": [
      {
        "usage": "/apis/flowcontrol.apiserver.k8s.io/v1beta2/flowschemas",
        "replacedWith": "/apis/flowcontrol.apiserver.k8s.io/v1beta3/flowschemas",
        "stopServingVersion": "1.29",
        "clientStats": [],
        "startServingReplacementVersion": "1.26"
      }
]
```

Recommended action to take:

```
"recommendation": "Update manifests and API clients to use newer Kubernetes APIs if
 applicable before upgrading to Kubernetes v1.26."
```

Utilizing cluster insights through the EKS Console or CLI help speed the process of successfully upgrading EKS cluster versions. Learn more with the following resources: * Official EKS Docs * Cluster Insights launch blog.

Kube-no-trouble

Kube-no-trouble is an open source command line utility with the command `kubent`. When you run `kubent` without any arguments it will use your current KubeConfig context and scan the cluster and print a report with what APIs will be deprecated and removed.

```
kubent

4:17PM INF >>> Kube No Trouble `kubent` <<<
```

```
4:17PM INF version 0.7.0 (git sha d1bb4e5fd6550b533b2013671aa8419d923ee042)
4:17PM INF Initializing collectors and retrieving data
4:17PM INF Target K8s version is 1.24.8-eks-ffeb93d
4:l INF Retrieved 93 resources from collector name=Cluster
4:17PM INF Retrieved 16 resources from collector name="Helm v3"
4:17PM INF Loaded ruleset name=custom.rego.tmpl
4:17PM INF Loaded ruleset name=deprecated-1-16.rego
4:17PM INF Loaded ruleset name=deprecated-1-22.rego
4:17PM INF Loaded ruleset name=deprecated-1-25.rego
4:17PM INF Loaded ruleset name=deprecated-1-26.rego
4:17PM INF Loaded ruleset name=deprecated-future.rego
_____________________________________________________________________________________
>>> Deprecated APIs removed in 1.25 <<<
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
KIND                NAMESPACE     NAME             API_VERSION      REPLACE_WITH
 (SINCE)
PodSecurityPolicy   <undefined>   eks.privileged   policy/v1beta1   <removed> (1.21.0)
```

It can also be used to scan static manifest files and helm packages. It is recommended to run `kubent` as part of a continuous integration (CI) process to identify issues before manifests are deployed. Scanning manifests is also more accurate than scanning live clusters.

Kube-no-trouble provides a sample Service Account and Role with the appropriate permissions for scanning the cluster.

Pluto

Another option is pluto which is similar to `kubent` because it supports scanning a live cluster, manifest files, helm charts and has a GitHub Action you can include in your CI process.

```
pluto detect-all-in-cluster

NAME             KIND                VERSION          REPLACEMENT   REMOVED
 DEPRECATED   REPL AVAIL
eks.privileged   PodSecurityPolicy   policy/v1beta1                 false     true
    true
```

Resources

To verify that your cluster don't use deprecated APIs before the upgrade, you should monitor:

- metric `apiserver_requested_deprecated_apis` since Kubernetes v1.19:

```
kubectl get --raw /metrics | grep apiserver_requested_deprecated_apis

apiserver_requested_deprecated_apis{group="policy",removed_release="1.25",resource="podsecurity
 1
```

- events in the audit logs with `k8s.io/deprecated` set to `true`:

```
CLUSTER="<cluster_name>"
QUERY_ID=$(aws logs start-query \
 --log-group-name /aws/eks/${CLUSTER}/cluster \
 --start-time $(date -u --date="-30 minutes" "+%s") # or date -v-30M "+%s" on MacOS \
 --end-time $(date "+%s") \
 --query-string 'fields @message | filter `annotations.k8s.io/deprecated`="true"' \
 --query queryId --output text)

echo "Query started (query id: $QUERY_ID), please hold ..." && sleep 5 # give it some
 time to query

aws logs get-query-results --query-id $QUERY_ID
```

Which will output lines if deprecated APIs are in use:

```
{
    "results": [
        [
            {
                "field": "@message",
                "value": "{\"kind\":\"Event\",\"apiVersion\":\"audit.k8s.io/v1\",
\"level\":\"Request\",\"auditID\":\"8f7883c6-b3d5-42d7-967a-1121c6f22f01\",\"stage
\":\"ResponseComplete\",\"requestURI\":\"/apis/policy/v1beta1/podsecuritypolicies?
allowWatchBookmarks=true\\u0026resourceVersion=4131\\u0026timeout=9m19s\
\u0026timeoutSeconds=559\\u0026watch=true\",\"verb\":\"watch\",\"user\":{\"username
\":\"system:apiserver\",\"uid\":\"8aabfade-da52-47da-83b4-46b16cab30fa\",
\"groups\":[\"system:masters\"]},\"sourceIPs\":[\"::1\"],\"userAgent\":\"kube-
apiserver/v1.24.16 (linux/amd64) kubernetes/af930c1\",\"objectRef\":{\"resource
\":\"podsecuritypolicies\",\"apiGroup\":\"policy\",\"apiVersion\":\"v1beta1\"},
\"responseStatus\":{\"metadata\":{},\"code\":200},\"requestReceivedTimestamp\":
\"2023-10-04T12:36:11.849075Z\",\"stageTimestamp\":\"2023-10-04T12:45:30.850483Z\",
\"annotations\":{\"authorization.k8s.io/decision\":\"allow\",\"authorization.k8s.io/
reason\":\"\",\"k8s.io/deprecated\":\"true\",\"k8s.io/removed-release\":\"1.25\"}}"
            },
```

```
[...]
```

Update Kubernetes workloads. Use kubectl-convert to update manifests

After you have identified what workloads and manifests need to be updated, you may need to change the resource type in your manifest files (e.g. PodSecurityPolicies to PodSecurityStandards). This will require updating the resource specification and additional research depending on what resource is being replaced.

If the resource type is staying the same but API version needs to be updated you can use the `kubectl-convert` command to automatically convert your manifest files. For example, to convert an older Deployment to `apps/v1`. For more information, see Install kubectl convert pluginon the Kubernetes website.

```
kubectl-convert -f <file> --output-version <group>/<version>
```

Configure PodDisruptionBudgets and topologySpreadConstraints to ensure availability of your workloads while the data plane is upgraded

Ensure your workloads have the proper PodDisruptionBudgets and topologySpreadConstraints to ensure availability of your workloads while the data plane is upgraded. Not every workload requires the same level of availability so you need to validate the scale and requirements of your workload.

Make sure workloads are spread in multiple Availability Zones and on multiple hosts with topology spreads will give a higher level of confidence that workloads will migrate to the new data plane automatically without incident.

Here is an example workload that will always have 80% of replicas available and spread replicas across zones and hosts

```
apiVersion: policy/v1
kind: PodDisruptionBudget
metadata:
  name: myapp
spec:
  minAvailable: "80%"
```

```
  selector:
    matchLabels:
      app: myapp
---
apiVersion: apps/v1
kind: Deployment
metadata:
  name: myapp
spec:
  replicas: 10
  selector:
    matchLabels:
      app: myapp
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: myapp
    spec:
      containers:
      - image: public.ecr.aws/eks-distro/kubernetes/pause:3.2
        name: myapp
        resources:
          requests:
            cpu: "1"
            memory: 256M
      topologySpreadConstraints:
      - labelSelector:
          matchLabels:
            app: host-zone-spread
        maxSkew: 2
        topologyKey: kubernetes.io/hostname
        whenUnsatisfiable: DoNotSchedule
      - labelSelector:
          matchLabels:
            app: host-zone-spread
        maxSkew: 2
        topologyKey: topology.kubernetes.io/zone
        whenUnsatisfiable: DoNotSchedule
```

AWS Resilience Hub has added Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service (Amazon EKS) as a supported resource. Resilience Hub provides a single place to define, validate, and track the resilience of your applications so that you can avoid unnecessary downtime caused by software, infrastructure, or operational disruptions.

Use Managed Node Groups or Karpenter to simplify data plane upgrades

Managed Node Groups and Karpenter both simplify node upgrades, but they take different approaches.

Managed node groups automate the provisioning and lifecycle management of nodes. This means that you can create, automatically update, or terminate nodes with a single operation.

In the default configuration, Karpenter automatically creates new nodes using the latest compatible EKS Optimized AMI. As EKS releases updated EKS Optimized AMIs or the cluster is upgraded, Karpenter will automatically start using these images. Karpenter also implements Node Expiry to update nodes.

Karpenter can be configured to use custom AMIs. If you use custom AMIs with Karpenter, you are responsible for the version of kubelet.

Confirm version compatibility with existing nodes and the control plane

Before proceeding with a Kubernetes upgrade in Amazon EKS, it's vital to ensure compatibility between your managed node groups, self-managed nodes, and the control plane. Compatibility is determined by the Kubernetes version you are using, and it varies based on different scenarios. Tactics:

- **Kubernetes v1.28+** — ** Starting from Kubernetes version 1.28 and onwards, there's a more lenient version policy for core components. Specifically, the supported skew between the Kubernetes API server and the kubelet has been extended by one minor version, going from n-2 to n-3. For example, if your EKS control plane version is 1.28, you can safely use kubelet versions as old as 1.25. This version skew is supported across AWS Fargate, managed node groups, and self-managed nodes. We highly recommend keeping your Amazon Machine Image (AMI) versions up-to-date for security reasons. Older kubelet versions might pose security risks due to potential Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures (CVEs), which could outweigh the benefits of using older kubelet versions.
- **Kubernetes < v1.28** — If you are using a version older than v1.28, the supported skew between the API server and the kubelet is n-2. For example, if your EKS version is 1.27, the oldest kubelet

version you can use is 1.25. This version skew is applicable across AWS Fargate, managed node groups, and self-managed nodes.

Enable node expiry for Karpenter managed nodes

One way Karpenter implements node upgrades is using the concept of node expiry. This reduces the planning required for node upgrades. When you set a value for **ttlSecondsUntilExpired** in your provisioner, this activates node expiry. After nodes reach the defined age in seconds, they're safely drained and deleted. This is true even if they're in use, allowing you to replace nodes with newly provisioned upgraded instances. When a node is replaced, Karpenter uses the latest EKS-optimized AMIs. For more information, see Deprovisioning on the Karpenter website.

Karpenter doesn't automatically add jitter to this value. To prevent excessive workload disruption, define a pod disruption budget, as shown in Kubernetes documentation.

If you configure **ttlSecondsUntilExpired** on a provisioner, this applies to existing nodes associated with the provisioner.

Use Drift feature for Karpenter managed nodes

Karpenter's Drift feature can automatically upgrade the Karpenter-provisioned nodes to stay in-sync with the EKS control plane. Karpenter Drift currently needs to be enabled using a feature gate. Karpenter's default configuration uses the latest EKS-Optimized AMI for the same major and minor version as the EKS cluster's control plane.

After an EKS Cluster upgrade completes, Karpenter's Drift feature will detect that the Karpenter-provisioned nodes are using EKS-Optimized AMIs for the previous cluster version, and automatically cordon, drain, and replace those nodes. To support pods moving to new nodes, follow Kubernetes best practices by setting appropriate pod resource quotas, and using pod disruption budgets (PDB). Karpenter's deprovisioning will pre-spin up replacement nodes based on the pod resource requests, and will respect the PDBs when deprovisioning nodes.

Use eksctl to automate upgrades for self-managed node groups

Self managed node groups are EC2 instances that were deployed in your account and attached to the cluster outside of the EKS service. These are usually deployed and managed by some form of automation tooling. To upgrade self-managed node groups you should refer to your tools documentation.

For example, eksctl supports deleting and draining self-managed nodes.

Some common tools include:

- eksctl
- kOps
- EKS Blueprints

Backup the cluster before upgrading

New versions of Kubernetes introduce significant changes to your Amazon EKS cluster. After you upgrade a cluster, you can't downgrade it.

Velero is an community supported open-source tool that can be used to take backups of existing clusters and apply the backups to a new cluster.

Note that you can only create new clusters for Kubernetes versions currently supported by EKS. If the version your cluster is currently running is still supported and an upgrade fails, you can create a new cluster with the original version and restore the data plane. Note that AWS resources, including IAM, are not included in the backup by Velero. These resources would need to be recreated.

Restart Fargate deployments after upgrading the control plane

To upgrade Fargate data plane nodes you need to redeploy the workloads. You can identify which workloads are running on fargate nodes by listing all pods with the `-o wide` option. Any node name that begins with `fargate-` will need to be redeployed in the cluster.

Evaluate Blue/Green Clusters as an alternative to in-place cluster upgrades

Some customers prefer to do a blue/green upgrade strategy. This can have benefits, but also includes downsides that should be considered.

Benefits include:

- Possible to change multiple EKS versions at once (e.g. 1.23 to 1.25)

- Able to switch back to the old cluster
- Creates a new cluster which may be managed with newer systems (e.g. terraform)
- Workloads can be migrated individually

Some downsides include:

- API endpoint and OIDC change which requires updating consumers (e.g. kubectl and CI/CD)
- Requires 2 clusters to be run in parallel during the migration, which can be expensive and limit region capacity
- More coordination is needed if workloads depend on each other to be migrated together
- Load balancers and external DNS cannot easily span multiple clusters

While this strategy is possible to do, it is more expensive than an in-place upgrade and requires more time for coordination and workload migrations. It may be required in some situations and should be planned carefully.

With high degrees of automation and declarative systems like GitOps, this may be easier to do. You will need to take additional precautions for stateful workloads so data is backed up and migrated to new clusters.

Review these blogs posts for more information:

- Kubernetes cluster upgrade: the blue-green deployment strategy
- Blue/Green or Canary Amazon EKS clusters migration for stateless ArgoCD workloads

Track planned major changes in the Kubernetes project — Think ahead

Don't look only at the next version. Review new versions of Kubernetes as they are released, and identify major changes. For example, some applications directly used the docker API, and support for Container Runtime Interface (CRI) for Docker (also known as Dockershim) was removed in Kubernetes 1.24. This kind of change requires more time to prepare for.

Review all documented changes for the version that you're upgrading to, and note any required upgrade steps. Also, note any requirements or procedures that are specific to Amazon EKS managed clusters.

- Kubernetes changelog

Specific Guidance on Feature Removals

Removal of Dockershim in 1.25 - Use Detector for Docker Socket (DDS)

The EKS Optimized AMI for 1.25 no longer includes support for Dockershim. If you have a dependency on Dockershim, e.g. you are mounting the Docker socket, you will need to remove those dependencies before upgrading your worker nodes to 1.25.

Find instances where you have a dependency on the Docker socket before upgrading to 1.25. We recommend using Detector for Docker Socket (DDS), a kubectl plugin..

Removal of PodSecurityPolicy in 1.25 - Migrate to Pod Security Standards or a policy-as-code solution

`PodSecurityPolicy` was deprecated in Kubernetes 1.21, and has been removed in Kubernetes 1.25. If you are using PodSecurityPolicy in your cluster, then you must migrate to the built-in Kubernetes Pod Security Standards (PSS) or to a policy-as-code solution before upgrading your cluster to version 1.25 to avoid interruptions to your workloads.

AWS published a detailed FAQ in the EKS documentation.

Review the Pod Security Standards (PSS) and Pod Security Admission (PSA) best practices.

Review the PodSecurityPolicy Deprecation blog post on the Kubernetes website.

Deprecation of In-Tree Storage Driver in 1.23 - Migrate to Container Storage Interface (CSI) Drivers

The Container Storage Interface (CSI) was designed to help Kubernetes replace its existing, in-tree storage driver mechanisms. The Amazon EBS container storage interface (CSI) migration feature is enabled by default in Amazon EKS `1.23` and later clusters. If you have pods running on a version `1.22` or earlier cluster, then you must install the Amazon EBS CSI driver before updating your cluster to version `1.23` to avoid service interruption.

Review the Amazon EBS CSI migration frequently asked questions.

Additional Resources

ClowdHaus EKS Upgrade Guidance

ClowdHaus EKS Upgrade Guidance is a CLI to aid in upgrading Amazon EKS clusters. It can analyze a cluster for any potential issues to remediate prior to upgrade.

GoNoGo

GoNoGo is an alpha-stage tool to determine the upgrade confidence of your cluster add-ons.

Best Practices for Cost Optimization

Cost Optimization is achieving your business outcomes at the lowest price point. By following the documentation in this guide you will optimize your Amazon EKS workloads.

General Guidelines

In the cloud, there are a number of general guidelines that can help you achieve cost optimization of your microservices:

- Ensure that workloads running on Amazon EKS are independent of specific infrastructure types for running your containers, this will give greater flexibility with regards to running them on the least expensive types of infrastructure. While using Amazon EKS with EC2, there can be exceptions when we have workloads that require specific type of EC2 Instance types like requiring a GPU or other instance types, due to the nature of the workload.
- Select optimally profiled container instances — profile your production or pre-production environments and monitor critical metrics like CPU and memory, using services like Amazon CloudWatch Container Insights for Amazon EKS or third party tools that are available in the Kubernetes ecosystem. This will ensure that we can allocate the right amount of resources and avoid wastage of resources.
- Take advantage of the different purchasing options that are available in AWS for running EKS with EC2, e.g. On-Demand, Spot and Savings Plan.

EKS Cost Optimization Best Practices

There are three general best practice areas for cost optimization in the cloud:

- Cost-effective resources (Auto Scaling, Down Scaling, Policies and Purchasing Options)
- Expenditure awareness (Using AWS and third party tools)
- Optimizing over time (Right Sizing)

As with any guidance there are trade-offs. Ensure you work with your organization to understand the priorities for this workload and which best practices are most important.

How to use this guide

This guide is meant for devops teams who are responsible for implementing and managing the EKS clusters and the workloads they support. The guide is organized into different best practice areas for easier consumption. Each topic has a list of recommendations, tools to use and best practices for cost optimization of your EKS clusters. The topics do not need to read in a particular order.

Key AWS Services and Kubernetes features

Cost optimization is supported by the following AWS services and features:

- EC2 Instance types, Savings Plan (and Reserved Instances) and Spot Instances, at different prices.
- Auto Scaling along with Kubernetes native Auto Scaling policies. Consider Savings Plan (Previously Reserved Instances) for predictable workloads. Use managed data stores like EBS and EFS, for elasticity and durability of the application data.
- The Billing and Cost Management console dashboard along with AWS Cost Explorer provides an overview of your AWS usage. Use AWS Organizations for granular billing details. Details of several third party tools have also been shared.
- Amazon CloudWatch Container Metrics provides metrics around usage of resources by the EKS cluster. In addition to the Kubernetes dashboard, there are several tools in the Kubernetes ecosystem that can be used to reduce wastage.

This guide includes a set of recommendations that you can use to improve the cost optimization of your Amazon EKS cluster.

Feedback

This guide is being released on GitHub so as to collect direct feedback and suggestions from the broader EKS/Kubernetes community. If you have a best practice that you feel we ought to include in the guide, please file an issue or submit a PR in the GitHub repository. Our intention is to update the guide periodically as new features are added to the service or when a new best practice evolves.

Cost Optimization Framework

AWS Cloud Economics is a discipline that helps customers increase efficiency and reduce their costs through the adoption of modern compute technologies like Amazon EKS. The discipline

recommends following a methodology called the "Cloud Financial Management (CFM) framework" which consists of 4 pillars:

The See pillar: Measurement and accountability

The See pillar is a foundational set of activities and technologies that define how to measure, monitor and create accountability for cloud spend. It is often referred to as "Observability", "Instrumentation", or "Telemetry". The capabilities and limitations of the "Observability" infrastructure dictate what can be optimized. Obtaining a clear picture of your costs is a critical first step in cost optimization as you need to know where you are starting from. This type of visibility will also guide the types of activities you will need to do to further optimize your environment.

Here is a brief overview of our best practices for the See pillar:

- Define and maintain a tagging strategy for your workloads.
  - Use Instance Tagging, tagging EKS clusters allows you to see individual cluster costs and allocate them in your Cost & Usage Reports.
- Establish reporting and monitoring of EKS usage by using technologies like Kubecost.
  - Enable Cloud Intelligence Dashboards, by having resources properly tagged and using visualizations, you can measure and estimate costs.
- Allocate cloud costs to applications, Lines of Business (LoBs), and revenue streams.

- Define, measure, and circulate efficiency/value KPIs with business stakeholders. For example, create a "unit metric" KPI that measures the cost per transaction, e.g. a ride sharing services might have a KPI for "cost per ride".

For more details on the recommended technologies and activities associated with this pillar, please see the Cost Optimization - Observability section of this guide.

The Save pillar: Cost optimization

This pillar is based on the technologies and capabilities developed in the "See" pillar. The following activities typically fall under this pillar:

- Identify and eliminate waste in your environment.
- Architect and design for cost efficiency.
- Choose the best purchasing option, e.g. on-demand instances vs Spot instances.
- Adapt as services evolve: as AWS services evolve, the way to efficiently use those services may change. Be willing to adapt to account for these changes.

Since these activities are operational, they are highly dependent on your environment's characteristics. Ask yourself, what are the main drivers of costs? What business value do your different environments provide? What purchasing options and infrastructure choices, e.g. instance family types, are best suited for each environment?

Below is a prioritized list of the most common cost drivers for EKS clusters:

1. **Compute costs:** Combining multiple types of instance families, purchasing options, and balancing scalability with availability require careful consideration. For further information, see the recommendations in the Cost Optimization - Compute section of this guide.
2. **Networking costs:** using 3 AZs for EKS clusters can potentially increase inter-AZ traffic costs. For our recommendations on how to balance HA requirements with keeping network traffic costs down, please consult the Cost Optimization - Networking section of this guide.
3. **Storage costs:** Depending on the stateful/stateless nature of the workloads in the EKS clusters, and how the different storage types are used, storage can be considered as part of the workload. For considerations relating to EKS storage costs, please consult the Cost Optimization - Storage section of this guide.

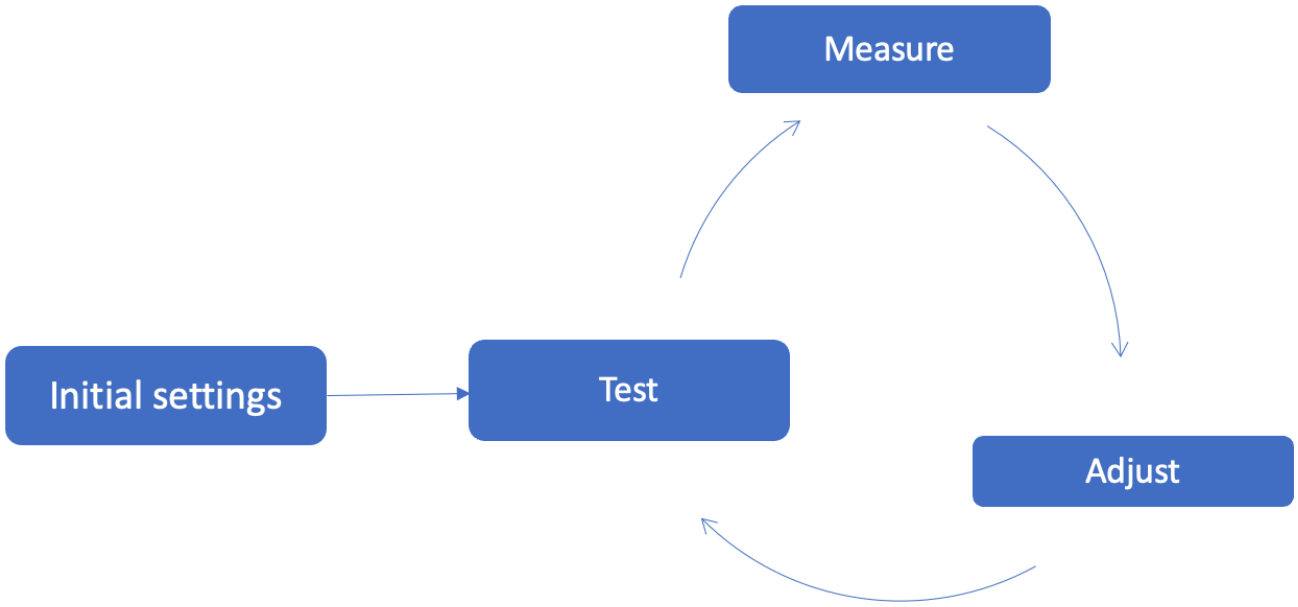
The Plan pillar: Planning and forecasting

Once the recommendations in the See pillar are implemented, clusters are optimized on an on-going basis. As experience is gained in operating clusters efficiently, planning and forecasting activities can focus on:

- Budgeting and forecasting cloud costs dynamically.
- Quantifying the business value delivered by EKS container services.
- Integrating EKS cluster cost management with IT financial management planning.

The Run pillar

Cost optimization is a continuous process and involves a flywheel of incremental improvements:



Securing executive sponsorship for these types of activities is crucial for integrating EKS cluster optimization into the organization's "FinOps" efforts. It allows stakeholder alignment through a shared understanding of EKS cluster costs, implementation of EKS cluster cost guardrails, and ensuring that the tooling, automation, and activities evolve with the organization's needs.

References

- AWS Cloud Economics, Cloud Financial Management

Expenditure awareness

Expenditure awareness is understanding who, where and what is causing expenditures in your EKS cluster. Getting an accurate picture of this data will help raise awareness of your spend and highlight areas to remediate.

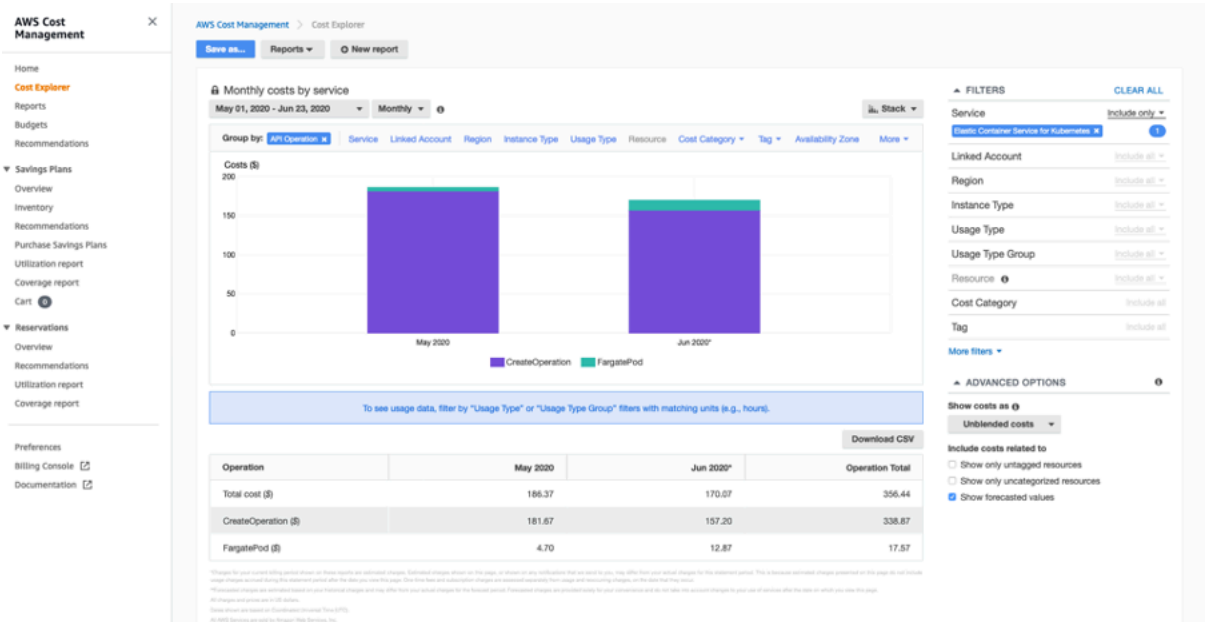
Recommendations

Use Cost Explorer

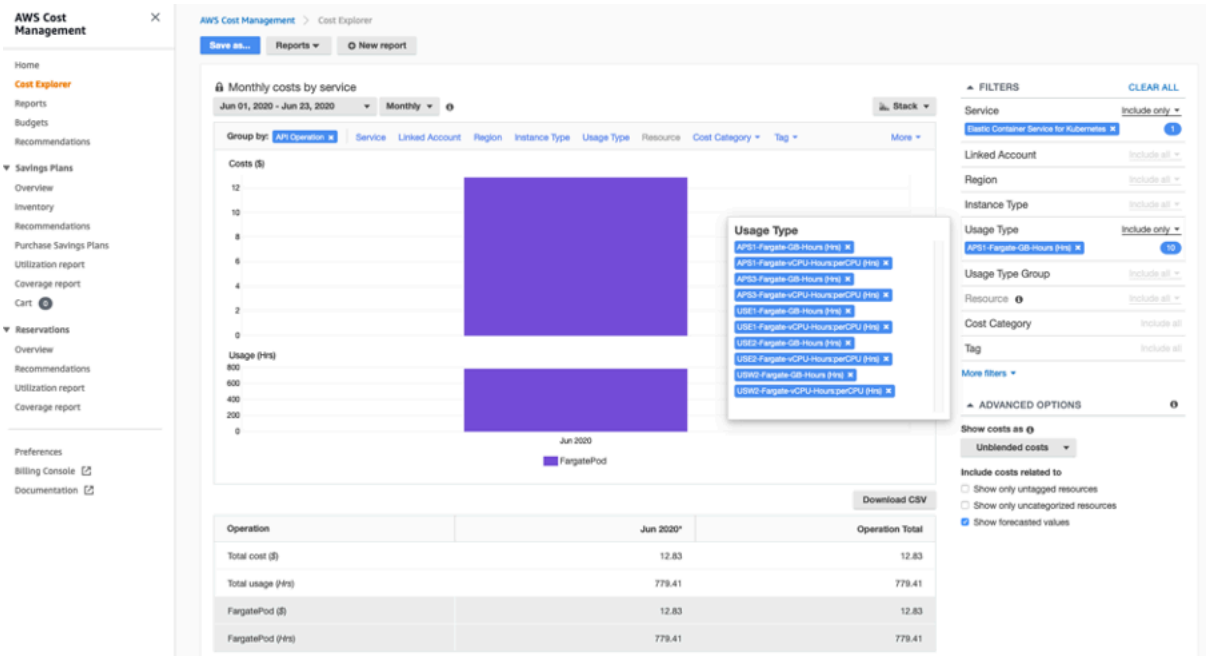
AWS Cost Explorer has an easy-to-use interface that lets you visualize, understand, and manage your AWS costs and usage over time. You can analyze cost and usage data, at various levels using the filters available in Cost Explorer.

EKS Control Plane and EKS Fargate costs

Using the filters, we can query the costs incurred for the EKS costs at the Control Plane and Fargate Pod as shown in the diagram below:



Using the filters, we can query the aggregate costs incurred for the Fargate Pods across regions in EKS - which includes both vCPU-Hours per CPU and GB Hrs as shown in the diagram below:



Tagging of Resources

Amazon EKS supports adding AWS tags to your Amazon EKS clusters. This makes it easy to control access to the EKS API for managing your clusters. Tags added to an EKS cluster are specific to the AWS EKS cluster resource, they do not propagate to other AWS resources used by the cluster such as EC2 instances or load balancers. Today, cluster tagging is supported for all new and existing EKS clusters via the AWS API, Console, and SDKs.

AWS Fargate is a technology that provides on-demand, right-sized compute capacity for containers. Before you can schedule pods on Fargate in your cluster, you must define at least one Fargate profile that specifies which pods should use Fargate when they are launched.

Adding and Listing tags to an EKS cluster:

```
$ aws eks tag-resource --resource-arn arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:xxx:cluster/ekscluster1 --
tags team=devops,env=staging,bu=cio,costcenter=1234
$ aws eks list-tags-for-resource --resource-arn arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:xxx:cluster/
ekscluster1
{
    "tags": {
        "bu": "cio",
        "env": "staging",
        "costcenter": "1234",
        "team": "devops"
    }
```

```
}
```

After you activate cost allocation tags in the AWS Cost Explorer, AWS uses the cost allocation tags to organize your resource costs on your cost allocation report, to make it easier for you to categorize and track your AWS costs.

Tags don't have any semantic meaning to Amazon EKS and are interpreted strictly as a string of characters. For example, you can define a set of tags for your Amazon EKS clusters to help you track each cluster's owner and stack level.

Use AWS Trusted Advisor

AWS Trusted Advisor offers a rich set of best practice checks and recommendations across five categories: cost optimization; security; fault tolerance; performance; and service limits.

For Cost Optimization, Trusted Advisor helps eliminate unused and idle resources and recommends making commitments to reserved capacity. The key action items that will help Amazon EKS will be around low utilsed EC2 instances, unassociated Elastic IP addresses, Idle Load Balancers, underutilized EBS volumes among other things. The complete list of checks are provided at https://aws.amazon.com/premiumsupport/technology/trusted-advisor/best-practice-checklist/.

The Trusted Advisor also provides Savings Plans and Reserved Instances recommendations for EC2 instances and Fargate which allows you to commit to a consistent usage amount in exchange for discounted rates.

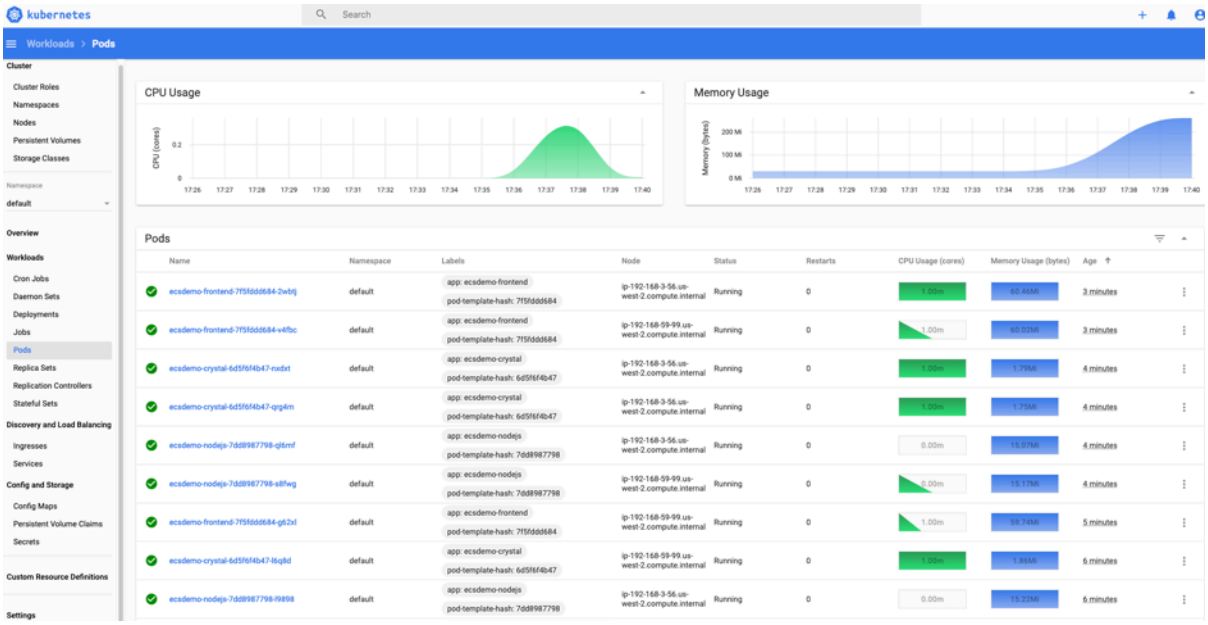
> **Note**
>
> The recommendations from Trusted Advisor are generic recommendations and not specific to EKS.

Use the Kubernetes dashboard

Kubernetes dashboard

Kubernetes Dashboard is a general purpose, web-based UI for Kubernetes clusters, which provides information about the Kubernetes cluster including the resource usage at a cluster, node and pod level. The deployment of the Kubernetes dashboard on an Amazon EKS cluster is described in the Amazon EKS documentation.

Dashboard provides resource usage breakdowns for each node and pod, as well as detailed metadata about pods, services, Deployments, and other Kubernetes objects. This consolidated information provides visibility into your Kubernetes environment.



kubectl top and describe commands

Viewing resource usage metrics with kubectl top and kubectl describe commands. kubectl top will show current CPU and memory usage for the pods or nodes across your cluster, or for a specific pod or node. The kubectl describe command will give more detailed information about a specific node or a pod.

```
$ kubectl top pods
$ kubectl top nodes
$ kubectl top pod pod-name --namespace mynamespace --containers
```

Using the top command, the output will display the total amount of CPU (in cores) and memory (in MiB) that the node is using, and the percentages of the node's allocatable capacity those numbers represent. You can then drill-down to the next level, container level within pods by adding a *--containers* flag.

```
$ kubectl describe node <node>
$ kubectl describe pod <pod>
```

kubectl describe returns the percent of total available capacity that each resource request or limit represents.

kubectl top and describe, track the utilization and availability of critical resources such as CPU, memory, and storage across kubernetes pods, nodes and containers. This awareness will help in understanding resource usage and help in controlling costs.

Use CloudWatch Container Insights

Use CloudWatch Container Insights to collect, aggregate, and summarize metrics and logs from your containerized applications and microservices. Container Insights is available for Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service on EC2, and Kubernetes platforms on Amazon EC2. The metrics include utilization for resources such as CPU, memory, disk, and network.

The installation of insights is given in the documentation.

CloudWatch creates aggregated metrics at the cluster, node, pod, task, and service level as CloudWatch metrics.

The following query shows a list of nodes, sorted by average node CPU utilization

```
STATS avg(node_cpu_utilization) as avg_node_cpu_utilization by NodeName
| SORT avg_node_cpu_utilization DESC
```

CPU usage by Container name

```
stats pct(container_cpu_usage_total, 50) as CPUPercMedian by kubernetes.container_name
| filter Type="Container"
```

Disk usage by Container name

```
stats floor(avg(container_filesystem_usage/1024)) as container_filesystem_usage_avg_kb
 by InstanceId, kubernetes.container_name, device
| filter Type="ContainerFS"
| sort container_filesystem_usage_avg_kb desc
```

More sample queries are given in the Container Insights documention

This awareness will help in understanding resource usage and help in controlling costs.

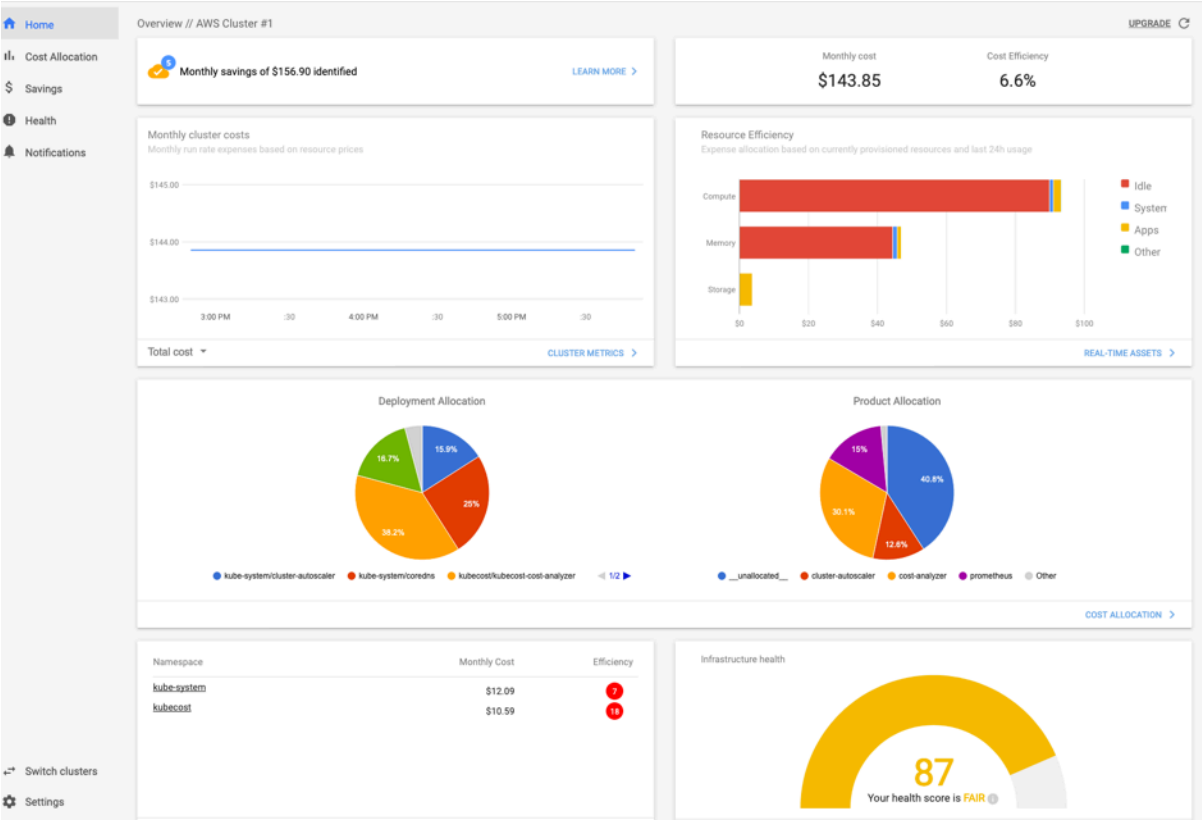
Using Kubecost for expenditure awareness and guidance

Third party tools like kubecost can also be deployed on Amazon EKS to get visibility into cost of running your Kubernetes cluster. Please refer to this AWS blog for tracking costs using Kubecost

Deploying kubecost using Helm 3:

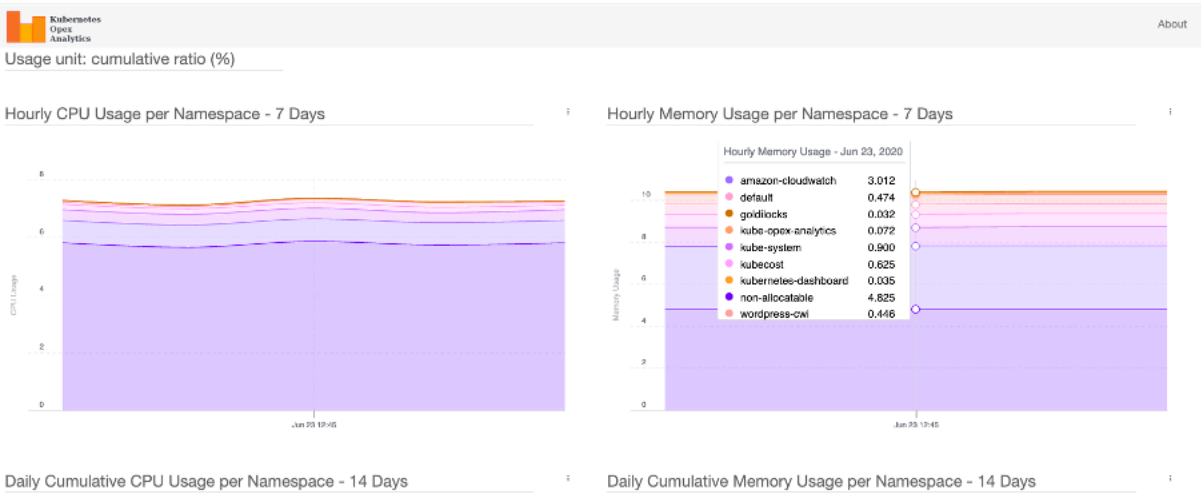
```
$ curl -sSL https://raw.githubusercontent.com/helm/helm/master/scripts/get-helm-3 |
 bash
$ helm version --short
v3.2.1+gfe51cd1
$ helm repo add stable https://kubernetes-charts.storage.googleapis.com/
$ helm repo add stable https://kubernetes-charts.storage.googleapis.com/c^C
$ kubectl create namespace kubecost
namespace/kubecost created
$ helm repo add kubecost https://kubecost.github.io/cost-analyzer/
"kubecost" has been added to your repositories

$ helm install kubecost kubecost/cost-analyzer --namespace kubecost --set
 kubecostToken="aGRoZEBqc2pzLmNvbQ==xm343yadf98"
NAME: kubecost
LAST DEPLOYED: Mon May 18 08:49:05 2020
NAMESPACE: kubecost
STATUS: deployed
REVISION: 1
TEST SUITE: None
NOTES:
----------------------------------------------------Kubecost has been successfully
 installed. When pods are Ready, you can enable port-forwarding with the following
 command:

    kubectl port-forward --namespace kubecost deployment/kubecost-cost-analyzer 9090

Next, navigate to http://localhost:9090 in a web browser.
$ kubectl port-forward --namespace kubecost deployment/kubecost-cost-analyzer 9090

NOTE: If you are using Cloud 9 or have a need to forward it to a different port like
 8080, issue the following command
$ kubectl port-forward --namespace kubecost deployment/kubecost-cost-analyzer 8080:9090
```

Kubecost Dashboard -



Use Kubernetes Cost Allocation and Capacity Planning Analytics Tool

Kubernetes Opex Analytics is a tool to help organizations track the resources being consumed by their Kubernetes clusters to prevent overpaying. To do so it generates, short- (7 days), mid- (14 days) and long-term (12 months) usage reports showing relevant insights on what amount of resources each project is spending over time.



Yotascale

Yotascale helps with accurately allocating Kubernetes costs. Yotascale Kubernetes Cost Allocation feature utilizes actual cost data, which is inclusive of Reserved Instance discounts and spot instance pricing instead of generic market-rate estimations, to inform the total Kubernetes cost footprint

More details can be found at their website.

Alcide Advisor

Alcide is an AWS Partner Network (APN) Advanced Technology Partner. Alcide Advisor helps ensure your Amazon EKS cluster, nodes, and pods configuration are tuned to run according to security best practices and internal guidelines. Alcide Advisor is an agentless service for Kubernetes audit and compliance that's built to ensure a frictionless and secured DevSecOps flow by hardening the development stage before moving to production.

More details can be found in this blog post.

Other tools

Kubernetes Garbage Collection

The role of the Kubernetes garbage collector is to delete certain objects that once had an owner, but no longer have an owner.

Fargate count

Fargatecount is an useful tool, which allows AWS customers to track, with a custom CloudWatch metric, the total number of EKS pods that have been deployed on Fargate in a specific region of a specific account. This helps in keeping track of all the Fargate pods running across an EKS cluster.

Popeye - A Kubernetes Cluster Sanitizer

Popeye - A Kubernetes Cluster Sanitizer is a utility that scans live Kubernetes cluster and reports potential issues with deployed resources and configurations. It sanitizes your cluster based on what's deployed and not what's sitting on disk. By scanning your cluster, it detects misconfigurations and helps you to ensure that best practices are in place

Resources

Refer to the following resources to learn more about best practices for cost optimization.

Documentation and Blogs

- Amazon EKS supports tagging

Tools

- What is AWS Billing and Cost Management?
- Amazon CloudWatch Container Insights
- How to track costs in multi-tenant Amazon EKS clusters using Kubecost
- Kubecost
- Kube Opsview
- Kubernetes Opex Analytics

Compute and Autoscaling

As a developer, you'll make estimates about your application's resource requirements, e.g. CPU and memory, but if you're not continually adjusting them they may become outdated which could increase your costs and worsen performance and reliability. Continually adjusting an application's resource requirements is more important than getting them right the first time.

The best practices mentioned below will help you build and operate cost-aware workloads that achieve business outcomes while minimizing costs and allowing your organization to maximize its return on investment. A high level order of importance for optimizing your cluster compute costs are:

1. Right-size workloads
2. Reduce unused capacity
3. Optimize compute capacity types (e.g. Spot) and accelerators (e.g. GPUs)

Right-size your workloads

In most EKS clusters, the bulk of cost come from the EC2 instances that are used to run your containerized workloads. You will not be able to right-size your compute resources without understanding your workloads requirements. This is why it is essential that you use the appropriate requests and limits and make adjustments to those settings as necessary. In addition,

dependencies, such as instance size and storage selection, may effect workload performance which can have a variety of unintended consequences on costs and reliability.

Requests should align with the actual utilization. If a container's requests are too high there will be unused capacity which is a large factor in total cluster costs. Each container in a pod, e.g. application and sidecars, should have their own requests and limits set to make sure the aggregate pod limits are as accurate as possible.

Utilize tools such as Goldilocks, KRR, and Kubecost which estimate resource requests and limits for your containers. Depending on the nature of the applications, performance/cost requirements, and complexity you need to evaluate which metrics are best to scale on, at what point your application performance degrades (saturation point), and how to tweak request and limits accordingly. Please refer to Application right sizing for further guidance on this topic.

We recommend using the Horizontal Pod Autoscaler (HPA) to control how many replicas of your application should be running, the Vertical Pod Autoscaler (VPA) to adjust how many requests and limits your application needs per replica, and a node autoscaler like Karpenter or Cluster Autoscaler to continually adjust the total number of nodes in your cluster. Cost optimization techniques using Karpenter and Cluster Autoscaler are documented in a later section of this document.

The Vertical Pod Autoscaler can adjust the requests and limits assigned to containers so workloads run optimally. You should run the VPA in auditing mode so it does not automatically make changes and restart your pods. It will suggest changes based on observed metrics. With any changes that affect production workloads you should review and test those changes first in a non-production environment because these can have impact on your application's reliability and performance.

Reduce consumption

The best way to save money is to provision fewer resources. One way to do that is to adjust workloads based on their current requirements. You should start any cost optimization efforts with making sure your workloads define their requirements and scale dynamically. This will require getting metrics from your applications and setting configurations such as `PodDisruptionBudgets` and Pod Readiness Gates to make sure your application can safely scale up and down dynamically. Its important to consider that restrictive PodDisruptionBudgets can prevent Cluster Autoscaler and Karpenter from scaling down Nodes, since both Cluster Autoscaler and Karpenter respect PodDisruptionBudgets. The 'minAvailable' value in the PodDisruptionBudget should always be lower than the number of pods in the deployment and you should keep a good buffer between the two e.g. In a deployment of 6 pods where you want a minimum of 4 pods running at all times, set the 'minAvailable' in your PodDisruptionBidget to 4. This will allow Cluster

Autoscaler and Karpenter to safely drain and evict pods from the under-utilized nodes during a Node scale-down event. Please refer to Cluster Autoscaler FAQ doc.

The Horizontal Pod Autoscaler is a flexible workload autoscaler that can adjust how many replicas are needed to meet the performance and reliability requirements of your application. It has a flexible model for defining when to scale up and down based on various metrics such as CPU, memory, or custom metrics e.g. queue depth, number of connections to a pod, etc.

The Kubernetes Metrics Server enables scaling in response to built-in metrics like CPU and memory usage, but if you want to scale based on other metrics, such as Amazon CloudWatch or SQS queue depth, you should consider event driven autoscaling projects such as KEDA. Please refer to this blog post on how to use KEDA with CloudWatch metrics. If you are unsure, which metrics to monitor and scale based on, check out the best practices on monitoring metrics that matters.

Reducing workload consumption creates excess capacity in a cluster and with proper autoscaling configuration allows you to scale down nodes automatically and reduce your total spend. We recommend you do not try to optimize compute capacity manually. The Kubernetes scheduler and node autoscalers were designed to handle this process for you.

Reduce unused capacity

After you have determined the correct size for applications, reducing excess requests, you can begin to reduce the provisioned compute capacity. You should be able to do this dynamically if you have taken the time to correctly size your workloads from the sections above. There are two primary node autoscalers used with Kubernetes in AWS.

Karpenter and Cluster Autoscaler

Both Karpenter and the Kubernetes Cluster Autoscaler will scale the number of nodes in your cluster as pods are created or removed and compute requirements change. The primary goal of both is the same, but Karpenter takes a different approach for node management provisioning and de-provisioning which can help reduce costs and optimize cluster wide usage.

As clusters grow in size and the variety of workloads increases it becomes more difficult to pre-configure node groups and instances. Just like with workload requests it’s important to set an initial baseline and continually adjust as needed.

If you are using Cluster Autoscaler, it will respect the "minimum" and "maximum" values of each Auto Scaling group (ASG) and only adjust the "desired" value. It’s important to pay attention

while setting these values for the underlying ASG since Cluster Autoscaler will not be able to scale down an ASG beyond its "minimum" count. Set the "desired" count as the number of nodes you need during normal business hours and "minimum" as the number of nodes you need during off-business hours. Please refer to Cluster Autoscaler FAQ doc.

Cluster Autoscaler Priority Expander

The Kubernetes Cluster Autoscaler works by scaling groups of nodes — called a node group — up and down as applications scale up and down. If you are not dynamically scaling workloads then the Cluster Autoscaler will not help you save money. The Cluster Autoscaler requires a cluster admin to create node groups ahead of time for workloads to consume. The node groups need to configured to use instances that have the same "profile", i.e. roughly the same amount of CPU and memory.

You can have multiple node groups and the Cluster Autoscaler can be configured to set priority scaling levels and each node group can contain different sized nodes. Node groups can have different capacity types and the priority expander can be used to scale less expensive groups first.

Below is an example of a snippet of cluster configuration that uses a `ConfigMap` to prioritize reserved capacity before using on-demand instances. You can use the same technique to prioritize Graviton or Spot Instances over other types.

```
apiVersion: eksctl.io/v1alpha5
kind: ClusterConfig
metadata:
  name: my-cluster
managedNodeGroups:
  - name: managed-ondemand
    minSize: 1
    maxSize: 7
    instanceType: m5.xlarge
  - name: managed-reserved
    minSize: 2
    maxSize: 10
    instanceType: c5.2xlarge
```

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ConfigMap
metadata:
  name: cluster-autoscaler-priority-expander
  namespace: kube-system
data:
```

```
  priorities: |-
    10:
      - .*ondemand.*
    50:
      - .*reserved.*
```

Using node groups can help the underlying compute resources do the expected thing by default, e.g. spread nodes across AZs, but not all workloads have the same requirements or expectations and it's better to let applications declare their requirements explicitly. For more information about Cluster Autoscaler, please see the best practices section.

Descheduler

The Cluster Autoscaler can add and remove node capacity from a cluster based on new pods needing to be scheduled or nodes being underutilized. It does not take a wholistic view of pod placement after it has been scheduled to a node. If you are using the Cluster Autoscaler you should also look at the Kubernetes descheduler to avoid wasting capacity in your cluster.

If you have 10 nodes in a cluster and each node is 60% utilized you are not using 40% of the provisioned capacity in the cluster. With the Cluster Autoscaler you can set the utilization threshold per node to 60%, but that would only try to scale down a single node after utilization dropped below 60%.

With the descheduler it can look at cluster capacity and utilization after pods have been scheduled or nodes have been added to the cluster. It attempts to keep the total capacity of the cluster above a specified threshold. It can also remove pods based on node taints or new nodes that join the cluster to make sure pods are running in their optimal compute environment. Note that, descheduler does not schedule replacement of evicted pods but relies on the default scheduler for that.

Karpenter Consolidation

Karpenter takes a "groupless" approach to node management. This approach is more flexible for different workload types and requires less up front configuration for cluster administrators. Instead of pre-defining groups and scaling each group as workloads need, Karpenter uses provisioners and node templates to define broadly what type of EC2 instances can be created and settings about the instances as they are created.

Bin packing is the practice of utilizing more of the instance's resources by packing more workloads onto fewer, optimally sized, instances. While this helps to reduce your compute costs by only

provisioning resources your workloads use, it has a trade-off. It can take longer to start new workloads because capacity has to be added to the cluster, especially during large scaling events. Consider the balance between cost optimization, performance, and availability when setting up bin packing.

Karpenter can continuously monitor and binpack to improve instance resource utilization and lower your compute costs. Karpenter can also select a more cost efficient worker node for your workload. This can be achieved by turning on "consolidation" flag to true in the provisioner (sample code snippet below). The example below shows an example provisioner that enables consolidation. At the time of writing this guide, Karpenter won't replace a running Spot instance with a cheaper Spot instance. For further details on Karpenter consolidation, refer to this blog.

```
apiVersion: karpenter.sh/v1
kind: Provisioner
metadata:
  name: enable-binpacking
spec:
  consolidation:
    enabled: true
```

For workloads that might not be interruptible e.g. long running batch jobs without checkpointing, consider annotating pods with the `do-not-evict` annotation. By opting pods out of eviction, you are telling Karpenter that it should not voluntarily remove nodes containing this pod. However, if a `do-not-evict` pod is added to a node while the node is draining, the remaining pods will still evict, but that pod will block termination until it is removed. In either case, the node will be cordoned to prevent additional work from being scheduled on the node. Below is an example showing how set the annotation:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: label-demo
  labels:
    environment: production
  annotations: +
    "karpenter.sh/do-not-evict": "true"
spec:
  containers:

* name: nginx
```

```
image: nginx
ports:
 ** containerPort: 80
```

Remove under-utilized nodes by adjusting Cluster Autoscaler parameters

Node utilization is defined as the sum of requested resources divided by capacity. By default `scale-down-utilization-threshold` is set to 50%. This parameter can be used along with and `scale-down-unneeded-time`, which determines how long a node should be unneeded before it is eligible for scale down — the default is 10 minutes. Pods still running on a node that was scaled down will get scheduled on other nodes by kube-scheduler. Adjusting these settings can help remove nodes that are underutilized, but it's important you test these values first so you don't force the cluster to scale down prematurely.

You can prevent scale down from happening by ensuring that pods that are expensive to evict are protected by a label recognized by the Cluster Autoscaler. To do this, ensure that pods that are expensive to evict have the annotation `cluster-autoscaler.kubernetes.io/safe-to-evict=false`. Below is an example yaml to set the annotation:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: label-demo
  labels:
    environment: production
  annotations: +
    "cluster-autoscaler.kubernetes.io/safe-to-evict": "false"
spec:
  containers:

* name: nginx
image: nginx
ports:
 ** containerPort: 80
```

Tag nodes with Cluster Autoscaler and Karpenter

AWS resource tags are used to organize your resources, and to track your AWS costs on a detailed level. They do not directly correlate with Kubernetes labels for cost tracking. It's recommended to start with Kubernetes resource labeling and utilize tools like Kubecost to get infrastructure cost reporting based on Kubernetes labels on pods, namespaces etc.

Worker nodes need to have tags to show billing information in AWS Cost Explorer. With Cluster Autoscaler, tag your worker nodes inside a managed node group using launch template. For self managed node groups, tag your instances using EC2 auto scaling group. For instances provisioned by Karpenter, tag them using spec.tags in the node template.

Multi-tenant clusters

When working on clusters that are shared by different teams you may not have visibility to other workloads running on the same node. While resource requests can help isolate some "noisy neighbor" concerns, such as CPU sharing, they may not isolate all resource boundaries such as disk I/O exhaustion. Not every consumable resource by a workload can be isolated or limited. Workloads that consume shared resources at higher rates than other workloads should be isolated through node taints and tolerations. Another advanced technique for such workload is CPU pinning which ensures exclusive CPU instead of shared CPU for the container.

Isolating workloads at a node level can be more expensive, but it may be possible to schedule BestEffort jobs or take advantage of additional savings by using Reserved Instances, Graviton processors, or Spot.

Shared clusters may also have cluster level resource constraints such as IP exhaustion, Kubernetes service limits, or API scaling requests. You should review the scalability best practices guide to make sure your clusters avoid these limits.

You can isolate resources at a namespace or Karpenter provisioner level. Resource Quotas provide a way to set limits on how many resources workloads in a namespace can consume. This can be a good initial guard rail but it should be continually evaluated to make sure it doesn't artificially restrict workloads from scaling.

Karpenter provisioners can set limits on some of the consumable resources in a cluster (e.g. CPU, GPU), but you will need to configure tenant applications to use the appropriate provisioner. This can prevent a single provisioner from creating too many nodes in a cluster, but it should be continually evaluated to make sure the limit isn't set too low and in turn, prevent workloads from scaling.

Scheduled Autoscaling

You may have the need to scale down your clusters on weekends and off hours. This is particularly relevant for test and non-production clusters where you want to scale down to zero when they are not in use. Solutions like cluster-turndown can scale down the replicas to zero based on a cron schedule. You can also acheive this with Karpenter, outlined in the following AWS blog.

Optimize compute capacity types

After optimizing the total capacity of compute in your cluster and utilizing bin packing, you should look at what type of compute you have provisioned in your clusters and how you pay for those resources. AWS has Compute Savings plans that can reduce the cost for your compute which we will categorize into the following capacity types:

- Spot
- Savings Plans
- On-Demand
- Fargate

Each capacity type has different trade-offs for management overhead, availability, and long term commitments and you will need to decide which is right for your environment. No environment should rely on a single capacity type and you can mix multiple run types in a single cluster to optimize specific workload requirements and cost.

Spot

The spot capacity type provisions EC2 instances from spare capacity in an Availability Zone. Spot offers the largest discounts—up to 90% — but those instances can be interrupted when they are needed elsewhere. Additionally, there may not always be capacity to provision new Spot instances and existing Spot instances can be reclaimed with a 2 minute interruption notice. If your application has a long startup or shutdown process, Spot instances may not be the best option.

Spot compute should use a wide variety of instance types to reduce the likelihood of not having spot capacity available. Instance interruptions need to be handled to safely shutdown nodes. Nodes provisioned with Karpenter or part of a Managed Node Group automatically support instance interruption notifications. If you are using self-managed nodes you will need to run the node termination handler separately to gracefully shutdown spot instances.

It is possible to balance spot and on-demand instances in a single cluster. With Karpenter you can create weighted provisioners to achieve a balance of different capacity types. With Cluster Autoscaler you can create mixed node groups with spot and on-demand or reserved instances.

Here is an example of using Karpenter to prioritize Spot instances ahead of On-Demand instances. When creating a provisioner, you can specify either Spot, On-Demand, or both (as shown below).

When you specify both, and if the pod does not explicitly specify whether it needs to use Spot or On-Demand, then Karpenter prioritizes Spot when provisioning a node with price-capacity-optimization allocation strategy .

```
apiVersion: karpenter.sh/v1
kind: Provisioner
metadata:
  name: spot-prioritized
spec:
  requirements:
    - key: "karpenter.sh/capacity-type"
      operator: In
        values: ["spot", "on-demand"]
```

Savings Plans, Reserved Instances, and AWS EDP

You can reduce your compute spend by using a compute savings plan. Savings plans offer reduced prices for a 1 or 3 year commitment of compute usage. The usage can apply to EC2 instances in an EKS cluster but also applies to any compute usage such as Lambda and Fargate. With savings plans you can reduce costs and still pick any EC2 instance type during your commitment period.

Compute savings plan can reduce your EC2 cost by up to 66% without requiring commitments on what instance types, families, or regions you want to use. Savings are automatically applied to instances as you use them.

EC2 Instance Savings Plans provides up to 72% savings on compute with a commitment of usage in a specific region and EC2 family, e.g. instances from the C family. You can shift usage to any AZ within the region, use any generation of the instance family, e.g. c5 or c6, and use any size of instance within the family. The discount will automatically be applied for any instance in your account that matches the savings plan criteria.

Reserved Instances are similar to EC2 Instance Savings Plan but they also guarantee capacity in an Availability Zone or Region and reduce cost—up to 72% — over on-demand instances. Once you calculate how much reserved capacity you will need you can select how long you would like to reserve them for (1 year or 3 years). The discounts will automatically be applied as you run those EC2 instances in your account.

Customers also have the option to enroll in an Enterprise Agreement with AWS. Enterprise Agreements give customers the option to tailor agreements that best suit their needs. Customers

can enjoy discounts on the pricing based on AWS EDP (Enterprise Discount Program). For additional information on Enterprise Agreements please contact your AWS sales representative.

On-Demand

On-Demand EC2 instances have the benefit of availability without interruptions — compared to spot — and no long term commitments — compared to savings plans. If you are looking to reduce costs in a cluster you should reduce your usage of on-demand EC2 instances.

After optimizing your workload requirements you should be able to calculate a minimum and maximum capacity for your clusters. This number may change over time but rarely goes down. Consider using a Savings Plan for everything under the minimum, and spot for capacity that will not affect your application's availability. Anything else that may not be continuously used or is required for availability can use on-demand.

As mentioned in this section, the best way to reduce your usage is to consume fewer resources and utilize the resources you provision to the fullest extent possible. With the Cluster Autoscaler you can remove underutilized nodes with the `scale-down-utilization-threshold` setting. With Karpenter it is recommended to enable consolidation.

To manually identify EC2 instance types that can be used with your workloads you should use ec2-instance-selector which can show instances that are available in each region as well as instances compatible with EKS. Example usage for instances with x86 process architecture, 4 Gb of memory, 2 vCPUs and available in the us-east-1 region.

```
ec2-instance-selector --memory 4 --vcpus 2 --cpu-architecture x86_64 \
  -r us-east-1 --service eks
c5.large
c5a.large
c5ad.large
c5d.large
c6a.large
c6i.large
t2.medium
t3.medium
t3a.medium
```

For non-production environments you can automatically have clusters scaled down during unused hours such as night and weekends. The kubecost project cluster-turndown is an example of a controller that can automatically scale your cluster down based on a set schedule.

Fargate compute

Fargate compute is a fully managed compute option for EKS clusters. It provides pod isolation by scheduling one pod per node in a Kubernetes cluster. It allows you to size your compute nodes to the CPU and RAM requirements of your workload to tightly control workload usage in a cluster.

Fargate can scale workloads as small as .25 vCPU with 0.5 GB memory and as large as 16 vCPU with 120 GB memory. There are limits on how many pod size variations are available and you will need to understand how your workload best fits into a Fargate configuration. For example, if your workload requires 1 vCPU with 0.5 GB of memory the smallest Fargate pod will be 1 vCPU with 2 GB of memory.

While Fargate has many benefits such as no EC2 instance or operating system management, it may require more compute capacity than traditional EC2 instances due to the fact that every deployed pod is isolated as a separate node in the cluster. This requires more duplication for things like the Kubelet, logging agents, and any DaemonSets you would typically deploy to a node. DaemonSets are not supported in Fargate and they will need to be converted into pod "`sidecars"` and run alongside the application.

Fargate cannot benefit from bin packing or CPU over provisioning because the boundary for the workload is a node which is not burstable or shareable between workloads. Fargate will save you EC2 instance management time which itself has a cost, but CPU and memory costs may be more expensive than other EC2 capacity types. Fargate pods can take advantage of compute savings plan to reduce the on-demand cost.

Optimize Compute Usage

Another way to save money on your compute infrastructure is to use more efficient compute for the workload. This can come from more performant general purpose compute like Graviton processors which are up to 20% cheaper and 60% more energy efficient than x86—or workload specific accelerators such as GPUs and FPGAs. You will need to build containers that can run on arm architecture and set up nodes with the right accelerators for your workloads.

EKS has the ability to run clusters with mixed architecture (e.g. amd64 and arm64) and if your containers are compiled for multiple architectures you can take advantage of Graviton processors with Karpenter by allowing both architectures in your provisioner. To keep consistent performance, however, it is recommended you keep each workload on a single compute architecture and only use different architecture if there is no additional capacity available.

Provisioners can be configured with multiple architectures and workloads can also request specific architectures in their workload specification.

```
apiVersion: karpenter.sh/v1
kind: Provisioner
metadata:
  name: default
spec:
  requirements:
  - key: "kubernetes.io/arch"
    operator: In
    values: ["arm64", "amd64"]
```

With Cluster Autoscaler you will need to create a node group for Graviton instances and set node tolerations on your workload to utilize the new capacity.

GPUs and FPGAs can greatly increase the performance for your workload, but the workload will need to be optimized to use the accelerator. Many workload types for machine learning and artificial intelligence can use GPUs for compute and instances can be added to a cluster and mounted into a workload using resource requests.

```
spec:
  template:
    spec:
    - containers:
      ...
      resources:
          limits:
            nvidia.com/gpu: "1"
```

Some GPU hardware can be shared across multiple workloads so a single GPU can be provisioned and used. To see how to configure workload GPU sharing see the virtual GPU device plugin for more information. You can also refer to the following blogs:

- GPU sharing on Amazon EKS with NVIDIA time-slicing and accelerated EC2 instances
- Maximizing GPU utilization with NVIDIA's Multi-Instance GPU (MIG) on Amazon EKS: Running more pods per GPU for enhanced performance

Cost Optimization - Networking

Architecting systems for high availability (HA) is a best practice in order to accomplish resilience and fault-tolerance. In practice, this means spreading your workloads and the underlying infrastructure across multiple Availability Zones (AZs) in a given AWS Region. Ensuring these characteristics are in place for your Amazon EKS environment will enhance the overall reliability of your system. In conjunction with this, your EKS environments will likely also be composed of a variety of constructs (i.e. VPCs), components (i.e. ELBs), and integrations (i.e. ECR and other container registries).

The combination of highly available systems and other use-case specific components can play a significant role in how data is transferred and processed. This will in turn have an impact on the costs incurred due to data transfer and processing.

The practices detailed below will help you design and optimize your EKS environments in order to achieve cost-effectiveness for different domains and use cases.

Pod to Pod Communication

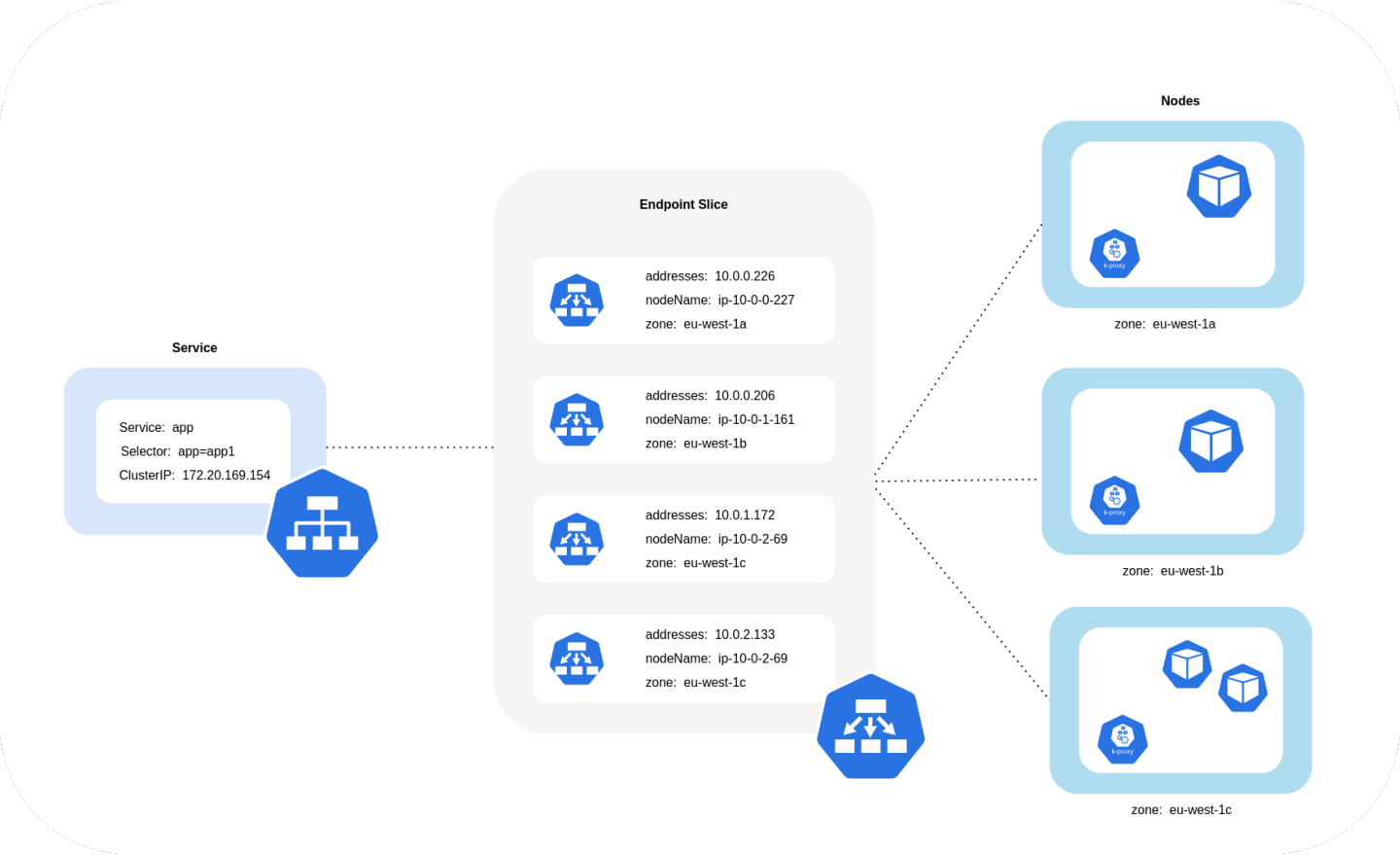
Depending on your setup, network communication and data transfer between Pods can have a significant impact on the overall cost of running Amazon EKS workloads. This section will cover different concepts and approaches to mitigating the costs tied to inter-pod communication, while considering highly available (HA) architectures, application performance and resilience.

Restricting Traffic to an Availability Zone

The Kubernetes project early on began developing topology-aware constructs including labels like kubernetes.io/hostname, topology.kubernetes.io/region, and topology.kubernetes.io/zone assigned to nodes to enable features such as workload distribution across failure domains and topology-aware volume provisioners. Having graduated in Kubernetes 1.17, the labels were also leveraged to enable topology-aware routing capabilities for Pod to Pod communication.

Below are some strategies on how to control the amount of cross-AZ traffic between Pods in your EKS cluster to reduce costs and minimize latency.

If you want granular visibility into the amount of cross-AZ traffic between Pods in your cluster (such as the amount of data transferred in bytes), refer to this post.



As the diagram above depicts, Services are the stable network abstraction layer that receive traffic destined for your Pods. When a Service is created, multiple EndpointSlices are created. Each EndpointSlice has a list of endpoints containing a subset of Pod addresses along with the nodes they're running on and any additional topology information. When using the Amazon VPC CNI, kube-proxy, a daemonset running on every node, maintains network rules to enable Pod communication and Service discovery (alternative eBPF-based CNIs may not use kube-proxy but provide equivalent behavior). It fulfills the role of internal routing, but it does so based on what it consumes from the created EndpointSlices.

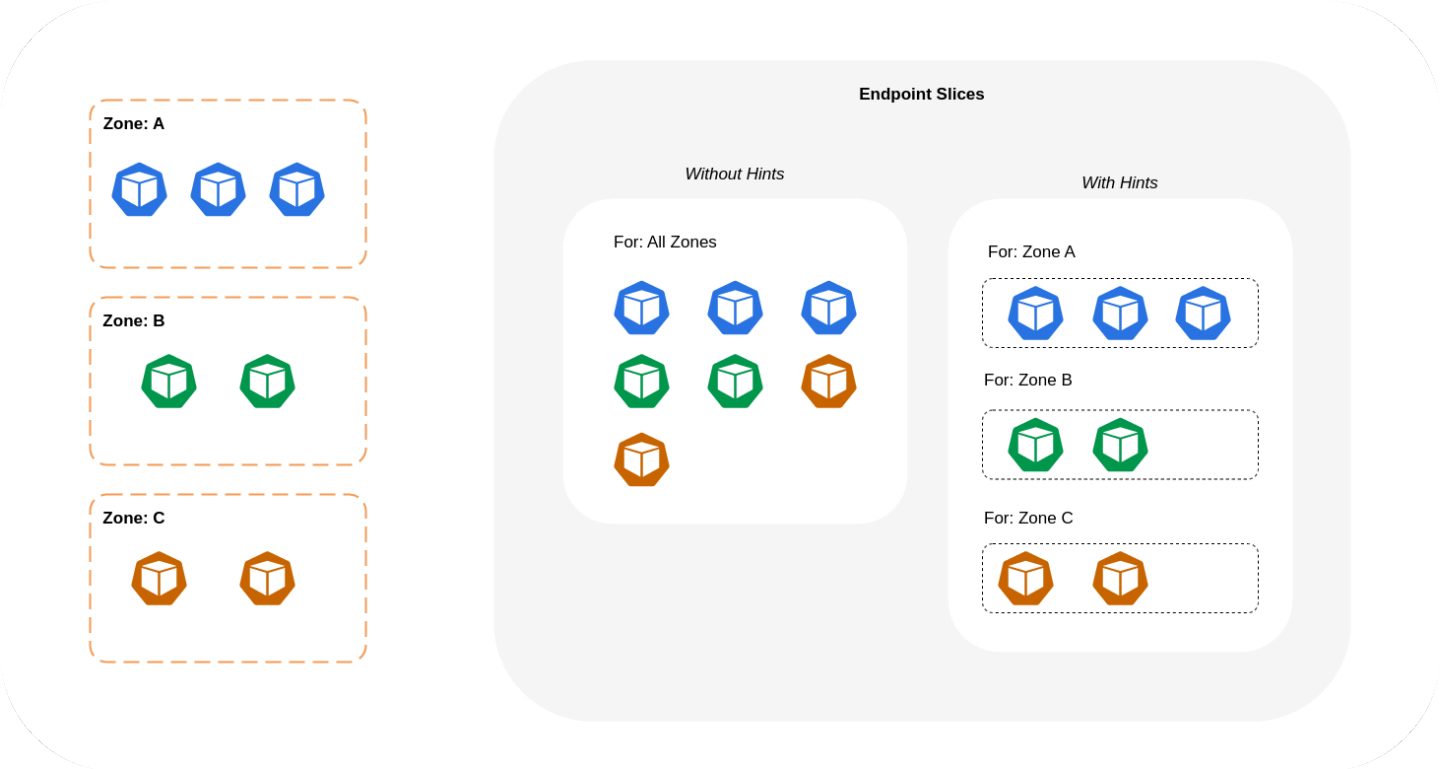
On EKS, kube-proxy primarily uses iptables NAT rules (or IPVS, NFTables as alternatives) for traffic distribution across all pods in the cluster, regardless of their node or AZ placement. This default distribution can lead to cross-AZ traffic routing, potentially causing increased latency for sensitive applications and inter-AZ data transfer charges in large deployments.

Using Topology Aware Routing (formerly known as Topology Aware Hints)

When *topology aware routing* is enabled and implemented on a Kubernetes Service, the EndpointSlice controller will proportionally allocate endpoints to the different zones that your cluster is spread across. For each of those endpoints, the EndpointSlice controller will also set a

hint for the zone. *Hints* describe which zone an endpoint should serve traffic for. `kube-proxy` will then route traffic from a zone to an endpoint based on the *hints* that get applied.

The diagram below shows how EndpointSlices with hints are organized in such a way that `kube-proxy` can know what destination they should go to based on their zonal point of origin. Without hints, there is no such allocation or organization and traffic will be proxied to different zonal destinations regardless of where it's coming from.



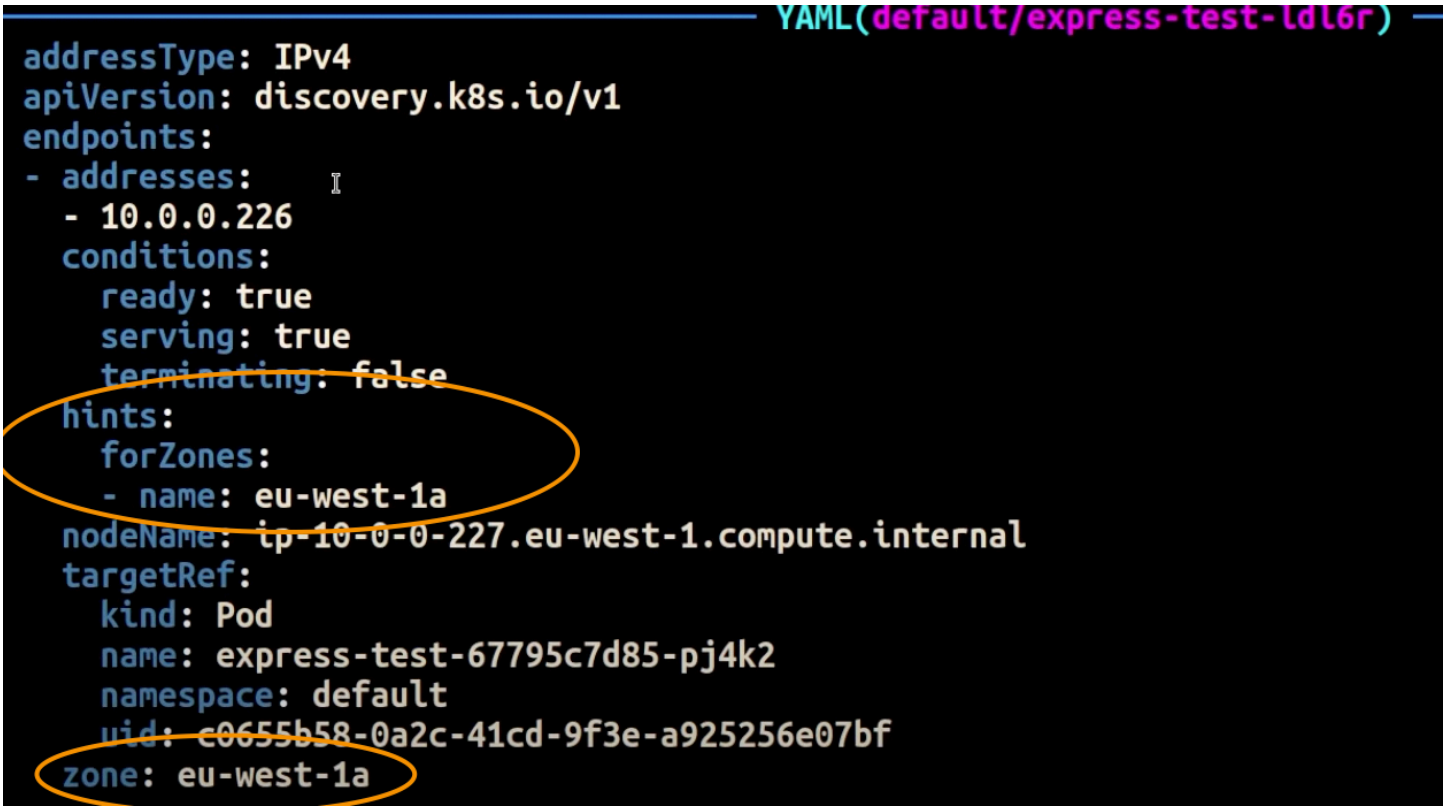
In some cases, the EndpointSlice controller may apply a *hint* for a different zone, meaning the endpoint could end up serving traffic originating from a different zone. The reason for this is to try and maintain an even distribution of traffic between endpoints in different zones.

Below is a code snippet on how to enable *topology aware routing* for a Service.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: orders-service
  namespace: ecommerce
  annotations:
    service.kubernetes.io/topology-mode: Auto
spec:
  selector:
```

```
    app: orders
  type: ClusterIP
  ports:

* protocol: TCP
port: 3003
targetPort: 3003
```

The screenshot below shows the result of the EndpointSlice controller having successfully applied a hint to an endpoint for a Pod replica running in the AZ `eu-west-1a`.



Note

It's important to note that topology aware routing is still in beta. This feature performs more predictably with evenly distributed workloads across the cluster topology, as the controller allocates endpoints proportionally across zones but may skip hint assignments when node resources in a zone are too imbalanced to avoid excessive overload. Therefore, it is highly recommended to use it in conjunction with scheduling constraints that increase the availability of an application such as pod topology spread constraints. Note that hints may also not be assigned when capacity fluctuates across zones, such as when using

Amazon EC2 Spot Instances, as interruptions or replacements are not detected in real-time when calculating the proportional distribution.

Using Traffic Distribution

Introduced in Kubernetes 1.30 and made generally available in 1.33, Traffic Distribution offers a simpler alternative to Topology Aware Routing for same-zone traffic preference. While Topology Aware Routing attempts to use an intelligent approach to traffic routing to avoid overloading endpoints, it resulted in unpredictable behavior. Traffic Distribution prioritizes predictability instead. The PreferClose option directs kube-proxy to create rules that route traffic to same-zone endpoints first based on the zonal *hint* set by the EndpointSlice Controller. When no same-zone endpoints are available, it falls back to distributing traffic across any cluster endpoint for the Service. This feature is designed for workloads that accept the tradeoff of optimizing for proximity rather than the attempted even distribution of load that Topology Aware Routing provides.

Below is a code snippet on how to enable *traffic distribution* for a Service.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: orders-service
  namespace: ecommerce
spec:
  trafficDistribution: PreferClose
  selector:
    app: orders
  type: ClusterIP
  ports:

* protocol: TCP
port: 3003
targetPort: 3003
```

When enabling Traffic Distribution, a common challenge emerges: endpoints within a single AZ can become overloaded if most traffic originates from that same zone. This overloading can create significant issues:

- A single Horizontal Pod Autoscaler (HPA) managing a multi-AZ deployment may respond by scaling out pods across different AZs. However, this action fails to effectively address the increased load in the affected zone.
- This situation in turn can lead to resource inefficiency. When cluster autoscalers like Karpenter detect the pod scale-out across different AZs, they may provision additional nodes in the unaffected AZs, resulting in unnecessary resource allocation.

To overcome this challenge:

- Create separate deployments per zone which would have their own HPAs to scale independent of one another.
- Leverage Topology Spread Constraints to ensure workload distribution across the cluster, which helps prevent endpoint overloads in high-traffic zones.

Using Autoscalers: Provision Nodes to a Specific AZ

We strongly recommend running your workloads in highly available environments across multiple AZs. This improves the reliability of your applications, especially when there is an incident of an issue with an AZ. In the case you're willing to sacrifice reliability for the sake of reducing their network-related costs, you can restrict your nodes to a single AZ.

To run all your Pods in the same AZ, either provision the worker nodes in the same AZ or schedule the Pods on the worker nodes running on the same AZ. To provision nodes within a single AZ, define a node group with subnets belonging to the same AZ with Cluster Autoscaler (CA). For Karpenter, use `topology.kubernetes.io/zone` and specify the AZ where you'd like to create the worker nodes. For example, the below Karpenter provisioner snippet provisions the nodes in the us-west-2a AZ.

Karpenter

```
apiVersion: karpenter.sh/v1
kind: Provisioner
metadata:
name: single-az
spec:
  requirements:

* key: "topology.kubernetes.io/zone"`
operator: In
```

```
values: ["us-west-2a"]
```

Cluster Autoscaler (CA)

```
apiVersion: eksctl.io/v1alpha5
kind: ClusterConfig
metadata:
  name: my-ca-cluster
  region: us-east-1
  version: "1.21"
availabilityZones:

* us-east-1a
managedNodeGroups:
* name: managed-nodes
labels:
  role: managed-nodes
instanceType: t3.medium
minSize: 1
maxSize: 10
desiredCapacity: 1
...
```

Using Pod Assignment and Node Affinity

Alternatively, if you have worker nodes running in multiple AZs, each node would have the label *topology.kubernetes.io/zone* with the value of its AZ (such as us-west-2a or us-west-2b). You can utilize `nodeSelector` or `nodeAffinity` to schedule Pods to the nodes in a single AZ. For example, the following manifest file will schedule the Pod inside a node running in AZ us-west-2a.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: nginx
  labels:
    env: test
spec:
  nodeSelector:
    topology.kubernetes.io/zone: us-west-2a
  containers:

* name: nginx
```

```
image: nginx
imagePullPolicy: IfNotPresent
```

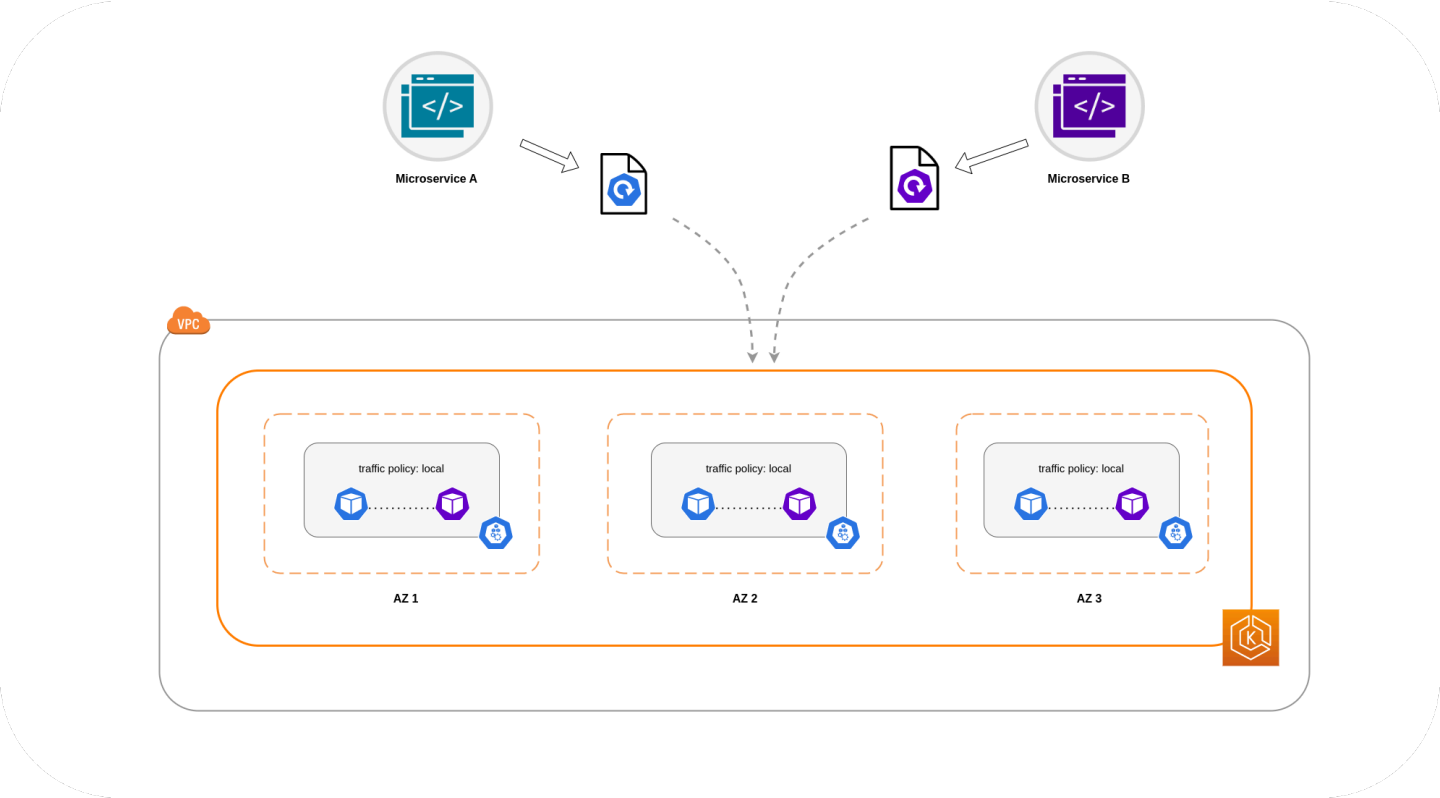
Restricting Traffic to a Node

There are cases where restricting traffic at a zonal level isn't sufficient. Apart from reducing costs, you may have the added requirement of reducing network latency between certain applications that have frequent inter-communication. In order to achieve optimal network performance and reduce costs, you need a way to restrict traffic to a specific node. For example, Microservice A should always talk to Microservice B on Node 1, even in highly available (HA) setups. Having Microservice A on Node 1 talk to Microservice B on Node 2 may have a negative impact on the desired performance for applications of this nature, especially if Node 2 is in a separate AZ altogether.

Using the Service Internal Traffic Policy

In order to restrict Pod network traffic to a node, you can make use of the *Service internal traffic policy* . By default, traffic sent to a workload's Service will be randomly distributed across the different generated endpoints. So in a HA architecture, that means traffic from Microservice A could go to any replica of Microservice B on any given node across the different AZs. However, with the Service's internal traffic policy set to `Local`, traffic will be restricted to endpoints on the node that the traffic originated from. This policy dictates the exclusive use of node-local endpoints. By implication, your network traffic-related costs for that workload will be lower than if the distribution was cluster wide. Also, the latency will be lower, making your application more performant.

> **Note**
>
> It's important to note that this feature cannot be combined with topology aware routing in Kubernetes.



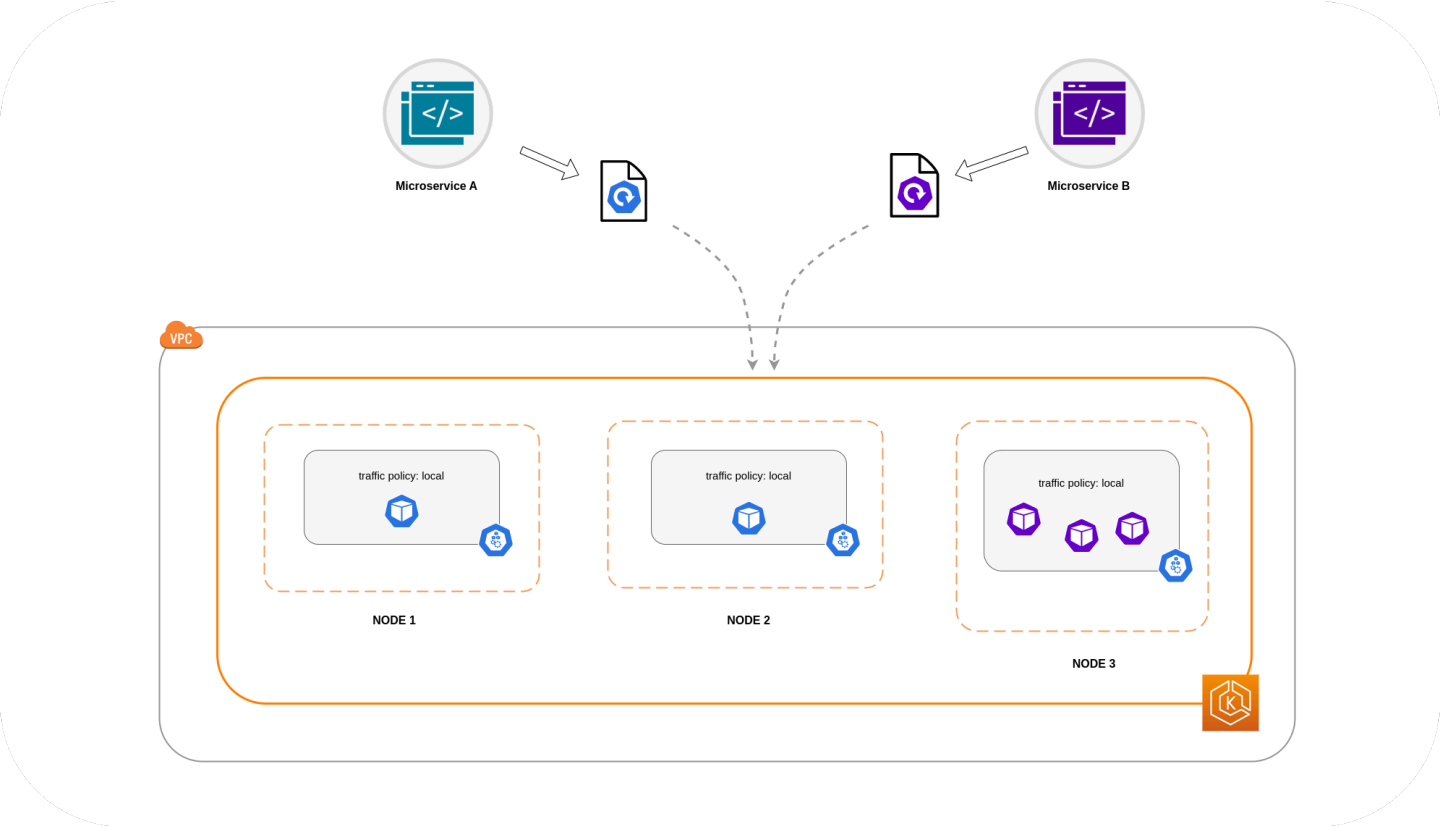
Below is a code snippet on how to set the *internal traffic policy* for a Service.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: orders-service
  namespace: ecommerce
spec:
  selector:
    app: orders
  type: ClusterIP
  ports:

* protocol: TCP
port: 3003
targetPort: 3003
  internalTrafficPolicy: Local
```

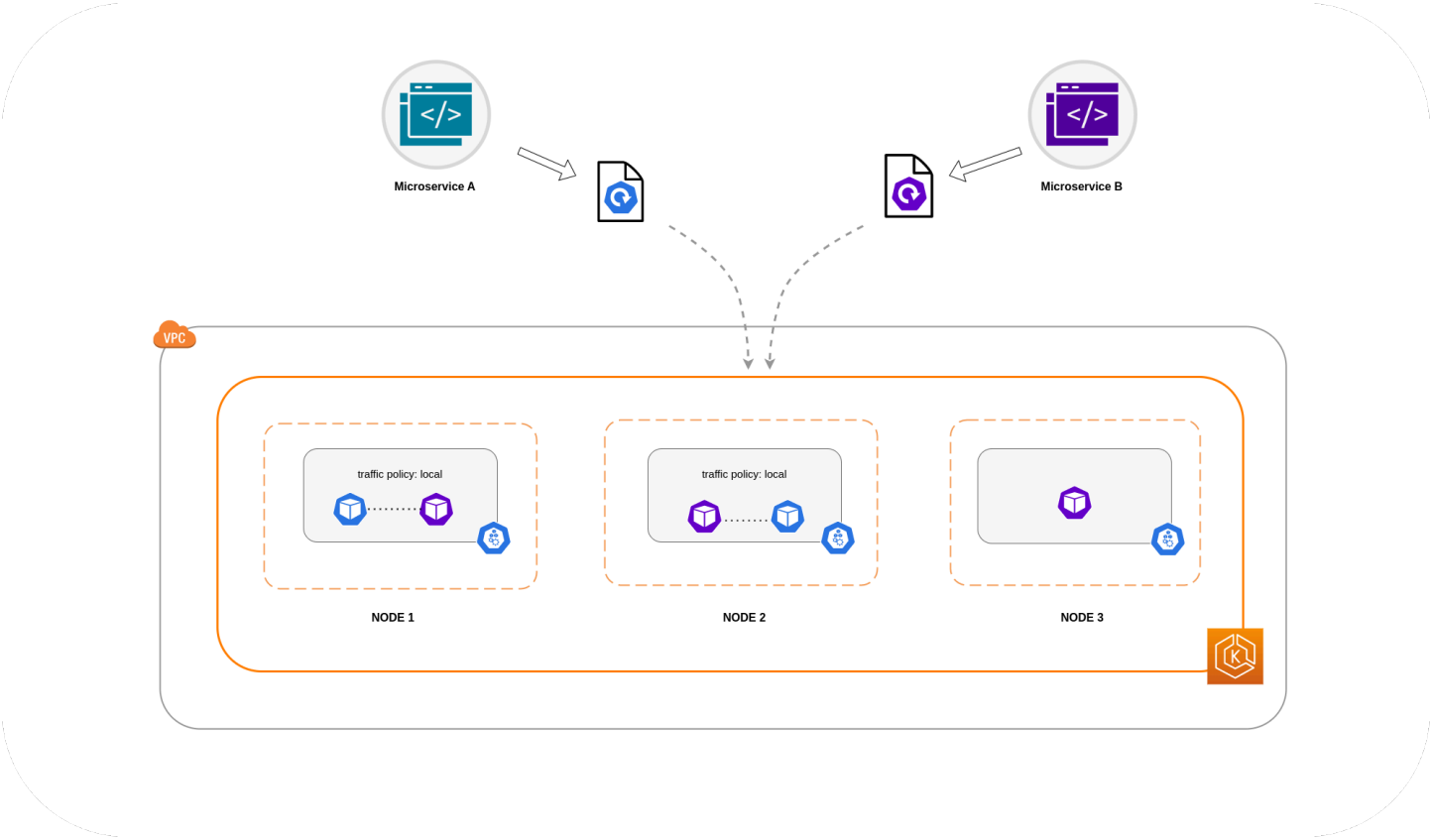
To avoid unexpected behaviour from your application due to traffic drops, you should consider the following approaches:

- Run enough replicas for each of the communicating Pods
- Have a relatively even spread of Pods using topology spread constraints
- Make use of pod-affinity rules for co-location of communicating Pods

In this example, you have 2 replicas of Microservice A and 3 replicas of Microservice B. If Microservice A has its replicas spread between Nodes 1 and 2, and Microservice B has all 3 of its replicas on Node 3, then they won't be able to communicate because of the `Local` internal traffic policy. When there are no available node-local endpoints the traffic is dropped.



If Microservice B does have 2 of its 3 replicas on Nodes 1 and 2, then there will be communication between the peer applications. But you would still have an isolated replica of Microservice B without any peer replica to communicate with.



Note

In some scenarios, an isolated replica like the one depicted in the above diagram may not be a cause for concern if it still serves a purpose (such as serving requests from external incoming traffic).

Using the Service Internal Traffic Policy with Topology Spread Constraints

Using the *internal traffic policy* in conjunction with *topology spread constraints* can be useful to ensure that you have the right number of replicas for communicating microservices on different nodes.

```
apiVersion: apps/v1
kind: Deployment
metadata:
  name: express-test
spec:
  replicas: 6
  selector:
```

```
    matchLabels:
      app: express-test
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: express-test
        tier: backend
    spec:
      topologySpreadConstraints:
      - maxSkew: 1
        topologyKey: "topology.kubernetes.io/zone"
        whenUnsatisfiable: ScheduleAnyway
        labelSelector:
          matchLabels:
            app: express-test
```

Using the Service Internal Traffic Policy with Pod Affinity Rules

Another approach is to make use of Pod affinity rules when using the Service internal traffic policy. With Pod affinity, you can influence the scheduler to co-locate certain Pods because of their frequent communication. By applying strict scheduling constraints (`requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution`) on certain Pods, this will give you better results for Pod co-location when the Scheduler is placing Pods on nodes.

```
apiVersion: apps/v1
kind: Deployment
metadata:
  name: graphql
  namespace: ecommerce
  labels:
    app.kubernetes.io/version: "0.1.6"
    ...
    spec:
      serviceAccountName: graphql-service-account
      affinity:
        podAffinity:
          requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
          - labelSelector:
              matchExpressions:
              - key: app
                operator: In
                values:
                - orders
```

```
            topologyKey: "kubernetes.io/hostname"
```

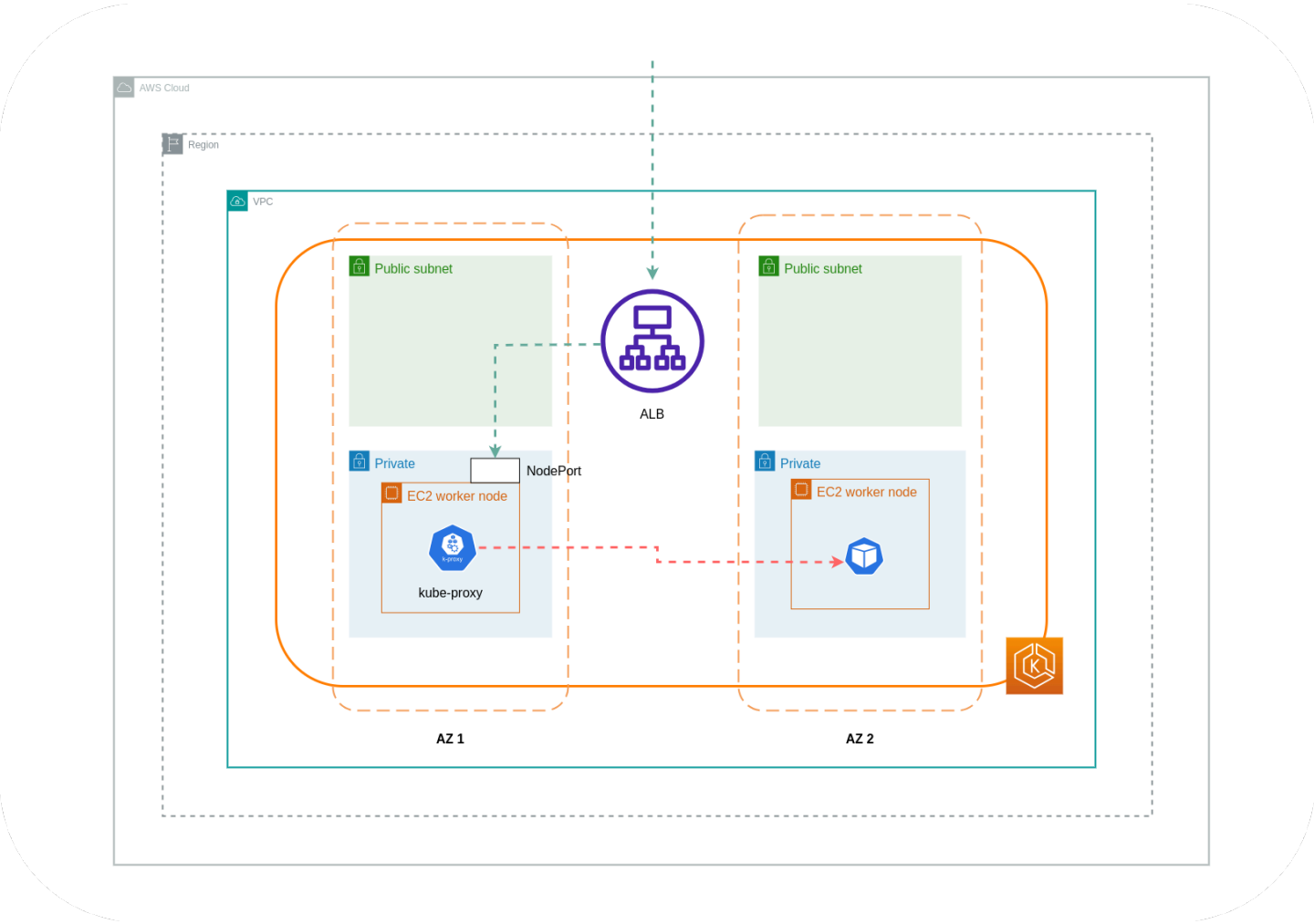
Load Balancer to Pod Communication

EKS workloads are typically fronted by a load balancer that distributes traffic to the relevant Pods in your EKS cluster. Your architecture may comprise internal and/or external facing load balancers. Depending on your architecture and network traffic configurations, the communication between load balancers and Pods can contribute a significant amount to data transfer charges.

You can use the AWS Load Balancer Controller to automatically manage the creation of ELB resources (ALB and NLB). The data transfer charges you incur in such setups will depend on the path taken by the network traffic. The AWS Load Balancer Controller supports two network traffic modes, *instance mode*, and *ip mode*.

When using *instance mode*, a NodePort will be opened on each node in your EKS cluster. The load balancer will then proxy traffic evenly across the nodes. If a node has the destination Pod running on it, then there will be no data transfer costs incurred. However, if the destination Pod is on a separate node and in a different AZ than the NodePort receiving the traffic, then there will be an extra network hop from the kube-proxy to the destination Pod. In such a scenario, there will be cross-AZ data transfer charges. Because of the even distribution of traffic across the nodes, it is highly likely that there will be additional data transfer charges associated with cross-zone network traffic hops from kube-proxies to the relevant destination Pods.

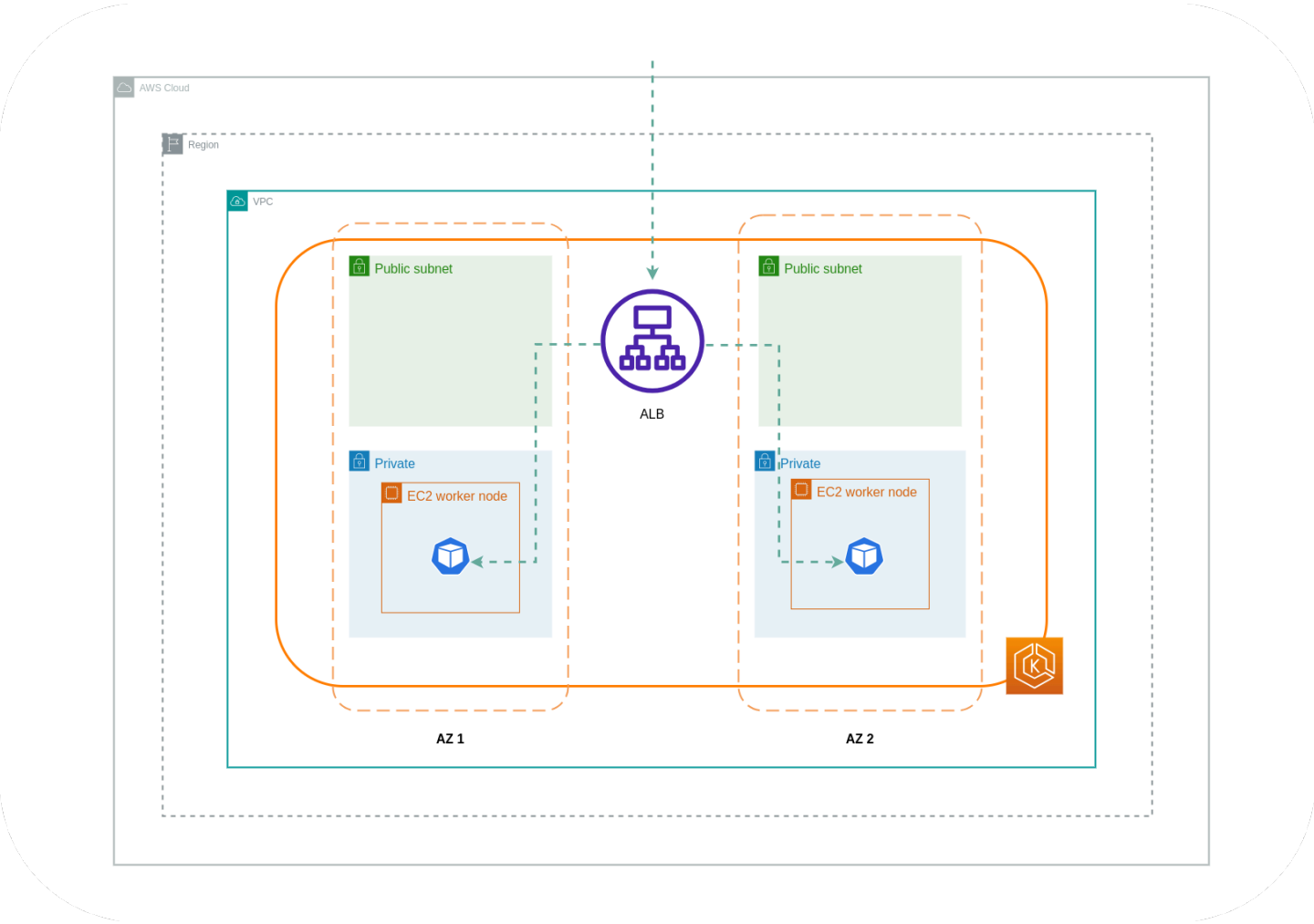
The diagram below depicts a network path for traffic flowing from the load balancer to the NodePort, and subsequently from the `kube-proxy` to the destination Pod on a separate node in a different AZ. This is an example of the *instance mode* setting.



When using *ip mode*, network traffic is proxied from the load balancer directly to the destination Pod. As a result, there are *no data transfer charges* involved in this approach.

> **Note**
>
> It is recommended that you set your load balancer to *ip traffic mode* to reduce data transfer charges. For this setup, it's also important to make sure that your load balancer is deployed across all the subnets in your VPC.

The diagram below depicts network paths for traffic flowing from the load balancer to Pods in the network *ip mode*.



Data Transfer from Container Registry

Amazon ECR

Data transfer into the Amazon ECR private registry is free. *In-region data transfer incurs no cost*, but data transfer out to the internet and across regions will be charged at Internet Data Transfer rates on both sides of the transfer.

You should utilize ECRs built-in image replication feature to replicate the relevant container images into the same region as your workloads. This way the replication would be charged once, and all the same region (intra-region) image pulls would be free.

You can further reduce data transfer costs associated with pulling images from ECR (data transfer out) by *using Interface VPC Endpoints to connect to the in-region ECR repositories*. The alternative approach of connecting to ECR's public AWS endpoint (via a NAT Gateway and an Internet

Gateway) will incur higher data processing and transfer costs. The next section will cover reducing data transfer costs between your workloads and AWS Services in greater detail.

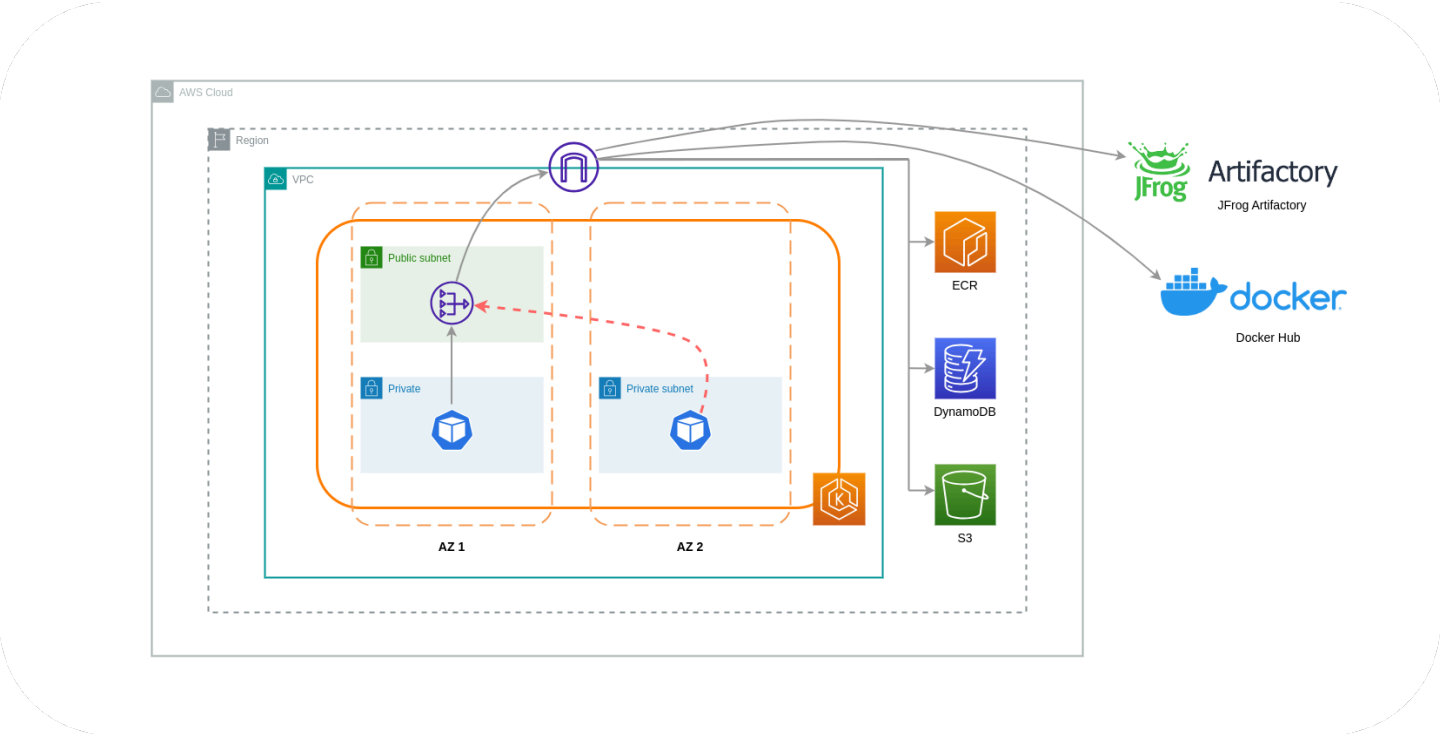
If you're running workloads with especially large images, you can build your own custom Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) with pre-cached container images. This can reduce the initial image pull time and potential data transfer costs from a container registry to the EKS worker nodes.

Data Transfer to Internet & AWS Services

It's a common practice to integrate Kubernetes workloads with other AWS services or third-party tools and platforms via the Internet. The underlying network infrastructure used to route traffic to and from the relevant destination can impact the costs incurred in the data transfer process.

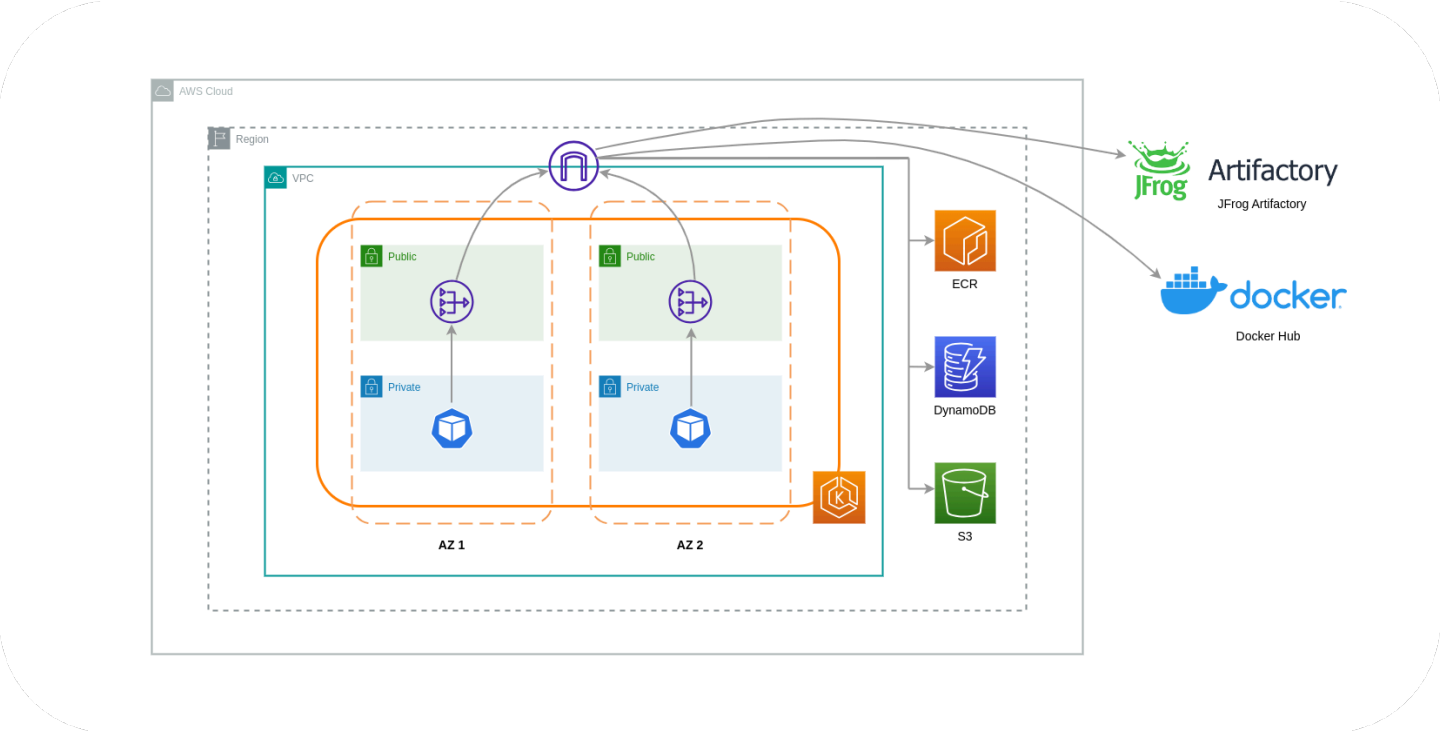
Using NAT Gateways

NAT Gateways are network components that perform network address translation (NAT). The diagram below depicts Pods in an EKS cluster communicating with other AWS services (Amazon ECR, DynamoDB, and S3), and third-party platforms. In this example, the Pods are running in private subnets in separate AZs. To send and receive traffic from the Internet, a NAT Gateway is deployed to the public subnet of one AZ, allowing any resources with private IP addresses to share a single public IP address to access the Internet. This NAT Gateway in turn communicates with the Internet Gateway component, allowing for packets to be sent to their final destination.



When using NAT Gateways for such use cases, *you can minimize the data transfer costs by deploying a NAT Gateway in each AZ*. This way, traffic routed to the Internet will go through the NAT Gateway in the same AZ, avoiding inter-AZ data transfer. However, even though you'll save on the cost of inter-AZ data transfer, the implication of this setup is that you'll incur the cost of an additional NAT Gateway in your architecture.

This recommended approach is depicted in the diagram below.



Using VPC Endpoints

To further reduce costs in such architectures, *you should use VPC Endpoints to establish connectivity between your workloads and AWS services*. VPC Endpoints allow you to access AWS services from within a VPC without data/network packets traversing the Internet. All traffic is internal and stays within the AWS network. There are two types of VPC Endpoints: Interface VPC Endpoints (supported by many AWS services) and Gateway VPC Endpoints (only supported by S3 and DynamoDB).

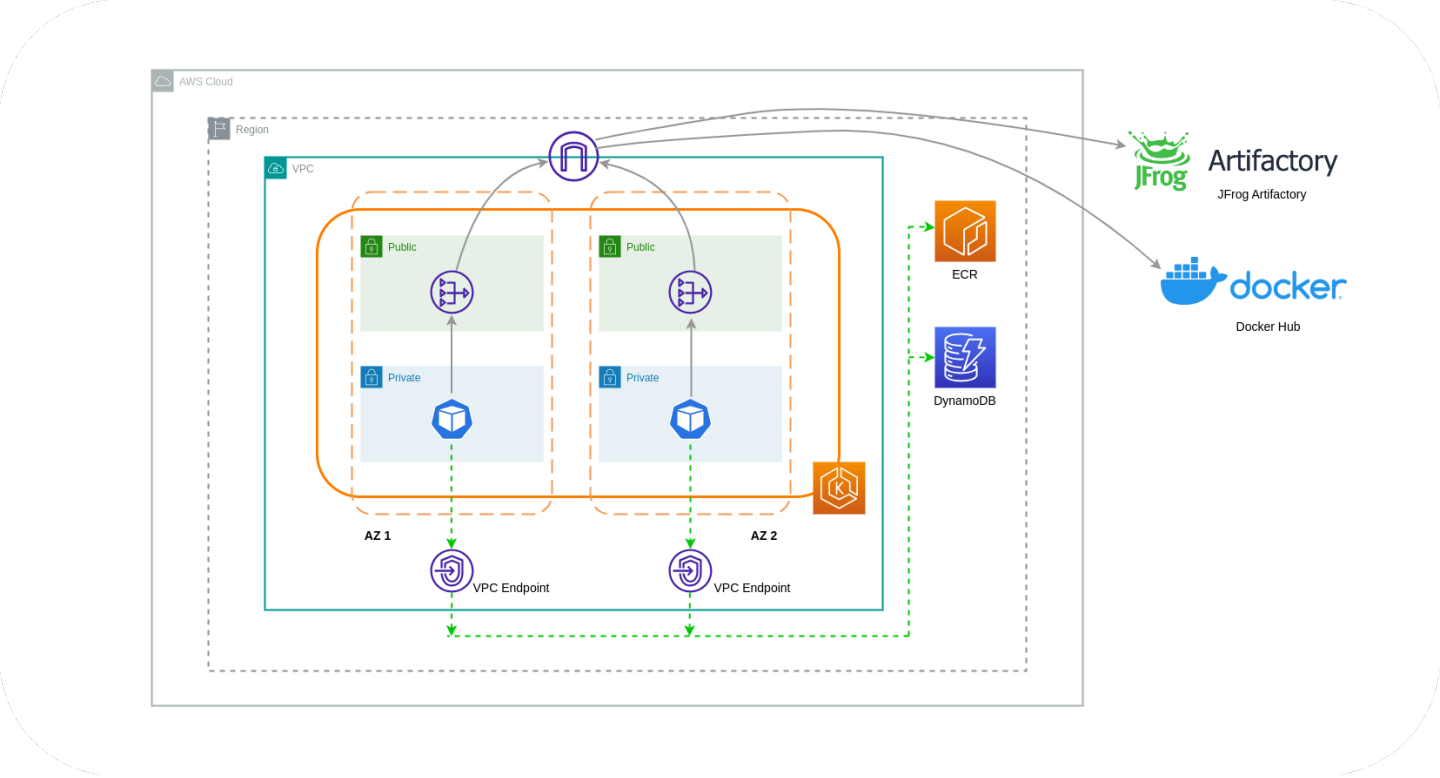
Gateway VPC Endpoints

There are no hourly or data transfer costs associated with Gateway VPC Endpoints. When using Gateway VPC Endpoints, it's important to note that they are not extendable across VPC boundaries. They can't be used in VPC peering, VPN networking, or via Direct Connect.

Interface VPC Endpoints

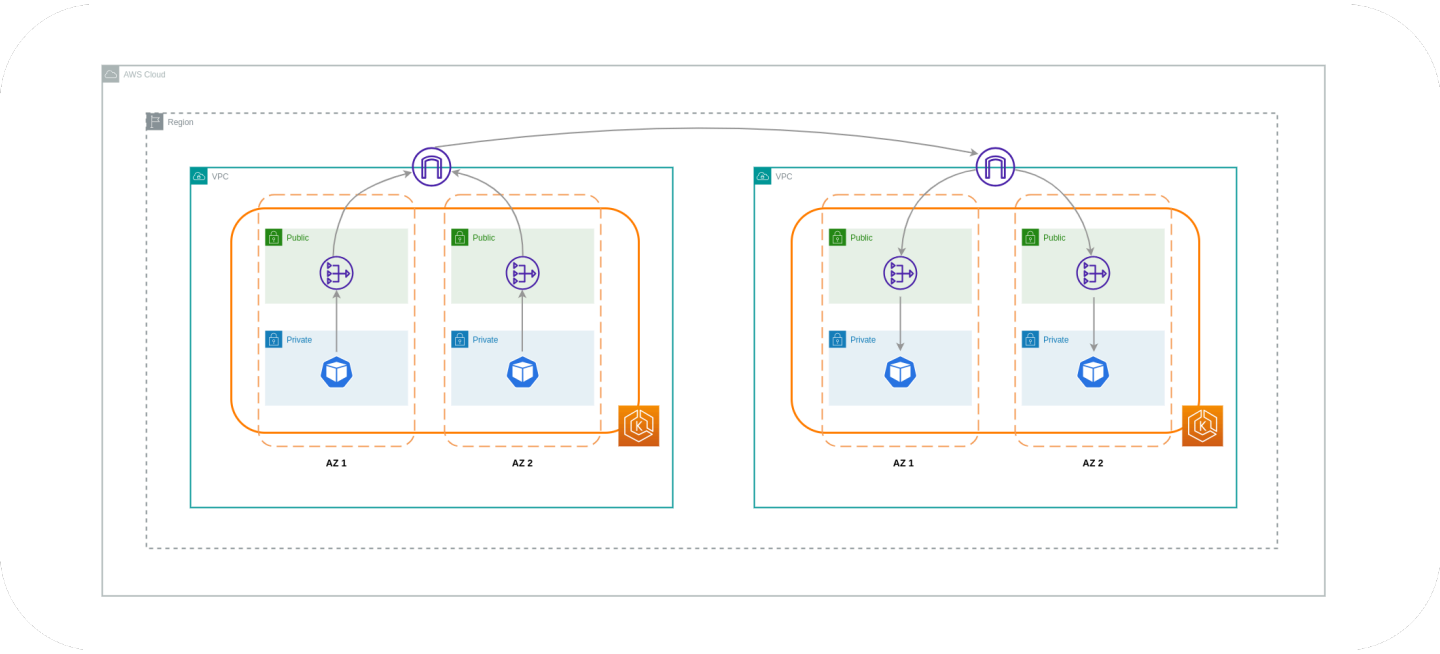
VPC Endpoints have an hourly charge and have an additional charge associated with data processing via the underlying ENI. Note that inter-AZ data transfer is not charged.

The diagram below shows Pods communicating with AWS services via VPC Endpoints.



Data Transfer between VPCs

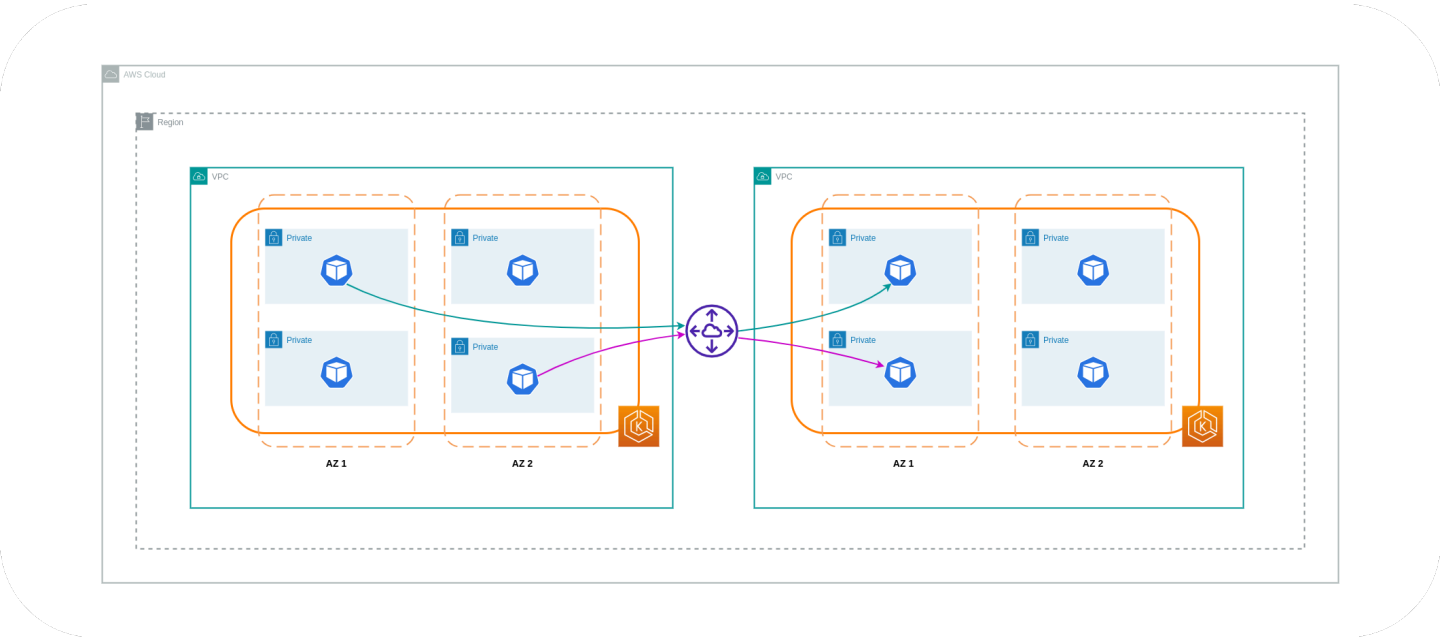
In some cases, you may have workloads in distinct VPCs (within the same AWS region) that need to communicate with each other. This can be accomplished by allowing traffic to traverse the public internet through Internet Gateways attached to the respective VPCs. Such communication can be enabled by deploying infrastructure components like EC2 instances, NAT Gateways or NAT instances in public subnets. However, a setup including these components will incur charges for processing/transferring data in and out of the VPCs. If the traffic to and from the separate VPCs is moving across AZs, then there will be an additional charge in the transfer of data. The diagram below depicts a setup that uses NAT Gateways and Internet Gateways to establish communication between workloads in different VPCs.



VPC Peering Connections

To reduce costs for such use cases, you can make use of VPC Peering. With a VPC Peering connection, there are no data transfer charges for network traffic that stays within the same AZ. If traffic crosses AZs, there will be a cost incurred. Nonetheless, the VPC Peering approach is recommended for cost-effective communication between workloads in separate VPCs within the same AWS region. However, it's important to note that VPC peering is primarily effective for 1:1 VPC connectivity because it doesn't allow for transitive networking.

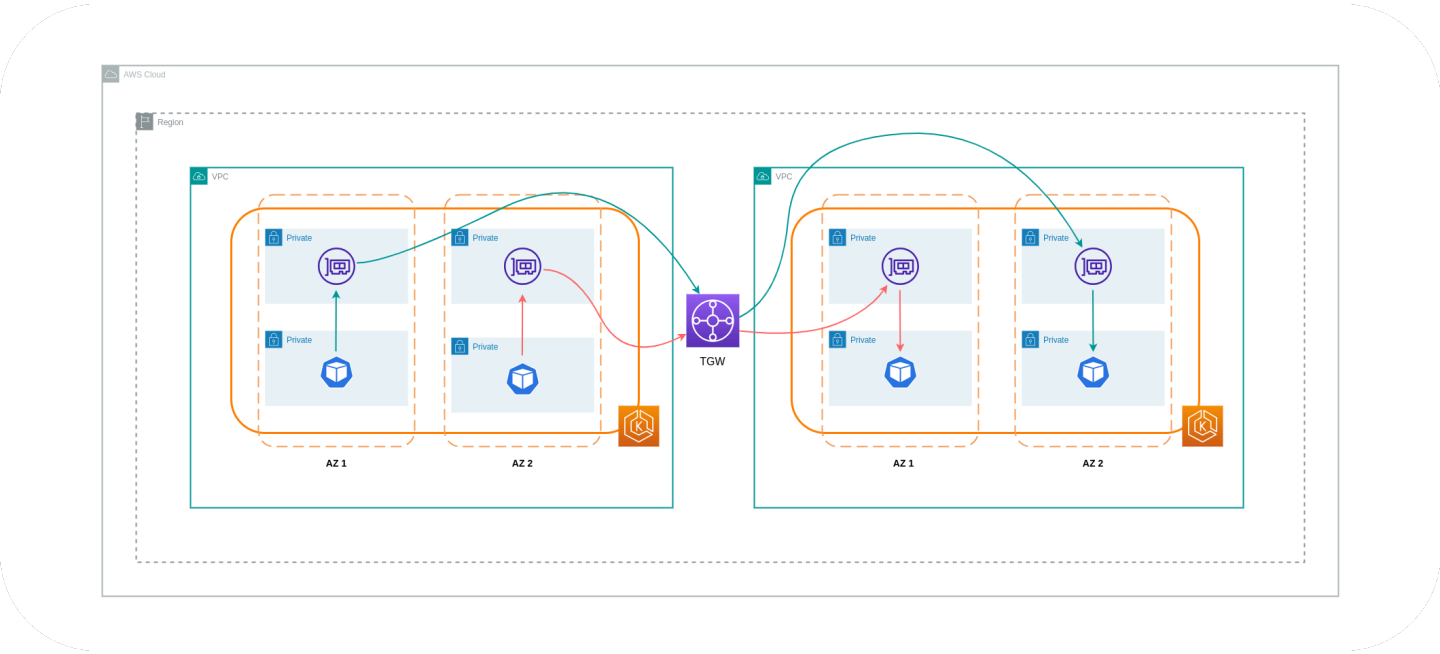
The diagram below is a high-level representation of workloads communication via a VPC peering connection.



Transitive Networking Connections

As pointed out in the previous section, VPC Peering connections do not allow for transitive networking connectivity. If you want to connect 3 or more VPCs with transitive networking requirements, then you should use a Transit Gateway (TGW). This will enable you to overcome the limits of VPC Peering or any operational overhead associated with having multiple VPC Peering connections between multiple VPCs. You are billed on an hourly basis and for data sent to the TGW. *There is no destination cost associated with inter-AZ traffic that flows through the TGW.*

The diagram below shows inter-AZ traffic flowing through a TGW between workloads in different VPCs but within the same AWS region.



Using a Service Mesh

Service meshes offer powerful networking capabilities that can be used to reduce network related costs in your EKS cluster environments. However, you should carefully consider the operational tasks and complexity that a service mesh will introduce to your environment if you adopt one.

Restricting Traffic to Availability Zones

Using Istio's Locality Weighted Distribution

Istio enables you to apply network policies to traffic *after* routing occurs. This is done using Destination Rules such as locality weighted distribution. Using this feature, you can control the weight (expressed as a percentage) of traffic that can go to a certain destination based on its origin. The source of this traffic can either be from an external (or public facing) load balancer or a Pod within the cluster itself. When all the Pod endpoints are available, the locality will be selected based on a weighted round-robin load balancing algorithm. In the case that certain endpoints are unhealthy or unavailable, the locality weight will be automatically adjusted to reflect this change in the available endpoints.

> **Note**
>
> Before implementing locality weighted distribution, you should start by understanding your network traffic patterns and the implications that the Destination Rule policy may

have on your application's behaviour. As such, it's important to have distributed tracing mechanisms in place with tools such as AWS X-Ray or Jaeger.

The Istio Destination Rules detailed above can also be applied to manage traffic from a load balancer to Pods in your EKS cluster. Locality weighted distribution rules can be applied to a Service that receives traffic from a highly available load balancer (specifically the Ingress Gateway). These rules allow you to control how much traffic goes where based on its zonal origin - the load balancer in this case. If configured correctly, less egress cross-zone traffic will be incurred compared to a load balancer that distributes traffic evenly or randomly to Pod replicas in different AZs.

Below is a code block example of a Destination Rule resource in Istio. As can be seen below, this resource specifies weighted configurations for incoming traffic from 3 different AZs in the `eu-west-1` region. These configurations declare that a majority of the incoming traffic (70% in this case) from a given AZ should be proxied to a destination in the same AZ from which it originates.

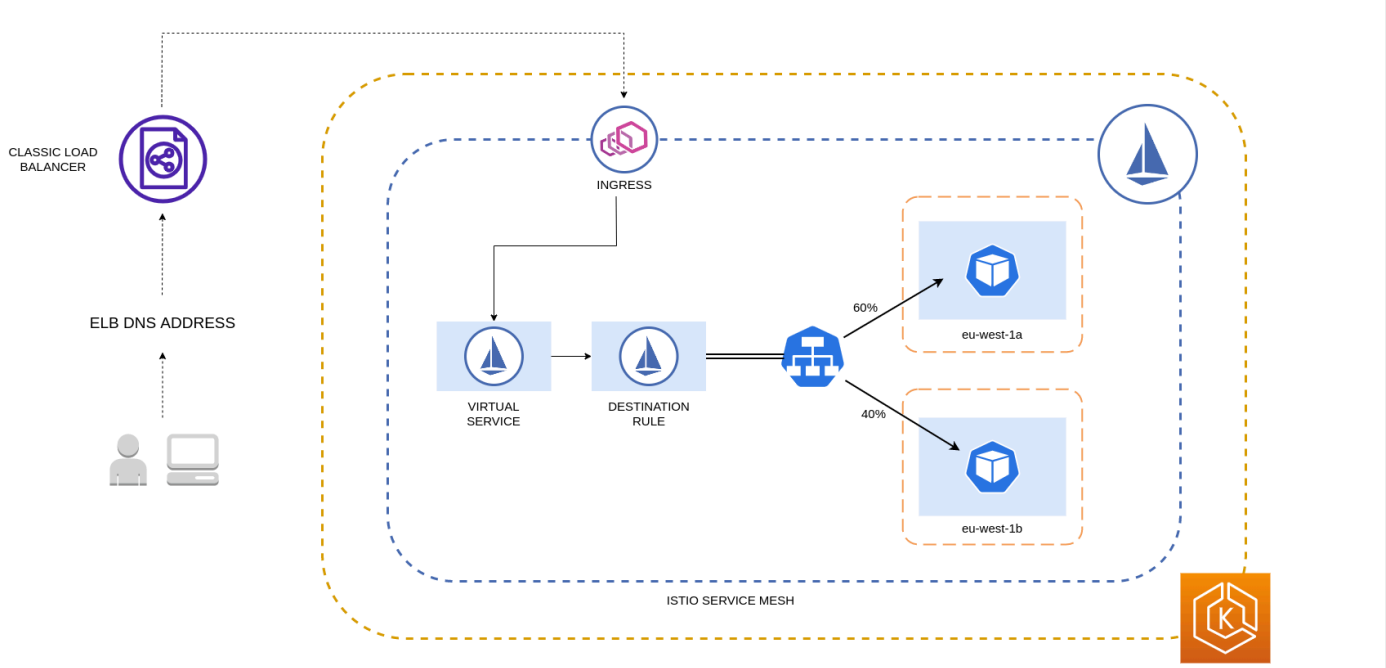
```
apiVersion: networking.istio.io/v1beta1
kind: DestinationRule
metadata:
  name: express-test-dr
spec:
  host: express-test.default.svc.cluster.local
  trafficPolicy:
    loadBalancer:                      +
      localityLbSetting:
        distribute:
        - from: eu-west-1/eu-west-1a/  +
          to:
            "eu-west-1/eu-west-1a/_": 70
            "eu-west-1/eu-west-1b/_": 20
            "eu-west-1/eu-west-1c/_": 10
        - from: eu-west-1/eu-west-1b/_  +
          to:
            "eu-west-1/eu-west-1a/_": 20
            "eu-west-1/eu-west-1b/_": 70
            "eu-west-1/eu-west-1c/_": 10
        - from: eu-west-1/eu-west-1c/_  +
          to:
            "eu-west-1/eu-west-1a/_": 20
            "eu-west-1/eu-west-1b/_": 10
            "eu-west-1/eu-west-1c/*": 70**
```

```
    connectionPool:
      http:
        http2MaxRequests: 10
        maxRequestsPerConnection: 10
    outlierDetection:
      consecutiveGatewayErrors: 1
      interval: 1m
      baseEjectionTime: 30s
```

Note

The minimum weight that can be distributed destination is 1%. The reason for this is to maintain failover regions and zones in the case that the endpoints in the main destination become unhealthy or unavailable.

The diagram below depicts a scenario in which there is a highly available load balancer in the *eu-west-1* region and locality weighted distribution is applied. The Destination Rule policy for this diagram is configured to send 60% of traffic coming from *eu-west-1a* to Pods in the same AZ, whereas 40% of the traffic from *eu-west-1a* should go to Pods in eu-west-1b.



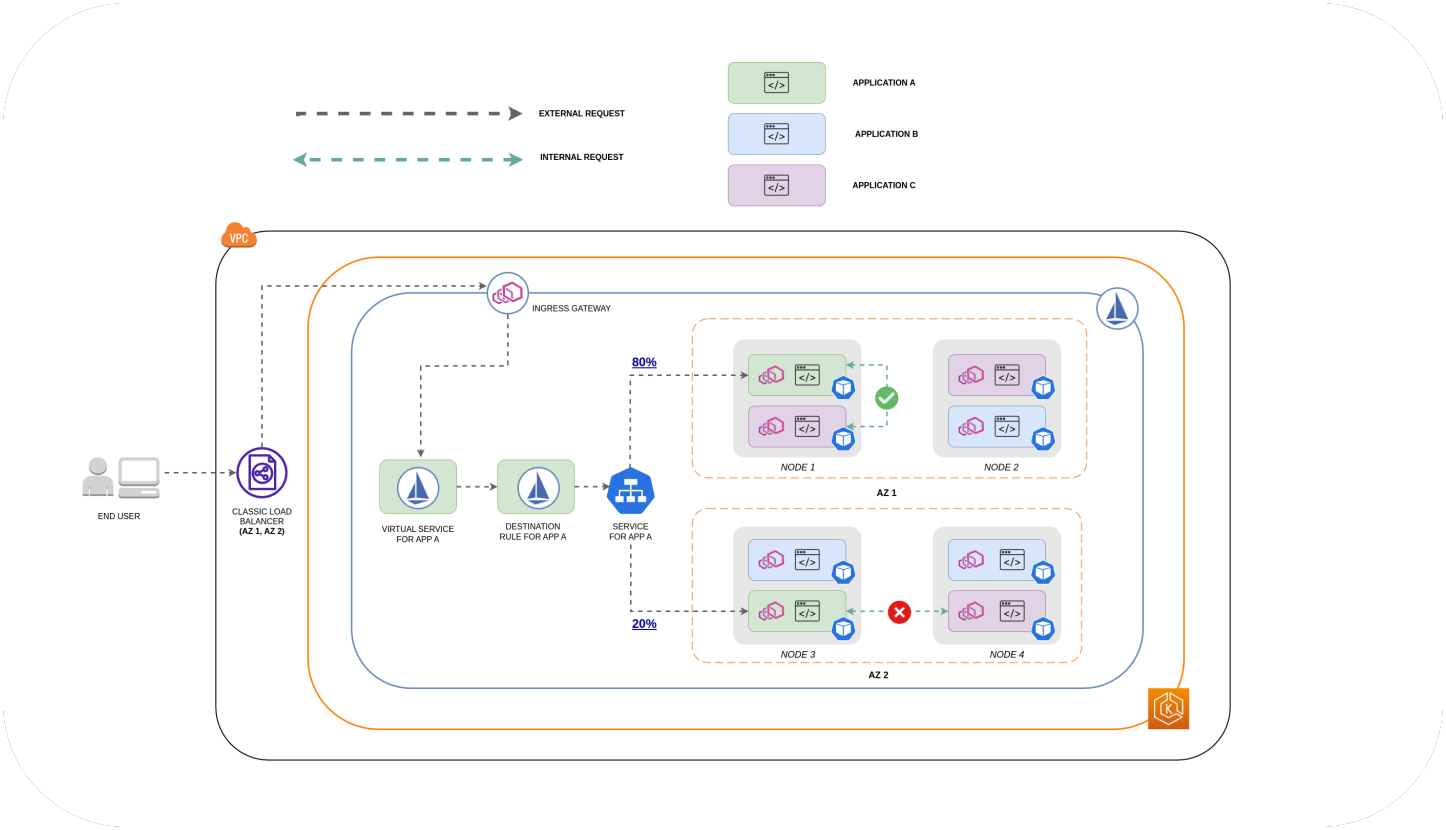
Restricting Traffic to Availability Zones and Nodes

Using the Service Internal Traffic Policy with Istio

To mitigate network costs associated with *external* incoming traffic and *internal* traffic between Pods, you can combine Istio's Destination Rules and the Kubernetes Service *internal traffic policy*. The way to combine Istio destination rules with the service internal traffic policy will largely depend on 3 things:

- The role of the microservices
- Network traffic patterns across the microservices
- How the microservices should be deployed across the Kubernetes cluster topology

The diagram below shows what the network flow would look like in the case of a nested request and how the aforementioned policies would control the traffic.



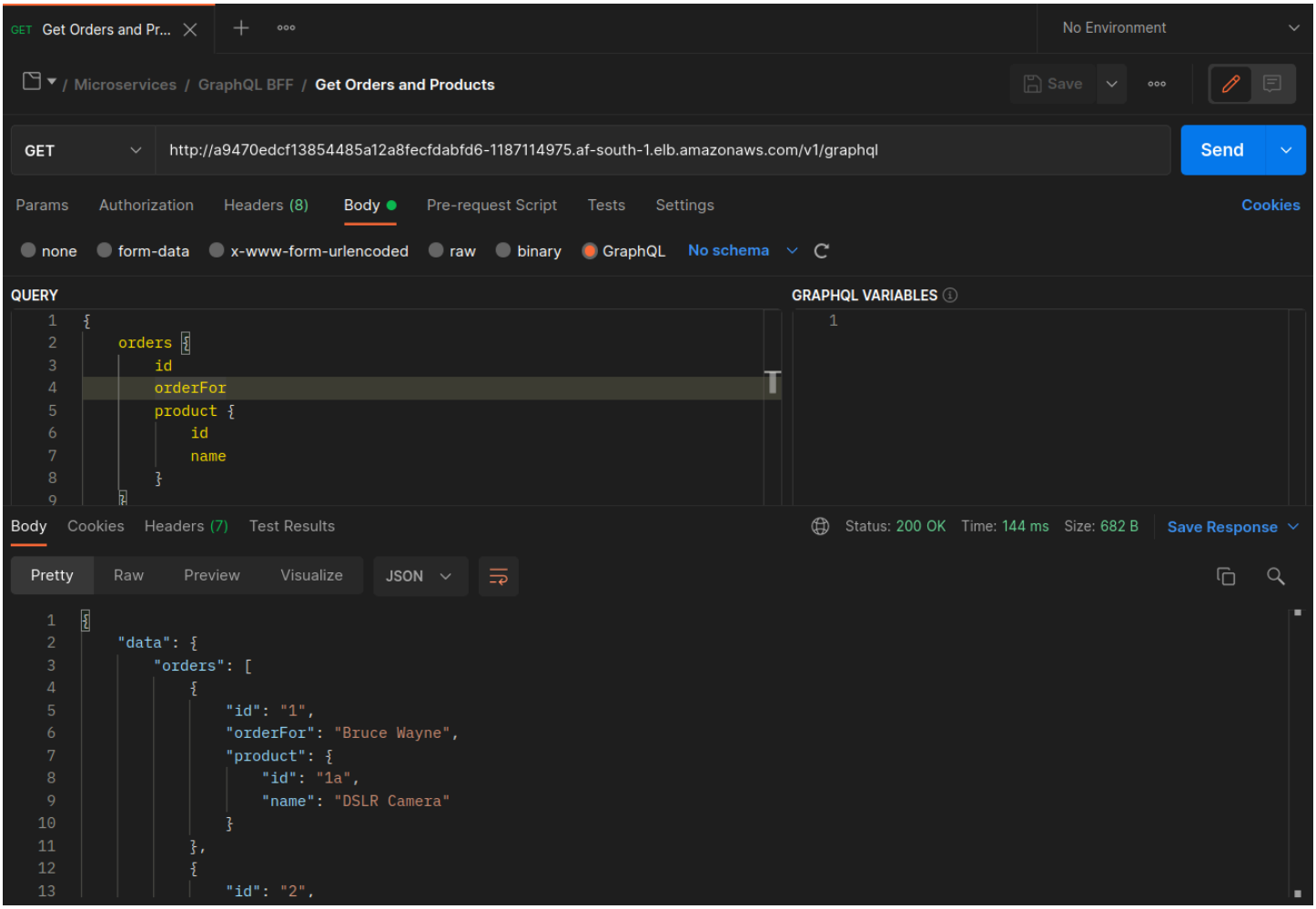
1. The end user makes a request to **APP A,** which in turn makes a nested request to **APP C**. This request is first sent to a highly available load balancer, which has instances in AZ 1 and AZ 2 as the above diagram shows.

2. The external incoming request is then routed to the correct destination by the Istio Virtual Service.
3. After the request is routed, the Istio Destination Rule controls how much traffic goes to the respective AZs based on where it originated from (AZ 1 or AZ 2).
4. The traffic then goes to the Service for **APP A**, and is then proxied to the respective Pod endpoints. As shown in the diagram, 80% of the incoming traffic is sent to Pod endpoints in AZ 1, and 20% of the incoming traffic is sent to AZ 2.
5. **APP A** then makes an internal request to **APP C**. **APP C**'s Service has an internal traffic policy enabled (`internalTrafficPolicy`: Local`).
6. The internal request from **APP A** (on **NODE 1**) to **APP C** is successful because of the available node-local endpoint for **APP C**.
7. The internal request from **APP A** (on **NODE 3) to APP C** fails because there are no available *node-local endpoints* for **APP C**. As the diagram shows, APP C has no replicas on NODE 3. **

The screenshots below are captured from a live example of this approach. The first set of screenshots demonstrate a successful external request to a `graphql` and a successful nested request from the `graphql` to a co-located `orders` replica on the node `ip-10-0-0-151.af-south-1.compute.internal`.

test-results.txt

```
kubectl get pods -n ecommerce -o wide --field-selector spec.nodeName=ip-10-0-0-147.af-south-1.compute.i
NAME                        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE   IP          NODE
products-8567b458c8-brgdp   2/2     Running   0          64m   10.0.0.83   ip-10-0-0-147.af-south-1.com
--------------------------------------------------------------------------
kubectl get pods -n ecommerce -o wide --field-selector spec.nodeName=ip-10-0-1-153.af-south-1.compute.i
NAME                        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE   IP          NODE
products-8567b458c8-5shq8   2/2     Running   0          65m   10.0.1.4    ip-10-0-1-153.af-south-1.comp
--------------------------------------------------------------------------
kubectl get pods -n ecommerce -o wide --field-selector spec.nodeName=ip-10-0-1-68.af-south-1.compute.in
NAME                      READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE   IP           NODE
orders-684bfbd6d9-5dxcf   2/2     Running   0          22m   10.0.1.145   ip-10-0-1-68.af-south-1.compu
--------------------------------------------------------------------------
kubectl get pods -n ecommerce -o wide --field-selector spec.nodeName=ip-10-0-0-151.af-south-1.compute.i
NAME                      READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE   IP           NODE
graphql-8f877c686-k7k9b   2/2     Running   0          18m   10.0.0.239   ip-10-0-0-151.af-south-1.comp
orders-684bfbd6d9-rc2zp   2/2     Running   0          18m   10.0.0.182   ip-10-0-0-151.af-south-1.comp
```



With Istio, you can verify and export the statistics of any upstream clusters and endpoints that your proxies are aware of. This can help provide a picture of the network flow as well as the share of distribution among the services of a workload. Continuing with the same example, the `orders` endpoints that the `graphql` proxy is aware of can be obtained using the following command:

```
kubectl exec -it deploy/graphql -n ecommerce -c istio-proxy -- curl localhost:15000/
clusters | grep orders
```

```
...
orders-service.ecommerce.svc.cluster.local::10.0.1.33:3003::**rq_error::0**
orders-service.ecommerce.svc.cluster.local::10.0.1.33:3003::**rq_success::119**
orders-service.ecommerce.svc.cluster.local::10.0.1.33:3003::**rq_timeout::0**
orders-service.ecommerce.svc.cluster.local::10.0.1.33:3003::**rq_total::119**
orders-service.ecommerce.svc.cluster.local::10.0.1.33:3003::**health_flags::healthy**
orders-service.ecommerce.svc.cluster.local::10.0.1.33:3003::**region::af-south-1**
orders-service.ecommerce.svc.cluster.local::10.0.1.33:3003::**zone::af-south-1b**
```

```
...
```

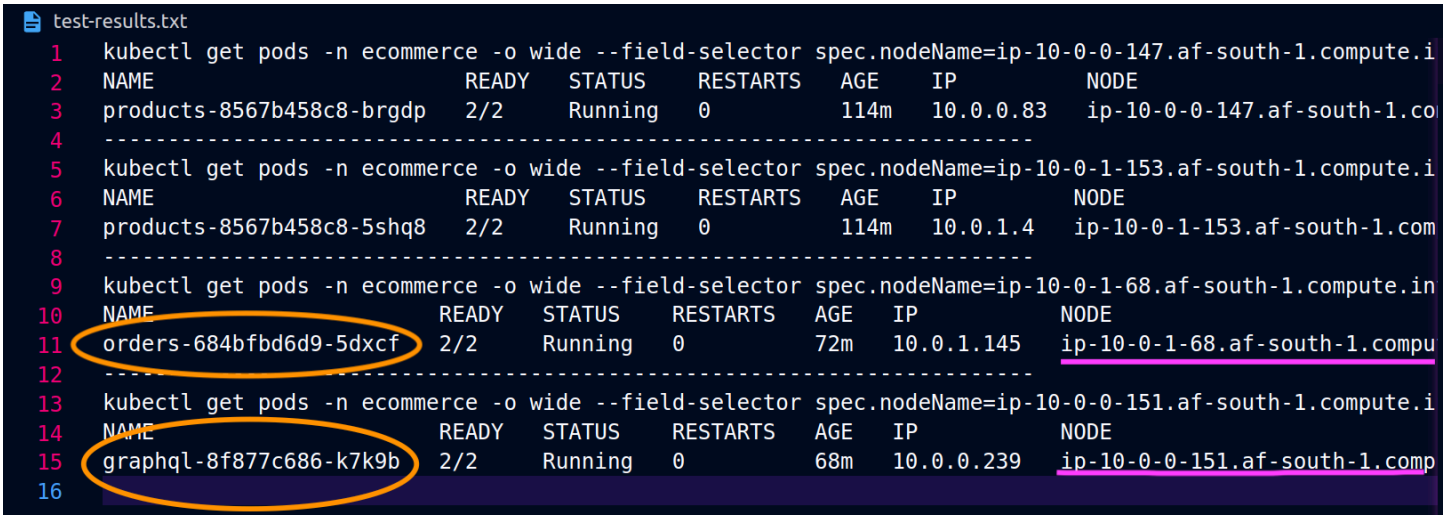
In this case, the `graphql` proxy is only aware of the `orders` endpoint for the replica that it shares a node with. If you remove the `internalTrafficPolicy: Local` setting from the orders Service, and re-run a command like the one above, then the results will return all the endpoints of the replicas spread across the different nodes. Furthermore, by examining the `rq_total` for the respective endpoints, you'll notice a relatively even share in network distribution. Consequently, if the endpoints are associated with upstream services running in different AZs, then this network distribution across zones will result in higher costs.

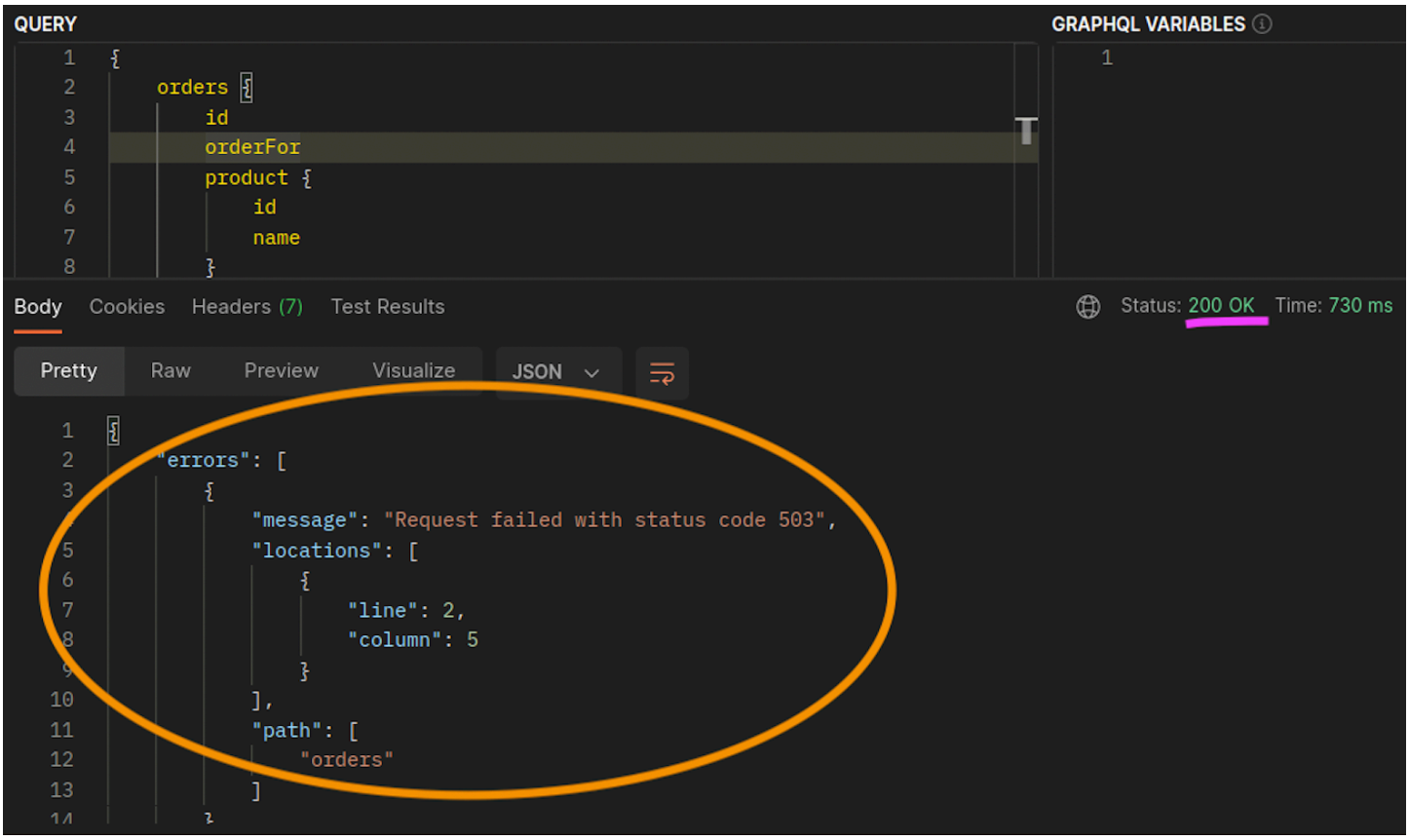
As mentioned in a previous section above, you can co-locate frequently communicating Pods by making use of pod-affinity.

```
...
spec:
...
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: graphql
        role: api
        workload: ecommerce
    spec:
      affinity:
        podAffinity:
          requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
          - labelSelector:
              matchExpressions:
              - key: app
                operator: In
                values:
                - orders
            topologyKey: "kubernetes.io/hostname"
      nodeSelector:
        managedBy: karpenter
        billing-team: ecommerce
...
```

When the `graphql` and `orders` replicas don't co-exist on the same node (`ip-10-0-0-151.af-south-1.compute.internal`), the first request to `graphql` is successful as noted by the `200`

`response code` in the Postman screenshot below, whereas the second nested request from `graphql` to `orders` fails with a `503 response code`.





Additional Resources

- [Addressing latency and data transfer costs on EKS using Istio]

- Exploring the effect of Topology Aware Hints on network traffic in Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service
- Getting visibility into your Amazon EKS Cross-AZ pod to pod network bytes
- Optimize AZ Traffic with Istio
- Optimize AZ Traffic with Topology Aware Routing
- Optimize Kubernetes Cost & Performance with Service Internal Traffic Policy
- Optimize Kubernetes Cost & Performance with Istio and Service Internal Traffic Policy
- Overview of Data Transfer Costs for Common Architectures
- Understanding data transfer costs for AWS container services

Storage

Overview

There are scenarios where you may want to run applications that need to preserve data for a short or long term basis. For such use cases, volumes can be defined and mounted by Pods so that their containers can tap into different storage mechanisms. Kubernetes supports different types of volumes for ephemeral and persistent storage. The choice of storage largely depends on application requirements. For each approach, there are cost implications, and the practices detailed below which will help you accomplish cost efficiency for workloads needing some form of storage in your EKS environments.

Ephemeral Volumes

Ephemeral volumes are for applications that require transient local volumes but don't require data to be persisted after restarts. Examples of this include requirements for scratch space, caching, and read-only input data like configuration data and secrets. You can find more details of Kubernetes ephemeral volumes here. Most of ephemeral volumes (e.g. emptyDir, configMap, downwardAPI, secret, hostpath) are backed by locally-attached writable devices (usually the root disk) or RAM, so it's important to choose the most cost efficient and performant host volume.

Using EBS Volumes

We recommend starting with gp3 as the host root volume. It is the latest general purpose SSD volume offered by Amazon EBS and also offers a lower price (up to 20%) per GB compared to gp2 volumes.

Using Amazon EC2 Instance Stores

Amazon EC2 instance stores provide temporary block-level storage for your EC2 instances. The storage provided by EC2 instance stores is accessible through disks that are physically attached to the hosts. Unlike Amazon EBS, you can only attach instance store volumes when the instance is launched, and these volumes only exist during the lifetime of the instance. They cannot be detached and re-attached to other instances. You can learn more about Amazon EC2 instance stores here. *There are no additional fees associated with an instance store volume.* This makes them (instance store volumes) *more cost efficient* than the general EC2 instances with large EBS volumes.

To use local store volumes in Kubernetes, you should partition, configure, and format the disks using the Amazon EC2 user-data so that volumes can be mounted as a HostPath in the pod spec. Alternatively, you can leverage the Local Persistent Volume Static Provisioner to simplify local storage management. The Local Persistent Volume static provisioner allows you to access local instance store volumes through the standard Kubernetes PersistentVolumeClaim (PVC) interface. Furthermore, it will provision PersistentVolumes (PVs) that contains node affinity information to schedule Pods to the correct nodes. Although it uses Kubernetes PersistentVolumes, EC2 instance store volumes are ephemeral in nature. Data written to ephemeral disks is only available during the instance's lifetime. When the instance is terminated, so is the data. Please refer to this blog for more details.

Keep in mind that when using Amazon EC2 instance store volumes, the total IOPS limit is shared with the host and it binds Pods to a specific host. You should thoroughly review your workload requirements before adopting Amazon EC2 instance store volumes.

Persistent Volumes

Kubernetes is typically associated with running stateless applications. However, there are scenarios where you may want to run microservices that need to preserve persistent data or information from one request to the next. Databases are a common example for such use cases. However, Pods, and the containers or processes inside them, are ephemeral in nature. To persist data beyond the lifetime of a Pod, you can use PVs to define access to storage at a specific location that is independent from the Pod. *The costs associated with PVs is highly dependent on the type of storage being used and how applications are consuming it.*

There are different types of storage options that support Kubernetes PVs on Amazon EKS listed here. The storage options covered below are Amazon EBS, Amazon EFS, Amazon FSx for Lustre, Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP.

Amazon Elastic Block Store (EBS) Volumes

Amazon EBS volumes can be consumed as Kubernetes PVs to provide block-level storage volumes. These are well suited for databases that rely on random reads & writes and throughput-intensive applications that perform long, continuous reads and writes. The Amazon Elastic Block Store Container Storage Interface (CSI) driver allows Amazon EKS clusters to manage the lifecycle of Amazon EBS volumes for persistent volumes. The Container Storage Interface enables and facilitates interaction between Kubernetes and a storage system. When a CSI driver is deployed to your EKS cluster, you can access it's capabilities through the native Kubernetes storage resources such as Persistent Volumes (PVs), Persistent Volume Claims (PVCs) and Storage Classes (SCs). This link provides practical examples of how to interact with Amazon EBS volumes with Amazon EBS CSI driver.

Choosing the right volume

We recommend using the latest generation of block storage (gp3) as it provides the right balance between price and performance. It also allows you to scale volume IOPS and throughput independently of volume size without needing to provision additional block storage capacity. If you're currently using gp2 volumes, we highly recommend migrating to gp3 volumes. The blog post Migrating Amazon EKS clusters from gp2 to gp3 EBS volumes explains how to migrate from *gp2* on *gp3* on Amazon EKS clusters with backup and restore by using CSI Volume Snapshots feature, which requires application downtime.

Amazon EBS allows changing volume characteristics like volume size, IOPS and throughput online. Utilizing this feature one can migrate from *gp2* on *gp3* without application downtime using either PVC annotations as described in this blog, which requires EBS CSI driver v1.19.0+, or starting with Amazon EKS v1.31 and EBS CSI driver 1.35 by using the VolumeAttributesClass API as describe here.

When you have applications that require higher performance and need volumes larger than what a single gp3 volume can support, you should consider using io2 block express. This type of storage is ideal for your largest, most I/O intensive, and mission critical deployment such as SAP HANA or other large databases with low latency requirements. Keep in mind that an instance's EBS performance is bounded by the instance's performance limits, so not all the instances support io2 block express volumes. You can check the supported instance types and other considerations in this doc.

A single gp3 volume can support up to up to 16,000 max IOPS, 1,000 MiB/s max throughput, max 16TiB. The latest generation of Provisioned IOPS SSD volume that provides up to 256,000 IOPS, 4,000 MiB/s, throughput, and 64TiB.

Among these options, you should best tailor your storage performance and cost to the needs of your applications.

Monitor and optimize over time

It's important to understand your application's baseline performance and monitor it for selected volumes to check if it's meeting your requirements/expectations or if it's over-provisioned (e.g. a scenario where provisioned IOPS are not being fully utilized).

Instead of allocating a large volume from the beginning, you can gradually increase the size of the volume as you accumulate data. You can dynamically re-size volumes using the volume resizing feature in the Amazon Elastic Block Store CSI driver (aws-ebs-csi-driver). *Keep in mind that you can only increase the EBS volume size.*

To identify and remove any dangling EBS volumes, you can use AWS trusted advisor's cost optimization category. This feature helps you identify unattached volumes or volumes with very low write activity for a period of time. There is a cloud-native open-source, read-only tool called Popeye that scans live Kubernetes clusters and reports potential issues with deployed resources and configurations. For example, it can scan for unused PVs and PVCs and check whether they are bound or whether there is any volume mount error.

For a deep dive on monitoring, please refer to the EKS cost optimization observability guide.

One other option you can consider is the AWS Compute Optimizer Amazon EBS volume recommendations. This tool automatically identifies the optimal volume configuration and correct level of performance needed. For example, it can be used for optimal settings pertaining to provisioned IOPS, volume sizes, and types of EBS volumes based on the maximum utilization during the past 14 days. It also quantifies the potential monthly cost savings derived from its recommendations. You can review this blog for more details.

Backup retention policy

You can back up the data on your Amazon EBS volumes by taking point-in-time snapshots. The Amazon EBS CSI driver supports volume snapshots. You can learn how to create a snapshot and restore an EBS PV using the steps outlined here.

Subsequent snapshots are incremental backups, meaning that only the blocks on the device that have changed after your most recent snapshot are saved. This minimizes the time required to create the snapshot and saves on storage costs by not duplicating data. However, growing the number of old EBS snapshots without a proper retention policy can cause unexpected costs when operating at scale. If you're directly backing up Amazon EBS volumes through AWS API, you can leverage Amazon Data Lifecycle Manager (DLM) that provides an automated, policy-based lifecycle management solution for Amazon Elastic Block Store (EBS) Snapshots and EBS-backed Amazon Machine Images (AMIs). The console makes it easier to automate the creation, retention, and deletion of EBS Snapshots and AMIs.

> **Note**
>
> There is currently no way to make use of Amazon DLM via the Amazon EBS CSI driver.

In a Kubernetes environment, you can leverage an open-source tool called Velero to backup your EBS Persistent Volumes. You can set a TTL flag when scheduling the job to expire backups. Here is a guide from Velero as an example.

Amazon Elastic File System (EFS)

Amazon Elastic File System (EFS) is a serverless, fully elastic file system that lets you share file data using standard file system interface and file system semantics for a broad spectrum of workloads and applications. Examples of workloads and applications include Wordpress and Drupal, developer tools like JIRA and Git, and shared notebook system such as Jupyter as well as home directories.

One of main benefits of Amazon EFS is that it can be mounted by multiple containers spread across multiple nodes and multiple availability zones. Another benefit is that you only pay for the storage you use. EFS file systems will automatically grow and shrink as you add and remove files which eliminates the need for capacity planning.

To use Amazon EFS in Kubernetes, you need to use the Amazon Elastic File System Container Storage Interface (CSI) Driver, aws-efs-csi-driver. Currently, the driver can dynamically create access points. However, the Amazon EFS file system has to be provisioned first and provided as an input to the Kubernetes storage class parameter.

Choosing the right EFS storage class

Amazon EFS offers four storage classes.

Two standard storage classes:

- Amazon EFS Standard
- Amazon EFS Standard-Infrequent Access (EFS Standard-IA)

Two one-zone storage classes:

- Amazon EFS One Zone
- Amazon EFS One Zone-Infrequent Access (EFS One Zone-IA)

The Infrequent Access (IA) storage classes are cost-optimized for files that are not accessed every day. With Amazon EFS lifecycle management, you can move files that have not been accessed for the duration of the lifecycle policy (7, 14, 30, 60, or 90 days) to the IA storage classes *which can reduce the storage cost by up to 92 percent compared to EFS Standard and EFS One Zone storage classes respectively*.

With EFS Intelligent-Tiering, lifecycle management monitors the access patterns of your file system and automatically move files to the most optimal storage class.

> **Note**
>
> aws-efs-csi-driver currently doesn't have a control on changing storage classes, lifecycle management or Intelligent-Tiering. Those should be setup manually in the AWS console or through the EFS APIs.

> **Note**
>
> aws-efs-csi-driver isn't compatible with Window-based container images.

> **Note**
>
> There is a known memory issue when *vol-metrics-opt-in* (to emit volume metrics) is enabled due to the DiskUsage function that consumes an amount of memory that is proportional to the size of your filesystem. *Currently, we recommend to disable the `--vol-metrics-opt-in`*

option on large filesystems to avoid consuming too much memory. Here is a github issue link for more details.

Amazon FSx for Lustre

Lustre is a high-performance parallel file system commonly used in workloads requiring throughput up to hundreds of GB/s and sub-millisecond per-operation latencies. It's used for scenarios such as machine learning training, financial modeling, HPC, and video processing. Amazon FSx for Lustre provides a fully managed shared storage with the scalability and performance, seamlessly integrated with Amazon S3.

You can use Kubernetes persistent storage volumes backed by FSx for Lustre using the FSx for Lustre CSI driver from Amazon EKS or your self-managed Kubernetes cluster on AWS. See the Amazon EKS documentation for more details and examples.

Link to Amazon S3

It's recommended to link a highly durable long-term data repository residing on Amazon S3 with your FSx for Lustre file system. Once linked, large datasets are lazy-loaded as needed from Amazon S3 to FSx for Lustre file systems. You can also run your analyses and your results back to S3, and then delete your Lustre file system.

Choosing the right deployment and storage options

FSx for Lustre provides different deployment options. The first option is called *scratch* and it doesn't replicate data, while the second option is called *persistent* which, as the name implies, persists data.

The first option (*scratch*) can be used *to reduce the cost of temporary shorter-term data processing.* The persistent deployment option *is designed for longer-term storage* that automatically replicates data within an AWS Availability Zone. It also supports both SSD and HDD storage.

You can configure the desired deployment type under parameters in the FSx for lustre filesystem's Kubernetes StorageClass. Here is an link that provides sample templates.

> **Note**
>
> For latency-sensitive workloads or workloads requiring the highest levels of IOPS/throughput, you should choose SSD storage. For throughput-focused workloads that aren't latency-sensitive, you should choose HDD storage.

Enable data compression

You can also enable data compression on your file system by specifying "LZ4" as the Data Compression Type. Once it's enabled, all newly-written files will be automatically compressed on FSx for Lustre before they are written to disk and uncompressed when they are read. LZ4 data compression algorithm is lossless so the original data can be fully reconstructed from the compressed data.

You can configure the data compression type as LZ4 under parameters in the FSx for lustre filesystem's Kubernetes StorageClass. Compression is disabled when the value is set to NONE, which is default. This link provides sample templates.

> **Note**
>
> Amazon FSx for Lustre isn't compatible with Window-based container images.

Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP

Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP is a fully managed shared storage built on NetApp's ONTAP file system. FSx for ONTAP provides feature-rich, fast, and flexible shared file storage that's broadly accessible from Linux, Windows, and macOS compute instances running in AWS or on premises.

Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP supports two tiers of storage: *1/primary tier* and *2/capacity pool tier.*

The *primary tier* is a provisioned, high-performance SSD-based tier for active, latency-sensitive data. The fully elastic *capacity pool tier* is cost-optimized for infrequently accessed data, automatically scales as data is tiered to it, and offers virtually unlimited petabytes of capacity. You can enable data compression and deduplication on capacity pool storage and further reduce the amount of storage capacity your data consumes. NetApp's native, policy-based FabricPool feature

continually monitors data access patterns, automatically transferring data bidirectionally between storage tiers to optimize performance and cost.

NetApp's Astra Trident provides dynamic storage orchestration using a CSI driver which allows Amazon EKS clusters to manage the lifecycle of persistent volumes PVs backed by Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP file systems. To get started, see Use Astra Trident with Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP in the Astra Trident documentation.

Other considerations

Minimize the size of container image

Once containers are deployed, container images are cached on the host as multiple layers. By reducing the size of images, the amount of storage required on the host can be reduced.

By using slimmed-down base images such as scratch images or distroless container images (that contain only your application and its runtime dependencies) from the beginning, *you can reduce storage cost in addition to other ancillary benefits such as a reducing the attack surface area and shorter image pull times.*

You should also consider using open source tools, such as Slim.ai that provides an easy, secure way to create minimal images.

Multiple layers of packages, tools, application dependencies, libraries can easily bloat the container image size. By using multi-stage builds, you can selectively copy artifacts from one stage to another, excluding everything that isn't necessary from the final image. You can check more image-building best practices here.

Another thing to consider is how long to persist cached images. You may want to clean up the stale images from the image cache when a certain amount of disk is utilized. Doing so will help make sure you have enough space for the host's operation. By default, the kubelet performs garbage collection on unused images every five minutes and on unused containers every minute.

To configure options for unused container and image garbage collection, tune the kubelet using a configuration file and change the parameters related to garbage collection using the `KubeletConfiguration` resource type.

You can learn more about it in the Kubernetes documentation.

Observability

Introduction

Observability tools help you efficiently detect, remediate and investigate your workloads. The cost of telemetry data naturally increases as your use of EKS increases. At times, it can be challenging to balance your operational needs and measuring what matters to your business and keeping observability costs in check. This guide focuses on cost optimization strategies for the three pillars of observability: logs, metrics and traces. Each of these best practices can be applied independently to fit your organization's optimization goals.

Logging

Logging plays a vital role in monitoring and troubleshooting the applications in your cluster. There are several strategies that can be employed to optimize logging costs. The best practice strategies listed below include examining your log retention policies to implement granular controls on how long log data is kept, sending log data to different storage options based on importance, and utilizing log filtering to narrow down the types of logs messages that are stored. Efficiently managing log telemetry can lead to cost savings for your environments.

EKS Control Plane

Optimize Your Control Plane Logs

The Kubernetes control plane is a set of components that manage the clusters and these components send different types of information as log streams to a log group in Amazon CloudWatch. While there are benefits to enabling all control plane log types, you should be aware of the information in each log and the associated costs to storing all the log telemetry. You are charged for the standard CloudWatch Logs data ingestion and storage costs for logs sent to Amazon CloudWatch Logs from your clusters. Before enabling them, evaluate whether each log stream is necessary.

For example, in non-production clusters, selectively enable specific log types, such as the api server logs, only for analysis and deactivate afterward. But for production clusters, where you might not be able to reproduce events, and resolving issues requires more log information, then you can enable all log types. Further control plane cost optimization implementation details are in this blog post.

Stream Logs to S3

Another cost optimization best practice is streaming control plane logs to S3 via CloudWatch Logs subscriptions. Leveraging CloudWatch Logs subscriptions allows you to selectively forward logs to S3 which provides more cost efficient long term storage compared to retaining logs indefinitely in CloudWatch. For example, for production clusters, you can create a critical log group and leverage subscriptions to stream these logs to S3 after 15 days. This will ensure you have have quick access to the logs for analysis but also save on cost by moving logs to a more cost efficient storage.

> **Important**
>
> As of 9/5/2023 EKS logs are classified as Vended Logs in Amazon CloudWatch Logs. Vended Logs are specific AWS service logs natively published by AWS services on behalf of the customer and available at volume discount pricing. Please visit the Amazon CloudWatch pricing page to learn more about Vended Logs pricing.

EKS Data Plane

Log Retention

Amazon CloudWatch's default retention policy is to keep logs indefinitely and never expire, incurring storage costs applicable to your AWS region. In order to reduce the storage costs, you can customize the retention policy for each log group based on your workload requirements.

In a development environment, a lengthy retention period may not be necessary. But in a production environment, you can set a longer retention policy to meet troubleshooting, compliance, and capacity planning requirements. For example, if you are running an e-commerce application during the peak holiday season the system is under heavier load and issues can arise that may not be immediately noticeable, you will want to set a longer log retention for detailed troubleshooting and post event analysis.

You can configure your retention periods in the AWS CloudWatch console or AWS API with the duration from 1 day to 10 years based on each log group. Having a flexible retention period can save log storage costs, while also maintaining critical logs.

Log Storage Options

Storage is a large driver of observability costs therefore it is crucial to optimize your log storage strategy. Your strategies should align with your workloads requirements while maintaining

performance and scalability. One strategy to reduce the costs of storing logs is to leverage AWS S3 buckets and its different storage tiers.

Forward logs directly to S3

Consider forwarding less critical logs, such as development environments, directly to S3 instead of Cloudwatch. This can have an immediate impact on log storage costs. One option is to forward the logs straight to S3 using Fluentbit. You define this in the `[OUTPUT]` section, the destination where FluentBit transmits container logs for retention. Review additional configurations parameter here.

```
[OUTPUT]
        Name eks_to_s3
        Match application.*
        bucket $S3_BUCKET name
        region us-east-2
        store_dir /var/log/fluentbit
        total_file_size 30M
        upload_timeout 3m
```

Forward logs to CloudWatch only for short term analysis

For more critical logs, such as a production environments where you might need to perform immediate analysis on the data, consider forwarding the logs to CloudWatch. You define this in the `[OUTPUT]` section, the destination where FluentBit transmits container logs for retention. Review additional configurations parameter here.

```
[OUTPUT]
        Name eks_to_cloudwatch_logs
        Match application.*
        region us-east-2
        log_group_name fluent-bit-cloudwatch
        log_stream_prefix from-fluent-bit-
        auto_create_group On
```

However, this will not have an instant affect on your cost savings. For additional savings, you will have to export these logs to Amazon S3.

Export to Amazon S3 from CloudWatch

For storing Amazon CloudWatch logs long term, we recommend exporting your Amazon EKS CloudWatch logs to Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3). You can forward the logs to

Amazon S3 bucket by creating an export task via the Console or the API. After you have done so, Amazon S3 presents many options to further reduce cost. You can define your own Amazon S3 Lifecycle rules to move your logs to a storage class that a fits your needs, or leverage the Amazon S3 Intelligent-Tiering storage class to have AWS automatically move data to long-term storage based on your usage pattern. Please refer to this blog for more details. For example, for your production environment logs reside in CloudWatch for more than 30 days then exported to Amazon S3 bucket. You can then use Amazon Athena to query the data in Amazon S3 bucket if you need to refer back to the logs at a later time.

Reduce Log Levels

Practice selective logging for your application. Both your applications and nodes output logs by default. For your application logs, adjust the log levels to align with the criticality of the workload and environment. For example, the java application below is outputting `INFO` logs which is the typical default application configuration and depending on the code can result in a high volume of log data.

```
import org.apache.log4j.*;

public class LogClass {
   private static org.apache.log4j.Logger log = Logger.getLogger(LogClass.class);

public static void main(String[] args) {
      log.setLevel(Level.INFO);

   log.debug("This is a DEBUG message, check this out!");
   log.info("This is an INFO message, nothing to see here!");
   log.warn("This is a WARN message, investigate this!");
   log.error("This is an ERROR message, check this out!");
   log.fatal("This is a FATAL message, investigate this!");    } }
```

In a development environment, change your log level to `DEBUG`, as this can help you debug issues or catch potential ones before they get into production.

```
      log.setLevel(Level.DEBUG);
```

In a production environment, consider modifying your log level to `ERROR` or `FATAL`. This will output log only when your application has errors, reducing the log output and help you focus on important data about your application status.

```
      log.setLevel(Level.ERROR);
```

You can fine tune various Kubernetes components log levels. For example, if you are using Bottlerocket as your EKS Node operating system, there are configuration settings that allow you to adjust the kubelet process log level. A snippet of this configuration setting is below. Note the default log level of **2** which adjusts the logging verbosity of the `kubelet` process.

```
[settings.kubernetes]
log-level = "2"
image-gc-high-threshold-percent = "85"
image-gc-low-threshold-percent = "80"
```

For a development environment, you can set the log level greater than **2** in order to view additional events, this is good for debugging. For a production environment, you can set the level to **0** in order to view only critical events.

Leverage Filters

When using a default EKS Fluentbit configuration to send container logs to Cloudwatch, FluentBit captures and send **ALL** application container logs enriched with Kubernetes metadata to Cloudwatch as shown in the `[INPUT]` configuration block below.

```
 [INPUT]
     Name                tail
     Tag                 application.*
     Exclude_Path        /var/log/containers/cloudwatch-agent*, /var/log/containers/
fluent-bit*, /var/log/containers/aws-node*, /var/log/containers/kube-proxy*
     Path                /var/log/containers/*.log
     Docker_Mode         On
     Docker_Mode_Flush   5
     Docker_Mode_Parser  container_firstline
     Parser              docker
     DB                  /var/fluent-bit/state/flb_container.db
     Mem_Buf_Limit       50MB
     Skip_Long_Lines     On
     Refresh_Interval    10
     Rotate_Wait         30
     storage.type        filesystem
     Read_from_Head      ${READ_FROM_HEAD}
```

The [INPUT] section above is ingesting all the container logs. This can generate a large amount of data that might not be necessary. Filtering out this data can reduce the amount of log data sent to CloudWatch therefore reducing your cost. You can apply a filter to you logs before it outputs to CloudWatch. Fluentbit defines this in the [FILTER] section. For example, filtering out the Kubernetes metadata from being appended to log events can reduce your log volume.

```
    [FILTER]
        Name                nest
        Match               application.*
        Operation           lift
        Nested_under        kubernetes
        Add_prefix          Kube.

    [FILTER]
        Name                modify
        Match               application.*
        Remove              Kube.<Metadata_1>
        Remove              Kube.<Metadata_2>
        Remove              Kube.<Metadata_3>

    [FILTER]
        Name                nest
        Match               application.*
        Operation           nest
        Wildcard            Kube.*
        Nested_under        kubernetes
        Remove_prefix       Kube.
```

Metrics

Metrics provide valuable information regarding the performance of your system. By consolidating all system-related or available resource metrics in a centralized location, you gain the capability to compare and analyze performance data. This centralized approach enables you to make more informed strategic decisions, such as scaling up or scaling down resources. Additionally, metrics play a crucial role in assessing the health of resources, allowing you to take proactive measures when necessary. Generally observability costs scale with telemetry data collection and retention. Below are a few strategies you can implement to reduce the cost of metric telemetry: collecting only metrics that matter, reducing the cardinality of your telemetry data, and fine tuning the granularity of your telemetry data collection.

Monitor what matters and collect only what you need

The first cost reduction strategy is to reduce the number of metrics you are collecting and in turn, reduce retention costs.

1. Begin by working backwards from your and/or your stakeholder's requirements to determine the metrics that are most important. Success metrics are different for everyone! Know what *good* looks like and measure for it.
2. Consider diving deep into the workloads you are supporting and identifying its Key Performance Indicators (KPIs) a.k.a 'Golden Signals'. These should align to business and stake-holder requirements. Calculating SLIs, SLOs, and SLAs using Amazon CloudWatch and Metric Math is crucial for managing service reliability. Follow the best practices outlined in this guide to effectively monitor and maintain the performance of your EKS environment.
3. Then continue through the different layers of infrastructure to connect and correlate EKS cluster, node and additional infrastructure metrics to your workload KPIs. Store your business metrics and operational metrics in a system where you can correlate them together and draw conclusions based on observed impacts to both.
4. EKS exposes metrics from the control plane, cluster kube-state-metrics, pods, and nodes. The relevance of all these metrics is dependent on your needs, however it's likely that you will not need every single metric across the different layers. You can use this EKS essential metrics guide as a baseline for monitoring the overall health of an EKS cluster and your workloads.

Here is an example prometheus scrape config where we are using the `relabel_config` to keep only kubelet metrics and `metric_relabel_config` to drop all container metrics.

```
kubernetes_sd_configs:
- role: endpoints
  namespaces:
    names:
    - kube-system
bearer_token_file: /var/run/secrets/kubernetes.io/serviceaccount/token
tls_config:
  insecure_skip_verify: true
relabel_configs:
- source_labels: [__meta_kubernetes_service_label_k8s_app]
  regex: kubelet
  action: keep

metric_relabel_configs:
```

```
  - source_labels: [__name__]
    regex: container_(network_tcp_usage_total|network_udp_usage_total|tasks_state|
cpu_load_average_10s)
    action: drop
```

Reduce cardinality where applicable

Cardinality refers to the uniqueness of the data values in combination with its dimensions (eg. prometheus labels) for a specific metrics set. High cardinality metrics have many dimensions and each dimension metric combination has higher uniqueness. Higher cardinality results in larger metric telemetry data size and storage needs which increases cost.

In the high cardinality example below, we see that the Metric, Latency, has Dimensions, RequestID, CustomerID, and Service and each Dimension has many unique values. Cardinality is the measure of the combination of the number of possible values per Dimension. In Prometheus, each set of unique dimensions/labels are consider as a new metric, therefore high cardinality means more metrics.

In EKS environments with many metrics and dimensions/labels per metric (Cluster, Namespace, Service, Pod, Container, etc), the cardinality tends to grow. In order to optimize cost, consider the cardinality of the metrics you are collecting carefully. For example, if you are aggregating a specific metric for visualization at the cluster level, then you can drop additional labels that are at a lower layer such as the namespace label.

In order to identify high cardinality metrics in prometheus you can run the following PROMQL query to determine which scrape targets have the highest number of metrics (cardinality):

```
topk_max(5, max_over_time(scrape_samples_scraped[1h]))
```

and the following PROMQL query can help you determine which scrape targets have the highest metrics churn (how many new metrics series were created in a given scrape) rates :

```
topk_max(5, max_over_time(scrape_series_added[1h]))
```

If you are using grafana you can use Grafana Lab's Mimirtool to analyze your grafana dashboards and prometheus rules to identify unused high-cardinality metrics. Follow this guide on how to use the `mimirtool analyze` and `mimirtool analyze prometheus` commands to identify active metrics which are not referenced in your dashboards.

Consider metric granularity

Collecting metrics at a higher granularity like every second vs every minute can have a big impact on how much telemetry is collected and stored which increases cost. Determine sensible scrape or metrics collection intervals that balance between enough granularity to see transient issues and low enough to be cost effective. Decrease granularity for metrics that are used for capacity planning and larger time window analysis.

Below is a snippet from the default AWS Distro for Opentelemetry (ADOT) EKS Addon Collector configuration.

> **Important**
>
> the global prometheus scrape interval is set to 15s. This scrape interval can be increased resulting in a decrease in the amount of metric data collected in prometheus.

```
apiVersion: opentelemetry.io/v1alpha1
kind: OpenTelemetryCollector
metadata:
  name: my-collector-amp

...

config: |
    extensions:
      sigv4auth:
        region: "+++<YOUR_AWS_REGION>+++" service: "aps"+++</YOUR_AWS_REGION>+++

 receivers:
   #
   # Scrape configuration for the Prometheus Receiver
   # This is the same configuration used when Prometheus is installed using the
 community Helm chart
   #
   prometheus:
     config:
       global:   scrape_interval: 15s
         scrape_timeout: 10s
```

Tracing

The primary cost associated with tracing stem from trace storage generation. With tracing, the aim is to gather sufficient data to diagnose and understand performance aspects. However, as X-Ray traces costs are based on data forwarded to to X-Ray, erasing traces after it has been forward will not reduce your costs. Let's review ways to lower your costs for tracing while maintaining data for you to perform proper analysis.

Apply Sampling rules

The X-Ray sampling rate is conservative by default. Define sampling rules where you can control the amount of data that you gather. This will improve performance efficiency while reducing costs. By decreasing the sampling rate, you can collect traces from the request only what your workloads needs while maintaining a lower cost structure.

For example, you have java application that you want to debug the traces of all the requests for 1 problematic route.

Configure via the SDK to load sampling rules from a JSON document

```
{
"version": 2,
  "rules": [
    {
"description": "debug-eks",
      "host": "*",
      "http_method": "PUT",
      "url_path": "/history/*",
      "fixed_target": 0,
      "rate": 1,
      "service_type": "debug-eks"
    }
  ],
  "default": {
"fixed_target": 1,
    "rate": 0.1
  }
}
```

Via the Console

Apply Tail Sampling with AWS Distro for OpenTelemetry (ADOT)

ADOT Tail Sampling allows you to control the volume of traces ingested in the service. However, Tail Sampling allows you to define the sampling policies after all the spans in the request have been completed instead of at the beginning. This further limits the amount of raw data transferred to CloudWatch, hence reducing cost.

For example, if you're sampling 1% of traffic to a landing page and 10% of the requests to a payment page this might leave you with 300 traces for an 30 minute period. With an ADOT Tail Sampling rule of that filters specific errors, you could be left with 200 traces which decreases the number of traces stored.

```
processors:
  groupbytrace:
    wait_duration: 10s
    num_traces: 300
    tail_sampling:
    decision_wait: 1s # This value should be smaller than wait_duration
    policies:
      - ..... # Applicable policies**
  batch/tracesampling:
    timeout: 0s # No need to wait more since this will happen in previous processors
    send_batch_max_size: 8196 # This will still allow us to limit the size of the
 batches sent to subsequent exporters

service:
  pipelines:
    traces/tailsampling:
      receivers: [otlp]
      processors: [groupbytrace, tail_sampling, batch/tracesampling]
      exporters: [awsxray]
```

Leverage Amazon S3 Storage options

You should leverage AWS S3 bucket and its different storage classes to store the traces. Export traces to S3 before the retention period expires. Use Amazon S3 Lifecycle rules to move the trace data to the storage class that meets your requirements.

For example, if you have traces that are 90 days old, Amazon S3 Intelligent-Tiering can automatically move the data to long-term storage based on your usage pattern. You can use

Amazon Athena to query the data in Amazon S3 if you need to refer back to the traces at a later time. This can further reduce your cost for distributed tracing.

Additional Resources:

- Observability Best Practices Guide
- Best Practices Metrics Collection
- AWS re:Invent 2022 - Observability best practices at Amazon (COP343)
- AWS re:Invent 2022 - Observability: Best practices for modern applications (COP344)

Best Practices for Windows

This guide provides advice about running windows containers and nodes.

Topics

- Amazon EKS optimized Windows AMI management
- Configure gMSA for Windows Pods and containers
- Windows worker nodes hardening
- Container image scanning
- Windows Server version and License
- Logging
- Monitoring
- Windows Networking
- Avoiding OOM errors
- Patching Windows Servers and Containers
- Running Heterogeneous workloads
- Pod Security Contexts
- Persistent storage options
- Hardening Windows container images

Amazon EKS optimized Windows AMI management

Windows Amazon EKS optimized AMIs are built on top of Windows Server 2019 and Windows Server 2022. They are configured to serve as the base image for Amazon EKS nodes. By default, the AMIs include the following components:

- kubelet
- kube-proxy
- AWS IAM Authenticator for Kubernetes
- csi-proxy
- containerd

You can programmatically retrieve the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) ID for Amazon EKS optimized AMIs by querying the AWS Systems Manager Parameter Store API. This parameter eliminates the need for you to manually look up Amazon EKS optimized AMI IDs. For more information about the Systems Manager Parameter Store API, see GetParameter. Your user account must have the ssm:GetParameter IAM permission to retrieve the Amazon EKS optimized AMI metadata.

The following example retrieves the AMI ID for the latest Amazon EKS optimized AMI for Windows Server 2019 LTSC Core. The version number listed in the AMI name relates to the corresponding Kubernetes build it is prepared for.

```
aws ssm get-parameter --name /aws/service/ami-windows-latest/Windows_Server-2019-
English-Core-EKS_Optimized-1.21/image_id --region us-east-1 --query "Parameter.Value"
 --output text
```

Example output:

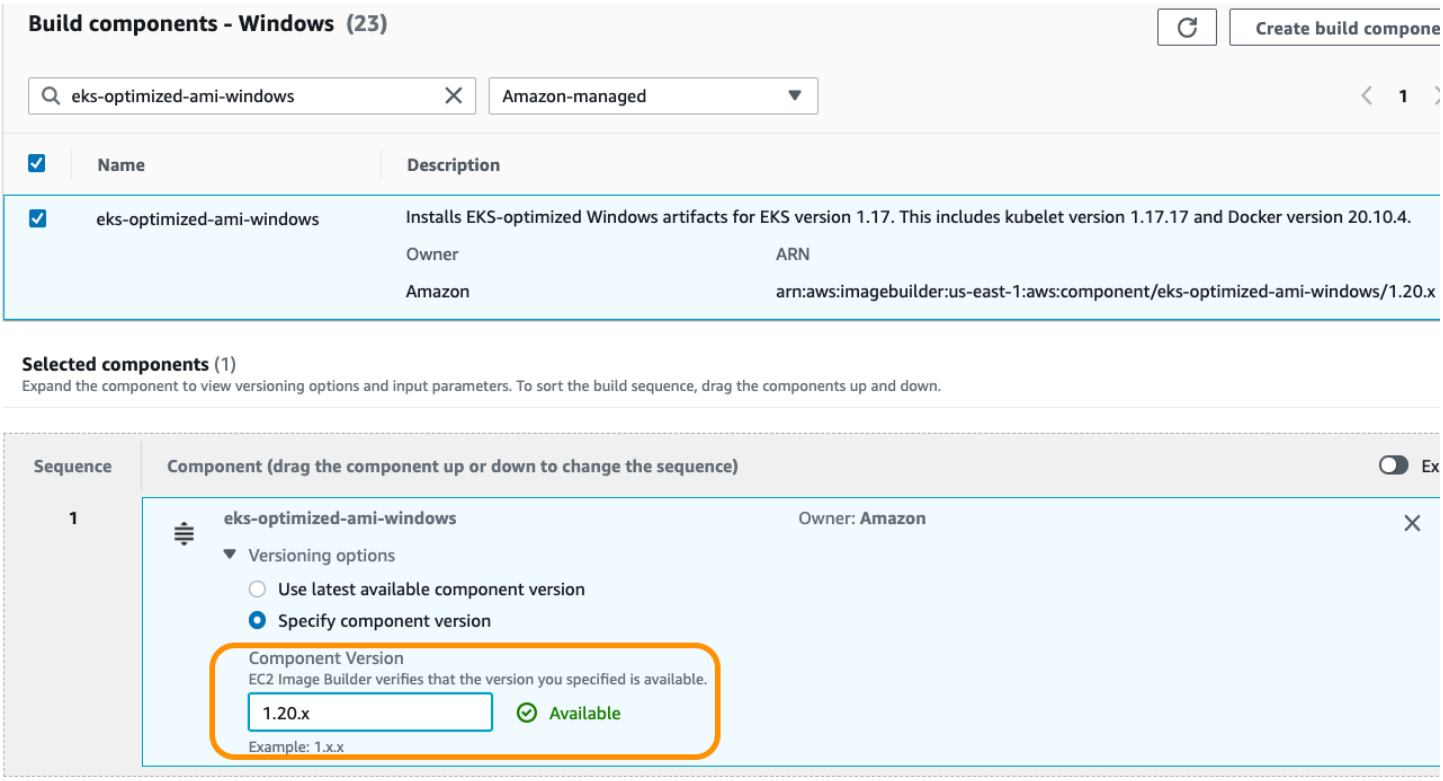
```
ami-09770b3eec4552d4e
```

Managing your own Amazon EKS optimized Windows AMI

An essential step towards production environments is maintaining the same Amazon EKS optimized Windows AMI and kubelet version across the Amazon EKS cluster.

Using the same version across the Amazon EKS cluster reduces the time during troubleshooting and increases cluster consistency. Amazon EC2 Image Builder helps create and maintain custom Amazon EKS optimized Windows AMIs to be used across an Amazon EKS cluster.

Use Amazon EC2 Image Builder to select between Windows Server versions, AWS Windows Server AMI release dates, and/or OS build version. The build components step, allows you to select between existing EKS Optimized Windows Artifacts as well as the kubelet versions. For more information: https://docs.aws.amazon.com/eks/latest/userguide/eks-custom-ami-windows.html



NOTE: Prior to selecting a base image, consult the Windows Server Version and License section for important details pertaining to release channel updates.

Configuring faster launching for custom EKS optimized AMIs

When using a custom Windows Amazon EKS optimized AMI, Windows worker nodes can be launched up to 65% faster by enabling the Fast Launch feature. This feature maintains a set of pre-provisioned snapshots which have the *Sysprep specialize*, *Windows Out of Box Experience (OOBE)* steps and required reboots already completed. These snapshots are then used on subsequent launches, reducing the time to scale-out or replace nodes. Fast Launch can be only enabled for AMIs *you own* through the EC2 console or in the AWS CLI and the number of snapshots maintained is configurable.

NOTE: Fast Launch is not compatible with the default Amazon-provided EKS optimized AMI, create a custom AMI as above before attempting to enable it.

For more information: AWS Windows AMIs - Configure your AMI for faster launching

Caching Windows base layers on custom AMIs

Windows container images are larger than their Linux counterparts. If you are running any containerized .NET Framework-based application, the average image size is around 8.24GB. During pod scheduling, the container image must be fully pulled and extracted in the disk before the pod reaches Running status.

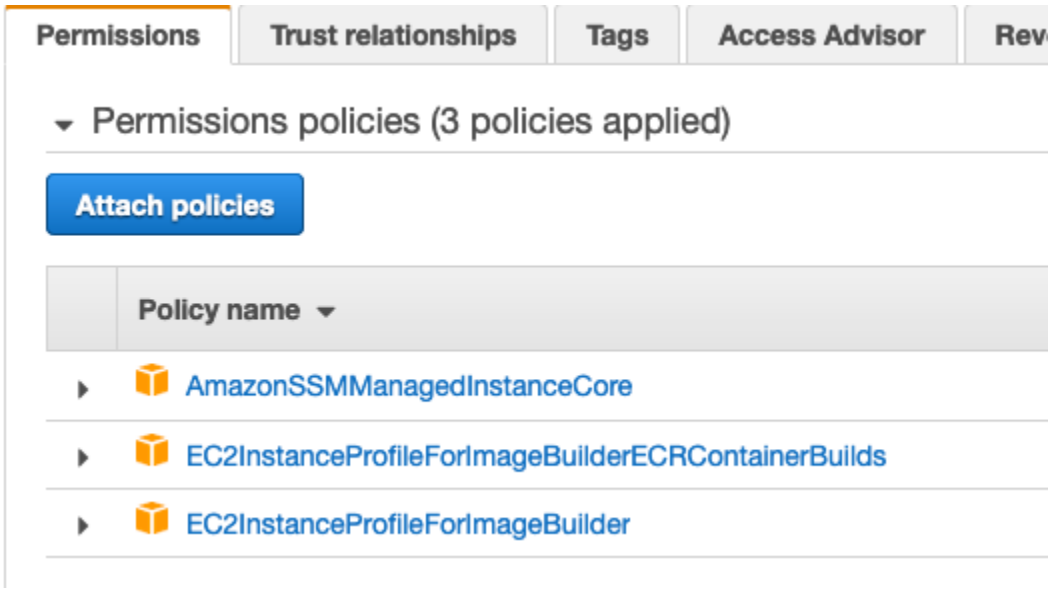
During this process, the container runtime (containerd) pulls and extracts the entire container image in the disk. The pull operation is a parallel process, meaning the container runtime pulls the container image layers in parallel. In contrast, the extraction operation occurs in a sequential process, and it is I/O intensive. Due to that, the container image can take more than 8 minutes to be fully extracted and ready to be used by the container runtime (containerd), and as a result, the pod startup time can take several minutes.

As mentioned in the **Patching Windows Server and Container** topic, there is an option to build a custom AMI with EKS. During the AMI preparation, you can add an additional EC2 Image builder component to pull all the necessary Windows container images locally and then generate the AMI. This strategy will drastically reduce the time a pod reaches the status **Running**.

On Amazon EC2 Image Builder, create a component to download the necessary images and attach it to the Image recipe. The following example pulls a specific image from a ECR repository.

```
name: ContainerdPull
description: This component pulls the necessary containers images for a cache strategy.
schemaVersion: 1.0

phases:
  - name: build
    steps:
      - name: containerdpull
        action: ExecutePowerShell
        inputs:
          commands:
            - Set-ExecutionPolicy Unrestricted -Force
            - (Get-ECRLoginCommand).Password | docker login --username AWS --password-
stdin 111000111000.dkr.ecr.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
            - ctr image pull mcr.microsoft.com/dotnet/framework/aspnet:latest
            - ctr image pull 111000111000.dkr.ecr.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/
myappcontainerimage:latest
```

To make sure the following component works as expected, check if the IAM role used by EC2 Image builder (EC2InstanceProfileForImageBuilder) has the attached policies:



Blog post

In the following blog post, you will find a step by step on how to implement caching strategy for custom Amazon EKS Windows AMIs:

Speeding up Windows container launch times with EC2 Image builder and image cache strategy

Configure gMSA for Windows Pods and containers

What is a gMSA account

Windows-based applications such as .NET applications often use Active Directory as an identity provider, providing authorization/authentication using NTLM or Kerberos protocol.

An application server to exchange Kerberos tickets with Active Directory requires to be domain-joined. Windows containers don't support domain joins and would not make much sense as containers are ephemeral resources, creating a burden on the Active Directory RID pool.

However, administrators can leverage gMSA Active Directory accounts to negotiate a Windows authentication for resources such as Windows containers, NLB, and server farms.

Windows container and gMSA use case

Applications that leverage on Windows authentication, and run as Windows containers, benefit from gMSA because the Windows Node is used to exchange the Kerberos ticket on behalf of the container.There are two options available to setup the Windows worker node to support gMSA integration:

1 - Domain-joined Windows worker nodes

In this setup, the Windows worker node is domain-joined in the Active Directory domain, and the AD Computer account of the Windows worker nodes is used to authenticate against Active Directory and retrieve the gMSA identity to be used with the pod.

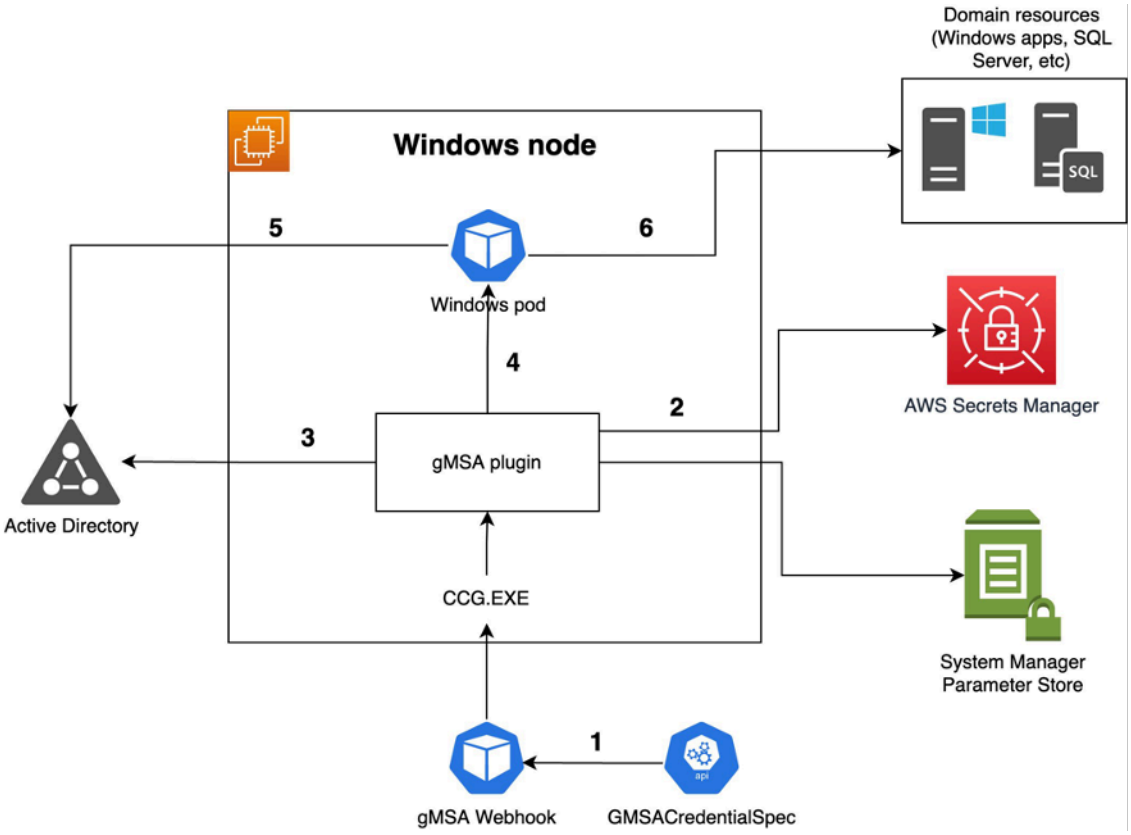
In the domain-joined approach, you can easily manage and harden your Windows worker nodes using existing Active Directory GPOs; however, it generates additional operational overhead and delays during Windows worker node joining in the Kubernetes cluster, as it requires additional reboots during node startup and Active Directory garage cleaning after the Kubernetes cluster terminates nodes.

In the following blog post, you will find a detailed step-by-step on how to implement the Domain-joined Windows worker node approach:

Windows Authentication on Amazon EKS Windows pods

2 - Domainless Windows worker nodes

In this setup, the Windows worker node isn’t joined in the Active Directory domain, and a "portable" identity (user/password) is used to authenticate against Active Directory and retrieve the gMSA identity to be used with the pod.



The portable identity is an Active Directory user; the identity (user/password) is stored on AWS Secrets Manager or AWS System Manager Parameter Store, and an AWS-developed plugin called ccg_plugin will be used to retrieve this identity from AWS Secrets Manager or AWS System Manager Parameter Store and pass it to containerd to retrieve the gMSA identity and made it available for the pod.

In this domainless approach, you can benefit from not having any Active Directory interaction during Windows worker node startup when using gMSA and reducing the operational overhead for Active Directory administrators.

In the following blog post, you will find a detailed step-by-step on how to implement the Domainless Windows worker node approach:

Domainless Windows Authentication for Amazon EKS Windows pods

Important note

Despite the pod being able to use a gMSA account, it is necessary to also setup the application or service accordingly to support Windows authentication, for instance, in order to setup Microsoft IIS to support Windows authentication, you should prepared it via dockerfile:

```
RUN Install-WindowsFeature -Name Web-Windows-Auth -IncludeAllSubFeature
RUN Import-Module WebAdministration; Set-ItemProperty 'IIS:\AppPools\SiteName' -name
 processModel.identityType -value 2
RUN Import-Module WebAdministration; Set-WebConfigurationProperty -Filter '/
system.webServer/security/authentication/anonymousAuthentication' -Name Enabled -Value
 False -PSPath 'IIS:\' -Location 'SiteName'
RUN Import-Module WebAdministration; Set-WebConfigurationProperty -Filter '/
system.webServer/security/authentication/windowsAuthentication' -Name Enabled -Value
 True -PSPath 'IIS:\' -Location 'SiteName'
```

Windows worker nodes hardening

OS Hardening is a combination of OS configuration, patching, and removing unnecessary software packages, which aim to lock down a system and reduce the attack surface. It is a best practice to prepare your own EKS Optimized Windows AMI with the hardening configurations required by your company.

AWS provides a new EKS Optimized Windows AMI every month containing the latest Windows Server Security Patches. However, it is still the user's responsibility to harden their AMI by applying the necessary OS configurations regardless of whether they use self-managed or managed node groups.

Microsoft offers a range of tools like Microsoft Security Compliance Toolkit and Security Baselines that helps you to achieve hardening based on your security policies needs. CIS Benchmarks are also available and should be implemented on top of an Amazon EKS Optimized Windows AMI for production environments.

Reducing attack surface with Windows Server Core

Windows Server Core is a minimal installation option that is available as part of the EKS Optimized Windows AMI. Deploying Windows Server Core has a couple of benefits. First, it has a relatively small disk footprint, being 6GB on Server Core against 10GB on Windows Server with Desktop experience. Second, it has a smaller attack surface because of its smaller code base and available APIs.

AWS provides customers with new Amazon EKS Optimized Windows AMIs every month, containing the latest Microsoft security patches, regardless of the Amazon EKS-supported version. As a best practice, Windows worker nodes must be replaced with new ones based on the latest Amazon

EKS-optimized AMI. Any node running for more than 45 days without an update in place or node replacement lacks security best practices.

Avoiding RDP connections

Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP) is a connection protocol developed by Microsoft to provide users with a graphical interface to connect to another Windows computer over a network.

As a best practice, you should treat your Windows worker nodes as if they were ephemeral hosts. That means no management connections, no updates, and no troubleshooting. Any modification and update should be implemented as a new custom AMI and replaced by updating an Auto Scaling group. See **Patching Windows Servers and Containers** and **Amazon EKS optimized Windows AMI management**.

Disable RDP connections on Windows nodes during the deployment by passing the value **false** on the ssh property, as the example below:

```
nodeGroups:
- name: windows-ng
  instanceType: c5.xlarge
  minSize: 1
  volumeSize: 50
  amiFamily: WindowsServer2019CoreContainer
  ssh:
    allow: false
```

If access to the Windows node is needed, use AWS System Manager Session Manager to establish a secure PowerShell session through the AWS Console and SSM agent. To see how to implement the solution watch Securely Access Windows Instances Using AWS Systems Manager Session Manager

In order to use System Manager Session Manager an additional IAM policy must be applied to the IAM role used to launch the Windows worker node. Below is an example where the **AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore** is specified in the `eksctl` cluster manifest:

```
 nodeGroups:
- name: windows-ng
  instanceType: c5.xlarge
  minSize: 1
  volumeSize: 50
  amiFamily: WindowsServer2019CoreContainer
```

```
  ssh:
    allow: false
  iam:
    attachPolicyARNs:
      - arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonEKSWorkerNodePolicy
      - arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonEKS_CNI_Policy
      - arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/ElasticLoadBalancingFullAccess
      - arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonEC2ContainerRegistryReadOnly
      - arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore
```

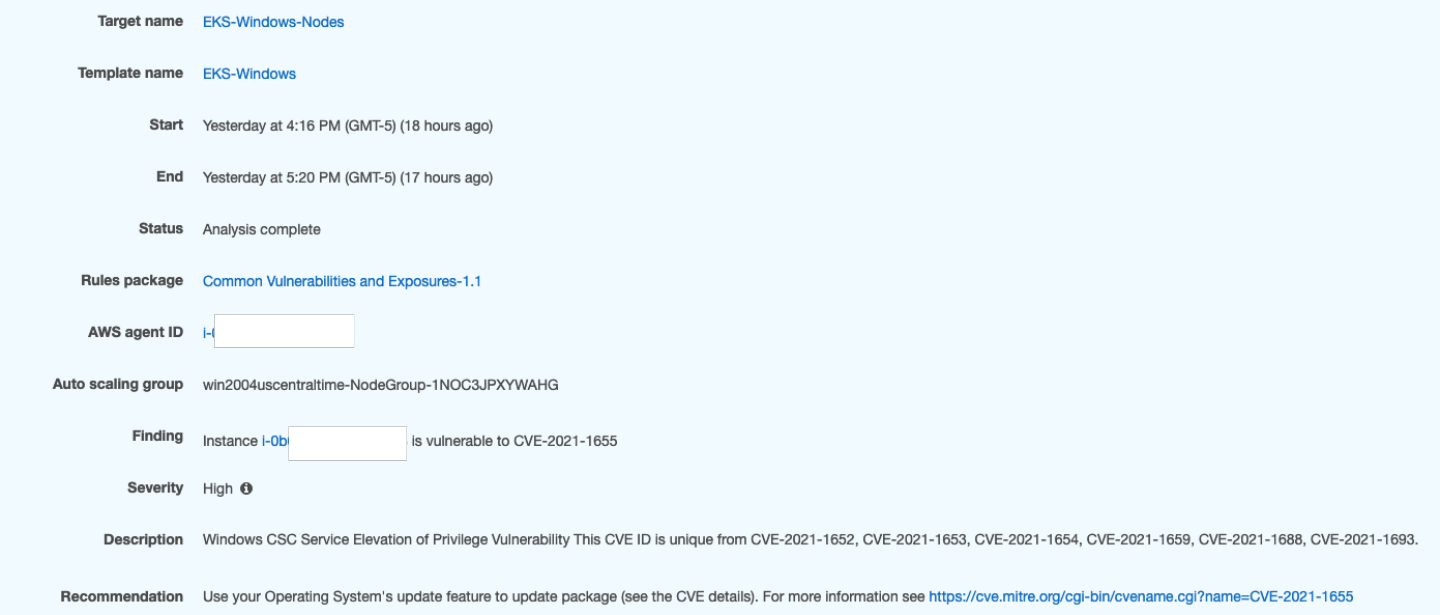
Amazon Inspector

> Amazon Inspector is an automated security assessment service that helps improve the security and compliance of applications deployed on AWS. Amazon Inspector automatically assesses applications for exposure, vulnerabilities, and deviations from best practices. After performing an assessment, Amazon Inspector produces a detailed list of security findings prioritized by level of severity. These findings can be reviewed directly or as part of detailed assessment reports which are available via the Amazon Inspector console or API.

Amazon Inspector can be used to run CIS Benchmark assessment on the Windows worker node and it can be installed on a Windows Server Core by performing the following tasks:

1. Download the following .exe file: https://inspector-agent.amazonaws.com/windows/installer/latest/AWSAgentInstall.exe
2. Transfer the agent to the Windows worker node.
3. Run the following command on PowerShell to install the Amazon Inspector Agent: `.\AWSAgentInstall.exe /install`

Below is the ouput after the first run. As you can see, it generated findings based on the CVE database. You can use this to harden your Worker nodes or create an AMI based on the hardened configurations.



For more information on Amazon Inspector, including how to install Amazon Inspector agents, set up the CIS Benchmark assessment, and generate reports, watch the Improving the security and compliance of Windows Workloads with Amazon Inspector video.

Amazon GuardDuty

> Amazon GuardDuty is a threat detection service that continuously monitors for malicious activity and unauthorized behavior to protect your AWS accounts, workloads, and data stored in Amazon S3. With the cloud, the collection and aggregation of account and network activities is simplified, but it can be time consuming for security teams to continuously analyze event log data for potential threats.

By using Amazon GuardDuty you have visilitiby on malicious actitivy against Windows worker nodes, like RDP brute force and Port Probe attacks.

Watch the Threat Detection for Windows Workloads using Amazon GuardDuty video to learn how to implement and run CIS Benchmarks on Optimized EKS Windows AMI

Security in Amazon EC2 for Windows

Read up on the Security best practices for Amazon EC2 Windows instances to implement security controls at every layer.

Container image scanning

Image Scanning is an automated vulnerability assessment feature that helps improve the security of your application's container images by scanning them for a broad range of operating system vulnerabilities.

Currently, the Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR) is only able to scan Linux container image for vulnerabilities. However; there are third-party tools which can be integrated with an existing CI/CD pipeline for Windows container image scanning.

- Anchore
- PaloAlto Prisma Cloud
- Trend Micro - Deep Security Smart Check

To learn more about how to integrate these solutions with Amazon Elastic Container Repository (ECR), check:

- Anchore, scanning images on Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR)
- PaloAlto, scanning images on Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR)
- TrendMicro, scanning images on Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR)

Windows Server version and License

Windows Server version

An Amazon EKS Optimized Windows AMI is based on Windows Server 2019 and 2022 Datacenter edition on the Long-Term Servicing Channel (LTSC). The Datacenter version doesn't have a limitation on the number of containers running on a worker node. For more information: https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/virtualization/windowscontainers/about/faq

Long-Term Servicing Channel (LTSC)

Formerly called the "Long-Term Servicing Branch", this is the release model you are already familiar with, where a new major version of Windows Server is released every 2-3 years. Users are entitled to 5 years of mainstream support and 5 years of extended support.

Licensing

When launching an Amazon EC2 instance with a Windows Server-based AMI, Amazon covers licensing costs and license compliance for you.

Logging

Containerized applications typically direct application logs to STDOUT. The container runtime traps these logs and does something with them - typically writes to a file. Where these files are stored depends on the container runtime and configuration.

One fundamental difference with Windows pods is they do not generate STDOUT. You can run LogMonitor to retrieve the ETW (Event Tracing for Windows), Windows Event Logs and other application specific logs from running Windows containers and pipes formatted log output to STDOUT. These logs can then be streamed using fluent-bit or fluentd to your desired destination such as Amazon CloudWatch.

The Log collection mechanism retrieves STDOUT/STDERR logs from Kubernetes pods. A DaemonSet is a common way to collect logs from containers. It gives you the ability to manage log routing/filtering/enrichment independently of the application. A fluentd DaemonSet can be used to stream these logs and any other application generated logs to a desired log aggregator.

More detailed information about log streaming from Windows workloads to CloudWatch is explained here

Logging Recomendations

The general logging best practices are no different when operating Windows workloads in Kubernetes.

- Always log **structured log entries** (JSON/SYSLOG) which makes handling log entries easier as there are many pre-written parsers for such structured formats.
- **Centralize** logs - dedicated logging containers can be used specifically to gather and forward log messages from all containers to a destination
- Keep **log verbosity** down except when debugging. Verbosity places a lot of stress on the logging infrastructure and significant events can be lost in the noise.
- Always log the **application information** along with **transaction/request id** for traceability. Kubernetes objects do-not carry the application name, so for example a pod name `windows-`

`twryrqyw` may not carry any meaning when debugging logs. This helps with traceability and troubleshooting applications with your aggregated logs.

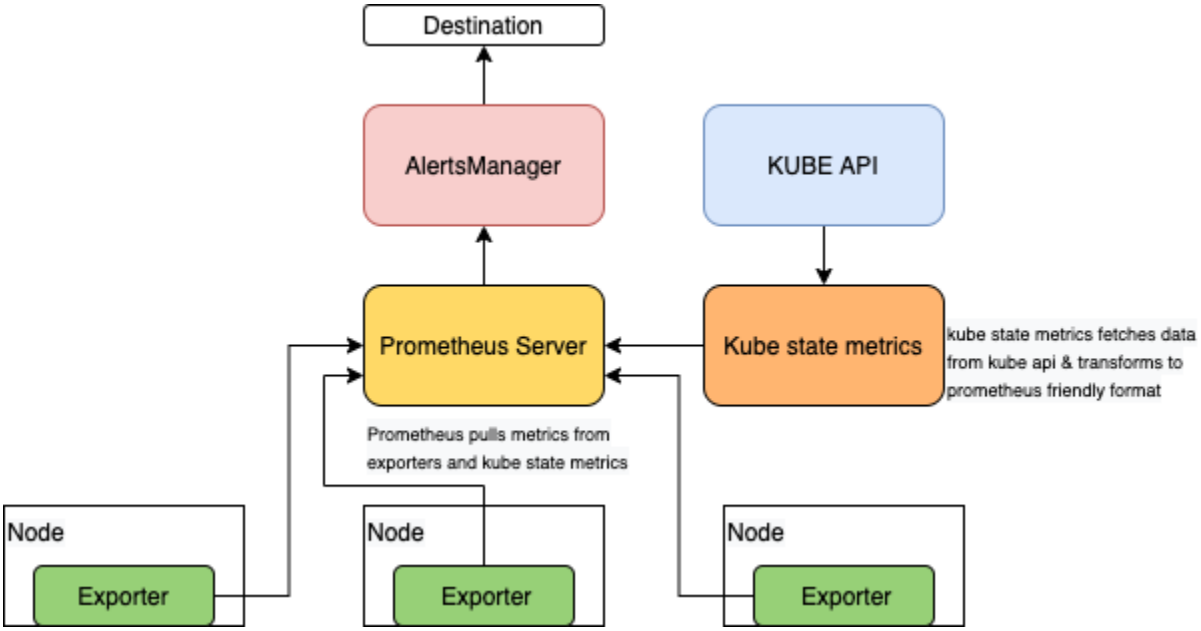
How you generate these transaction/correlation id's depends on the programming construct. But a very common pattern is to use a logging Aspect/Interceptor, which can use MDC (Mapped diagnostic context) to inject a unique transaction/correlation id to every incoming request, like so:

```
import org.slf4j.MDC;
import java.util.UUID;
Class LoggingAspect { //interceptor

    @Before(value = "execution(* *.*(..))")
    func before(...) {
        transactionId = generateTransactionId();
        MDC.put(CORRELATION_ID, transactionId);
    }

    func generateTransactionId() {
        return UUID.randomUUID().toString();
    }
}
```

Monitoring

Prometheus, a graduated CNCF project is by far the most popular monitoring system with native integration into Kubernetes. Prometheus collects metrics around containers, pods, nodes, and clusters. Additionally, Prometheus leverages AlertsManager which lets you program alerts to warn you if something in your cluster is going wrong. Prometheus stores the metric data as a time series data identified by metric name and key/value pairs. Prometheus includes away to query using a language called PromQL, which is short for Prometheus Query Language.

The high level architecture of Prometheus metrics collection is shown below:



Prometheus uses a pull mechanism and scrapes metrics from targets using exporters and from the Kubernetes API using the kube state metrics. This means applications and services must expose a HTTP(S) endpoint containing Prometheus formatted metrics. Prometheus will then, as per its configuration, periodically pull metrics from these HTTP(S) endpoints.

An exporter lets you consume third party metrics as Prometheus formatted metrics. A Prometheus exporter is typically deployed on each node. For a complete list of exporters please refer to the Prometheus exporters. While node exporter is suited for exporting host hardware and OS metrics for linux nodes, it wont work for Windows nodes.

In a **mixed node EKS cluster with Windows nodes** when you use the stable Prometheus helm chart, you will see failed pods on the Windows nodes, as this exporter is not intended for Windows. You will need to treat the Windows worker pool separate and instead install the Windows exporter on the Windows worker node group.

In order to setup Prometheus monitoring for Windows nodes, you need to download and install the WMI exporter on the Windows server itself and then setup the targets inside the scrape configuration of the Prometheus configuration file. The releases page provides all available .msi installers, with respective feature sets and bug fixes. The installer will setup the windows_exporter as a Windows service, as well as create an exception in the Windows firewall. If the installer is run without any parameters, the exporter will run with default settings for enabled collectors, ports, etc.

You can check out the **scheduling best practices** section of this guide which suggests the use of taints/tolerations or RuntimeClass to selectively deploy node exporter only to linux nodes, while the Windows exporter is installed on Windows nodes as you bootstrap the node or using a configuration management tool of your choice (example chef, Ansible, SSM etc).

Note that, unlike the linux nodes where the node exporter is installed as a daemonset , on Windows nodes the WMI exporter is installed on the host itself. The exporter will export metrics such as the CPU usage, the memory and the disk I/O usage and can also be used to monitor IIS sites and applications, the network interfaces and services.

The windows_exporter will expose all metrics from enabled collectors by default. This is the recommended way to collect metrics to avoid errors. However, for advanced use the windows_exporter can be passed an optional list of collectors to filter metrics. The collect[] parameter, in the Prometheus configuration lets you do that.

The default install steps for Windows include downloading and starting the exporter as a service during the bootstrapping process with arguments, such as the collectors you want to filter.

```
> Powershell Invoke-WebRequest https://github.com/prometheus-community/
windows_exporter/releases/download/v0.13.0/windows_exporter-0.13.0-amd64.msi -OutFile
 <DOWNLOADPATH>

> msiexec /i <DOWNLOADPATH>
 ENABLED_COLLECTORS="cpu,cs,logical_disk,net,os,system,container,memory"
```

By default, the metrics can be scraped at the /metrics endpoint on port 9182. At this point, Prometheus can consume the metrics by adding the following scrape_config to the Prometheus configuration

```
scrape_configs:
    - job_name: "prometheus"
      static_configs:
        - targets: ['localhost:9090']
    ...
    - job_name: "wmi_exporter"
      scrape_interval: 10s
      static_configs:
        - targets: ['<windows-node1-ip>:9182', '<windows-node2-ip>:9182', ...]
```

Prometheus configuration is reloaded using

```
> ps aux | grep prometheus
> kill HUP <PID>
```

A better and recommended way to add targets is to use a Custom Resource Definition called ServiceMonitor, which comes as part of the Prometheus operator] that provides the definition for a ServiceMonitor Object and a controller that will activate the ServiceMonitors we define and automatically build the required Prometheus configuration.

The ServiceMonitor, which declaratively specifies how groups of Kubernetes services should be monitored, is used to define an application you wish to scrape metrics from within Kubernetes. Within the ServiceMonitor we specify the Kubernetes labels that the operator can use to identify the Kubernetes Service which in turn identifies the Pods, that we wish to monitor.

In order to leverage the ServiceMonitor, create an Endpoint object pointing to specific Windows targets, a headless service and a ServiceMontor for the Windows nodes.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Endpoints
metadata:
  labels:
    k8s-app: wmiexporter
  name: wmiexporter
  namespace: kube-system
subsets:
- addresses:
  - ip: NODE-ONE-IP
    targetRef:
      kind: Node
      name: NODE-ONE-NAME
  - ip: NODE-TWO-IP
    targetRef:
      kind: Node
      name: NODE-TWO-NAME
  - ip: NODE-THREE-IP
    targetRef:
      kind: Node
      name: NODE-THREE-NAME
  ports:
  - name: http-metrics
    port: 9182
    protocol: TCP
```

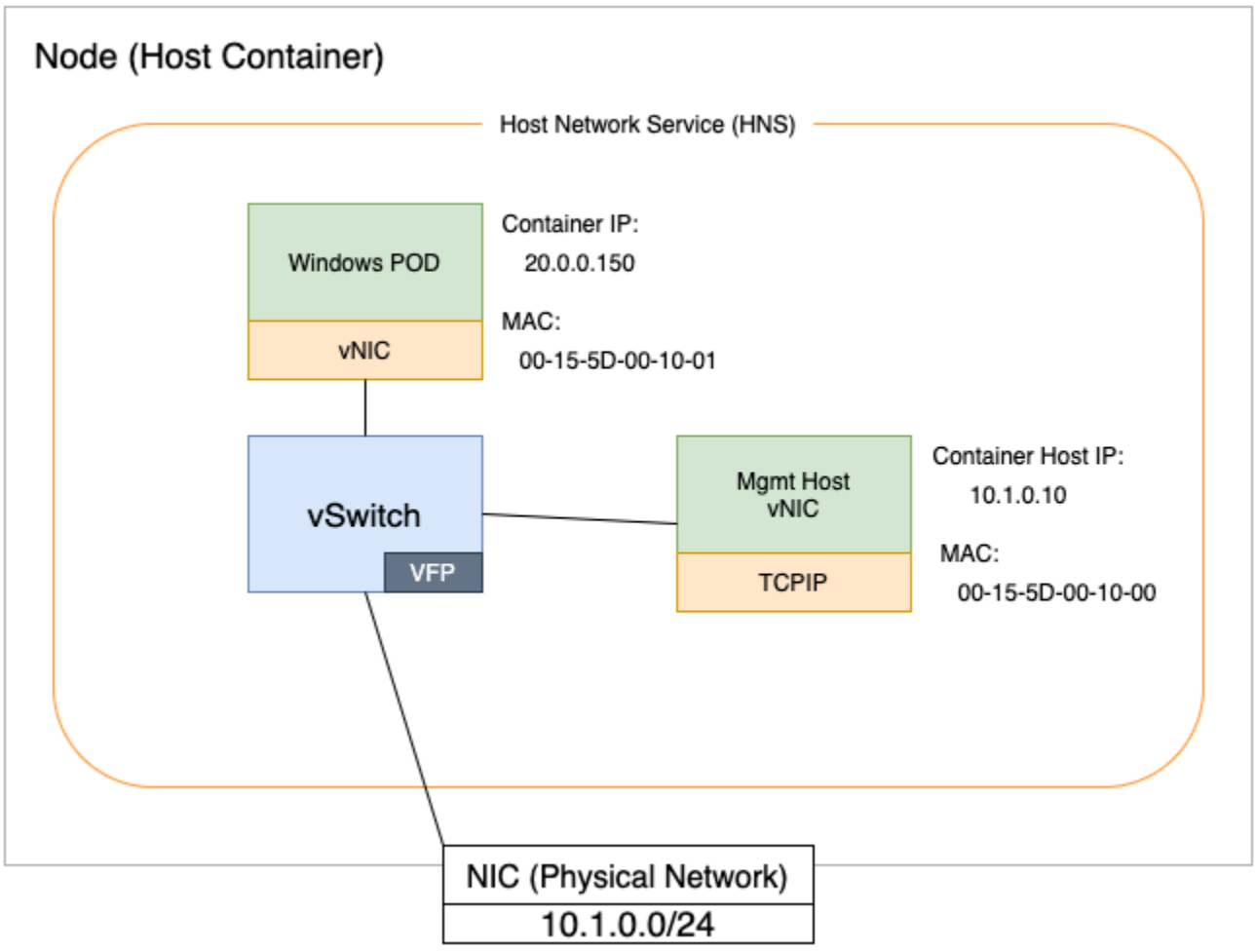
```
---
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service ##Headless Service
metadata:
  labels:
    k8s-app: wmiexporter
  name: wmiexporter
  namespace: kube-system
spec:
  clusterIP: None
  ports:
  - name: http-metrics
    port: 9182
    protocol: TCP
    targetPort: 9182
  sessionAffinity: None
  type: ClusterIP

---
apiVersion: monitoring.coreos.com/v1
kind: ServiceMonitor ##Custom ServiceMonitor Object
metadata:
  labels:
    k8s-app: wmiexporter
  name: wmiexporter
  namespace: monitoring
spec:
  endpoints:
  - interval: 30s
    port: http-metrics
  jobLabel: k8s-app
  namespaceSelector:
    matchNames:
    - kube-system
  selector:
    matchLabels:
      k8s-app: wmiexporter
```

For more details on the operator and the usage of ServiceMonitor, checkout the official operator documentation. Note that Prometheus does support dynamic target discovery using many service discovery options.

Windows Networking

Windows Container Networking Overview

Windows containers are fundamentally different than Linux containers. Linux containers use Linux constructs like namespaces, the union file system, and cgroups. On Windows, those constructs are abstracted from containerd by the Host Compute Service (HCS). HCS acts as an API layer that sits above the container implementation on Windows. Windows containers also leverage the Host Network Service (HNS) that defines the network topology on a node.



From a networking perspective, HCS and HNS make Windows containers function like virtual machines. For example, each container has a virtual network adapter (vNIC) that is connected to a Hyper-V virtual switch (vSwitch) as shown in the diagram above.

IP Address Management

A node in Amazon EKS uses it's Elastic Network Interface (ENI) to connect to an AWS VPC network. Presently, **only a single ENI per Windows worker node is supported**. The IP address management for Windows nodes is performed by VPC Resource Controller which runs in control plane. More details about the workflow for IP address management of Windows nodes can be found here.

The number of pods that a Windows worker node can support is dictated by the size of the node and the number of available IPv4 addresses. You can calculate the IPv4 address available on the node as below:

- By default, only secondary IPv4 addresses are assigned to the ENI. In such a case:

```
Total IPv4 addresses available for Pods = Number of supported IPv4 addresses in the
 primary interface - 1
```

  We subtract one from the total count since one IPv4 addresses will be used as the primary address of the ENI and hence cannot be allocated to the Pods.
- If the cluster has been configured for high pod density by enabling prefix delegation feature then-

```
Total IPv4 addresses available for Pods = (Number of supported IPv4 addresses in the
 primary interface - 1) * 16
```

  Here, instead of allocating secondary IPv4 addresses, VPC Resource Controller will allocate `/28` `prefixes` and therefore, the overall number of available IPv4 addresses will be boosted 16 times.

Using the formula above, we can calculate max pods for an Windows worker noded based on a m5.large instance as below:

- By default, when running in secondary IP mode-

```
10 secondary IPv4 addresses per ENI - 1 = 9 available IPv4 addresses
```

- When using `prefix delegation`-

```
(10 secondary IPv4 addresses per ENI - 1) * 16 = 144 available IPv4 addresses
```

For more information on how many IP addresses an instance type can support, see IP addresses per network interface per instance type.

Another key consideration is the flow of network traffic. With Windows there is a risk of port exhaustion on nodes with more than 100 services. When this condition arises, the nodes will start throwing errors with the following message:

"Policy creation failed: hcnCreateLoadBalancer failed in Win32: The specified port already exists."

To address this issue, we leverage Direct Server Return (DSR). DSR is an implementation of asymmetric network load distribution. In other words, the request and response traffic use different network paths. This feature speeds up communication between pods and reduces the risk of port exhaustion. We therefore recommend enabling DSR on Windows nodes.

DSR is enabled by default in Windows Server SAC EKS Optimized AMIs. For Windows Server 2019 LTSC EKS Optimized AMIs, you will need to enable it during instance provisioning using the script below and by using Windows Server 2019 Full or Core as the amiFamily in the `eksctl` nodeGroup. See eksctl custom AMI for additional information.

```
nodeGroups:
- name: windows-ng
  instanceType: c5.xlarge
  minSize: 1
  volumeSize: 50
  amiFamily: WindowsServer2019CoreContainer
  ssh:
    allow: false
```

In order to utilize DSR in Windows Server 2019 and above, you will need to specify the following **kube-proxy** flags during instance startup. You can do this by adjusting the userdata script associated with the self-managed node groups Launch Template.

```
<powershell>
[string]$EKSBinDir = "$env:ProgramFiles\Amazon\EKS"
[string]$EKSBootstrapScriptName = 'Start-EKSBootstrap.ps1'
[string]$EKSBootstrapScriptFile = "$EKSBinDir\$EKSBootstrapScriptName"
(Get-Content $EKSBootstrapScriptFile).replace('"--proxy-mode=kernelspace",', '"--proxy-
mode=kernelspace", "--feature-gates WinDSR=true", "--enable-dsr",') | Set-Content
 $EKSBootstrapScriptFile
```

```
& $EKSBootstrapScriptFile -EKSClusterName "eks-windows" -APIServerEndpoint "https://
<REPLACE-EKS-CLUSTER-CONFIG-API-SERVER>" -Base64ClusterCA "<REPLACE-EKSCLUSTER-
CONFIG-DETAILS-CA>" -DNSClusterIP "172.20.0.10" -KubeletExtraArgs "--node-
labels=alpha.eksctl.io/cluster-name=eks-windows,alpha.eksctl.io/nodegroup-name=windows-
ng-ltsc2019 --register-with-taints=" 3>&1 4>&1 5>&1 6>&1
</powershell>
```

DSR enablement can be verified following the instructions in the Microsoft Networking blog and the Windows Containers on AWS Lab.

```
PS C:\temp> (Get-Content C:\temp\pmsx1eau.0ia\policy.txt | ConvertFrom-JSON).Policies


ExternalPort : 53
InternalPort : 53
IsDSR        : True
Protocol     : 17
Type         : ELB
VIPs         : {172.20.0.10}

ExternalPort : 53
InternalPort : 53
IsDSR        : True
Protocol     : 6
Type         : ELB
VIPs         : {172.20.0.10}

ExternalPort : 443
InternalPort : 443
IsDSR        : True
Protocol     : 6
Type         : ELB
VIPs         : {172.20.0.1}
```

If preserving your available IPv4 addresses and minimizing wastage is crucial for your subnet, it is generally recommended to avoid using prefix delegation mode as mentioned in Prefix Mode for Windows - When to avoid. If using prefix delegation is still desired, you can take steps to optimize IPv4 address utilization in your subnet. See Configuring Parameters for Prefix Delegation for detailed instructions on how to fine-tune the IPv4 address request and allocation process. Adjusting these configurations can help you strike a balance between conserving IPv4 addresses and pod density benefits of prefix delegation.

When using the default setting of assigning secondary IPv4 addresses, there are currently no supported configurations to manipulate how the VPC Resource Controller requests and allocates IPv4 addresses. More specifically, `minimum-ip-target` and `warm-ip-target` are only supported for prefix delegation mode. Also take note that in secondary IP mode, depending on the available

IP addresses on the interface, the VPC Resource Controller will typically allocate 3 unused IPv4 addresses on the node on your behalf to maintain warm IPs for faster pod startup times. If you would like to minimize IP wastage of unused warm IP addresses, you could aim to schedule more pods on a given Windows node such that you use as much IP address capacity of the ENI as possible. More explicitly, you could avoid having warm unused IPs if all IP addresses on the ENI are already in use by the node and running pods. Another workaround to help you resolve constraints with IP address availability in your subnet(s) could be to explore increasing your subnet size or separating your Windows nodes into their own dedicated subnets.

Additionally, it's important to note that IPv6 is not supported on Windows nodes at the moment.

Container Network Interface (CNI) options

The AWSVPC CNI is the de facto CNI plugin for Windows and Linux worker nodes. While the AWSVPC CNI satisfies the needs of many customers, still there may be times when you need to consider alternatives like an overlay network to avoid IP exhaustion. In these cases, the Calico CNI can be used in place of the AWSVPC CNI. Project Calico is open source software that was developed by Tigera. That software includes a CNI that works with EKS. Instructions for installing Calico CNI in EKS can be found on the Project Calico EKS installation page.

Network Polices

It is considered a best practice to change from the default mode of open communication between pods on your Kubernetes cluster to limiting access based on network polices. The open source Project Calico has strong support for network polices that work with both Linux and Windows nodes. This feature is separate and not dependent on using the Calico CNI. We therefore recommend installing Calico and using it for network policy management.

Instructions for installing Calico in EKS can be found on the Installing Calico on Amazon EKS page.

In addition, the advice provided in the Amazon EKS Best Practices Guide for Security - Network Section applies equally to EKS clusters with Windows worker nodes, however, some features like "Security Groups for Pods" are not supported by Windows at this time.

Avoiding OOM errors

Windows does not have an out-of-memory process killer as Linux does. Windows always treats all user-mode memory allocations as virtual, and pagefiles are mandatory. The net effect is that

Windows won't reach out of memory conditions the same way Linux does. Processes will page to disk instead of being subject to out of memory (OOM) termination. If memory is over-provisioned and all physical memory is exhausted, then paging can slow down performance.

Reserving system and kubelet memory

Different from Linux where `--kubelet-reserve` **capture** resource reservation for kubernetes system daemons like kubelet, container runtime, etc; and `--system-reserve` **capture** resource reservation for OS system daemons like sshd, udev and etc. On **Windows** these flags do not **capture** and **set** memory limits on **kubelet** or **processes** running on the node.

However, you can combine these flags to manage **NodeAllocatable** to reduce Capacity on the node with Pod manifest **memory resource limit** to control memory allocation per pod. Using this strategy you have a better control of memory allocation as well as a mechanism to minimize out-of-memory (OOM) on Windows nodes.

On Windows nodes, a best practice is to reserve at least 2GB of memory for the OS and process. Use `--kubelet-reserve` and/or `--system-reserve` to reduce NodeAllocatable.

Following the Amazon EKS Self-managed Windows nodes documentation, use the CloudFormation template to launch a new Windows node group with customizations to kubelet configuration. The CloudFormation has an element called `BootstrapArguments` which is the same as `KubeletExtraArgs`. Use with the following flags and values:

```
--kube-reserved memory=0.5Gi,ephemeral-storage=1Gi --system-
reserved memory=1.5Gi,ephemeral-storage=1Gi --eviction-hard
 memory.available<200Mi,nodefs.available<10%"
```

If eksctl is the deployment tool, check the following documentation to customize the kubelet configuration https://eksctl.io/usage/customizing-the-kubelet/

Windows container memory requirements

As per Microsoft documentation, a Windows Server base image for NANO requires at least 30MB, whereas Server Core requires 45MB. These numbers grow as you add Windows components such as the .NET Framework, Web Services as IIS and applications.

It is essential for you to know the minimum amount of memory required by your Windows container image, i.e. the base image plus its application layers, and set it as the container's

resources/requests in the pod specification. You should also set a limit to avoid pods to consume all the available node memory in case of an application issue.

In the example below, when the Kubernetes scheduler tries to place a pod on a node, the pod's requests are used to determine which node has sufficient resources available for scheduling.

```
spec:
 - name: iis
   image: mcr.microsoft.com/windows/servercore/iis:windowsservercore-ltsc2019
   resources:
     limits:
       cpu: 1
       memory: 800Mi
     requests:
       cpu: .1
       memory: 128Mi
```

Conclusion

Using this approach minimizes the risks of memory exhaustion but does not prevent it happen. Using Amazon CloudWatch Metrics, you can set up alerts and remediations in case of memory exhaustion occurs.

Patching Windows Servers and Containers

Patching Windows Server is a standard management task for Windows Administrators. This can be accomplished using different tools like Amazon System Manager - Patch Manager, WSUS, System Center Configuration Manager, and many others. However, Windows nodes in an Amazon EKS cluster should not be treated as an ordinary Windows servers. They should be treated as an immutable server. Simply put, avoid updating an existing node, just launch a new one based on an new updated AMI.

Using EC2 Image Builder you can automate AMIs build, by creating recipes and adding components.

The following example shows **components**, which can be pre-existing ones built by AWS (Amazon-managed) as well as the components you create (Owned by me). Pay close attention to the Amazon-managed component called **update-windows**, this updates Windows Server before generating the AMI through the EC2 Image Builder pipeline.

Associated components

Search components

1

Component name	Version	Description	Date created	Platform	Owner	ARN
eks-optimized-ami-windows	1.20.0	Installs EKS-optimized Windows artifacts for EKS version 1.20. This includes kubelet version 1.20.4 and Docker version 20.10.6.	Aug 18, 2021 6:33 PM	Windows	Amazon	arn:aws:imagebuilder:us-east-1:aws:component/eks-optimized-ami-windows/1.20.0/1
update-windows	1.0.1	Updates Windows with the latest security updates.	Aug 18, 2021 6:33 PM	Windows	Amazon	arn:aws:imagebuilder:us-east-1:aws:component/update-windows/1.0.1/1
Docker Pull	1.0.1	-	Dec 22, 2021 12:08 PM	Windows	[redacted]	arn:aws:imagebuilder:us-east-[redacted]component/docker-pull/1.0.1/1
simple-boot-test-windows	1.0.0	Executes a simple boot test.	Nov 30, 2019 11:39 PM	Windows	Amazon	arn:aws:imagebuilder:us-east-1:aws:component/simple-boot-test-windows/1.0.0/1

EC2 Image Builder allows you to build AMI's based off Amazon Managed Public AMIs and customize them to meet your business requirements. You can then associate those AMIs with Launch Templates which allows you to link a new AMI to the Auto Scaling Group created by the EKS Nodegroup. After that is complete, you can begin terminating the existing Windows Nodes and new ones will be launched based on the new updated AMI.

Pushing and pulling Windows images

Amazon publishes EKS optimized AMIs that include two cached Windows container images.

```
mcr.microsoft.com/windows/servercore
mcr.microsoft.com/windows/nanoserver
```

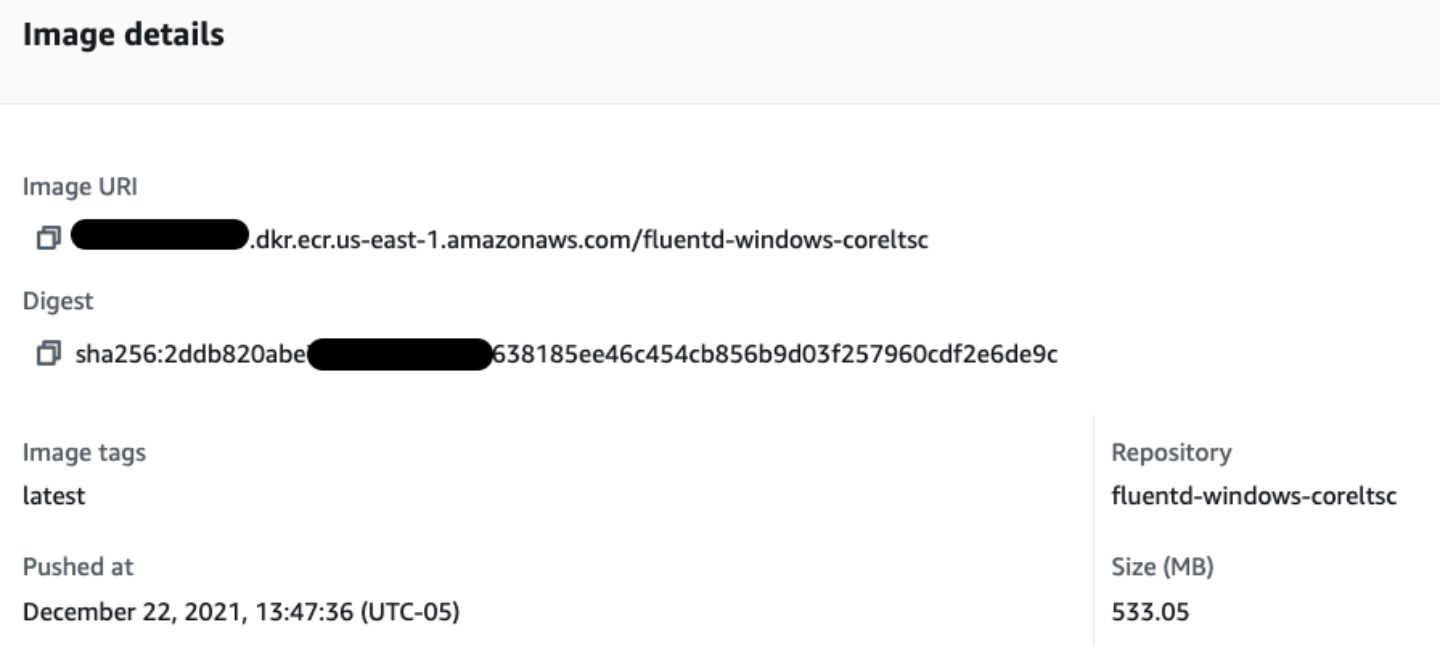
```
REPOSITORY                                                          TAG                  IMAGE ID       CREATED          SIZE
mcr.microsoft.com/windows/servercore                                ltsc2019             617dd5ead5b8   6 weeks ago      5.74GB
mcr.microsoft.com/windows/nanoserver                                1809                 8334af2fa7ba   6 weeks ago      257MB
[redacted].dkr.ecr.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/fluentd-windows-coreltsc latest               721afca2c725   7 weeks ago      6.96GB
fluent/fluentd                                                      v1.14-windows-ltsc2019-1 721afca2c725   7 weeks ago      6.96GB
amazonaws.com/eks/pause-windows                                     latest               6392f69ae6e7   10 months ago    255MB
```

Cached images are updated following the updates on the main OS. When Microsoft releases a new Windows update that directly affects the Windows container base image, the update will be launched as an ordinary Windows Update on the main OS. Keeping the environment up-to-date offers a more secure environment at the Node and Container level.

The size of a Windows container image influences push/pull operations which can lead to slow container startup times. Caching Windows container images allows the expensive I/O operations (file extraction) to occur on the AMI build creation instead of the container launch. As a result, all the necessary image layers will be extracted on the AMI and will be ready to be used, speeding up the time a Windows container launches and can start accepting traffic. During a push operation, only the layers that compose your image are uploaded to the repository.

The following example shows that on the Amazon ECR the **fluentd-windows-sac2004** images have only **390.18MB**. This is the amount of upload that happened during the push operation.

The following example shows a fluentd Windows ltsc image pushed to an Amazon ECR repository. The size of the layer stored in ECR is **533.05MB**.



The output below from `docker image ls` , the size of the fluentd v1.14-windows-ltsc2019-1 is **6.96GB** on disk, but that doesn't mean it downloaded and extracted that amount of data.

In practice, during the pull operation only the **compressed 533.05MB** will be downloaded and extracted.

```
REPOSITORY                                                                  TAG
            IMAGE ID       CREATED         SIZE
111122223333.dkr.ecr.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/fluentd-windows-coreltsc   latest
            721afca2c725   7 weeks ago     6.96GB
fluent/fluentd                                                              v1.14-windows-
ltsc2019-1   721afca2c725   7 weeks ago     6.96GB
amazonaws.com/eks/pause-windows                                             latest
            6392f69ae6e7   10 months ago   255MB
```

The size column shows the overall size of image, 6.96GB. Breaking it down:

- Windows Server Core 2019 LTSC Base image = 5.74GB
- Fluentd Uncompressed Base Image = 6.96GB
- Difference on disk = 1.2GB
- Fluentd compressed final image ECR = 533.05MB

The base image already exists on the local disk, resulting in the total amount on disk being 1.2GB additional. The next time you see the amount of GBs in the size column, don't worry too much, likely more than 70% is already on disk as a cached container image.

Reference

Speeding up Windows container launch times with EC2 Image builder and image cache strategy

Running Heterogeneous workloads

Kubernetes has support for heterogeneous clusters where you can have a mixture of Linux and Windows nodes in the same cluster. Within that cluster, you can have a mixture of Pods that run on Linux and Pods that run on Windows. You can even run multiple versions of Windows in the same cluster. However, there are several factors (as mentioned below) that will need to be accounted for when making this decision.

Assigning PODs to Nodes Best practices

In order to keep Linux and Windows workloads on their respective OS-specific nodes, you need to use some combination of node selectors and taints/tolerations. The main goal of scheduling workloads in a heterogeneous environment is to avoid breaking compatibility for existing Linux workloads.

Ensuring OS-specific workloads land on the appropriate container host

Users can ensure Windows containers can be scheduled on the appropriate host using nodeSelectors. All Kubernetes nodes today have the following default labels:

```
kubernetes.io/os = [windows|linux]
kubernetes.io/arch = [amd64|arm64|...]
```

If a Pod specification does not include a nodeSelector like `"kubernetes.io/os": windows`, the Pod may be scheduled on any host, Windows or Linux. This can be problematic since a Windows container can only run on Windows and a Linux container can only run on Linux.

In Enterprise environments, it's not uncommon to have a large number of pre-existing deployments for Linux containers, as well as an ecosystem of off-the-shelf configurations, like Helm charts. In these situations, you may be hesitant to make changes to a deployment's nodeSelectors. **The alternative is to use Taints**.

For example: `--register-with-taints='os=windows:NoSchedule'`

If you are using EKS, eksctl offers ways to apply taints through clusterConfig:

```
NodeGroups:
  - name: windows-ng
    amiFamily: WindowsServer2022FullContainer
    ...
    labels:
      nodeclass: windows2022
    taints:
      os: "windows:NoSchedule"
```

Adding a taint to all Windows nodes, the scheduler will not schedule pods on those nodes unless they tolerate the taint. Pod manifest example:

```
nodeSelector:
    kubernetes.io/os: windows
tolerations:
    - key: "os"
      operator: "Equal"
      value: "windows"
      effect: "NoSchedule"
```

Handling multiple Windows build in the same cluster

The Windows container base image used by each pod must match the same kernel build version as the node. If you want to use multiple Windows Server builds in the same cluster, then you should set additional node labels, nodeSelectors or leverage a label called **windows-build**.

Kubernetes 1.17 automatically adds a new label **node.kubernetes.io/windows-build** to simplify the management of multiple Windows build in the same cluster. If you're running an older version, then it's recommended to add this label manually to Windows nodes.

This label reflects the Windows major, minor, and build number that need to match for compatibility. Below are values used today for each Windows Server version.

It's important to note that Windows Server is moving to the Long-Term Servicing Channel (LTSC) as the primary release channel. The Windows Server Semi-Annual Channel (SAC) was retired on August 9, 2022. There will be no future SAC releases of Windows Server.

Product Name	Build Number(s)
Server full 2022 LTSC	10.0.20348
Server core 2019 LTSC	10.0.17763

It is possible to check the OS build version through the following command:

```
kubectl get nodes -o wide
```

The KERNEL-VERSION output matches the Windows OS build version.

```
NAME                           STATUS   ROLES    AGE   VERSION                INTERNAL-
IP   EXTERNAL-IP     OS-IMAGE                          KERNEL-VERSION
 CONTAINER-RUNTIME
ip-10-10-2-235.ec2.internal   Ready    <none>   23m   v1.24.7-eks-fb459a0
 10.10.2.235   3.236.30.157    Windows Server 2022 Datacenter   10.0.20348.1607
         containerd://1.6.6
ip-10-10-31-27.ec2.internal   Ready    <none>   23m   v1.24.7-eks-fb459a0
 10.10.31.27   44.204.218.24   Windows Server 2019 Datacenter   10.0.17763.4131
         containerd://1.6.6
ip-10-10-7-54.ec2.internal    Ready    <none>   31m   v1.24.11-eks-a59e1f0   10.10.7.54
    3.227.8.172     Amazon Linux 2                  5.10.173-154.642.amzn2.x86_64
 containerd://1.6.19
```

The example below applies an additional nodeSelector to the pod manifest in order to match the correct Windows-build version when running different Windows node groups OS versions.

```
nodeSelector:
    kubernetes.io/os: windows
    node.kubernetes.io/windows-build: '10.0.20348'
tolerations:
    - key: "os"
    operator: "Equal"
    value: "windows"
    effect: "NoSchedule"
```

Simplifying NodeSelector and Toleration in Pod manifests using RuntimeClass

You can also make use of RuntimeClass to simplify the process of using taints and tolerations. This can be accomplished by creating a RuntimeClass object which is used to encapsulate these taints and tolerations.

Create a RuntimeClass by running the following manifest:

```
apiVersion: node.k8s.io/v1beta1
kind: RuntimeClass
metadata:
  name: windows-2022
handler: 'docker'
scheduling:
  nodeSelector:
    kubernetes.io/os: 'windows'
    kubernetes.io/arch: 'amd64'
    node.kubernetes.io/windows-build: '10.0.20348'
  tolerations:
  - effect: NoSchedule
    key: os
    operator: Equal
    value: "windows"
```

Once the Runtimeclass is created, assign it using as a Spec on the Pod manifest:

```
apiVersion: apps/v1
kind: Deployment
metadata:
  name: iis-2022
  labels:
    app: iis-2022
spec:
  replicas: 1
  template:
    metadata:
      name: iis-2022
      labels:
        app: iis-2022
    spec:
      runtimeClassName: windows-2022
```

```
    containers:
    - name: iis
```

Managed Node Group Support

To help customers run their Windows applications in a more streamlined manner, AWS launched the support for Amazon EKS Managed Node Group (MNG) support for Windows containers on December 15, 2022. To help align operations teams, Windows MNGs are enabled using the same workflows and tools as Linux MNGs. Full and core AMI (Amazon Machine Image) family versions of Windows Server 2019 and 2022 are supported.

Following AMI families are supported for Managed Node Groups(MNG)s.

AMI Family
WINDOWS_CORE_2019_x86_64
WINDOWS_FULL_2019_x86_64
WINDOWS_CORE_2022_x86_64
WINDOWS_FULL_2022_x86_64

Additional documentations

AWS Official Documentation: https://docs.aws.amazon.com/eks/latest/userguide/windows-support.html

To better understand how Pod Networking (CNI) works, check the following link: https://docs.aws.amazon.com/eks/latest/userguide/pod-networking.html

AWS Blog on Deploying Managed Node Group for Windows on EKS: https://aws.amazon.com/blogs/containers/deploying-amazon-eks-windows-managed-node-groups/

Pod Security Contexts

Pod Security Policies (PSP) and **Pod Security Standards (PSS)** are two main ways of enforcing security in Kubernetes. Note that PodSecurityPolicy is deprecated as of Kubernetes v1.21, and will

be removed in v1.25 and Pod Security Standard (PSS) is the Kubernetes recommended approach for enforcing security going forward.

A Pod Security Policy (PSP) is a native solution in Kubernetes to implement security policies. PSP is a cluster-level resource that controls security-sensitive aspects of the Pod specification. Using Pod Security Policy you can define a set of conditions that Pods must meet to be accepted by the cluster. The PSP feature has been available from the early days of Kubernetes and is designed to block misconfigured pods from being created on a given cluster.

For more information on Pod Security Policies please reference the Kubernetes documentation. According to the Kubernetes deprecation policy, older versions will stop getting support nine months after the deprecation of the feature.

On the other hand, Pod Security Standards (PSS) which is the recommended security approach and typically implemented using Security Contexts are defined as part of the Pod and container specifications in the Pod manifest. PSS is the official standard that the Kubernetes project team has defined to address the security-related best practices for Pods. It defines policies such as baseline (minimally restrictive, default), privileged (unrestrictive) and restricted (most restrictive).

We recommend starting with the baseline profile. PSS baseline profile provides a solid balance between security and potential friction, requiring a minimal list of exceptions, it serves as a good starting point for workload security. If you are currently using PSPs we recommend switching to PSS. More details on the PSS policies can be found in the Kubernetes documentation. These policies can be enforced with several tools including those from OPA and Kyverno. For example, Kyverno provides the full collection of PSS policies here.

Security context settings allow one to give privileges to select processes, use program profiles to restrict capabilities to individual programs, allow privilege escalation, filter system calls, among other things.

Windows pods in Kubernetes have some limitations and differentiators from standard Linux-based workloads when it comes to security contexts.

Windows uses a Job object per container with a system namespace filter to contain all processes in a container and provide logical isolation from the host. There is no way to run a Windows container without the namespace filtering in place. This means that system privileges cannot be asserted in the context of the host, and thus privileged containers are not available on Windows.

The following `windowsOptions` are the only documented Windows Security Context options while the rest are general Security Context options

For a list of security context attributes that are supported in Windows vs linux, please refer to the official documentation here.

The Pod specific settings are applied to all containers. If unspecified, the options from the PodSecurityContext will be used. If set in both SecurityContext and PodSecurityContext, the value specified in SecurityContext takes precedence.

For example, runAsUserName setting for Pods and containers which is a Windows option is a rough equivalent of the Linux-specific runAsUser setting and in the following manifest, the pod specific security context is applied to all containers

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: run-as-username-pod-demo
spec:
  securityContext:
    windowsOptions:
      runAsUserName: "ContainerUser"
  containers:
  - name: run-as-username-demo

  nodeSelector:
    kubernetes.io/os: windows
```

Whereas in the following, the container level security context overrides the pod level security context.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: run-as-username-container-demo
spec:
  securityContext:
    windowsOptions:
      runAsUserName: "ContainerUser"
  containers:
  - name: run-as-username-demo
    ..
    securityContext:
        windowsOptions:
            runAsUserName: "ContainerAdministrator"
```

```
  nodeSelector:
    kubernetes.io/os: windows
```

Examples of acceptable values for the runAsUserName field: ContainerAdministrator, ContainerUser, NT AUTHORITY\NETWORK SERVICE, NT AUTHORITY\LOCAL SERVICE

It is generally a good idea to run your containers with ContainerUser for Windows pods. The users are not shared between the container and host but the ContainerAdministrator does have additional privileges with in the container. Note that, there are username limitations to be aware of.

A good example of when to use ContainerAdministrator is to set PATH. You can use the USER directive to do that, like so:

```
USER ContainerAdministrator
RUN setx /M PATH "%PATH%;C:/your/path"
USER ContainerUser
```

Also note that, secrets are written in clear text on the node's volume (as compared to tmpfs/in-memory on linux). This means you have to do two things

- Use file ACLs to secure the secrets file location
- Use volume-level encryption using BitLocker

Persistent storage options

What is an in-tree vs. out-of-tree volume plugin?

Before the introduction of the Container Storage Interface (CSI), all volume plugins were in-tree meaning they were built, linked, compiled, and shipped with the core Kubernetes binaries and extend the core Kubernetes API. This meant that adding a new storage system to Kubernetes (a volume plugin) required checking code into the core Kubernetes code repository.

Out-of-tree volume plugins are developed independently of the Kubernetes code base, and are deployed (installed) on Kubernetes clusters as extensions. This gives vendors the ability to update drivers out-of-band, i.e. separately from the Kubernetes release cycle. This is largely possible because Kubernetes has created a storage interface or CSI that provides vendors a standard way of interfacing with k8s.

You can check more about Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Services (EKS) storage classes and CSI Drivers on https://docs.aws.amazon.com/eks/latest/userguide/storage.html

In-tree Volume Plugin for Windows

Kubernetes volumes enable applications, with data persistence requirements, to be deployed on Kubernetes. The management of persistent volumes consists of provisioning/de-provisioning/resizing of volumes, attaching/detaching a volume to/from a Kubernetes node, and mounting/dismounting a volume to/from individual containers in a pod. The code for implementing these volume management actions for a specific storage back-end or protocol is shipped in the form of a Kubernetes volume plugin **(In-tree Volume Plugins)**. On Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Services (EKS) the following class of Kubernetes volume plugins are supported on Windows:

In-tree Volume Plugin: awsElasticBlockStore

In order to use In-tree volume plugin on Windows nodes, it is necessary to create an additional StorageClass to use NTFS as the fsType. On EKS, the default StorageClass uses ext4 as the default fsType.

A StorageClass provides a way for administrators to describe the "classes" of storage they offer. Different classes might map to quality-of-service levels, backup policies, or arbitrary policies determined by the cluster administrators. Kubernetes is unopinionated about what classes represent. This concept is sometimes called "profiles" in other storage systems.

You can check it by running the following command:

```
kubectl describe storageclass gp2
```

Output:

```
Name:            gp2
IsDefaultClass:  Yes
Annotations:     kubectl.kubernetes.io/last-applied-
configuration={"apiVersion":"storage.k8s.io/v1","kind":"StorageClas
","metadata":{"annotations":{"storageclass.kubernetes.io/is-default-
class":"true"},"name":"gp2"},"parameters":{"fsType"
"ext4","type":"gp2"},"provisioner":"kubernetes.io/aws-
ebs","volumeBindingMode":"WaitForFirstConsumer"}
,storageclass.kubernetes.io/is-default-class=true
Provisioner:           kubernetes.io/aws-ebs
Parameters:            fsType=ext4,type=gp2
```

```
AllowVolumeExpansion:  <unset>
MountOptions:          <none>
ReclaimPolicy:         Delete
VolumeBindingMode:     WaitForFirstConsumer
Events:                <none>
```

To create the new StorageClass to support **NTFS**, use the following manifest:

```
kind: StorageClass
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
metadata:
  name: gp2-windows
provisioner: kubernetes.io/aws-ebs
parameters:
  type: gp2
  fsType: ntfs
volumeBindingMode: WaitForFirstConsumer
```

Create the StorageClass by running the following command:

```
kubectl apply -f NTFSStorageClass.yaml
```

The next step is to create a Persistent Volume Claim (PVC).

A PersistentVolume (PV) is a piece of storage in the cluster that has been provisioned by an administrator or dynamically provisioned using PVC. It is a resource in the cluster just like a node is a cluster resource. This API object captures the details of the implementation of the storage, be that NFS, iSCSI, or a cloud-provider-specific storage system.

A PersistentVolumeClaim (PVC) is a request for storage by a user. Claims can request specific size and access modes (e.g., they can be mounted ReadWriteOnce, ReadOnlyMany or ReadWriteMany).

Users need PersistentVolumes with different attributes, such as performance, for different use cases. Cluster administrators need to be able to offer a variety of PersistentVolumes that differ in more ways than just size and access modes, without exposing users to the details of how those volumes are implemented. For these needs, there is the StorageClass resource.

In the example below, the PVC has been created within the namespace windows.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
metadata:
```

```
  name: ebs-windows-pv-claim
  namespace: windows
spec:
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteOnce
  storageClassName: gp2-windows
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 1Gi
```

Create the PVC by running the following command:

```
kubectl apply -f persistent-volume-claim.yaml
```

The following manifest creates a Windows Pod, setup the VolumeMount as `C:\Data` and uses the PVC as the attached storage on `C:\Data`.

```
apiVersion: apps/v1
kind: Deployment
metadata:
  name: windows-server-ltsc2019
  namespace: windows
spec:
  selector:
    matchLabels:
      app: windows-server-ltsc2019
      tier: backend
      track: stable
  replicas: 1
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: windows-server-ltsc2019
        tier: backend
        track: stable
    spec:
      containers:
      - name: windows-server-ltsc2019
        image: mcr.microsoft.com/windows/servercore:ltsc2019
        ports:
        - name: http
          containerPort: 80
        imagePullPolicy: IfNotPresent
```

```
        volumeMounts:
        - mountPath: "C:\\data"
          name: test-volume
      volumes:
        - name: test-volume
          persistentVolumeClaim:
            claimName: ebs-windows-pv-claim
      nodeSelector:
        kubernetes.io/os: windows
        node.kubernetes.io/windows-build: '10.0.17763'
```

Test the results by accessing the Windows pod via PowerShell:

```
kubectl exec -it podname powershell -n windows
```

Inside the Windows Pod, run: `ls`

Output:

```
PS C:\> ls


    Directory: C:\


Mode                 LastWriteTime         Length Name
----                 -------------         ------ ----
d-----          3/8/2021   1:54 PM                data
d-----          3/8/2021   3:37 PM                inetpub
d-r---          1/9/2021   7:26 AM                Program Files
d-----          1/9/2021   7:18 AM                Program Files (x86)
d-r---          1/9/2021   7:28 AM                Users
d-----          3/8/2021   3:36 PM                var
d-----          3/8/2021   3:36 PM                Windows
-a----         12/7/2019   4:20 AM           5510 License.txt
```

The **data directory** is provided by the EBS volume.

Out-of-tree for Windows

Code associated with CSI plugins ship as out-of-tree scripts and binaries that are typically distributed as container images and deployed using standard Kubernetes constructs like

DaemonSets and StatefulSets. CSI plugins handle a wide range of volume management actions in Kubernetes. CSI plugins typically consist of node plugins (that run on each node as a DaemonSet) and controller plugins.

CSI node plugins (especially those associated with persistent volumes exposed as either block devices or over a shared file-system) need to perform various privileged operations like scanning of disk devices, mounting of file systems, etc. These operations differ for each host operating system. For Linux worker nodes, containerized CSI node plugins are typically deployed as privileged containers. For Windows worker nodes, privileged operations for containerized CSI node plugins is supported using csi-proxy, a community-managed, stand-alone binary that needs to be pre-installed on each Windows node.

The Amazon EKS Optimized Windows AMI includes CSI-proxy starting from April 2022. Customers can use the SMB CSI Driver on Windows nodes to access Amazon FSx for Windows File Server, Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP SMB Shares, and/or AWS Storage Gateway — File Gateway.

The following blog has implementation details on how to setup SMB CSI Driver to use Amazon FSx for Windows File Server as a persistent storage for Windows Pods.

Amazon FSx for Windows File Server

An option is to use Amazon FSx for Windows File Server through an SMB feature called SMB Global Mapping which makes it possible to mount a SMB share on the host, then pass directories on that share into a container. The container doesn't need to be configured with a specific server, share, username or password - that's all handled on the host instead. The container will work the same as if it had local storage.

> The SMB Global Mapping is transparent to the orchestrator, and it is mounted through HostPath which can **imply in secure concerns**.

In the example below, the path `G:\Directory\app-state` is an SMB share on the Windows Node.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: test-fsx
spec:
  containers:
```

```
  - name: test-fsx
    image: mcr.microsoft.com/windows/servercore:ltsc2019
    command:
      - powershell.exe
      - -command
      - "Add-WindowsFeature Web-Server; Invoke-WebRequest -UseBasicParsing
 -Uri 'https://dotnetbinaries.blob.core.windows.net/servicemonitor/2.0.1.6/
ServiceMonitor.exe' -OutFile 'C:\\ServiceMonitor.exe'; echo '<html><body><br/
><br/><marquee><H1>Hello EKS!!!<H1><marquee></body><html>' > C:\\inetpub\\wwwroot\
\default.html; C:\\ServiceMonitor.exe 'w3svc'; "
    volumeMounts:
      - mountPath: C:\dotnetapp\app-state
        name: test-mount
  volumes:
    - name: test-mount
      hostPath:
        path: G:\Directory\app-state
        type: Directory
  nodeSelector:
      beta.kubernetes.io/os: windows
      beta.kubernetes.io/arch: amd64
```

The following blog has implementation details on how to setup Amazon FSx for Windows File Server as a persistent storage for Windows Pods.

Hardening Windows container images

Are you hardening your Windows container images? Over the years, I've worked with customers globally to help them migrate legacy workloads to containers, particularly Windows workloads. With more than 20 years of experience, I've seen organizations dedicate substantial effort and resources to hardening their Windows Servers, implementing everything from CIS Benchmarks to runtime antivirus protection to safeguard sensitive data.

However, a concerning trend has emerged. As these highly secure virtual machines are modernized into containers, many critical hardening practices are being overlooked. Windows security best practices, from the base image (OS) to web services such as IIS, are often neglected, with most of the focus placed solely on securing the container host. It's vital to recognize that while containers operate in isolated namespaces, they still share kernel primitives with the host. Attackers are typically more interested in lateral movement rather than targeting the container host directly, allowing them to exploit weak container security settings and access sensitive data.

The goal of the documentations is to highlight a few essential security settings you should implement specifically for Windows containers hosting `ASP.NET` websites on IIS. We'll focus on four key areas:

- Account security policies
- Audit policies
- IIS security best practices
- Principle of least privilege

We'll start by delving into why each of these security configurations is vital for protecting your Windows containers, examining the specific risks they mitigate and the security benefits they provide. Next, we'll walk through a code snippet that demonstrates how to implement these configurations correctly in your Dockerfile, ensuring your container is hardened against potential threats. Finally, we'll break down each setting in detail, offering a comprehensive explanation of its function, impact on container security, and how it contributes to safeguarding your applications. This approach will not only show you how to apply these best practices but also give you the insight to understand why they are essential for maintaining a robust security posture in containerized environments.

1. Configure Account Policies (Password or Lockout) using Local Security Policies and Registry

Windows Server Core is a minimal installation option that is available as part of the [EKS Optimized Windows AMI](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/eks/latest/userguide/eks-optimized-windows-ami.html). Configuring Account Policies (Password or Lockout) using Local Security Policies and the Registry strengthens system security by enforcing robust password and lockout rules. These policies require users to create strong passwords with a defined minimum length and complexity, protecting against common password-related attacks.

By setting a maximum password age, users are prompted to regularly update their passwords, reducing the likelihood of compromised credentials. Lockout policies add an extra layer of protection by temporarily locking accounts after a specified number of failed login attempts, helping to prevent brute-force attacks. Configuring these settings via the Windows Registry allows administrators to enforce these security measures at the system level, ensuring uniformity and compliance throughout the organization. Applying these Account Policies in a Windows Container is essential for maintaining security consistency, even though containers are often ephemeral and intended for isolated workloads:

Security Consistency

- Compliance: Enforcing consistent password policies and lockout rules in containers helps maintain security compliance, especially in environments that require strict access controls (e.g., regulatory compliance such as HIPAA, PCI-DSS).
- Hardened Containers: Applying these settings ensures that your Windows container is hardened against unauthorized access or password-based attacks, aligning the security posture of your container with the broader system security policies.

Protection Against Brute Force Attacks

- Account Lockout: These settings help defend against brute force login attempts by locking accounts after a specific number of failed login attempts. This prevents attackers from trying an unlimited number of passwords.
- Password Complexity: Requiring complex passwords with sufficient length reduces the likelihood of weak passwords being exploited, even in isolated containerized environments.

Multi-User Scenarios

- If your containerized application is designed to handle multiple users or requires user authentication, enforcing password policies ensures that user accounts within the container adhere to strict security rules, limiting access to only authorized users.

Persistent Windows Containers

- While containers are generally considered ephemeral, certain Windows containers can run long-term services or handle user management, making it important to enforce proper security policies similar to a regular Windows server.

Consistency in Hybrid Environments

- If you are running both virtual machines and containers in your infrastructure, applying the same security policies (e.g., password/lockout policies) across all environments ensures uniform security standards, simplifying governance and management.

In summary, applying these account policies within Windows containers ensures that your containers are not a weak point in your security strategy, protecting against password attacks and enforcing consistency across your entire environment.

Dockerfile:

```
# Configure account policies for password complexity and lockout
RUN powershell -Command \
      "Write-Output 'Configuring Account Policies (Password/Lockout)...'; \
      NET ACCOUNTS /MINPWLEN:14 /MAXPWAGE:60 /MINPWAGE:14 /LOCKOUTTHRESHOLD:5
```

Explanation:

This section configures account policies for password and lockout settings via the Windows Registry. These policies help enforce security by controlling password requirements and account lockout thresholds.

1. **MinimumPasswordLength (MINPWLEN) = 14** This setting defines the minimum number of characters for a password. The range is 0-14 characters; the default is six characters.
2. **MaximumPasswordAge (MAXPWAGE) = 60** This setting defines the maximum number of days that a password is valid. No limit is specified by using UNLIMITED. /MAXPWAGE can't be less than /MINPWAGE. The range is 1-999; the default is 90 days
3. **Lockout Threshold (LOCKOUTTHRESHOLD) = 5** This setting defines the threshold for failed login attempts. After 5 incorrect attempts, the account will be locked.

These settings help improve password security and prevent brute force attacks by enforcing strong password policies and locking out accounts after a certain number of failed login attempts.

2. Audit policies

Audit Policies are important for Windows Containers because they provide critical visibility into security events, such as login attempts and privilege use, helping to detect unauthorized access, monitor user activity, and ensure compliance with regulatory standards. Even in the ephemeral nature of containers, audit logs are essential for incident investigation, proactive threat detection, and maintaining a consistent security posture across containerized environments.

Security Monitoring and Compliance:

- Track User Activities: Audit policies allow administrators to monitor user activities, such as login attempts and privilege use, within the container. This is critical for detecting unauthorized access or suspicious behavior.
- Regulatory Compliance: Many organizations are required to log security events for compliance with regulations such as HIPAA, PCI-DSS, and GDPR. Enabling audit policies in containers ensures you meet these requirements, even in containerized environments.

Incident Investigation:

- Forensics and Analysis: If a containerized application or service is compromised, audit logs can provide valuable insights for post-incident analysis. They help security teams trace the actions taken by attackers or identify how a breach occurred.
- Real-time Detection: Audit logs allow administrators to set up real-time alerts for critical events (e.g., failed login attempts, privilege escalations). This proactive monitoring helps detect attacks early and enables faster response times.

Consistency Across Environments:

- Uniform Security Posture: By applying audit policies in containers via the registry, you ensure consistent security practices across both containerized and non-containerized environments. This avoids containers becoming a blind spot for security monitoring.
- Visibility in Hybrid Environments: For organizations running both traditional Windows servers and containers, auditing policies provide similar visibility and control across all platforms, making management easier and more effective.

Tracking Privileged Operations:

- Privilege Use Auditing: In container environments where applications run with elevated privileges or where administrative tasks are performed, auditing privileged operations ensures accountability. You can log who accessed sensitive resources or performed critical tasks inside the container.
- Prevent Abuse of Privileges: By monitoring privilege use, you can detect when unauthorized users try to elevate their privileges or access restricted areas within the container, which helps prevent internal or external attacks.

Detecting Unauthorized Access Attempts:

- Failed Logon Attempts: Enabling audit policies for failed login attempts helps identify brute-force attacks or unauthorized attempts to access containerized applications. This provides visibility into who is trying to gain access to the system and how often.
- Account Lockout Monitoring: Auditing account lockout events allows administrators to detect and investigate potential lockouts caused by suspicious or malicious activity.

Persistent Security Even in Ephemeral Environments:

- Ephemeral Yet Secure: While containers are ephemeral, meaning they can be deleted and recreated frequently, auditing still plays a key role in ensuring that security events are captured while the container is running. This ensures that critical security events are logged for the duration of the container's lifecycle.

Centralized Logging:

- Forwarding Logs to Centralized Systems: Containers can be integrated with centralized logging systems (e.g., ELK stack, AWS CloudWatch) to capture audit logs from multiple container instances. This allows for better analysis and correlation of security events across your infrastructure.

Dockerfile:

```
# Configure audit policies for logging security events
RUN powershell -Command \
    "Write-Host 'Configuring Audit Policy..'; \
    Set-ItemProperty -Path 'HKLM:\\SYSTEM\\CurrentControlSet\\Control\\Lsa' -Name
 'SCENoApplyLegacyAuditPolicy' -Value 0; \
    auditpol /set /category:"Logon/Logoff" /subcategory:"Logon" /failure:enable

# Creates STDOUT on Windows Containers (check GitHub LogMonitor:: https://github.com/
microsoft/windows-container-tools/blob/main/LogMonitor/README.md)
COPY LogMonitor.exe LogMonitorConfig.json 'C:\\LogMonitor\\'
WORKDIR /LogMonitor
```

Explanation:

This section configures audit policies by using registry modifications. Audit policies control what security events are logged by Windows, which helps in monitoring and detecting unauthorized access attempts.

1. **SCENoApplyLegacyAuditPolicy = 0** This disables the legacy audit policy format, enabling more granular auditing policies introduced in later versions of Windows. This is important for modern audit configurations.
2. **Auditpol Subcategory: "Logon"** This setting enables auditing for both success and failure logon events. The value 3 means that Windows will log both successful and failed logon attempts. This helps in monitoring who is accessing the system and catching failed login attempts.

These audit policies are critical for security monitoring and compliance, as they provide detailed logs of important security events such as login attempts and the use of privileged operations.

3. IIS Security best practices for Windows containers

Implementing IIS best practices in Windows Containers is important for several reasons, ensuring that your applications are secure, high performance, and scalable. Although containers provide isolation and a lightweight environment, they still require proper configuration to avoid vulnerabilities and operational issues. Here's why following best practices for IIS in Windows Containers is crucial:

Security

- Preventing Common Vulnerabilities: IIS is often a target for attacks such as cross-site scripting (XSS), clickjacking, and information disclosure. Implementing security headers (e.g., X-Content-Type-Options, X-Frame-Options, and Strict-Transport-Security) helps protect your application from these threats.
- Isolation Isn't Enough: Containers are isolated, but a misconfigured IIS instance can expose sensitive information, such as server version details, directory listings, or unencrypted communications. By disabling features such as directory browsing and removing the IIS version header, you minimize the attack surface.
- Encryption and HTTPS: Best practices, such as enforcing HTTPS-only connections, ensure that data in transit is encrypted, protecting sensitive information from being intercepted.

Performance

- Efficient Resource Usage: IIS best practices such as enabling dynamic and static compression reduce bandwidth usage and improve load times. These optimizations are especially important in containerized environments, where resources are shared across containers and the host system.
- Optimized Logging: Properly configuring logging (e.g., including the X-Forwarded-For header) ensures that you can trace client activity while minimizing unnecessary logging overhead. This helps you gather relevant data for troubleshooting without degrading performance.

Scalability and Maintainability

- Consistency Across Environments: By following best practices, you ensure that your IIS configuration is consistent across multiple container instances. This simplifies scaling and makes sure that when new containers are deployed, they adhere to the same security and performance guidelines.
- Automated Configurations: Best practices in Dockerfiles, such as setting folder permissions and disabling unnecessary features, ensure that each new container is automatically configured correctly. This reduces manual intervention and lowers the risk of human error.

Compliance

- Meeting Regulatory Requirements: Many industries have strict regulatory requirements (e.g., PCI-DSS, HIPAA) that mandate specific security measures, such as encrypted communications (HTTPS) and logging of client requests. Following IIS best practices in containers helps ensure compliance with these standards.
- Auditability: Implementing audit policies and secure logging allows for the traceability of events, which is critical in audits. For example, logging the X-Forwarded-For header ensures that client IP addresses are recorded correctly in proxy-based architectures.

Minimizing Risk in Shared Environments

- Avoiding Misconfigurations: Containers share the host's kernel, and while they are isolated from one another, a poorly configured IIS instance could expose vulnerabilities or create performance bottlenecks. Best practices ensure that each IIS instance runs optimally, reducing the risk of cross-container issues.
- Least Privilege Access: Setting proper permissions for folders and files within the container (e.g., using Set-Acl in PowerShell) ensures that users and processes within the container only have the necessary access, reducing the risk of privilege escalation or data tampering.

Resilience in Ephemeral Environments

- Ephemeral Nature of Containers: Containers are often short-lived and rebuilt frequently. Applying IIS best practices ensures that each container is configured securely and consistently, regardless of how many times it is redeployed. This prevents misconfigurations from being introduced over time.
- Mitigating Potential Misconfigurations: By automatically enforcing best practices (e.g., disabling weak protocols or headers), the risk of a misconfiguration during container restarts or updates is minimized.

Dockerfile:

```
# Enforce HTTPS (disable HTTP) -- Only if container is target for SSL termination
RUN powershell -Command \
    "$httpBinding = Get-WebBinding -Name 'Default Web Site' -Protocol http | Where-
Object { $_.bindingInformation -eq '*:80:' }; \
    if ($httpBinding) { Remove-WebBinding -Name 'Default Web Site' -Protocol http -Port
 80; } \
    $httpsBinding = Get-WebBinding -Name 'Default Web Site' -Protocol https | Where-
Object { $_.bindingInformation -eq '*:443:' }; \
    if (-not $httpsBinding) { New-WebBinding -Name 'Default Web Site' -Protocol https -
Port 443 -IPAddress '*'; }"

# Use secure headers
RUN powershell -Command \
    "Write-Host 'Adding security headers...'; \
    Add-WebConfigurationProperty -pspath 'MACHINE/WEBROOT/APPHOST' -filter
 'system.applicationHost/sites/siteDefaults/logFile/customFields' -name
 "." -value @{logFieldName='X-Forwarded-For';sourceName='X-Forwarded-
For';sourceType='RequestHeader'}; \
    Add-WebConfigurationProperty -pspath 'MACHINE/WEBROOT/APPHOST' -filter
 "system.webServer/httpProtocol/customHeaders" -name "." -value @{name='Strict-
Transport-Security';value='max-age=31536000; includeSubDomains'}; \
    Add-WebConfigurationProperty -pspath 'MACHINE/WEBROOT/APPHOST' -filter
 "system.webServer/httpProtocol/customHeaders" -name "." -value @{name='X-Content-Type-
Options';value='nosniff'}; \
    Add-WebConfigurationProperty -pspath 'MACHINE/WEBROOT/APPHOST' -filter
 "system.webServer/httpProtocol/customHeaders" -name "." -value @{name='X-XSS-
Protection';value='1; mode=block'}; \
```

```
    Add-WebConfigurationProperty -pspath 'MACHINE/WEBROOT/APPHOST' -filter
 "system.webServer/httpProtocol/customHeaders" -name "." -value @{name='X-Frame-
Options';value='DENY'};"

# Disable IIS version disclosure
RUN powershell -Command \
    "Write-Host 'Disabling IIS version disclosure...'; \
    Import-Module WebAdministration; \
    Set-WebConfigurationProperty -pspath 'MACHINE/WEBROOT/APPHOST' -filter
 "system.webServer/security/requestFiltering" -name "removeServerHeader" -value
 "true";"

# Set IIS Logging Best Practices
RUN powershell -Command \
    Set-WebConfigurationProperty -pspath 'MACHINE/WEBROOT/APPHOST' -filter
 "system.webServer/directoryBrowse" -name "enabled" -value "false"; \
    Set-WebConfigurationProperty -pspath 'MACHINE/WEBROOT/APPHOST' -filter
 "system.webServer/httpErrors" -name "existingResponse" -value "PassThrough"; \

# Enable IIS dynamic and static compression to optimize performance
RUN powershell -Command \
    "Write-Host 'Enabling IIS compression...'; \
    Enable-WindowsOptionalFeature -Online -FeatureName IIS-HttpCompressionDynamic; \
    Import-Module WebAdministration; \
    Set-WebConfigurationProperty -pspath 'MACHINE/WEBROOT/APPHOST' -filter
 "system.webServer/urlCompression" -name "doDynamicCompression" -value "true"; \
    Set-WebConfigurationProperty -pspath 'MACHINE/WEBROOT/APPHOST' -filter
 "system.webServer/urlCompression" -name "doStaticCompression" -value "true"

# Ensure proper folder permissions using PowerShell's Set-Acl

RUN powershell -Command \
    "Write-Host 'Setting folder permissions for IIS...'; \
    $path = 'C:\\inetpub\\wwwroot'; \
    $acl = Get-Acl $path; \
    $iusr = New-Object System.Security.Principal.NTAccount('IIS_IUSRS'); \
    $rule = New-Object System.Security.AccessControl.FileSystemAccessRule($iusr,
 'ReadAndExecute', 'ContainerInherit, ObjectInherit', 'None', 'Allow'); \
    $acl.SetAccessRule($rule); \
    $users = New-Object System.Security.Principal.NTAccount('Users'); \
    $rule2 = New-Object System.Security.AccessControl.FileSystemAccessRule($users,
 'ReadAndExecute', 'ContainerInherit, ObjectInherit', 'None', 'Allow'); \
    $acl.SetAccessRule($rule2); \
```

```
    Set-Acl -Path $path -AclObject $acl"
```

Explanation:

This command configures IIS to log the X-Forwarded-For header, which is commonly used to capture the original client IP address when a request passes through a proxy or load balancer. By default, IIS only logs the IP address of the load balancer or reverse proxy, so adding this custom log field helps track the true client IP for security auditing, analytics, and troubleshooting.

1. **X-Forwarded-For header** which is commonly used to capture the original client IP address when a request passes through a proxy or load balancer. By default, IIS only logs the IP address of the load balancer or reverse proxy, so adding this custom log field helps track the true client IP for security auditing, analytics, and troubleshooting.
2. **Strict-Transport-Security (HSTS)** Ensures browsers only communicate over HTTPS. The max-age=31536000 specifies that this policy is enforced for 1 year, and includeSubDomains applies the policy to all subdomains.
3. **X-Content-Type-Options** Prevents browsers from "MIME-sniffing" a response away from the declared Content-Type. This helps prevent some types of attacks.
4. **X-XSS-Protection** Enables Cross-Site Scripting (XSS) protection in browsers.
5. **X-Frame-Options** Prevents the page from being embedded in iframes, protecting against clickjacking attacks.
6. **Disable IIS version disclosure** This command disables the Server header in HTTP responses, which by default reveals the version of IIS being used. Hiding this information helps reduce the risk of attackers identifying and targeting vulnerabilities specific to the IIS version.
7. **Enable HTTPS-only connections** This (commented-out) section enforces HTTPS connections and disables HTTP. If uncommented, the Dockerfile will configure IIS to listen only on port 443 (HTTPS) and remove the default HTTP binding on port 80. This is useful when terminating SSL inside the container and ensures that all traffic is encrypted.
8. **Disable Directory Browsing** Prevents IIS from showing a directory listing when no default document is present. This avoids exposing the internal file structure to users.
9. **Pass Through Custom Error Pages** Ensures that if the application has its own error handling, IIS will let the application's error pages pass through instead of showing default IIS error pages.
10. **Detailed Error Mode** Configures IIS to display detailed error messages for local requests only, helping developers diagnose issues without exposing sensitive information to external users.

11 **Ensure Proper Folder Permissions** This block configures folder permissions for the IIS web root (C:\inetpub\wwwroot). It sets Read and Execute permissions for the IIS_IUSRS and Users groups, ensuring that these users can access the folder but not modify files. Setting the correct permissions minimizes the risk of unauthorized access or tampering with the files hosted by the web server.

Following IIS best practices in Windows Containers ensures that your containerized applications are secure, high performance, and scalable. These practices help prevent vulnerabilities, optimize resource usage, ensure compliance, and maintain consistency across container instances. Even though containers are designed to be isolated, proper configuration is necessary to minimize risks and ensure the reliability of your application in production environments.

4. Principle of Least Privilege

The Principle of Least Privilege (PoLP) is crucial for Windows containers for several important reasons, particularly in enhancing security and minimizing risks within containerized environments. This principle dictates that a system or application should operate with the minimum level of permissions necessary to function properly. Here's why it's important in Windows containers:

Minimizing Attack Surface

- Containers often run applications that interact with various system components, and the more privileges an application has, the broader its access to those components. By limiting the container's permissions to only what's necessary, PoLP significantly reduces the attack surface, making it harder for an attacker to exploit the container if it becomes compromised.

Limiting the Impact of Compromised Containers

- If a Windows container is compromised, running applications with excessive privileges (e.g., Administrator or root-level access) could allow an attacker to gain control over critical system files or escalate privileges across the container host. By enforcing PoLP, even if a container is breached, the attacker is limited in what they can do, preventing further escalation and access to sensitive resources or other containers.

Protection in Multitenant Environments

- In cloud or enterprise environments, multiple containers can be running on the same physical or virtual infrastructure. PoLP ensures that a compromised container doesn't have the ability

to access resources or data belonging to other tenants. This isolation is crucial for maintaining security in shared, multitenant environments, protecting against lateral movement between containers.

Mitigating Privilege Escalation

- Containers that run with high privileges can be used by attackers to escalate privileges within the system. PoLP mitigates this risk by restricting the container's access to system resources, thereby preventing unauthorized actions or privilege escalations beyond the container's environment.

Compliance and Auditing

- Many regulatory standards and security frameworks (e.g., PCI DSS, HIPAA, GDPR) require systems to adhere to PoLP to limit access to sensitive data. Running Windows containers with restricted privileges helps organizations comply with these regulations and ensures that applications are only granted access to the resources they specifically need.

Reducing the Risk of Misconfiguration

- When containers run with unnecessary privileges, even a minor misconfiguration can lead to severe security vulnerabilities. For example, if a container running as Administrator is accidentally exposed to the internet, an attacker could gain control of the system. PoLP helps prevent such risks by defaulting to limited privileges, making misconfigurations less dangerous.

Improved Container Security Posture

- By following PoLP, containers are better isolated from the underlying host system and from each other. This ensures that the containerized application is less likely to access or modify system files or processes outside its defined scope, preserving the integrity of the host operating system and other workloads.

Dockerfile:

```
# Strongly recommended that when deploying a Windows server container to any multi-
tenant environment that your application runs via the ContainerUser account
USER ContainerUser
```

Explanation:

In this section, the USER ContainerUser command specifies that the application inside the Windows container should run under the ContainerUser account instead of the default Administrator account.

Here's why this is important, especially in a multitenant environment:

1. **Principle of Least Privilege**: The ContainerUser account is a non-administrative user with limited privileges. Running the application under this account adheres to the principle of least privilege, which helps minimize the risk of exploitation. If an attacker were to compromise the application, they would have limited access to the system, reducing the potential damage.
2. **Enhanced Security**: In multitenant environments, containers can share the same underlying infrastructure. Running as ContainerUser ensures that even if one container is compromised, it won't have administrative privileges to access or modify critical system files or other containers. This reduces the attack surface significantly.
3. **Avoiding Root Access**: By default, containers might run with elevated permissions (similar to root access in Linux containers), which can be dangerous if exploited. Using ContainerUser ensures that the application doesn't run with unnecessary administrative rights, making it harder for attackers to escalate privileges.
4. **Best Practice for Multitenant Environments**: In environments where multiple users or organizations share the same infrastructure (such as in the cloud), security is critical. Running applications with restricted permissions prevents one tenant's application from affecting others, protecting sensitive data and resources across the platform.

The **USER ContainerUser** command ensures that the application runs with minimal privileges, enhancing security in multitenant environments by limiting the damage that could be done if the container is compromised. This is a best practice to prevent unauthorized access or privilege escalation in a containerized environment.

The Principle of Least Privilege is essential for Windows containers because it limits the potential impact of security breaches, reduces the attack surface, and prevents unauthorized access to critical system components. By running containerized applications with only the necessary permissions, organizations can significantly enhance the security and stability of their container environments, especially in multitenant and shared infrastructures.

Final Thoughts: Why Securing Your Windows Containers is a Must-Have in Today's Threat Landscape

In today's fast-evolving digital world, where threats are becoming more sophisticated and abundant, securing your Windows containers is not just a recommendation, it's an absolute necessity. Containers provide a lightweight, flexible way to package and deploy applications, but they are not immune to security vulnerabilities. As more businesses adopt containers to streamline their infrastructure, they also become a potential target for cyberattacks if not properly secured.

The internet is flooded with various threats—ranging from malicious actors targeting unpatched vulnerabilities to automated bots scanning for misconfigurations. Without the right security measures in place, containers can be exploited to expose sensitive data, escalate privileges, or serve as entry points for attacks that can compromise your broader infrastructure. This makes container security as critical as securing any other part of your environment.

When using Windows containers, many traditional security best practices still apply. Implementing robust account policies, securing IIS configurations, enforcing HTTPS, using strict firewall rules, and applying least privilege access to critical files are all key measures that ensure the container remains resilient against attacks. Additionally, regular auditing and logging provide visibility into what's happening inside the container, allowing you to catch suspicious activity before it turns into a full-blown incident.

Securing Windows containers also aligns with regulatory requirements that mandate protecting sensitive data and ensuring application integrity. As cloud-native and containerized architectures become more prevalent, ensuring security at every layer, from the base image to the running container, will help safeguard your operations and maintain customer trust.

In summary, the rise of containerized applications, coupled with the growing number of cyber threats, makes container security a nonnegotiable aspect of modern infrastructure management. By adhering to best practices and continuously monitoring for vulnerabilities, businesses can enjoy the agility and efficiency of Windows containers without compromising on security. In this threat-rich environment, securing your Windows containers is not just an option—it's a must-have.

Best Practices for Hybrid Deployments

This guide provides guidance on running deployments in on-premise or edge environments with EKS Hybrid Nodes or EKS Anywhere.

We currently have published guides for the following topics:

- Best Practices for EKS Hybrid Nodes and network disconnections

EKS Hybrid Nodes and network disconnections

The EKS Hybrid Nodes architecture can be new to customers who are accustomed to running local Kubernetes clusters entirely in their own data centers or edge locations. With EKS Hybrid Nodes, the Kubernetes control plane runs in an AWS Region and only the nodes run on-premises, resulting in a “stretched” or “extended” Kubernetes cluster architecture.

This leads to a common question, “What happens if my nodes get disconnected from the Kubernetes control plane?”

In this guide, we answer that question through a review of the following topics. It is recommended to validate the stability and reliability of your applications through network disconnections as each application may behave differently based on its dependencies, configuration, and environment. See the aws-samples/eks-hybrid-examples GitHub repo for test setup, procedures, and results you can reference to test network disconnections with EKS Hybrid Nodes and your own applications. The GitHub repo also contains additional details of the tests used to validate the behavior explained in this guide.

- Best practices for stability through network disconnections
- Kubernetes pod failover behavior through network disconnections
- Application network traffic through network disconnections
- Host credentials through network disconnections

Best practices for stability through network disconnections

Highly available networking

The best approach to avoid network disconnections between hybrid nodes and the Kubernetes control plane is to use redundant, resilient connections from your on-premises environment to and from AWS. Refer to the AWS Direct Connect Resiliency Toolkit and AWS Site-to-Site VPN documentation for more information on architecting highly available hybrid networks with those solutions.

Highly available applications

When architecting applications, consider your failure domains and the effects of different types of outages. Kubernetes provides built-in mechanisms to deploy and maintain application replicas across node, zone, and regional domains. The use of these mechanisms depends on your application architecture, environments, and availability requirements. For example, stateless applications can often be deployed with multiple replicas and can move across arbitrary hosts and infrastructure capacity, and you can use node selectors and topology spread constraints to run instances of the application across different domains. For details of application-level techniques to build resilient applications on Kubernetes, refer to the EKS Best Practices Guide.

Kubernetes evaluates zonal information for nodes that are disconnected from the Kubernetes control plane when determining whether to move pods to other nodes. If all nodes in a zone are unreachable, Kubernetes cancels pod evictions for the nodes in that zone. As a best practice, if you have a deployment with nodes running in multiple data centers or physical locations, assign a zone to each node based on its data center or physical location. When you run EKS with nodes in the cloud, this zone label is automatically applied by the AWS cloud-controller-manager. However, a cloud-controller-manager is not used with hybrid nodes, so you can pass this information through your kubelet configuration. An example of how to configure a zone in your node configuration for hybrid nodes is shown below. The configuration is passed when you connect your hybrid nodes to your cluster with the hybrid nodes CLI (`nodeadm`). For more information on the `topology.kubernetes.io/zone` label, see the Kubernetes documentation. For more information on the hybrid nodes CLI, see the Hybrid Nodes nodeadm reference.

```
apiVersion: node.eks.aws/v1alpha1
kind: NodeConfig
spec:
  cluster:
    name: my-cluster
```

```
    region: my-region
  kubelet:
    flags:
      - --node-labels=topology.kubernetes.io/zone=dc1
  hybrid:
    ...
```

Network monitoring

If you use AWS Direct Connect or AWS Site-to-Site VPN for your hybrid connectivity, you can take advantage of CloudWatch alarms, logs, and metrics to observe the state of your hybrid connection and diagnose issues. For more information, see Monitoring AWS Direct Connect resources and Monitor an AWS Site-to-Site VPN connection.

It is recommended to create alarms for `NodeNotReady` events reported by the node-lifecycle-controller running on the EKS control plane, which signals that a hybrid node might be experiencing a network disconnection. You can create this alarm by enabling EKS control plane logging for the Controller Manager and creating a Metric Filter in CloudWatch for the "Recording status change event message for node" message with the status="NodeNotReady". After creating a Metric Filter, you can create an alarm for this filter based on your desired thresholds. For more information, see Alarming for logs in the CloudWatch documentation.

You can use the Transit Gateway (TGW) and Virtual Private Gateway (VGW) built-in metrics to observe the network traffic into and out of your TGW or VGW. You can create alarms for these metrics to detect scenarios where network traffic dips below normal levels, indicating a potential network issue between hybrid nodes and the EKS control plane. The TGW and VGW metrics are described in the following table.

Gateway	Metric	Description
Transit Gateway	BytesIn	The bytes received by TGW from the attachment (EKS control plane to hybrid nodes)
Transit Gateway	BytesOut	The bytes sent from TGW to the attachment (hybrid nodes to EKS control plane)
Virtual Private Gateway	TunnelDataIn	The bytes sent from the AWS side of the connection through the VPN tunnel to the customer gateway (EKS control plane to hybrid nodes)

Gateway	Metric	Description
Virtual Private Gateway	TunnelDataOut	The bytes received on the AWS side of the connection through the VPN tunnel from the customer gateway (hybrid nodes to EKS control plane)

You can also use CloudWatch Network Monitor to gain deeper insight into your hybrid connections to reduce mean time to recovery and determine whether network issues originate in AWS or your environment. CloudWatch Network Monitor can be used to visualize packet loss and latency in your hybrid network connections, set alerts and thresholds, and then take action to improve your network performance. For more information, see Using Amazon CloudWatch Network Monitor.

EKS offers several options for monitoring the health of your clusters and applications. For cluster health, you can use the observability dashboard in the EKS console to quickly detect, troubleshoot, and remediate issues. You can also use Amazon Managed Service for Prometheus, AWS Distro for Open Telemetry (ADOT), and CloudWatch for cluster, application, and infrastructure monitoring. For more information on EKS observability options, see Monitor your cluster performance and view logs.

Local troubleshooting

To prepare for network disconnections between hybrid nodes and the EKS control plane, you can set up secondary monitoring and logging backends to maintain observability for applications when regional AWS services are not reachable. For example, you can configure the AWS Distro for Open Telemetry (ADOT) collector to send metrics and logs to multiple backends. You can also use local tools, such as the `crictl` CLI, to interact locally with pods and containers as a replacement for `kubectl` or other Kubernetes API-compatible clients that typically query the Kubernetes API server endpoint. For more information on `crictl`, see the `crictl` documentation in the cri-tools GitHub. A few useful `crictl` commands are listed below.

List pods running on the host:

```
crictl pods
```

List containers running on the host:

```
crictl ps
```

List images running on the host:

```
crictl images
```

Get logs of a container running on the host:

```
crictl logs CONTAINER_NAME
```

Get statistics of pods running on the host:

```
crictl statsp
```

Application network traffic

When using hybrid nodes, it is important to consider and understand the network flows of your application traffic and the technologies you use to expose your applications externally to your cluster. Different technologies for application load balancing and ingress behave differently during network disconnections. For example, if you are using Cilium's BGP Control Plane capability for application load balancing, the BGP session for your pods and services might be down during network disconnections. This happens because the BGP speaker functionality is integrated with the Cilium agent, and the Cilium agent will continuously restart when disconnected from the Kubernetes control plane. The reason for the restart is due to Cilium's health check failing because its health is coupled with access to the Kubernetes control plane (see CFP: #31702 with an opt-in improvement in Cilium v1.17). Similarly, if you are using Application Load Balancers (ALB) or Network Load Balancers (NLB) for AWS Region-originated application traffic, that traffic might be temporarily down if your on-premises environment loses connectivity to the AWS Region. It is recommended to validate that the technologies you use for load balancing and ingress remain stable during network disconnections before deploying to production. The example in the aws-samples/eks-hybrid-examples GitHub repo uses MetalLB for load balancing in L2 mode, which remains stable during network disconnections between hybrid nodes and the EKS control plane.

Review dependencies on remote AWS services

When using hybrid nodes, be aware of the dependencies you take on regional AWS services that are external to your on-premises or edge environment. Examples include accessing Amazon S3 or Amazon RDS for application data, using Amazon Managed Service for Prometheus or CloudWatch for metrics and logs, using Application and Network Load Balancers for Region-originated traffic, and pulling containers from Amazon Elastic Container Registry. These services

will not be accessible during network disconnections between your on-premises environment and AWS. If your on-premises environment is prone to network disconnections with AWS, review your usage of AWS services and ensure that losing a connection to those services does not compromise the static stability of your applications.

Tune Kubernetes pod failover behavior

There are options to tune pod failover behavior during network disconnections for applications that are not portable across hosts, or for resource-constrained environments that do not have spare capacity for pod failover. Generally, it is important to consider the resource requirements of your applications and to have enough capacity for one or more instances of the application to fail over to a different host if a node fails.

- Option 1 - Use DaemonSets: This option applies to applications that can and should run on all nodes in the cluster. DaemonSets are automatically configured to tolerate the unreachable taint, which keeps DaemonSet pods bound to their nodes through network disconnections.
- Option 2 - Tune `tolerationSeconds` for unreachable taint: You can tune the amount of time your pods remain bound to nodes during network disconnections. Do this by configuring application pods to tolerate the unreachable taint with the `NoExecute` effect for a duration you specify (`tolerationSeconds` in the application spec). With this option, when there are network disconnections, your application pods remain bound to nodes until `tolerationSeconds` expires. Carefully consider this, because increasing `tolerationSeconds` for the unreachable taint with `NoExecute` means that pods running on unreachable hosts might take longer to move to other reachable, healthy hosts.
- Option 3: Custom controller: You can create and run a custom controller (or other software) that monitors Kubernetes for the unreachable taint with the `NoExecute` effect. When this taint is detected, the custom controller can check application-specific metrics to assess application health. If the application is healthy, the custom controller can remove the unreachable taint, preventing eviction of pods from nodes during network disconnections.

An example of how to configure a Deployment with `tolerationSeconds` for the unreachable taint is shown below. In the example, `tolerationSeconds` is set to `1800` (30 minutes), which means pods running on unreachable nodes will only be evicted if the network disconnection lasts longer than 30 minutes.

```
apiVersion: apps/v1
kind: Deployment
```

```
metadata:
...
spec:
...
      tolerations:
      - key: "node.kubernetes.io/unreachable"
        operator: "Exists"
        effect: "NoExecute"
        tolerationSeconds: 1800
```

Kubernetes pod failover through network disconnections

We begin with a review of the key concepts, components, and settings that influence how Kubernetes behaves during network disconnections between nodes and the Kubernetes control plane. EKS is upstream Kubernetes conformant, so all the Kubernetes concepts, components, and settings described here apply to EKS and EKS Hybrid Nodes deployments.

There are improvements that have been made to EKS specifically to improve pod failover behavior during network disconnections, for more information see GitHub issues #131294 and #131481 in the upstream Kubernetes repository.

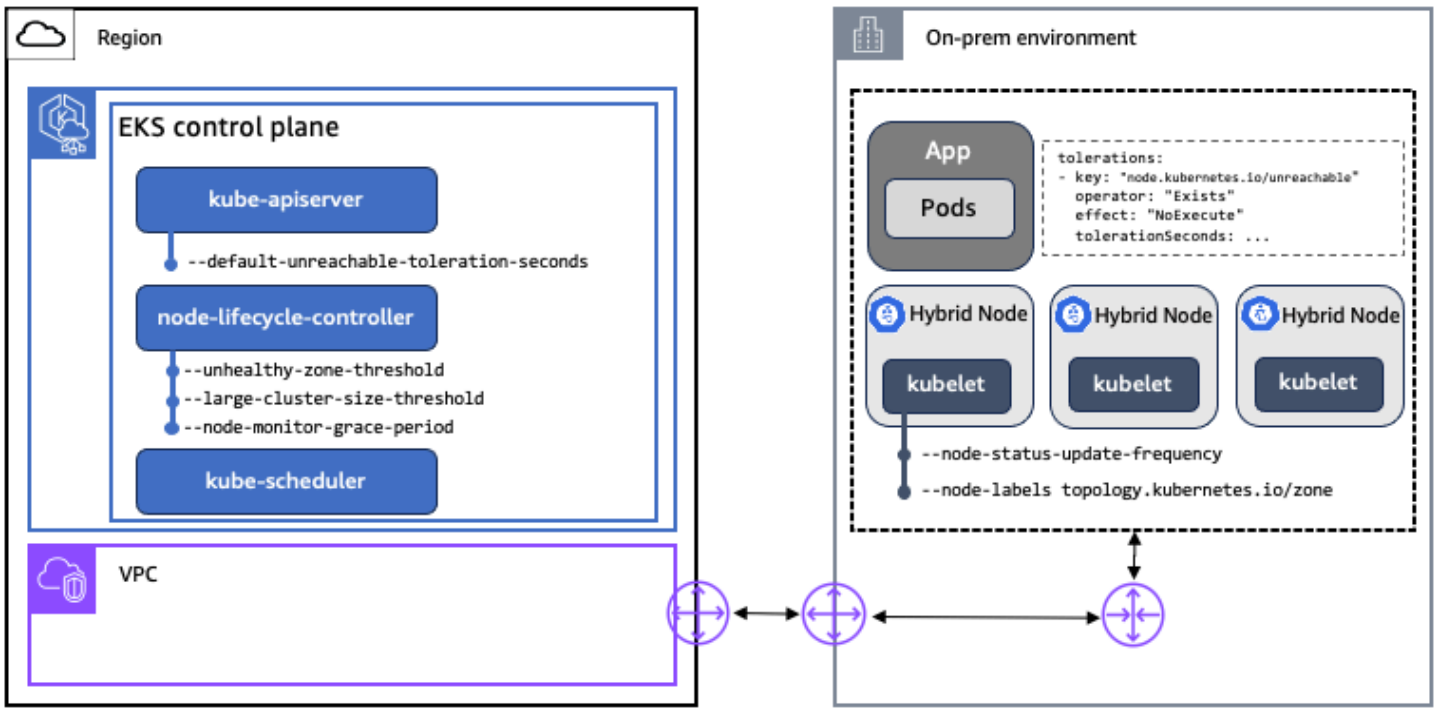
Concepts

Taints and Tolerations: Taints and tolerations are used in Kubernetes to control the scheduling of pods onto nodes. Taints are set by the node-lifecycle-controller to indicate that nodes are not eligible for scheduling or that pods on those nodes should be evicted. When nodes are unreachable due to a network disconnection, the node-lifecycle-controller applies the node.kubernetes.io/unreachable taint with a NoSchedule effect, and with a NoExecute effect if certain conditions are met. The node.kubernetes.io/unreachable taint corresponds to the NodeCondition Ready being Unknown. Users can specify tolerations for taints at the application level in the PodSpec.

- NoSchedule: No new Pods are scheduled on the tainted node unless they have a matching toleration. Pods already running on the node are not evicted.
- NoExecute: Pods that do not tolerate the taint are evicted immediately. Pods that tolerate the taint (without specifying tolerationSeconds) remain bound forever. Pods that tolerate the taint with a specified tolerationSeconds remain bound for the specified time. After that time elapses, the node lifecycle controller evicts the Pods from the node.

Node Leases: Kubernetes uses the Lease API to communicate kubelet node heartbeats to the Kubernetes API server. For every node, there is a Lease object with a matching name. Internally, each kubelet heartbeat updates the spec.renewTime field of the Lease object. The Kubernetes control plane uses the timestamp of this field to determine node availability. If nodes are disconnected from the Kubernetes control plane, they cannot update spec.renewTime for their Lease, and the control plane interprets that as the NodeCondition Ready being Unknown.

Components



Component	Sub-component	Description
Kubernetes control plane	kube-api-server	The API server is a core component of the Kubernetes control plane that exposes the Kubernetes API.
Kubernetes control plane	node-lifecycle-controller	One of the controllers that the kube-controller-manager runs. It is responsible for detecting and responding to node issues.
Kubernetes control plane	kube-scheduler	A control plane component that watches for newly created Pods with no assigned node, and selects a node for them to run on.

Component	Sub-component	Description
Kubernetes nodes	kubelet	An agent that runs on each node in the cluster. The kubelet watches PodSpecs and ensures that the containers described in those PodSpecs are running and healthy.

Configuration settings

Compo	Setting	Description	K8s default	EKS default	Configurable in EKS
kube-api-server	default-unreachable-toleration-seconds	Indicates the `tolerationSeconds` of the toleration for `unreachable:NoExecute` that is added by default to every pod that does not already have such a toleration.	300	300	No
node-lifecycle-controller	node-monitor-grace-period	The amount of time a node can be unresponsive before being marked unhealthy. Must be N times more than kubelet's `nodeStatusUpdateFrequency`, where N is the number of retries allowed for the kubelet to post node status.	40	40	No
node-lifecycle-controller	large-cluster-size-threshold	The number of nodes at which the node-lifecycle-controller treats the cluster as large for eviction logic. `--secondary-node-eviction-rate` is overridden to 0 for clusters of this size or smaller.	50	100,00(	No
node-lifecycle-	unhealthy-zone-threshold	The percentage of nodes in a zone that must be Not Ready for that zone to be treated as unhealthy.	55%	55%	No

Compo	Setting	Description	K8s default	EKS default	Configurable in EKS
con troller					
kubelet	node-status-update-frequency	How often the kubelet posts node status to the control plane. Must be compatible with `nodeMonitorGracePeriod` in node-lifecycle-controller.	10	10	Yes
kubelet	node-labels	Labels to add when registering the node in the cluster. The label `topology.kubernetes.io/zone` can be specified with hybrid nodes to group nodes into zones.	None	None	Yes

Kubernetes pod failover through network disconnections

The behavior described here assumes pods are running as Kubernetes Deployments with default settings, and that EKS is used as the Kubernetes provider. Actual behavior might differ based on your environment, type of network disconnection, applications, dependencies, and cluster configuration. The content in this guide was validated using a specific application, cluster configuration, and subset of plugins. It is strongly recommended to test the behavior in your own environment and with your own applications before moving to production.

When there are network disconnections between nodes and the Kubernetes control plane, the kubelet on each disconnected node cannot communicate with the Kubernetes control plane. Consequently, the kubelet cannot evict pods on those nodes until the connection is restored. This means that pods running on those nodes before the network disconnection continue to run during the disconnection, assuming no other failures cause them to shut down. In summary, you can achieve static stability during network disconnections between nodes and the Kubernetes control plane, but you cannot perform mutating operations on your nodes or workloads until the connection is restored.

There are five main scenarios that produce different pod failover behaviors based on the nature of the network disconnection. In all scenarios, the cluster becomes healthy again without operator

intervention once the nodes reconnect to the Kubernetes control plane. The scenarios below outline expected results based on our observations, but these results might not apply to all possible application and cluster configurations.

Scenario 1: Full cluster disruption

Expected result: Pods on unreachable nodes are not evicted and continue running on those nodes.

A full cluster disruption means all nodes in the cluster are disconnected from the Kubernetes control plane. In this scenario, the node-lifecycle-controller on the control plane detects that all nodes in the cluster are unreachable and cancels any pod evictions.

Cluster administrators will see all nodes with status `Not Ready` during the disconnection. Pod status does not change, and no new pods are scheduled on any nodes during the disconnection and subsequent reconnection.

Scenario 2: Full zone disruption

Expected result: Pods on unreachable nodes are not evicted and continue running on those nodes.

A full zone disruption means all nodes in the zone are disconnected from the Kubernetes control plane. In this scenario, the node-lifecycle-controller on the control plane detects that all nodes in the zone are unreachable and cancels any pod evictions.

Cluster administrators will see all nodes with status `Not Ready` during the disconnection. Pod status does not change, and no new pods are scheduled on any nodes during the disconnection and subsequent reconnection.

Scenario 3: Majority zone disruption

Expected result: Pods on unreachable nodes are not evicted and continue running on those nodes.

A majority zone disruption means that most nodes in a given zone are disconnected from the Kubernetes control plane. Zones in Kubernetes are defined by nodes with the same `topology.kubernetes.io/zone` label. If no zones are defined in the cluster, a majority disruption means the majority of nodes in the entire cluster are disconnected. By default, a majority is defined by the node-lifecycle-controller's `unhealthy-zone-threshold`, which is set to 55% in both Kubernetes and EKS. Because `large-cluster-size-threshold` is set to 100,000 in EKS, if 55% or more of the nodes in a zone are unreachable, pod evictions are canceled (given that most clusters are far smaller than 100,000 nodes).

Cluster administrators will see a majority of nodes in the zone with status `Not Ready` during the disconnection, but the status of pods will not change, and they will not be rescheduled on other nodes.

Note that the behavior above applies only to clusters larger than three nodes. In clusters of three nodes or fewer, pods on unreachable nodes are scheduled for eviction, and new pods are scheduled on healthy nodes.

During testing, we occasionally observed that pods were evicted from exactly one unreachable node during network disconnections, even when a majority of the zone's nodes were unreachable. We are still investigating a possible race condition in the Kubernetes node-lifecycle-controller as the cause of this behavior.

Scenario 4: Minority zone disruption

Expected result: Pods are evicted from unreachable nodes, and new pods are scheduled on available, eligible nodes.

A minority disruption means that a smaller percentage of nodes in a zone are disconnected from the Kubernetes control plane. If no zones are defined in the cluster, a minority disruption means the minority of nodes in the entire cluster are disconnected. As stated, minority is defined by the `unhealthy-zone-threshold` setting of node-lifecycle-controller, which is 55% by default.
In this scenario, if the network disconnection lasts longer than the `default-unreachable-toleration-seconds` (5 minutes) and `node-monitor-grace-period` (40 seconds), and less than 55% of nodes in a zone are unreachable, new pods are scheduled on healthy nodes while pods on unreachable nodes are marked for eviction.

Cluster administrators will see new pods created on healthy nodes, and the pods on disconnected nodes will show as `Terminating`. Remember that, even though pods on disconnected nodes have a `Terminating` status, they are not fully evicted until the node reconnects to the Kubernetes control plane.

Scenario 5: Node restart during network disruption

Expected result: Pods on unreachable nodes are not started until the nodes reconnect to the Kubernetes control plane. Pod failover follows the logic described in Scenarios 1–3, depending on the number of unreachable nodes.

A node restart during network disruption means that another failure (such as a power cycle, out-of-memory event, or other issue) occurred on a node at the same time as a network disconnection.

The pods that were running on that node when the network disconnection began are not automatically restarted during the disconnection if the kubelet has also restarted. The kubelet queries the Kubernetes API server during startup to learn which pods it should run. If the kubelet cannot reach the API server due to a network disconnection, it cannot retrieve the information needed to start the pods.

In this scenario, local troubleshooting tools such as the `crictl` CLI cannot be used to start pods manually as a "break-glass" measure. Kubernetes typically removes failed pods and creates new ones rather than restarting existing pods (see #10213 in the containerd GitHub repo for details). Static pods are the only Kubernetes workload object that are controlled by the kubelet and can be restarted during these scenarios. However, it is generally not recommended to use static pods for application deployments. Instead, deploy multiple replicas across different hosts to ensure application availability in the event of multiple simultaneous failures, such as a node failure plus a network disconnection between your nodes and the Kubernetes control plane.

Application network traffic through network disconnections

The topics on this page are related to Kubernetes cluster networking and the application traffic during network disconnections between nodes and the Kubernetes control plane.

Cilium

Cilium has several modes for IP address management (IPAM), encapsulation, load balancing, and cluster routing. The modes validated in this guide used Cluster Scope IPAM, VXLAN overlay, BGP load balancing, and kube-proxy. Cilium was also used without BGP load balancing, replacing it with MetalLB L2 load balancing.

The base of the Cilium install consists of the Cilium operator and Cilium agents. The Cilium operator runs as a Deployment and registers the Cilium Custom Resource Definitions (CRDs), manages IPAM, and synchronizes cluster objects with the Kubernetes API server among other capabilities. The Cilium agents run on each node as a DaemonSet and manage the eBPF programs to control the network rules for workloads running on the cluster.

Generally, the in-cluster routing configured by Cilium remains available and in-place during network disconnections, which can be confirmed by observing the in-cluster traffic flows and IP table (iptables) rules for the pod network.

```
ip route show table all | grep cilium
```

```
10.86.2.0/26 via 10.86.3.16 dev cilium_host proto kernel src 10.86.3.16 mtu 1450
10.86.2.64/26 via 10.86.3.16 dev cilium_host proto kernel src 10.86.3.16 mtu 1450
10.86.2.128/26 via 10.86.3.16 dev cilium_host proto kernel src 10.86.3.16 mtu 1450
10.86.2.192/26 via 10.86.3.16 dev cilium_host proto kernel src 10.86.3.16 mtu 1450
10.86.3.0/26 via 10.86.3.16 dev cilium_host proto kernel src 10.86.3.16
10.86.3.16 dev cilium_host proto kernel scope link
...
```

However, during network disconnections, the Cilium operator and Cilium agents restart due to the coupling of their health checks with the health of the connection with the Kubernetes API server. It is expected to see the following in the logs of the Cilium operator and Cilium agents during network disconnections. During the network disconnections, you can use tools such as the `crictl` CLI to observe the restarts of these components including their logs.

```
msg="Started gops server" address="127.0.0.1:9890" subsys=gops
msg="Establishing connection to apiserver" host="https://<k8s-cluster-ip>:443"
 subsys=k8s-client
msg="Establishing connection to apiserver" host="https://<k8s-cluster-ip>:443"
 subsys=k8s-client
msg="Unable to contact k8s api-server" error="Get \"https://<k8s-cluster-ip>:443/
api/v1/namespaces/kube-system\": dial tcp <k8s-cluster-ip>:443: i/o timeout"
 ipAddr="https://<k8s-cluster-ip>:443" subsys=k8s-client
msg="Start hook failed" function="client.(*compositeClientset).onStart
 (agent.infra.k8s-client)" error="Get \"https://<k8s-cluster-ip>:443/api/v1/namespaces/
kube-system\": dial tcp <k8s-cluster-ip>:443: i/o timeout"
msg="Start failed" error="Get \"https://<k8s-cluster-ip>:443/api/v1/namespaces/kube-
system\": dial tcp <k8s-cluster-ip>:443: i/o timeout" duration=1m5.003834026s
msg=Stopping
msg="Stopped gops server" address="127.0.0.1:9890" subsys=gops
msg="failed to start: Get \"https://<k8s-cluster-ip>:443/api/v1/namespaces/kube-system
\": dial tcp <k8s-cluster-ip>:443: i/o timeout" subsys=daemon
```

If you are using Cilium's BGP Control Plane capability for application load balancing, the BGP session for your pods and services might be down during network disconnections because the BGP speaker functionality is integrated with the Cilium agent, and the Cilium agent will continuously restart when disconnected from the Kubernetes control plane. For more information, see the Cilium BGP Control Plane Operation Guide in the Cilium documentation. Additionally, if you experience a simultaneous failure during a network disconnection such as a power cycle or machine reboot, the Cilium routes will not be preserved through these actions, though the routes are recreated when the node reconnects to the Kubernetes control plane and Cilium starts up again.

Calico

Coming soon

MetalLB

MetalLB has two modes for load balancing: L2 mode and BGP mode. Reference the MetalLB documentation for details of how these load balancing modes work and their limitations. The validation for this guide used MetalLB in L2 mode, where one machine in the cluster takes ownership of the Kubernetes Service, and uses ARP for IPv4 to make the load balancer IP addresses reachable on the local network. When running MetalLB there is a controller that is responsible for the IP assignment and speakers that run on each node which are responsible for advertising services with assigned IP addresses. The MetalLB controller runs as a Deployment and the MetalLB speakers run as a DaemonSet. During network disconnections, the MetalLB controller and speakers fail to watch the Kubernetes API server for cluster resources but continue running. Most importantly, the Services that are using MetalLB for external connectivity remain available and accessible during network disconnections.

kube-proxy

In EKS clusters, kube-proxy runs as a DaemonSet on each node and is responsible for managing network rules to enable communication between services and pods by translating service IP addresses to the IP addresses of the underlying pods. The IP tables (iptables) rules configured by kube-proxy are maintained during network disconnections and in-cluster routing continues to function and the kube-proxy pods continue to run.

You can observe the kube-proxy rules with the following iptables commands. The first command shows packets going through the `PREROUTING` chain get directed to the `KUBE-SERVICES` chain.

```
iptables -t nat -L PREROUTING
```

```
Chain PREROUTING (policy ACCEPT)
target         prot opt source      destination
KUBE-SERVICES  all  --  anywhere    anywhere      /* kubernetes service portals */
```

Inspecting the `KUBE-SERVICES` chain we can see the rules for the various cluster services.

```
Chain KUBE-SERVICES (2 references)
```

```
target                     prot opt source      destination
KUBE-SVL-NZTS37XDTDNXGCKJ  tcp  --  anywhere    172.16.189.136  /* kube-system/hubble-
peer:peer-service cluster IP /
KUBE-SVC-2BINP2AXJOTI3HJ5  tcp  --  anywhere    172.16.62.72    / default/metallb-
webhook-service cluster IP /
KUBE-SVC-LRNEBRA3Z5YGJ4QC  tcp  --  anywhere    172.16.145.111  / default/redis-leader
 cluster IP /
KUBE-SVC-I7SKRZYQ7PWYV5X7  tcp  --  anywhere    172.16.142.147  / kube-system/eks-
extension-metrics-api:metrics-api cluster IP /
KUBE-SVC-JD5MR3NA4I4DYORP  tcp  --  anywhere    172.16.0.10     / kube-system/kube-
dns:metrics cluster IP /
KUBE-SVC-TCOU7JCQXEZGVUNU  udp  --  anywhere    172.16.0.10     / kube-system/kube-
dns:dns cluster IP /
KUBE-SVC-ERIFXISQEP7F7OF4  tcp  --  anywhere    172.16.0.10     / kube-system/kube-
dns:dns-tcp cluster IP /
KUBE-SVC-ENODL3HWJ5BZY56Q  tcp  --  anywhere    172.16.7.26     / default/frontend
 cluster IP /
KUBE-EXT-ENODL3HWJ5BZY56Q  tcp  --  anywhere    <LB-IP>    / default/frontend
 loadbalancer IP /
KUBE-SVC-NPX46M4PTMTKRN6Y  tcp  --  anywhere    172.16.0.1      / default/
kubernetes:https cluster IP /
KUBE-SVC-YU5RV2YQWHLZ5XPR  tcp  --  anywhere    172.16.228.76   / default/redis-
follower cluster IP /
KUBE-NODEPORTS             all  --  anywhere    anywhere        / kubernetes service
 nodeports; NOTE: this must be the last rule in this chain */
```

Inspecting the chain of the frontend service for the application we can see the pod IP addresses backing the service.

```
iptables -t nat -L KUBE-SVC-ENODL3HWJ5BZY56Q
```

```
Chain KUBE-SVC-ENODL3HWJ5BZY56Q (2 references)
target                     prot opt source    destination
KUBE-SEP-EKXE7ASH7Y74BGBO  all  --  anywhere  anywhere    /* default/frontend ->
 10.86.2.103:80 / statistic mode random probability 0.33333333349
KUBE-SEP-GCY3OUXWSVMSEAR6  all  --  anywhere  anywhere    / default/frontend ->
 10.86.2.179:80 / statistic mode random probability 0.50000000000
KUBE-SEP-6GJJR3EF5AUP2WBU  all  --  anywhere  anywhere    / default/frontend ->
 10.86.3.47:80 */
```

The following kube-proxy log messages are expected during network disconnections as it attempts to watch the Kubernetes API server for updates to node and endpoint resources.

```
"Unhandled Error" err="k8s.io/client-go/informers/factory.go:160: Failed to watch
 *v1.Node: failed to list *v1.Node: Get \"https://<k8s-endpoint>/api/v1/nodes?
fieldSelector=metadata.name%3D<node-name>&resourceVersion=2241908\": dial tcp <k8s-
ip>:443: i/o timeout" logger="UnhandledError"
"Unhandled Error" err="k8s.io/client-go/informers/factory.go:160: Failed to watch
 *v1.EndpointSlice: failed to list *v1.EndpointSlice: Get \"https://<k8s-endpoint>/
apis/discovery.k8s.io/v1/endpointslices?labelSelector=%21service.kubernetes.io
%2Fheadless%2C%21service.kubernetes.io%2Fservice-proxy-name&resourceVersion=2242090\":
 dial tcp <k8s-ip>:443: i/o timeout" logger="UnhandledError"
```

CoreDNS

By default, pods in EKS clusters use the CoreDNS cluster IP address as the name server for in-cluster DNS queries. In EKS clusters, CoreDNS runs as a Deployment on nodes. With hybrid nodes, pods are able to continue communicating with the CoreDNS during network disconnections when there are CoreDNS replicas running locally on hybrid nodes. If you have an EKS cluster with nodes in the cloud and hybrid nodes in your on-premises environment, it is recommended to have at least one CoreDNS replica in each environment. CoreDNS continues serving DNS queries for records that were created before the network disconnection and continues running through the network reconnection for static stability.

The following CoreDNS log messages are expected during network disconnections as it attempts to list objects from the Kubernetes API server.

```
Failed to watch *v1.Namespace: failed to list *v1.Namespace: Get "https://<k8s-cluster-
ip>:443/api/v1/namespaces?resourceVersion=2263964": dial tcp <k8s-cluster-ip>:443: i/o
 timeout
Failed to watch *v1.Service: failed to list *v1.Service: Get "https://<k8s-cluster-
ip>:443/api/v1/services?resourceVersion=2263966": dial tcp <k8s-cluster-ip>:443: i/o
 timeout
Failed to watch *v1.EndpointSlice: failed to list *v1.EndpointSlice: Get "https://<k8s-
cluster-ip>:443/apis/discovery.k8s.io/v1/endpointslices?resourceVersion=2263896": dial
 tcp <k8s-cluster-ip>: i/o timeout
```

Host credentials through network disconnections

EKS Hybrid Nodes is integrated with AWS Systems Manager (SSM) hybrid activations and AWS IAM Roles Anywhere for temporary IAM credentials that are used to authenticate the node with the EKS control plane. Both SSM and IAM Roles Anywhere automatically refresh the temporary credentials that they manage on on-premises hosts. It is recommended to use a single credential provider

across the hybrid nodes in your cluster—either SSM hybrid activations or IAM Roles Anywhere, but not both.

SSM hybrid activations

The temporary credentials provisioned by SSM are valid for one hour. You cannot alter the credential validity duration when using SSM as your credential provider. The temporary credentials are automatically rotated by SSM before they expire, and the rotation does not affect the status of your nodes or applications. However, when there are network disconnections between the SSM agent and the SSM Regional endpoint, SSM is unable to refresh the credentials, and the credentials might expire.

SSM uses exponential backoff for credential refresh retries if it is unable to connect to the SSM Regional endpoints. In SSM agent version `3.3.808.0` and later (released August 2024), the exponential backoff is capped at 30 minutes. Depending on the duration of your network disconnection, it might take up to 30 minutes for SSM to refresh the credentials, and hybrid nodes will not reconnect to the EKS control plane until the credentials are refreshed. In this scenario, you can restart the SSM agent to force a credential refresh. As a side effect of the current SSM credential refresh behavior, nodes might reconnect at different times depending on when the SSM agent on each node manages to refresh its credentials. Because of this, you may see pod failover from nodes that are not yet reconnected to nodes that are already reconnected.

Get the SSM agent version. You can also check the Fleet Manager section of the SSM console:

```
# AL2023, RHEL
yum info amazon-ssm-agent
# Ubuntu
snap list amazon-ssm-agent
```

Restart the SSM agent:

```
# AL2023, RHEL
systemctl restart amazon-ssm-agent
# Ubuntu
systemctl restart snap.amazon-ssm-agent.amazon-ssm-agent
```

View SSM agent logs:

```
tail -f /var/log/amazon/ssm/amazon-ssm-agent.log
```

Expected log messages during network disconnections:

```
INFO [CredentialRefresher] Credentials ready
INFO [CredentialRefresher] Next credential rotation will be in 29.995040663666668
 minutes
ERROR [CredentialRefresher] Retrieve credentials produced error: RequestError: send
 request failed
INFO [CredentialRefresher] Sleeping for 35s before retrying retrieve credentials
ERROR [CredentialRefresher] Retrieve credentials produced error: RequestError: send
 request failed
INFO [CredentialRefresher] Sleeping for 56s before retrying retrieve credentials
ERROR [CredentialRefresher] Retrieve credentials produced error: RequestError: send
 request failed
INFO [CredentialRefresher] Sleeping for 1m24s before retrying retrieve credentials
```

IAM Roles Anywhere

The temporary credentials provisioned by IAM Roles Anywhere are valid for one hour by default. You can configure the credential validity duration with IAM Roles Anywhere through the `durationSeconds` field in your IAM Roles Anywhere profile. The maximum credential validity duration is 12 hours. The `MaxSessionDuration` setting on your Hybrid Nodes IAM role must be greater than the `durationSeconds` setting on your IAM Roles Anywhere profile.

When using IAM Roles Anywhere as the credential provider for your hybrid nodes, reconnection to the EKS control plane after network disconnections typically occurs within seconds of network restoration, because the kubelet calls `aws_signing_helper credential-process` to obtain credentials on demand. Although not directly related to hybrid nodes or network disconnections, you can configure notifications and alerts for certificate expiry when using IAM Roles Anywhere. For more information, see Customize notification settings in IAM Roles Anywhere.

Best Practices for Running AI/ML Workloads

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Implementing best practices when running AI/ML workloads on EKS can ensure that those workloads are performant, cost-effective, resilient, and properly resourced. Best practices are divided into the following general sections: Compute, Networking, Storage, Observability, and Performance.

Feedback

This guide is being released on GitHub so as to collect direct feedback and suggestions from the broader EKS/Kubernetes community. If you have a best practice that you feel we ought to include in the guide, please file an issue or submit a PR in the GitHub repository. Our intention is to update the guide periodically as new features are added to the service or when a new best practice evolves.

Compute and Autoscaling

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

GPU Resource Optimization and Cost Management

Schedule workloads with GPU requirements using Well-Known labels

For AI/ML workloads sensitive to different GPU characteristics (e.g. GPU, GPU memory) we recommend specifying GPU requirements using known scheduling labels supported by node types used with Karpenter and managed node groups. Failing to define these can result in pods being scheduled on instances with inadequate GPU resources, causing failures or degraded performance.

We recommend using nodeSelector or Node affinity to specify which node a pod should run on and setting compute resources (CPU, memory, GPUs etc) in the pod's resources section.

Example

For example, using GPU name node selector when using Karpenter:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: gpu-pod-example
spec:
  containers:
  - name: ml-workload
    image: <image>
    resources:
      limits:
        nvidia.com/gpu: 1  # Request one NVIDIA GPU
  nodeSelector:
    karpenter.k8s.aws/instance-gpu-name: "l40s"  # Run on nodes with NVIDIA L40S GPUs
```

Use Kubernetes Device Plugin for exposing GPUs

To expose GPUs on nodes, the NVIDIA GPU driver must be installed on the node's operating system and container runtime configured to allow the Kubernetes scheduler to assign pods to nodes with available GPUs. The setup process for the NVIDIA Kubernetes Device Plugin depends on the EKS Accelerated AMI you are using:

- **Bottlerocket Accelerated AMI** : This AMI includes the NVIDIA GPU driver **and** the NVIDIA Kubernetes Device Plugin is pre-installed and ready to use, enabling GPU support out of the box. No additional configuration is required to expose GPUs to the Kubernetes scheduler.
- **AL2023 Accelerated AMI** : This AMI includes NVIDIA GPU driver but the NVIDIA Kubernetes Device Plugin is **not** pre-installed. You must install and configure the device plugin separately, typically via a DaemonSet. Note that if you use eksctl to create your cluster and specify a GPU instance type (e.g., `g5.xlarge`) in your ClusterConfig, `eksctl` will automatically select the appropriate AMI and install the NVIDIA Kubernetes Device Plugin. To learn more, see GPU support in eksctl documentation.

If you decide to use the EKS Accelerated AMIs and NVIDIA GPU operator to manage components such as the NVIDIA Kubernetes device plugin instead, take note to disable management of the

NVIDIA GPU driver and NVIDIA Container toolkit as per the Pre-Installed NVIDIA GPU Drivers and NVIDIA Container Toolkit NVIDIA documentation.

To verify that the NVIDIA Device Plugin is active and GPUs are correctly exposed, run:

```
kubectl describe node | grep nvidia.com/gpu
```

This command checks if the `nvidia.com/gpu` resource is in the node's capacity and allocatable resources. For example, a node with one GPU should show `nvidia.com/gpu: 1`. See the Kubernetes GPU Scheduling Guide for more information.

Use many different EC2 instance types

Using as many different EC2 instance types as possible is an important best practice for scalability on Amazon EKS, as outlined in the the section called "Data Plane" section. This recommendation also applies to instances with accelerated hardware (e.g., GPUs). If you create a cluster that uses only one instance type and try to scale the number of nodes beyond the capacity of the region, you may receive an insufficient capacity error (ICE), indicating that no instances are available. It's important to understand the unique characteristics of your AI/ML workloads before diversifying arbitrarily. Review the available instance types using the EC2 Instance Type Explorer tool to generate a list of instance types that match your specific compute requirements, and avoid arbitrarily limiting the type of instances that can be used in your cluster.

Accelerated compute instances are offered in different purchase models to fit short term, medium term and steady state workloads. For short term, flexible and fault tolerant workloads, where you'd like to avoid making a reservation, look into Spot instances. Capacity Blocks, On-Demand instances and Saving Plans allow you to provision accelerated compute instances for medium and long term workload duration. To increase the chances of successfully accessing the required capacity in your preferred purchase option, it's recommended to use a diverse list of instance types and availability zones. Alternatively, if you encounter ICEs for a specific purchase model, retry using a different model.

Example The following example shows how to enable a Karpenter NodePool to provision G and P instances greater than generations 3 (e.g., p3). To learn more, see the *Scalability* section.

```
- key: karpenter.k8s.aws/instance-category
  operator: In
  values: ["g", "p"] # Diversifies across G-series and P-series
- key: karpenter.k8s.aws/instance-generation
  operator: Gt
```

```
  values: ["3"] # Selects instance generations greater than 3
```

For details on using Spot instances for GPUs, see "Consider using Amazon EC2 Spot Instances for GPUs with Karpenter" below.

Consider using Amazon EC2 Spot Instances for GPUs with Karpenter

Amazon EC2 Spot Instances let you take advantage of unused EC2 capacity in the AWS cloud and are available at up to a 90% discount compared to On-Demand prices. Amazon EC2 Spot Instances can be interrupted with a two-minute notice when EC2 needs the capacity back. For more information, see Spot Instances in the Amazon EC2 User Guide. Amazon EC2 Spot can be a great choice for fault-tolerant, stateless and flexible (time and instance type) workloads. To learn more about when to use Spot instances, see EC2 Spot Instances Best Practices. You can also use Spot Instances for AI/ML workloads if they're Spot-friendly.

Use cases

Spot-friendly workloads can be big data, containerized workloads, CI/CD, stateless web servers, high performance computing (HPC), and rendering workloads. Spot Instances are not suitable for workloads that are inflexible, stateful, fault-intolerant, or tightly coupled between instance nodes (e.g., workloads with parallel processes that depend heavily on each other for computation, requiring constant inter-node communication, such as MPI-based high-performance computing applications like computational fluid dynamics or distributed databases with complex interdependencies). Here are the specific use cases we recommend (in no particular order):

- **Real-time online inference**: Use Spot instances for cost-optimized scaling for your real-time inference workloads, as long as your workloads are spot-friendly. In other words, the inference time is either less than two minutes, the application is fault-tolerant to interruptions, and can run on different instance types. Ensure high availability through instance diversity (e.g., across multiple instance types and Availability Zones) or reservations, while implementing application-level fault tolerance to handle potential Spot interruptions.
- **Hyper-parameter tuning**: Use Spot instances to run exploratory tuning jobs opportunistically, as interruptions can be tolerated without significant loss, especially for short-duration experiments.
- **Data augmentation**: Use Spot instances to perform data preprocessing and augmentation tasks that can restart from checkpoints if interrupted, making them ideal for Spot's variable availability.
- **Fine-tuning models**: Use Spot instances for fine-tuning with robust checkpointing mechanisms to resume from the last saved state, minimizing the impact of instance interruptions.

- **Batch inference**: Use Spot instances to process large batches of offline inference requests in a non-real-time manner, where jobs can be paused and resumed, offering the best alignment with Spot's cost savings and handling potential interruptions through retries or diversification.
- **Opportunistic training subsets**: Use Spot instances for marginal or experimental training workloads (e.g., smaller models under 10 million parameters), where interruptions are acceptable and efficiency optimizations like diversification across instance types or regions can be applied—though not recommended for production-scale training due to potential disruptions.

Considerations

To use Spot Instances for accelerated workloads on Amazon EKS, there are a number of key considerations (in no particular order):

- **Use Karpenter to manage Spot instances with advanced consolidation enabled**. By specifying karpenter.sh/capacity-type as "spot" in your Karpenter NodePool, Karpenter will provision Spot instances by default without any additional configuration. However, to enable advanced Spot-to-Spot consolidation, which replaces underutilized Spot nodes with lower-priced Spot alternatives, you need to enable the SpotToSpotConsolidation feature gate by setting --feature-gates SpotToSpotConsolidation=true in Karpenter controller arguments or via the FEATURE_GATES environment variable. Karpenter uses the price-capacity-optimized allocation strategy to provision EC2 instances. Based on the NodePool requirements and pod constraints, Karpenter bin-packs unschedulable pods and sends a diverse set of instance types to the Amazon EC2 Fleet API. You can use the EC2 Instance Type Explorer tool to generate a list of instance types that match your specific compute requirements.
- **Ensure workloads are stateless, fault-tolerance and flexible**. Workloads must be stateless, fault-tolerant, and flexible in terms of instance/GPU size. This allows seamless resumption after Spot interruptions, and instance flexibility enables you to potentially stay on Spot for longer. Enable Spot interruption handling in Karpenter by configuring the settings.interruptionQueue Helm value with the name of the AWS SQS queue to catch Spot interruption events. For example, when installing via Helm, use --set "settings.interruptionQueue=${CLUSTER_NAME}". To see an example, see the Getting Started with Karpenter guide. When Karpenter notices a Spot interruption event, it automatically cordons, taints, drains, and terminates the node(s) ahead of the interruption event to maximize the termination grace period of the pods. At the same time, Karpenter will immediately start a new node so it can be ready as soon as possible.
- **Avoid overly constraining instance type selection**. You should avoid constraining instance types as much as possible. By not constraining instance types, there is a higher chance of acquiring

Spot capacity at large scales with a lower frequency of Spot Instance interruptions at a lower cost. For example, avoid limiting to specific types (e.g., g5.xlarge). Consider specifying a diverse set of instance categories and generations using keys like karpenter.k8s.aws/instance-category and karpenter.k8s.aws/instance-generation. Karpenter enables easier diversification of on-demand and Spot instance capacity across multiple instance types and Availability Zones (AZs). Moreover, if your AI/ML workload requires specific or limited number of accelerators but is flexible between regions, you can use Spot Placement Score to dynamically identify the optimal region to deploy your workload before launch.

- **Broaden NodePool requirements to include a larger number of similar EC2 instance families**. Every Spot Instance pool consists of an unused EC2 instance capacity for a specific instance type in a specific Availability Zone (AZ). When Karpenter tries to provision a new node, it selects an instance type that matches the NodePool's requirements. If no compatible instance type has Spot capacity in any AZ, then provisioning fails. To avoid this issue, allow broader g-series instances (generation 4 or higher) from NVIDIA across sizes and Availability Zones (AZs), while considering hardware needs like GPU memory or Ray Tracing. As instances can be of different types, you need to make sure that your workload is able to run on each type, and the performance you get meets your needs.
- **Leverage all availability zones in a region**. Available capacity varies by Availability Zone (AZ), a specific instance type might be unavailable in one AZ but plentiful in another. Each unique combination of an instance type and an Availability Zone constitutes a separate Spot capacity pool. By requesting capacity across all AZs in a region within your Karpenter NodePool requirements, you are effectively searching more pools at once. This maximizes the number of Spot capacity pools and therefore increases the probability of acquiring Spot capacity. To achieve this, in your NodePool configuration, either omit the topology.kubernetes.io/zone key entirely to allow Karpenter to select from all available AZs in the region, or explicitly list AZs using the operator: In and provide the values (e.g., us-west-2a).
- **Consider using Spot Placement Score (SPS) to get visibility into the likelihood of successfully accessing the required capacity using Spot instances**. Spot Placement Score (SPS) is a tool that provides a score to help you assess how likely a Spot request is to succeed. When you use SPS, you first specify your compute requirements for your Spot Instances, and then Amazon EC2 returns the top 10 Regions or Availability Zones (AZs) where your Spot request is likely to succeed. Regions and Availability Zones are scored on a scale from 1 to 10. A score of 10 indicates that your Spot request is highly likely but not guaranteed to succeed. A score of 1 indicates that your Spot request is not likely to succeed at all. The same score might be returned for different Regions or Availability Zones. To learn more, see Guidance for Building a Spot Placement Score Tracker Dashboard on AWS. As Spot capacity fluctuates all the time, SPS will

help you to identify which combination of instance types, AZs, and regions work best for your workload constraints (i.e. flexibility, performance, size, etc.). If your AI/ML workload requires specific or a limited number of accelerators but is flexible between regions, you can use Spot placement score to dynamically identify the optimal region to deploy your workload before launch. To help you find out automatically the likelihood of acquiring Spot capacity, we provide a guidance for building an SPS tracker dashboard. This solution monitors SPS scores over time using a YAML configuration for diversified setups (e.g., instance requirements including GPUs), stores metrics in CloudWatch, and provides dashboards to compare configurations. Define dashboards per workload to evaluate vCPU, memory, and GPU needs, ensuring optimal setups for EKS clusters including the consideration of using other AWS Regions. To learn more, see How Spot placement score works.

- **Gracefully handle Spot interruptions and test**. For a pod with a termination period longer than two minutes, the old node will be interrupted prior to those pods being rescheduled, which could impact workload availability. Consider the two-minute Spot interruption notice when designing your applications, implement checkpointing in long-running applications (e.g., saving progress to persistent storage like Amazon S3) to resume after interruptions, extend the terminationGracePeriodSeconds (default is 30 seconds) in Pod specifications to allow more time for graceful shutdown, and handle interruptions using preStop lifecycle hooks and/or SIGTERM signals within your application for graceful shutdown activities like cleanup, state saving, and connection closure. For real-time workloads, where scaling time is important and workloads take longer than two-minutes for the application to be ready to serve traffic, consider optimizing container start-up and ML model loading times by reviewing the section called “Storage” and the section called “Performance” best practices. To test a replacement node, use AWS Fault Injection Service (FIS) to simulate Spot interruptions.

In addition to these core Spot best practices, take these factors into account when managing GPU workloads on Amazon EKS. Unlike CPU-based workloads, GPU workloads are particularly sensitive to hardware details such as GPU capabilities and available GPU memory. GPU workloads might be constrained by the instance types they can use, with fewer options available compared to CPUs. As a first step, assess if your workload is instance flexible. If you don’t know how many instance types your workload can use, test them individually to ensure compatibility and functionality. Identify how flexible you can be to diversify as much as possible, while confirming that diversification keeps the workload working and understanding any performance impacts (e.g., on throughput or completion time). As part of diversifying your workloads, consider the following:

- **Review CUDA and framework compatibility**. Your GPU workloads might be optimized for specific hardware, GPU types (e.g., V100 in p3 vs. A100 in p4), or written for specific CUDA versions for libraries like TensorFlow, so be sure to review compatibility for your workloads. This compatibility is crucial to prevent runtime errors, crashes, failures in GPU acceleration (e.g., mismatched CUDA versions with frameworks like PyTorch or TensorFlow can prevent execution), or the ability to leverage hardware features like FP16/INT8 precision.
- **GPU Memory**. Be sure to evaluate your models' memory requirements and profile your model's memory usage during runtime using tools like the DCGM Exporter and set the minimum GPU memory required for the instance type in well-known labels like karpenter.k8s.aws/instance-gpu-memory. GPU VRAM varies across instance types (e.g., NVIDIA T4 has 16GB, A10G has 24GB, V100 has 16-32GB), and ML models (e.g., large language models) can exceed available memory, causing out-of-memory (OOM) errors or crashes. For Spot Instances in EKS, this may limit diversification. For instance, you can't include lower-VRAM types if your model doesn't fit, which may limit access to capacity pools and increase interruption risk. Note that for single GPU, single node inference (e.g., multiple pods scheduled on the same node to utilize its GPU resources), this might limit diversification, as you can only include instance types with sufficient VRAM in your Spot configuration.
- **Floating-point precision and performance**. Not all Nvidia GPU architectures have the same floating point precision (e.g., FP16/INT8). Evaluate core types (CUDA/Tensor/RT) performance and floating point precision required for your workloads. Running on a lower priced, less performant GPU does not mean it's better, so consider evaluating performance in terms of work completed within a specific time frame to understand impact of diversification.

Scenario: Diversification for real time inference workloads

For a real-time online inference workload on Spot Instances, you can configure a Karpenter NodePool to diversify across compatible GPU instance families and generations. This approach ensures high availability by drawing from multiple Spot pools, while maintaining performance through constraints on GPU capabilities, memory, and architecture. It supports using alternatives when instance capacity is constrained, minimizing interruptions and optimizing for inference latency. This example NodePool states, use g and p series instances greater than 3, which have more than 20GB GPU memory.

Example

```
apiVersion: karpenter.sh/v1
kind: NodePool
```

```
metadata:
  name: gpu-inference-spot
spec:
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        role: gpu-spot-worker
    spec:
      requirements:
        - key: karpenter.sh/capacity-type
          operator: In
          values: ["spot"] # Use Spot Instances
        - key: karpenter.k8s.aws/instance-category
          operator: In
          values: ["g", "p"] # Diversifies across G-series and P-series
        - key: karpenter.k8s.aws/instance-generation
          operator: Gt
          values: ["3"] # Selects instance generations greater than 3
        - key: kubernetes.io/arch
          operator: In
          values: ["amd64"] # Specifies AMD64 architecture, compatible with NVIDIA GPUs
        - key: karpenter.k8s.aws/instance-gpu-memory
          operator: Gt
          values: ["20480"] # Ensures more than 20GB (20480 MiB) total GPU memory
      taints:
        - key: nvidia.com/gpu
          effect: NoSchedule
      nodeClassRef:
        name: gpu-inference-ec2
        group: karpenter.k8s.aws
        kind: EC2NodeClass
      expireAfter: 720h
  limits:
    cpu: 100
    memory: 100Gi
  disruption:
    consolidationPolicy: WhenEmptyOrUnderutilized
    consolidateAfter: 5m # Enables consolidation of underutilized nodes after 5 minutes
```

Implement Checkpointing for Long Running Training Jobs

Checkpointing is a fault-tolerance technique that involves periodically saving the state of a process, allowing it to resume from the last saved point in case of interruptions. In machine

learning, it is commonly associated with training, where long-running jobs can save model weights and optimizer states to resume training after failures, such as hardware issues or Spot Instance interruptions.

You use checkpoints to save the state of machine learning (ML) models during training. Checkpoints are snapshots of the model and can be configured by the callback functions of ML frameworks. You can use the saved checkpoints to restart a training job from the last saved checkpoint. Using checkpoints, you save your model snapshots under training due to an unexpected interruption to the training job or instance. This allows you to resume training the model in the future from a checkpoint. In addition to implementing a node resiliency system, we recommend implementing checkpointing to mitigate the impact of interruptions, including those caused by hardware failures or Amazon EC2 Spot Instance interruptions.

Without checkpointing, interruptions can result in wasted compute time and lost progress, which is costly for long-running training jobs. Checkpointing allows jobs to save their state periodically (e.g., model weights and optimizer states) and resume from the last checkpoint (last processed batch) after an interruption. To implement checkpointing, design your application to process data in large batches and save intermediate results to persistent storage, such as an Amazon S3 bucket via the Mountpoint for Amazon S3 CSI Driver while the training job progresses.

Use cases

Checkpointing is particularly beneficial in specific scenarios to balance fault tolerance with performance overhead. Consider using checkpointing in the following cases:

- **Job duration exceeds a few hours**: For long-running training jobs (e.g., >1-2 hours for small models, or days/weeks for large foundation models with billions of parameters), where progress loss from interruptions is costly. Shorter jobs may not justify the I/O overhead.
- **For Spot instances or hardware failures**: In environments prone to interruptions, such as EC2 Spot (2-minute notice) or hardware failures (e.g., GPU memory errors), checkpointing enables quick resumption, making Spot viable for cost savings in fault-tolerant workloads.
- **Distributed training at scale**: For setups with hundreds/thousands of accelerators (e.g., >100 GPUs), where mean time between failures decreases linearly with scale. Use for model/data parallelism to handle concurrent checkpoint access and avoid complete restarts.
- **Large-scale models with high resource demands**: In petabyte-scale LLM training, where failures are inevitable due to cluster size; tiered approaches (fast local every 5-30 minutes for transients, durable hourly for major failures) optimize recovery time vs. efficiency.

Use ML Capacity Blocks for capacity assurance of P and Trainium instances

Capacity Blocks for ML allow you to reserve highly sought-after GPU instances, specifically P instances (e.g., p6-b200, p5, p5e, p5en, p4d, p4de) and Trainium instances (e.g., trn1, trn2), to start either almost immediately or on a future date to support your short duration machine learning (ML) workloads. These reservations are ideal for ensuring capacity for compute-intensive tasks like model training and fine-tuning. EC2 Capacity Blocks pricing consists of a reservation fee and an operating system fee. To learn more about pricing, see EC2 Capacity Blocks for ML pricing.

To reserve GPUs for AI/ML workloads on Amazon EKS for predicable capacity assurance we recommend leveraging ML Capacity Blocks for short-term or On-Demand Capacity Reservations (ODCRs) for general-purpose capacity assurance.

- ODCRs allow you to reserve EC2 instance capacity (e.g., GPU instances like g5 or p5) in a specific Availability Zone for a duration, ensuring availability, even during high demand. ODCRs have no long-term commitment, but you pay the On-Demand rate for the reserved capacity, whether used or idle. In EKS, ODCRs are supported by node types like Karpenter and managed node groups. To prioritize ODCRs in Karpenter, configure the NodeClass to use the `capacityReservationSelectorTerms` field. See the Karpenter NodePools Documentation.
- Capacity Blocks are a specialized reservation mechanism for GPU (e.g., p5, p4d) or Trainium (trn1, trn2) instances, designed for short-term ML workloads like model training, fine-tuning, or experimentation. You reserve capacity for a defined period (typically 24 hours to 182 days) starting on a future date, paying only for the reserved time. They are pre-paid, require pre-planning for capacity needs and do not support autoscaling, but they are colocated in EC2 UltraClusters for low-latency networking. They charge only for the reserved period. To learn more, refer to Find and purchase Capacity Blocks, or get started by setting up managed node groups with Capacity Blocks using the instructions in Create a managed node group with Capacity Blocks for ML.

Reserve capacity via the AWS Management Console and configure your nodes to use ML capacity blocks. Plan reservations based on workload schedules and test in a staging cluster. Refer to the Capacity Blocks Documentation for more information.

Consider On-Demand, Amazon EC2 Spot or On-Demand Capacity Reservations (ODCRs) for G Amazon EC2 instances

For G Amazon EC2 Instances consider the different purchase options from On-Demand, Amazon EC2 Spot Instances and On-Demand Capacity Reservations. ODCRs allow you to reserve EC2

instance capacity in a specific Availability Zone for a certain duration, ensuring availability even during high demand. Unlike ML Capacity Blocks, which are only available to P and Trainium instances, ODCRs can be used for a wider range of instance types, including G instances, making them suitable for workloads that require different GPU capabilities, such as inference or graphics. When using Amazon EC2 Spot Instances, being able to diverse across different instance types, sizes, and availability zones is key to being able to stay on Spot for longer.

ODCRs have no long-term commitment, but you pay the On-Demand rate for the reserved capacity, whether used or idle. ODCRs can be created for immediate use or scheduled for a future date, providing flexibility in capacity planning. In Amazon EKS, ODCRs are supported by node types like Karpenter and managed node groups. To prioritize ODCRs in Karpenter, configure the NodeClass to use the `capacityReservationSelectorTerms` field. See the Karpenter NodePools Documentation. For more information on creating ODCRs, including CLI commands, refer to the On-Demand Capacity Reservation Getting Started.

Consider other accelerated instance types and sizes

Selecting the appropriate accelerated instance and size is essential for optimizing both performance and cost in your ML workloads on Amazon EKS. For example, different GPU instance families have different performance and capabilities such as GPU memory. To help you choose the most price-performant option, review the available GPU instances in the EC2 Instance Types page under **Accelerated Computing**. Evaluate multiple instance types and sizes to find the best fit for your specific workload requirements. Consider factors such as the number of GPUs, memory, and network performance. By carefully selecting the right GPU instance type and size, you can achieve better resource utilization and cost efficiency in your EKS clusters.

If you use a GPU instance in an EKS node then it will have the `nvidia-device-plugin-daemonset` pod in the `kube-system` namespace by default. To get a quick sense of whether you are fully utilizing the GPU(s) in your instance, you can use nvidia-smi as shown here:

```
kubectl exec nvidia-device-plugin-daemonset-xxxxx \
  -n kube-system -- nvidia-smi \
  --query-
gpu=index,power.draw,power.limit,temperature.gpu,utilization.gpu,utilization.memory,memory.free
 \
  --format=csv -l 5
```

- If `utilization.memory` is close to 100%, then your code(s) are likely memory bound. This means that the GPU (memory) is fully utilized but could suggest that further performance optimization should be investigated.
- If the `utilization.gpu` is close to 100%, this does not necessarily mean the GPU is fully utilized. A better metric to look at is the ratio of `power.draw` to `power.limit`. If this ratio is 100% or more, then your code(s) are fully utilizing the compute capacity of the GPU.
- The `-l 5` flag says to output the metrics every 5 seconds. In the case of a single GPU instance type, the index query flag is not needed.

To learn more, see GPU instances in AWS documentation.

Optimize GPU Resource Allocation with Time-Slicing, MIG, and Fractional GPU Allocation

Static resource limits in Kubernetes (e.g., CPU, memory, GPU counts) can lead to over-provisioning or underutilization, particularly for dynamic AI/ML workloads like inference. Selecting the right GPU is important. For low-volume or spiky workloads, time-slicing allows multiple workloads to share a single GPU by sharing its compute resources, potentially improving efficiency and reducing waste. GPU sharing can be achieved through different options:

- **Leverage Node Selectors / Node affinity to influence scheduling**: Ensure the nodes provisioned and pods are scheduled on the appropriate GPUs for the workload (e.g., `karpenter.k8s.aws/instance-gpu-name: "a100"`)
- **Time-Slicing**: Schedules workloads to share a GPU's compute resources over time, allowing concurrent execution without physical partitioning. This is ideal for workloads with variable compute demands, but may lack memory isolation.
- **Multi-Instance GPU (MIG)**: MIG allows a single NVIDIA GPU to be partitioned into multiple, isolated instances and is supported with NVIDIA Ampere (e.g., A100 GPU), NVIDIA Hopper (e.g., H100 GPU), and NVIDIA Blackwell (e.g., Blackwell GPUs) GPUs. Each MIG instance receives dedicated compute and memory resources, enabling resource sharing in multi-tenant environments or workloads requiring resource guarantees, which allows you to optimize GPU resource utilization, including scenarios like serving multiple models with different batch sizes through time-slicing.
- **Fractional GPU Allocation**: Uses software-based scheduling to allocate portions of a GPU's compute or memory to workloads, offering flexibility for dynamic workloads. The NVIDIA KAI

Scheduler, part of the Run:ai platform, enables this by allowing pods to request fractional GPU resources.

To enable these features in EKS, you can deploy the NVIDIA Device Plugin, which exposes GPUs as schedulable resources and supports time-slicing and MIG. To learn more, see Time-Slicing GPUs in Kubernetes and GPU sharing on Amazon EKS with NVIDIA time-slicing and accelerated EC2 instances.

Example

For example, to enable time-slicing with the NVIDIA Device Plugin:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ConfigMap
metadata:
  name: nvidia-device-plugin-config
  namespace: kube-system
data:
  config.yaml: |
    version: v1
    sharing:
      timeSlicing:
        resources:
        - name: nvidia.com/gpu
          replicas: 4  # Allow 4 pods to share each GPU
```

Example

For example, to use KAI Scheduler for fractional GPU allocation, deploy it alongside the NVIDIA GPU Operator and specify fractional GPU resources in the pod spec:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: fractional-gpu-pod-example
  annotations:
    gpu-fraction: "0.5"  # Annotation for 50% GPU
  labels:
    runai/queue: "default"  # Required queue assignment
spec:
  containers:
```

```
  - name: ml-workload
    image: nvcr.io/nvidia/pytorch:25.04-py3
    resources:
      limits:
        nvidia.com/gpu: 1
  nodeSelector:
    nvidia.com/gpu: "true"
  schedulerName: kai-scheduler
```

Node Resiliency and Training Job Management

Implement Node Health Checks with Automated Recovery

For distributed training jobs on Amazon EKS that require frequent inter-node communication, such as multi-GPU model training across multiple nodes, hardware issues like GPU or EFA failures can cause disruptions to training jobs. These disruptions can lead to loss of training progress and increased costs, particularly for long-running AI/ML workloads that rely on stable hardware.

To help add resilience against hardware failures, such as GPU failures in EKS clusters running GPU workloads, we recommend leveraging either the **EKS Node Monitoring Agent** with Auto Repair or **Amazon SageMaker HyperPod**. While the EKS Node Monitoring Agent with Auto Repair provides features like node health monitoring and auto-repair using standard Kubernetes mechanisms, SageMaker HyperPod offers targeted resilience and additional features specifically designed for large-scale ML training, such as deep health checks and automatic job resumption.

- The EKS Node Monitoring Agent with Node Auto Repair continuously monitors node health by reading logs and applying NodeConditions, including standard conditions like `Ready` and conditions specific to accelerated hardware to identify issues like GPU or networking failures. When a node is deemed unhealthy, Node Auto Repair cordons it and replaces it with a new node. The rescheduling of pods and restarting of jobs rely on standard Kubernetes mechanisms and the job's restart policy.
- The SageMaker HyperPod deep health checks and health-monitoring agent continuously monitors the health status of GPU and Trainium-based instances. It is tailored for AI/ML workloads, using labels (e.g., node-health-status) to manage node health. When a node is deemed unhealthy, HyperPod triggers automatic replacement of the faulty hardware, such as GPUs. It detects networking-related failures for EFA through its basic health checks by default and supports auto-resume for interrupted training jobs, allowing jobs to continue from the last checkpoint, minimizing disruptions for large-scale ML tasks.

For both EKS Node Monitoring Agent with Auto Repair and SageMaker HyperPod clusters using EFA, to monitor EFA-specific metrics such as Remote Direct Memory Access (RDMA) errors and packet drops, make sure the AWS EFA driver is installed. In addition, we recommend deploying the CloudWatch Observability Add-on or using tools like DCGM Exporter with Prometheus and Grafana to monitor EFA, GPU, and, for SageMaker HyperPod, specific metrics related to its features.

Disable Karpenter Consolidation for interruption sensitive Workloads

For workload sensitive to interruptions, such as processing, large-scale AI/ML prediction tasks or training, we recommend tuning Karpenter consolidation policies to prevent disruptions during job execution. Karpenter's consolidation feature automatically optimizes cluster costs by terminating underutilized nodes or replacing them with lower-priced alternatives. However, even when a workload fully utilizes a GPU, Karpenter may consolidate nodes if it identifies a lower-priced right-sized instance type that meets the pod's requirements, leading to job interruptions.

The `WhenEmptyOrUnderutilized` consolidation policy may terminate nodes prematurely, leading to longer execution times. For example, interruptions may delay job resumption due to pod rescheduling, data reloading, which could be costly for long-running batch inference jobs. To mitigate this, you can set the `consolidationPolicy` to `WhenEmpty` and configure a `consolidateAfter` duration, such as 1 hour, to retain nodes during workload spikes. For example:

```
disruption:
  consolidationPolicy: WhenEmpty
  consolidateAfter: 60m
```

This approach improves pod startup latency for spiky batch inference workloads and other interruption-sensitive jobs, such as real-time online inference data processing or model training, where the cost of interruption outweighs compute cost savings. Karpenter NodePool Disruption Budgets is another feature for managing Karpenter disruptions. With budgets, you can make sure that no more than a certain number of nodes nodes will be disrupted in the chosen NodePool at a point in time. You can also use disruption budgets to prevent all nodes from being disrupted at a certain time (e.g. peak hours). To learn more, see Karpenter Consolidation documentation.

Use ttlSecondsAfterFinished to Auto Clean-Up Kubernetes Jobs

We recommend setting `ttlSecondsAfterFinished` for Kubernetes jobs in Amazon EKS to automatically delete completed job objects. Lingering job objects consume cluster resources,

such as API server memory, and complicate monitoring by cluttering dashboards (e.g., Grafana, Amazon CloudWatch). For example, setting a TTL of 1 hour ensures jobs are removed shortly after completion, keeping your cluster tidy. For more details, refer to Automatic Cleanup for Finished Jobs.

Configure Low-Priority Job Preemption for Higher-Priority Jobs/workloads

For mixed-priority AI/ML workloads on Amazon EKS, you may configure low-priority job preemption to ensure higher-priority tasks (e.g., real-time inference) receive resources promptly. Without preemption, low-priority workloads such as batch processes (e.g., batch inference, data processing), non-batch services (e.g., background tasks, cron jobs), or CPU/memory-intensive jobs (e.g., web services) can delay critical pods by occupying nodes. Preemption allows Kubernetes to evict low-priority pods when high-priority pods need resources, ensuring efficient resource allocation on nodes with GPUs, CPUs, or memory. We recommend using Kubernetes `PriorityClass` to assign priorities and `PodDisruptionBudget` to control eviction behavior.

```
apiVersion: scheduling.k8s.io/v1
kind: PriorityClass
metadata:
  name: low-priority
value: 100
---
spec:
  priorityClassName: low-priority
```

See the Kubernetes Priority and Preemption Documentation for more information.

Application Scaling and Performance

Tailor Compute Capacity for ML workloads with Karpenter or Static Nodes

To ensure cost-efficient and responsive compute capacity for machine learning (ML) workflows on Amazon EKS, we recommend tailoring your node provisioning strategy to your workload's characteristics and cost commitments. Below are two approaches to consider: just-in-time scaling with Karpenter and static node groups for reserved capacity.

- **Just-in-time data plane scalers like Karpenter**: For dynamic ML workflows with variable compute demands (e.g., GPU-based inference followed by CPU-based plotting), we recommend using just-in-time data plane scalers like Karpenter.

- **Use static node groups for predictable workloads**: For predictable, steady-state ML workloads or when using Reserved instances, EKS managed node groups can help ensure reserved capacity is fully provisioned and utilized, maximizing savings. This approach is ideal for specific instance types committed via RIs or ODCRs.

Example

This is an example of a diverse Karpenter NodePool that enables launching of g Amazon EC2 instances where instance generation is greater than three.

```
apiVersion: karpenter.sh/v1
kind: NodePool
metadata:
  name: gpu-inference
spec:
  template:
    spec:
      nodeClassRef:
        group: karpenter.k8s.aws
        kind: EC2NodeClass
        name: default
      requirements:
        - key: karpenter.sh/capacity-type
          operator: In
          values: ["on-demand"]
        - key: karpenter.k8s.aws/instance-category
          operator: In
          values: ["g"]
        - key: karpenter.k8s.aws/instance-generation
          operator: Gt
          values: ["3"]
        - key: kubernetes.io/arch
          operator: In
          values: ["amd64"]
      taints:
        - key: nvidia.com/gpu
          effect: NoSchedule
  limits:
    cpu: "1000"
    memory: "4000Gi"
    nvidia.com/gpu: "10"  *# Limit the total number of GPUs to 10 for the NodePool*
  disruption:
```

```
    consolidationPolicy: WhenEmpty
    consolidateAfter: 60m
    expireAfter: 720h
```

Example

Example using static node groups for a training workload:

```
apiVersion: eksctl.io/v1alpha5
kind: ClusterConfig
metadata:
  name: ml-cluster
  region: us-west-2
managedNodeGroups:
  - name: gpu-node-group
    instanceType: p4d.24xlarge
    minSize: 2
    maxSize: 2
    desiredCapacity: 2
    taints:
      - key: nvidia.com/gpu
        effect: NoSchedule
```

Use taints and tolerations to prevent non-accelerated workloads from being scheduled on accelerated instances

Scheduling non accelerated workloads on GPU resources is not compute-efficient, we recommend using taints and toleration to ensure non accelerated workloads pods are not scheduled on inappropriate nodes. See the Kubernetes documentation for more information.

Scale Based on Model Performance

For inference workloads, we recommend using Kubernetes Event-Driven Autoscaling (KEDA) to scale based on model performance metrics like inference requests or token throughput, with appropriate cooldown periods. Static scaling policies may over- or under-provision resources, impacting cost and latency. Learn more in the KEDA Documentation.

Dynamic resource allocation for advanced GPU management

Dynamic resource allocation (DRA) represents a fundamental advancement in Kubernetes GPU resource management. DRA moves beyond traditional device plugin limitations to enable

sophisticated GPU sharing, topology awareness, and cross-node resource coordination. Available in Amazon EKS version 1.33, DRA addresses critical challenges in AI/ML workloads by providing the following:

- Fine-grained GPU allocation
- Advanced sharing mechanisms, such as Multi-Process service (MPS) and Multi-Instance GPU (MIG)
- Support for next-generation hardware architectures, including NVIDIA GB200 UltraServers

Traditional GPU allocation treats GPUs as opaque integer resources, creating significant under-utilization (often 30-40% in production clusters). This occurs because workloads receive exclusive access to entire GPUs even when requiring only fractional resources. DRA transforms this model by introducing structured, declarative allocation that provides the Kubernetes scheduler with complete visibility into hardware characteristics and workload requirements. This enables intelligent placement decisions and efficient resource sharing.

Advantages of using DRA instead of NVIDIA device plugin

The NVIDIA device plugin (starting from version `0.12.0`) supports GPU sharing mechanisms including time-slicing, MPS, and MIG. However, architectural limitations exist that DRA addresses.

NVIDIA device plugin limitations

- **Static configuration:** GPU sharing configurations (time-slicing replicas and MPS settings) require pre-configuration cluster-wide through `ConfigMaps`. This makes providing different sharing strategies for different workloads difficult.
- **Limited granular selection:** While the device plugin exposes GPU characteristics through node labels, workloads cannot dynamically request specific GPU configurations (memory size and compute capabilities) as part of the scheduling decision.
- **No cross-node resource coordination:** Cannot manage distributed GPU resources across multiple nodes or express complex topology requirements like NVLink domains for systems like NVIDIA GB200.
- **Scheduler constraints:** The Kubernetes scheduler treats GPU resources as opaque integers, limiting its ability to make topology-aware decisions or handle complex resource dependencies.
- **Configuration complexity:** Setting up different sharing strategies requires multiple `ConfigMaps` and careful node labeling, creating operational complexity.

Solutions with DRA

- **Dynamic resource selection:** DRA allows workloads to specify detailed requirements (GPU memory, driver versions, and specific attributes) at request time through `resourceclaims`. This enables more flexible resource matching.
- **Topology awareness:** Through structured parameters and device selectors, DRA handles complex requirements like cross-node GPU communication and memory-coherent interconnects.
- **Cross-node resource management:** `computeDomains` enable coordination of distributed GPU resources across multiple nodes, critical for systems like GB200 with IMEX channels.
- **Workload-specific configuration:** Each `ResourceClaim` specifies different sharing strategies and configurations, allowing fine-grained control per workload rather than cluster-wide settings.
- **Enhanced scheduler integration:** DRA provides the scheduler with detailed device information and enables more intelligent placement decisions based on hardware topology and resource characteristics.

Important: DRA does not replace the NVIDIA device plugin entirely. The NVIDIA DRA driver works alongside the device plugin to provide enhanced capabilities. The device plugin continues to handle basic GPU discovery and management, while DRA adds advanced allocation and scheduling features.

Instances supported by DRA and their features

DRA support varies by Amazon EC2 instance family and GPU architecture, as shown in the following table.

Instance family	GPU type	Time-slicing	MIG support	MPS support	IMEX support	Use cases
G5	NVIDIA A10G	Yes	No	Yes	No	Inference and graphics workloads
G6	NVIDIA L4	Yes	No	Yes	No	AI inference and video processing
G6e	NVIDIA L40S	Yes	No	Yes	No	Training, inference, and graphics

Instance family	GPU type	Time-slicing	MIG support	MPS support	IMEX support	Use cases
P4d/ P4de	NVIDIA A100	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Large-scale training and HPC
P5	NVIDIA H100	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Foundation model training
P6	NVIDIA B200	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Billion or trillion-parameter models, distributed training, and inference
P6e	NVIDIA GB200	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Billion or trillion-parameter models, distributed training, and inference

The following are descriptions of each feature in the table:

- **Time-slicing**: Allows multiple workloads to share GPU compute resources over time.
- **Multi-Instance GPU (MIG)**: Hardware-level partitioning that creates isolated GPU instances.
- **Multi-Process service (MPS)**: Enables concurrent execution of multiple CUDA processes on a single GPU.
- **Internode Memory Exchange (IMEX)**: Memory-coherent communication across nodes for GB200 UltraServers.

Additional resources

For more information about Kubernetes DRA and NVIDIA DRA drivers, see the following resources on GitHub:

- Kubernetes dynamic-resource-allocation
- Kubernetes enhancement proposal for DRA
- NVIDIA DRA Driver for GPUs

- NVIDIA DRA examples and quickstart

Set up dynamic resource allocation for advanced GPU management

The following topic shows you how to setup dynamic resource allocation (DRA) for advanced GPU management.

Prerequisites

Before implementing DRA on Amazon EKS, ensure your environment meets the following requirements.

Cluster configuration

- Amazon EKS cluster running version `1.33` or later
- Amazon EKS managed node groups (DRA is currently supported only by managed node groups with AL2023 and Bottlerocket NVIDIA optimized AMIs, not with Karpenter)
- NVIDIA GPU-enabled worker nodes with appropriate instance types

Required components

- NVIDIA device plugin version `0.17.1` or later
- NVIDIA DRA driver version `25.3.0` or later

Step 1: Create cluster with DRA-enabled node group using eksctl

1. Create a cluster configuration file named `dra-eks-cluster.yaml`:

```
---
apiVersion: eksctl.io/v1alpha5
kind: ClusterConfig

metadata:
  name: dra-eks-cluster
  region: us-west-2
  version: '1.33'

managedNodeGroups:
- name: gpu-dra-nodes
```

```
  amiFamily: AmazonLinux2023
  instanceType: g6.12xlarge
  desiredCapacity: 2
  minSize: 1
  maxSize: 3

  labels:
    node-type: "gpu-dra"
    nvidia.com/gpu.present: "true"

  taints:
  - key: nvidia.com/gpu
    value: "true"
    effect: NoSchedule
```

2. Create the cluster:

```
eksctl create cluster -f dra-eks-cluster.yaml
```

Step 2: Deploy the NVIDIA device plugin

Deploy the NVIDIA device plugin to enable basic GPU discovery:

1. Add the NVIDIA device plugin Helm repository:

```
helm repo add nvidia https://nvidia.github.io/k8s-device-plugin
helm repo update
```

2. Create custom values for the device plugin:

```
cat <<EOF > nvidia-device-plugin-values.yaml
gfd:
  enabled: true
nfd:
  enabled: true
tolerations:
  - key: nvidia.com/gpu
    operator: Exists
    effect: NoSchedule
EOF
```

3. Install the NVIDIA device plug-in:

```
helm install nvidia-device-plugin nvidia/nvidia-device-plugin \
 --namespace nvidia-device-plugin \
 --create-namespace \
 --version v0.17.1 \
 --values nvidia-device-plugin-values.yaml
```

Step 3: Deploy NVIDIA DRA driver Helm chart

1. Create a `dra-driver-values.yaml` values file for the DRA driver:

```
---
nvidiaDriverRoot: /

gpuResourcesEnabledOverride: true

resources:
  gpus:
    enabled: true
  computeDomains:
    enabled: true  # Enable for GB200 IMEX support

controller:
  tolerations:
  - key: nvidia.com/gpu
    operator: Exists
    effect: NoSchedule

kubeletPlugin:
  affinity:
    nodeAffinity:
      requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
        nodeSelectorTerms:
        - matchExpressions:
          - key: "nvidia.com/gpu.present"
            operator: In
            values: ["true"]
  tolerations:
  - key: nvidia.com/gpu
    operator: Exists
    effect: NoSchedule
```

2. Add the NVIDIA NGC Helm repository:

```
helm repo add nvidia https://helm.ngc.nvidia.com/nvidia
helm repo update
```

3. Install the NVIDIA DRA driver:

```
helm install nvidia-dra-driver nvidia/nvidia-dra-driver-gpu \
 --version="25.3.0-rc.2" \
 --namespace nvidia-dra-driver \
 --create-namespace \
 --values dra-driver-values.yaml
```

Step 4: Verify the DRA installation

1. Verify that the DRA API resources are available:

```
kubectl api-resources | grep resource.k8s.io/v1beta1
```

   The following is the expected output:

```
deviceclasses resource.k8s.io/v1beta1 false DeviceClass
resourceclaims resource.k8s.io/v1beta1 true ResourceClaim
resourceclaimtemplates resource.k8s.io/v1beta1 true ResourceClaimTemplate
resourceslices resource.k8s.io/v1beta1 false ResourceSlice
```

2. Check the available device classes:

```
kubectl get deviceclasses
```

   The following is an example of expected output:

```
NAME                                        AGE
compute-domain-daemon.nvidia.com            4h39m
compute-domain-default-channel.nvidia.com   4h39m
gpu.nvidia.com                              4h39m
mig.nvidia.com                              4h39m
```

When a newly created G6 GPU instance joins your Amazon EKS cluster with DRA enabled, the following actions occur:

- The NVIDIA DRA driver automatically discovers the A10G GPU and creates two `resourceslices` on that node.
- The `gpu.nvidia.com` slice registers the physical A10G GPU device with its specifications (memory, compute capability, and more).
- Since A10G doesn't support MIG partitioning, the `compute-domain.nvidia.com` slice creates a single compute domain representing the entire compute context of the GPU.
- These `resourceslices` are then published to the Kubernetes API server, making the GPU resources available for scheduling through `resourceclaims`.

  The DRA scheduler can now intelligently allocate this GPU to Pods that request GPU resources through `resourceclaimtemplates`, providing more flexible resource management compared to traditional device plugin approaches. This happens automatically without manual intervention. The node simply becomes available for GPU workloads once the DRA driver completes the resource discovery and registration process.

  When you run the following command:

  ```
  kubectl get resourceslices
  ```

  The following is an example of expected output:

  ```
  NAME                                                        NODE
              DRIVER                          POOL                                  AGE
  ip-100-64-129-47.ec2.internal-compute-domain.nvidia.com-rwsts
   ip-100-64-129-47.ec2.internal    compute-domain.nvidia.com
   ip-100-64-129-47.ec2.internal    35m
  ip-100-64-129-47.ec2.internal-gpu.nvidia.com-6kndg
   ip-100-64-129-47.ec2.internal    gpu.nvidia.com
   ip-100-64-129-47.ec2.internal    35m
  ```

Continue to the section called "Schedule a simple GPU workload using dynamic resource allocation".

Schedule a simple GPU workload using dynamic resource allocation

To schedule a simple GPU workload using dynamic resource allocation (DRA), do the following steps. Before proceeding, make sure you have followed the section called "Set up dynamic resource allocation for advanced GPU management".

1. Create a basic `ResourceClaimTemplate` for GPU allocation with a file named `basic-gpu-claim-template.yaml`:

```
---
apiVersion: v1
kind: Namespace
metadata:
  name: gpu-test1

---
apiVersion: resource.k8s.io/v1beta1
kind: ResourceClaimTemplate
metadata:
  namespace: gpu-test1
  name: single-gpu
spec:
  spec:
    devices:
      requests:
      - name: gpu
        deviceClassName: gpu.nvidia.com
```

2. Apply the template:

```
kubectl apply -f basic-gpu-claim-template.yaml
```

3. Verify the status:

```
kubectl get resourceclaimtemplates -n gpu-test1
```

   The following is example output:

```
NAME         AGE
single-gpu   9m16s
```

4. Create a Pod that uses the `ResourceClaimTemplate` with a file named `basic-gpu-pod.yaml`:

```
---
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  namespace: gpu-test1
  name: gpu-pod
  labels:
    app: pod
spec:
  containers:
  - name: ctr0
    image: ubuntu:22.04
    command: ["bash", "-c"]
    args: ["nvidia-smi -L; trap 'exit 0' TERM; sleep 9999 & wait"]
    resources:
      claims:
      - name: gpu0
  resourceClaims:
  - name: gpu0
    resourceClaimTemplateName: single-gpu
  nodeSelector:
    NodeGroupType: gpu-dra
    nvidia.com/gpu.present: "true"
  tolerations:
  - key: "nvidia.com/gpu"
    operator: "Exists"
    effect: "NoSchedule"
```

5. Apply and monitor the Pod:

```
kubectl apply -f basic-gpu-pod.yaml
```

6. Check the Pod status:

```
kubectl get pod -n gpu-test1
```

The following is example expected output:

```
NAME      READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
```

```
gpu-pod   1/1     Running   0          13m
```

7. Check the `ResourceClaim` status:

```
kubectl get resourceclaims -n gpu-test1
```

   The following is example expected output:

```
NAME                 STATE                AGE
gpu-pod-gpu0-l76cg   allocated,reserved   9m6s
```

8. View Pod logs to see GPU information:

```
kubectl logs gpu-pod -n gpu-test1
```

   The following is example expected output:

```
GPU 0: NVIDIA L4 (UUID: GPU-da7c24d7-c7e3-ed3b-418c-bcecc32af7c5)
```

Continue to the section called "GPU optimization techniques with dynamic resource allocation" for more advanced GPU optimization techniques using DRA.

GPU optimization techniques with dynamic resource allocation

Modern GPU workloads require sophisticated resource management to achieve optimal utilization and cost efficiency. DRA enables several advanced optimization techniques that address different use cases and hardware capabilities:

- **Time-slicing** allows multiple workloads to share GPU compute resources over time, making it ideal for inference workloads with sporadic GPU usage. For an example, see the section called "Optimize GPU workloads with time-slicing".
- **Multi-Process service (MPS)** enables concurrent execution of multiple CUDA processes on a single GPU with better isolation than time-slicing. For an example, see the section called "Optimize GPU workloads with MPS".
- **Multi-Instance GPU (MIG)** provides hardware-level partitioning, creating isolated GPU instances with dedicated compute and memory resources. For an example, see the section called "Optimize GPU workloads with Multi-Instance GPU".

- **Internode Memory Exchange (IMEX)** enables memory-coherent communication across nodes for distributed training on NVIDIA GB200 systems. For an example, see the section called "Optimize GPU workloads with IMEX using GB200 P6e instances".

These techniques can significantly improve resource utilization. Organizations report GPU utilization increases from 30-40% with traditional allocation to 80-90% with optimized sharing strategies. The choice of technique depends on workload characteristics, isolation requirements, and hardware capabilities.

Optimize GPU workloads with time-slicing

Time-slicing enables multiple workloads to share GPU compute resources by scheduling them to run sequentially on the same physical GPU. It is ideal for inference workloads with sporadic GPU usage.

Do the following steps.

1. Define a `ResourceClaimTemplate` for time-slicing with a file named `timeslicing-claim-template.yaml`:

```
---
apiVersion: v1
kind: Namespace
metadata:
  name: timeslicing-gpu

---
apiVersion: resource.k8s.io/v1beta1
kind: ResourceClaimTemplate
metadata:
  name: timeslicing-gpu-template
  namespace: timeslicing-gpu
spec:
  spec:
    devices:
      requests:
      - name: shared-gpu
        deviceClassName: gpu.nvidia.com
      config:
      - requests: ["shared-gpu"]
        opaque:
```

```
          driver: gpu.nvidia.com
          parameters:
            apiVersion: resource.nvidia.com/v1beta1
            kind: GpuConfig
            sharing:
              strategy: TimeSlicing
```

2. Define a Pod using time-slicing with a file named `timeslicing-pod.yaml`:

```
---
# Pod 1 - Inference workload
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: inference-pod-1
  namespace: timeslicing-gpu
  labels:
    app: gpu-inference
spec:
  restartPolicy: Never
  containers:
  - name: inference-container
    image: nvcr.io/nvidia/pytorch:25.04-py3
    command: ["python", "-c"]
    args:
    - |
      import torch
      import time
      import os
      print(f"=== POD 1 STARTING ===")
      print(f"GPU available: {torch.cuda.is_available()}")
      print(f"GPU count: {torch.cuda.device_count()}")
      if torch.cuda.is_available():
          device = torch.cuda.current_device()
          print(f"Current GPU: {torch.cuda.get_device_name(device)}")
          print(f"GPU Memory:
 {torch.cuda.get_device_properties(device).total_memory / 1024**3:.1f} GB")
          # Simulate inference workload
          for i in range(20):
              x = torch.randn(1000, 1000).cuda()
              y = torch.mm(x, x.t())
              print(f"Pod 1 - Iteration {i+1} completed at {time.strftime('%H:%M:
%S')}")
              time.sleep(60)
```

```
      else:
          print("No GPU available!")
          time.sleep(5)
    resources:
      claims:
      - name: shared-gpu-claim
  resourceClaims:
  - name: shared-gpu-claim
    resourceClaimTemplateName: timeslicing-gpu-template
  nodeSelector:
    NodeGroupType: "gpu-dra"
    nvidia.com/gpu.present: "true"
  tolerations:
  - key: nvidia.com/gpu
    operator: Exists
    effect: NoSchedule


---
# Pod 2 - Training workload
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: training-pod-2
  namespace: timeslicing-gpu
  labels:
    app: gpu-training
spec:
  restartPolicy: Never
  containers:
  - name: training-container
    image: nvcr.io/nvidia/pytorch:25.04-py3
    command: ["python", "-c"]
    args:
    - |
      import torch
      import time
      import os
      print(f"=== POD 2 STARTING ===")
      print(f"GPU available: {torch.cuda.is_available()}")
      print(f"GPU count: {torch.cuda.device_count()}")
      if torch.cuda.is_available():
          device = torch.cuda.current_device()
          print(f"Current GPU: {torch.cuda.get_device_name(device)}")
```

```
          print(f"GPU Memory:
 {torch.cuda.get_device_properties(device).total_memory / 1024**3:.1f} GB")
          # Simulate training workload with heavier compute
          for i in range(15):
              x = torch.randn(2000, 2000).cuda()
              y = torch.mm(x, x.t())
              loss = torch.sum(y)
              print(f"Pod 2 - Training step {i+1}, Loss: {loss.item():.2f} at
 {time.strftime('%H:%M:%S')}")
              time.sleep(5)
      else:
          print("No GPU available!")
          time.sleep(60)
    resources:
      claims:
      - name: shared-gpu-claim-2
  resourceClaims:
  - name: shared-gpu-claim-2
    resourceClaimTemplateName: timeslicing-gpu-template
  nodeSelector:
    NodeGroupType: "gpu-dra"
    nvidia.com/gpu.present: "true"
  tolerations:
  - key: nvidia.com/gpu
    operator: Exists
    effect: NoSchedule
```

3. Apply the template and Pod:

```
kubectl apply -f timeslicing-claim-template.yaml
kubectl apply -f timeslicing-pod.yaml
```

4. Monitor resource claims:

```
kubectl get resourceclaims -n timeslicing-gpu -w
```

The following is example output:

```
NAME                                    STATE                AGE
inference-pod-1-shared-gpu-claim-9p97x    allocated,reserved   21s
training-pod-2-shared-gpu-claim-2-qghnb   pending              21s
inference-pod-1-shared-gpu-claim-9p97x    pending              105s
training-pod-2-shared-gpu-claim-2-qghnb   pending              105s
```

```
inference-pod-1-shared-gpu-claim-9p97x    pending              105s
training-pod-2-shared-gpu-claim-2-qghnb   allocated,reserved   105s
inference-pod-1-shared-gpu-claim-9p97x    pending              105s
```

First Pod (`inference-pod-1`)

- **State**: `allocated,reserved`
- **Meaning**: DRA found an available GPU and reserved it for this Pod
- **Pod status**: Starts running immediately

Second Pod (`training-pod-2`)

- **State**: `pending`
- **Meaning**: Waiting for DRA to configure time-slicing on the same GPU
- **Pod status**: Waiting to be scheduled
- The state will go from `pending` to `allocated,reserved` to `running`

Optimize GPU workloads with MPS

Multi-Process Service (MPS) enables concurrent execution of multiple CUDA contexts on a single GPU with better isolation than time-slicing.

Do the following steps.

1. Define a `ResourceClaimTemplate` for MPS with a file named `mps-claim-template.yaml`:

```
---
apiVersion: v1
kind: Namespace
metadata:
  name: mps-gpu

---
apiVersion: resource.k8s.io/v1beta1
kind: ResourceClaimTemplate
metadata:
  name: mps-gpu-template
  namespace: mps-gpu
spec:
```

```
  spec:
    devices:
      requests:
      - name: shared-gpu
        deviceClassName: gpu.nvidia.com
      config:
      - requests: ["shared-gpu"]
        opaque:
          driver: gpu.nvidia.com
          parameters:
            apiVersion: resource.nvidia.com/v1beta1
            kind: GpuConfig
            sharing:
              strategy: MPS
```

2. Define a Pod using MPS with a file named `mps-pod.yaml`:

```
---
# Single Pod with Multiple Containers sharing GPU via MPS
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: mps-multi-container-pod
  namespace: mps-gpu
  labels:
    app: mps-demo
spec:
  restartPolicy: Never
  containers:
  # Container 1 - Inference workload
  - name: inference-container
    image: nvcr.io/nvidia/pytorch:25.04-py3
    command: ["python", "-c"]
    args:
    - |
      import torch
      import torch.nn as nn
      import time
      import os

      print(f"=== INFERENCE CONTAINER STARTING ===")
      print(f"Process ID: {os.getpid()}")
      print(f"GPU available: {torch.cuda.is_available()}")
      print(f"GPU count: {torch.cuda.device_count()}")
```

```
    if torch.cuda.is_available():
        device = torch.cuda.current_device()
        print(f"Current GPU: {torch.cuda.get_device_name(device)}")
        print(f"GPU Memory:
{torch.cuda.get_device_properties(device).total_memory / 1024**3:.1f} GB")

        # Create inference model
        model = nn.Sequential(
            nn.Linear(1000, 500),
            nn.ReLU(),
            nn.Linear(500, 100)
        ).cuda()

        # Run inference
        for i in range(1, 999999):
            with torch.no_grad():
                x = torch.randn(128, 1000).cuda()
                output = model(x)
                result = torch.sum(output)
                print(f"Inference Container PID {os.getpid()}: Batch {i}, Result:
{result.item():.2f} at {time.strftime('%H:%M:%S')}")
            time.sleep(2)
    else:
        print("No GPU available!")
        time.sleep(60)
  resources:
    claims:
    - name: shared-gpu-claim
      request: shared-gpu

# Container 2 - Training workload
- name: training-container
  image: nvcr.io/nvidia/pytorch:25.04-py3
  command: ["python", "-c"]
  args:
  - |
    import torch
    import torch.nn as nn
    import time
    import os

    print(f"=== TRAINING CONTAINER STARTING ===")
    print(f"Process ID: {os.getpid()}")
```

```
      print(f"GPU available: {torch.cuda.is_available()}")
      print(f"GPU count: {torch.cuda.device_count()}")

      if torch.cuda.is_available():
          device = torch.cuda.current_device()
          print(f"Current GPU: {torch.cuda.get_device_name(device)}")
          print(f"GPU Memory:
{torch.cuda.get_device_properties(device).total_memory / 1024**3:.1f} GB")

          # Create training model
          model = nn.Sequential(
              nn.Linear(2000, 1000),
              nn.ReLU(),
              nn.Linear(1000, 500),
              nn.ReLU(),
              nn.Linear(500, 10)
          ).cuda()

          criterion = nn.MSELoss()
          optimizer = torch.optim.Adam(model.parameters(), lr=0.001)

          # Run training
          for epoch in range(1, 999999):
              x = torch.randn(64, 2000).cuda()
              target = torch.randn(64, 10).cuda()

              optimizer.zero_grad()
              output = model(x)
              loss = criterion(output, target)
              loss.backward()
              optimizer.step()

              print(f"Training Container PID {os.getpid()}: Epoch {epoch}, Loss:
{loss.item():.4f} at {time.strftime('%H:%M:%S')}")
              time.sleep(3)
      else:
          print("No GPU available!")
          time.sleep(60)
    resources:
      claims:
      - name: shared-gpu-claim
        request: shared-gpu

  resourceClaims:
```

```
  - name: shared-gpu-claim
    resourceClaimTemplateName: mps-gpu-template

  nodeSelector:
    NodeGroupType: "gpu-dra"
    nvidia.com/gpu.present: "true"
  tolerations:
  - key: nvidia.com/gpu
    operator: Exists
    effect: NoSchedule
```

3. Apply the template and create multiple MPS Pods:

```
kubectl apply -f mps-claim-template.yaml
kubectl apply -f mps-pod.yaml
```

4. Monitor the resource claims:

```
kubectl get resourceclaims -n mps-gpu -w
```

   The following is example output:

```
NAME                                              STATE                AGE
mps-multi-container-pod-shared-gpu-claim-2p9kx   allocated,reserved   86s
```

This configuration demonstrates true GPU sharing using NVIDIA Multi-Process Service (MPS) through dynamic resource allocation (DRA). Unlike time-slicing where workloads take turns using the GPU sequentially, MPS enables both containers to run simultaneously on the same physical GPU. The key insight is that DRA MPS sharing requires multiple containers within a single Pod, not multiple separate Pods. When deployed, the DRA driver allocates one `ResourceClaim` to the Pod and automatically configures MPS to allow both the inference and training containers to execute concurrently.

Each container gets its own isolated GPU memory space and compute resources, with the MPS daemon coordinating access to the underlying hardware. You can verify this is working by doing the following:

- Checking `nvidia-smi`, which will show both containers as M+C (`MPS + Compute`) processes sharing the same GPU device.

- Monitoring the logs from both containers, which will display interleaved timestamps proving simultaneous execution.

This approach maximizes GPU utilization by allowing complementary workloads to share the expensive GPU hardware efficiently, rather than leaving it underutilized by a single process.

Container1: `inference-container`

```
root@mps-multi-container-pod:/workspace# nvidia-smi
Wed Jul 16 21:09:30 2025
+-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
+
| NVIDIA-SMI 570.158.01             Driver Version: 570.158.01     CUDA Version: 12.9
   |
|-----------------------------------------+------------------------
+----------------------+
| GPU  Name                 Persistence-M | Bus-Id          Disp.A | Volatile Uncorr.
 ECC |
| Fan  Temp   Perf          Pwr:Usage/Cap |           Memory-Usage | GPU-Util  Compute
 M. |
|                                         |                        |               MIG
 M. |
|=========================================+========================
+======================|
|   0  NVIDIA L4                      On  |   00000000:35:00.0 Off |
 0 |
| N/A   48C    P0             28W /   72W |     597MiB /  23034MiB |      0%   E.
 Process |
|                                         |                        |
 N/A |
+-----------------------------------------+------------------------
+----------------------+

+-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
+
| Processes:
   |
|  GPU   GI   CI              PID   Type   Process name                        GPU
 Memory |
|        ID   ID                                                               Usage
   |
|
=========================================================================================|
```

```
|    0   N/A  N/A               1    M+C   python
 246MiB |
+-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
+
```

Container2: `training-container`

```
root@mps-multi-container-pod:/workspace# nvidia-smi
Wed Jul 16 21:16:00 2025
+-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
+
| NVIDIA-SMI 570.158.01             Driver Version: 570.158.01     CUDA Version: 12.9
   |
|-----------------------------------------+------------------------
+----------------------+
| GPU  Name                 Persistence-M | Bus-Id          Disp.A | Volatile Uncorr.
 ECC |
| Fan  Temp   Perf          Pwr:Usage/Cap |           Memory-Usage | GPU-Util  Compute
 M. |
|                                         |                        |               MIG
 M. |
|=========================================+========================
+======================|
|   0  NVIDIA L4                      On  |   00000000:35:00.0 Off |
 0 |
| N/A   51C    P0             28W /   72W |     597MiB /  23034MiB |      0%   E.
 Process |
|                                         |                        |
 N/A |
+-----------------------------------------+------------------------
+----------------------+

+-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
+
| Processes:
   |
|  GPU   GI   CI              PID   Type   Process name                        GPU
 Memory |
|        ID   ID                                                               Usage
   |
|
=========================================================================================|
```

```
|    0   N/A  N/A               1    M+C   python
 314MiB |
+-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
+
```

Optimize GPU workloads with Multi-Instance GPU

Multi-instance GPU (MIG) provides hardware-level partitioning, creating isolated GPU instances with dedicated compute and memory resources.

Using dynamic MIG partitioning with various profiles requires the NVIDIA GPU Operator. The NVIDIA GPU Operator uses MIG Manager to create MIG profiles and reboots the GPU instances like P4D, P4De, P5, P6, and more to apply the configuration changes. The GPU Operator includes comprehensive MIG management capabilities through the MIG Manager component, which watches for node label changes and automatically applies the appropriate MIG configuration. When a MIG profile change is requested, the operator gracefully shuts down all GPU clients, applies the new partition geometry, and restarts the affected services. This process requires a node reboot for GPU instances to ensure clean GPU state transitions. This is why enabling `WITH0REBOOT=true` in the MIG Manager configuration is essential for successful MIG deployments.

You need both NVIDIA DRA Driver and NVIDIA GPU Operator to work with MIG in Amazon EKS. You don't need NVIDIA Device Plugin and DCGM Exporter in addition to this as these are part of the NVIDIA GPU Operator. Since the EKS NVIDIA AMIs come with the NVIDIA Drivers pre-installed, we disabled the deployment of drivers by the GPU Operator to avoid conflicts and leverage the optimized drivers already present on the instances. The NVIDIA DRA Driver handles dynamic resource allocation for MIG instances, while the GPU Operator manages the entire GPU lifecycle. This includes MIG configuration, device plugin functionality, monitoring through DCGM, and node feature discovery. This integrated approach provides a complete solution for enterprise GPU management, with hardware-level isolation and dynamic resource allocation capabilities.

Step 1: Deploy NVIDIA GPU Operator

1. Add the NVIDIA GPU Operator repository:

```
helm repo add nvidia https://nvidia.github.io/gpu-operator
helm repo update
```

2. Create a `gpu-operator-values.yaml` file:

```
driver:
```

```
  enabled: false

mig:
  strategy: mixed

migManager:
  enabled: true
  env:
    - name: WITH_REBOOT
      value: "true"
  config:
    create: true
    name: custom-mig-parted-configs
    default: "all-disabled"
    data:
      config.yaml: |-
        version: v1
        mig-configs:
          all-disabled:
            - devices: all
              mig-enabled: false

          # P4D profiles (A100 40GB)
          p4d-half-balanced:
            - devices: [0, 1, 2, 3]
              mig-enabled: true
              mig-devices:
                "1g.5gb": 2
                "2g.10gb": 1
                "3g.20gb": 1
            - devices: [4, 5, 6, 7]
              mig-enabled: false

          # P4DE profiles (A100 80GB)
          p4de-half-balanced:
            - devices: [0, 1, 2, 3]
              mig-enabled: true
              mig-devices:
                "1g.10gb": 2
                "2g.20gb": 1
                "3g.40gb": 1
            - devices: [4, 5, 6, 7]
              mig-enabled: false
```

```
devicePlugin:
  enabled: true
  config:
    name: ""
    create: false
    default: ""

toolkit:
  enabled: true

nfd:
  enabled: true

gfd:
  enabled: true

dcgmExporter:
  enabled: true
  serviceMonitor:
    enabled: true
    interval: 15s
    honorLabels: false
    additionalLabels:
      release: kube-prometheus-stack

nodeStatusExporter:
  enabled: false

operator:
  defaultRuntime: containerd
  runtimeClass: nvidia
  resources:
    limits:
      cpu: 500m
      memory: 350Mi
    requests:
      cpu: 200m
      memory: 100Mi

daemonsets:
  tolerations:
    - key: "nvidia.com/gpu"
      operator: "Exists"
      effect: "NoSchedule"
```

```
  nodeSelector:
    accelerator: nvidia
  priorityClassName: system-node-critical
```

3. Install GPU Operator using the `gpu-operator-values.yaml` file:

```
helm install gpu-operator nvidia/gpu-operator \
  --namespace gpu-operator \
  --create-namespace \
  --version v25.3.1 \
  --values gpu-operator-values.yaml
```

   This Helm chart deploys the following components and multiple MIG profiles:

   - Device Plugin (GPU resource scheduling)
   - DCGM Exporter (GPU metrics and monitoring)
   - Node Feature Discovery (NFD - hardware labeling)
   - GPU Feature Discovery (GFD - GPU-specific labeling)
   - MIG Manager (Multi-instance GPU partitioning)
   - Container Toolkit (GPU container runtime)
   - Operator Controller (lifecycle management)

4. Verify the deployment Pods:

```
kubectl get pods -n gpu-operator
```

   The following is example output:

```
NAME                                                          READY   STATUS
 RESTARTS        AGE
gpu-feature-discovery-27rdq                                   1/1     Running
 0               3h31m
gpu-operator-555774698d-48brn                                 1/1     Running
 0               4h8m
nvidia-container-toolkit-daemonset-sxmh9                      1/1     Running
 1 (3h32m ago)   4h1m
nvidia-cuda-validator-qb77g                                   0/1     Completed
 0               3h31m
nvidia-dcgm-exporter-cvzd7                                    1/1     Running
 0               3h31m
```

```
nvidia-device-plugin-daemonset-5ljm5                              1/1     Running
 0               3h31m
nvidia-gpu-operator-node-feature-discovery-gc-67f66fc557-q5wkt    1/1     Running
 0               4h8m
nvidia-gpu-operator-node-feature-discovery-master-5d8ffddcsl6s6   1/1     Running
 0               4h8m
nvidia-gpu-operator-node-feature-discovery-worker-6t4w7           1/1     Running
 1 (3h32m ago)   4h1m
nvidia-gpu-operator-node-feature-discovery-worker-9w7g8           1/1     Running
 0               4h8m
nvidia-gpu-operator-node-feature-discovery-worker-k5fgs           1/1     Running
 0               4h8m
nvidia-mig-manager-zvf54                                          1/1     Running
 1 (3h32m ago)   3h35m
```

5. Create an Amazon EKS cluster with a p4De managed node group for testing the MIG examples:

```
apiVersion: eksctl.io/v1alpha5
kind: ClusterConfig

metadata:
  name: dra-eks-cluster
  region: us-east-1
  version: '1.33'

managedNodeGroups:
# P4DE MIG Node Group with Capacity Block Reservation
- name: p4de-mig-nodes
  amiFamily: AmazonLinux2023
  instanceType: p4de.24xlarge

  # Capacity settings
  desiredCapacity: 0
  minSize: 0
  maxSize: 1

  # Use specific subnet in us-east-1b for capacity reservation
  subnets:
    - us-east-1b

  # AL2023 NodeConfig for RAID0 local storage only
  nodeadmConfig:
    apiVersion: node.eks.aws/v1alpha1
    kind: NodeConfig
```

```
    spec:
      instance:
        localStorage:
          strategy: RAID0

  # Node labels for MIG configuration
  labels:
    nvidia.com/gpu.present: "true"
    nvidia.com/gpu.product: "A100-SXM4-80GB"
    nvidia.com/mig.config: "p4de-half-balanced"
    node-type: "p4de"
    vpc.amazonaws.com/efa.present: "true"
    accelerator: "nvidia"

  # Node taints
  taints:
    - key: nvidia.com/gpu
      value: "true"
      effect: NoSchedule

  # EFA support
  efaEnabled: true

  # Placement group for high-performance networking
  placementGroup:
    groupName: p4de-placement-group
    strategy: cluster

  # Capacity Block Reservation (CBR)
  # Ensure CBR ID matches the subnet AZ with the Nodegroup subnet
  spot: false
  capacityReservation:
    capacityReservationTarget:
      capacityReservationId: "cr-abcdefghij"  # Replace with your capacity
reservation ID
```

NVIDIA GPU Operator uses the label added to nodes `nvidia.com/mig.config: "p4de-half-balanced"` and partitions the GPU with the given profile.

6. Login to the p4de instance.
7. Run the following command:

```
nvidia-smi -L
```

You should see the following example output:

```
[root@ip-100-64-173-145 bin]# nvidia-smi -L
GPU 0: NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB (UUID: GPU-ab52e33c-be48-38f2-119e-b62b9935925a)
  MIG 3g.40gb     Device  0: (UUID: MIG-da972af8-a20a-5f51-849f-bc0439f7970e)
  MIG 2g.20gb     Device  1: (UUID: MIG-7f9768b7-11a6-5de9-a8aa-e9c424400da4)
  MIG 1g.10gb     Device  2: (UUID: MIG-498adad6-6cf7-53af-9d1a-10cfd1fa53b2)
  MIG 1g.10gb     Device  3: (UUID: MIG-3f55ef65-1991-571a-ac50-0dbf50d80c5a)
GPU 1: NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB (UUID: GPU-0eabeccc-7498-c282-0ac7-d3c09f6af0c8)
  MIG 3g.40gb     Device  0: (UUID: MIG-80543849-ea3b-595b-b162-847568fe6e0e)
  MIG 2g.20gb     Device  1: (UUID: MIG-3af1958f-fac4-59f1-8477-9f8d08c55029)
  MIG 1g.10gb     Device  2: (UUID: MIG-401088d2-716f-527b-a970-b1fc7a4ac6b2)
  MIG 1g.10gb     Device  3: (UUID: MIG-8c56c75e-5141-501c-8f43-8cf22f422569)
GPU 2: NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB (UUID: GPU-1c7a1289-243f-7872-a35c-1d2d8af22dd0)
  MIG 3g.40gb     Device  0: (UUID: MIG-e9b44486-09fc-591a-b904-0d378caf2276)
  MIG 2g.20gb     Device  1: (UUID: MIG-ded93941-9f64-56a3-a9b1-a129c6edf6e4)
  MIG 1g.10gb     Device  2: (UUID: MIG-6c317d83-a078-5c25-9fa3-c8308b379aa1)
  MIG 1g.10gb     Device  3: (UUID: MIG-2b070d39-d4e9-5b11-bda6-e903372e3d08)
GPU 3: NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB (UUID: GPU-9a6250e2-5c59-10b7-2da8-b61d8a937233)
  MIG 3g.40gb     Device  0: (UUID: MIG-20e3cd87-7a57-5f1b-82e7-97b14ab1a5aa)
  MIG 2g.20gb     Device  1: (UUID: MIG-04430354-1575-5b42-95f4-bda6901f1ace)
  MIG 1g.10gb     Device  2: (UUID: MIG-d62ec8b6-e097-5e99-a60c-abf8eb906f91)
  MIG 1g.10gb     Device  3: (UUID: MIG-fce20069-2baa-5dd4-988a-cead08348ada)
GPU 4: NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB (UUID: GPU-5d09daf0-c2eb-75fd-3919-7ad8fafa5f86)
GPU 5: NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB (UUID: GPU-99194e04-ab2a-b519-4793-81cb2e8e9179)
GPU 6: NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB (UUID: GPU-c1a1910f-465a-e16f-5af1-c6aafe499cd6)
GPU 7: NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB (UUID: GPU-c2cfafbc-fd6e-2679-e955-2a9e09377f78)
```

NVIDIA GPU Operator has successfully applied the `p4de-half-balanced` MIG profile to your P4DE instance, creating hardware-level GPU partitions as configured. Here's how the partitioning works:

The GPU Operator applied this configuration from your embedded MIG profile:

```
p4de-half-balanced:
  - devices: [0, 1, 2, 3]        # First 4 GPUs: MIG enabled
    mig-enabled: true
    mig-devices:
```

```
      "1g.10gb": 2              # 2x small instances (10GB each)
      "2g.20gb": 1              # 1x medium instance (20GB)
      "3g.40gb": 1              # 1x large instance (40GB)
  - devices: [4, 5, 6, 7]       # Last 4 GPUs: Full GPUs
    mig-enabled: false
```

From your `nvidia-smi -L` output, here's what the GPU Operator created:

- MIG-enabled GPUs (0-3): hardware partitioned
  - GPU 0: NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB
    - MIG 3g.40gb Device 0 – Large workloads (40GB memory, 42 SMs)
    - MIG 2g.20gb Device 1 – Medium workloads (20GB memory, 28 SMs)
    - MIG 1g.10gb Device 2 – Small workloads (10GB memory, 14 SMs)
    - MIG 1g.10gb Device 3 – Small workloads (10GB memory, 14 SMs)
  - GPU 1: NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB
    - MIG 3g.40gb Device 0 – Identical partition layout
    - MIG 2g.20gb Device 1
    - MIG 1g.10gb Device 2
    - MIG 1g.10gb Device 3
  - GPU 2 and GPU 3 – Same pattern as GPU 0 and GPU 1
- Full GPUs (4-7): No MIG partitioning
  - GPU 4: NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB – Full 80GB GPU
  - GPU 5: NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB – Full 80GB GPU
  - GPU 6: NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB – Full 80GB GPU
  - GPU 7: NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB – Full 80GB GPU

Once the NVIDIA GPU Operator creates the MIG partitions, the NVIDIA DRA Driver automatically detects these hardware-isolated instances and makes them available for dynamic resource allocation in Kubernetes. The DRA driver discovers each MIG instance with its specific profile (1g.10gb, 2g.20gb, 3g.40gb) and exposes them as schedulable resources through the `mig.nvidia.com` device class.

The DRA driver continuously monitors the MIG topology and maintains an inventory of available instances across all GPUs. When a Pod requests a specific MIG profile through a `ResourceClaimTemplate`, the DRA driver intelligently selects an appropriate MIG instance from

any available GPU, enabling true hardware-level multi-tenancy. This dynamic allocation allows multiple isolated workloads to run simultaneously on the same physical GPU while maintaining strict resource boundaries and performance guarantees.

Step 2: Test MIG resource allocation

Now let's run some examples to demonstrate how DRA dynamically allocates MIG instances to different workloads. Deploy the `resourceclaimtemplates` and test pods to see how the DRA driver places workloads across the available MIG partitions, allowing multiple containers to share GPU resources with hardware-level isolation.

1. Create `mig-claim-template.yaml` to contain the MIG `resourceclaimtemplates`:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Namespace
metadata:
  name: mig-gpu

---
# Template for 3g.40gb MIG instance (Large training)
apiVersion: resource.k8s.io/v1beta1
kind: ResourceClaimTemplate
metadata:
  name: mig-large-template
  namespace: mig-gpu
spec:
  spec:
    devices:
      requests:
      - name: mig-large
        deviceClassName: mig.nvidia.com
        selectors:
        - cel:
            expression: |
              device.attributes['gpu.nvidia.com'].profile == '3g.40gb'

---
# Template for 2g.20gb MIG instance (Medium training)
apiVersion: resource.k8s.io/v1beta1
kind: ResourceClaimTemplate
metadata:
  name: mig-medium-template
  namespace: mig-gpu
```

```
spec:
  spec:
    devices:
      requests:
      - name: mig-medium
        deviceClassName: mig.nvidia.com
        selectors:
        - cel:
            expression: |
              device.attributes['gpu.nvidia.com'].profile == '2g.20gb'

---
# Template for 1g.10gb MIG instance (Small inference)
apiVersion: resource.k8s.io/v1beta1
kind: ResourceClaimTemplate
metadata:
  name: mig-small-template
  namespace: mig-gpu
spec:
  spec:
    devices:
      requests:
      - name: mig-small
        deviceClassName: mig.nvidia.com
        selectors:
        - cel:
            expression: |
              device.attributes['gpu.nvidia.com'].profile == '1g.10gb'
```

2. Apply the three templates:

```
kubectl apply -f mig-claim-template.yaml
```

3. Run the following command:

```
kubectl get resourceclaimtemplates -n mig-gpu
```

The following is example output:

```
NAME                 AGE
mig-large-template   71m
mig-medium-template  71m
```

```
mig-small-template    71m
```

4. Create `mig-pod.yaml` to schedule multiple jobs to leverage this `resourceclaimtemplates`:

```
---
# ConfigMap containing Python scripts for MIG pods
apiVersion: v1
kind: ConfigMap
metadata:
  name: mig-scripts-configmap
  namespace: mig-gpu
data:
  large-training-script.py: |
    import torch
    import torch.nn as nn
    import torch.optim as optim
    import time
    import os

    print(f"=== LARGE TRAINING POD (3g.40gb) ===")
    print(f"Process ID: {os.getpid()}")
    print(f"GPU available: {torch.cuda.is_available()}")
    print(f"GPU count: {torch.cuda.device_count()}")

    if torch.cuda.is_available():
        device = torch.cuda.current_device()
        print(f"Using GPU: {torch.cuda.get_device_name(device)}")
        print(f"GPU Memory: {torch.cuda.get_device_properties(device).total_memory /
 1e9:.1f} GB")

        # Large model for 3g.40gb instance
        model = nn.Sequential(
            nn.Linear(2048, 1024),
            nn.ReLU(),
            nn.Linear(1024, 512),
            nn.ReLU(),
            nn.Linear(512, 256),
            nn.ReLU(),
            nn.Linear(256, 10)
        ).cuda()

        optimizer = optim.Adam(model.parameters())
        criterion = nn.CrossEntropyLoss()
```

```
        print(f"Model parameters: {sum(p.numel() for p in model.parameters())}")

        # Training loop
        for epoch in range(100):
            # Large batch for 3g.40gb
            x = torch.randn(256, 2048).cuda()
            y = torch.randint(0, 10, (256,)).cuda()

            optimizer.zero_grad()
            output = model(x)
            loss = criterion(output, y)
            loss.backward()
            optimizer.step()

            if epoch % 10 == 0:
                print(f"Large Training - Epoch {epoch}, Loss: {loss.item():.4f}, GPU
Memory: {torch.cuda.memory_allocated()/1e9:.2f}GB")
            time.sleep(3)

        print("Large training completed on 3g.40gb MIG instance")

 medium-training-script.py: |
   import torch
   import torch.nn as nn
   import torch.optim as optim
   import time
   import os

   print(f"=== MEDIUM TRAINING POD (2g.20gb) ===")
   print(f"Process ID: {os.getpid()}")
   print(f"GPU available: {torch.cuda.is_available()}")
   print(f"GPU count: {torch.cuda.device_count()}")

   if torch.cuda.is_available():
       device = torch.cuda.current_device()
       print(f"Using GPU: {torch.cuda.get_device_name(device)}")
       print(f"GPU Memory: {torch.cuda.get_device_properties(device).total_memory /
1e9:.1f} GB")

       # Medium model for 2g.20gb instance
       model = nn.Sequential(
           nn.Linear(1024, 512),
           nn.ReLU(),
           nn.Linear(512, 256),
```

```
            nn.ReLU(),
            nn.Linear(256, 10)
        ).cuda()

        optimizer = optim.Adam(model.parameters())
        criterion = nn.CrossEntropyLoss()

        print(f"Model parameters: {sum(p.numel() for p in model.parameters())}")

        # Training loop
        for epoch in range(100):
            # Medium batch for 2g.20gb
            x = torch.randn(128, 1024).cuda()
            y = torch.randint(0, 10, (128,)).cuda()

            optimizer.zero_grad()
            output = model(x)
            loss = criterion(output, y)
            loss.backward()
            optimizer.step()

            if epoch % 10 == 0:
                print(f"Medium Training - Epoch {epoch}, Loss: {loss.item():.4f}, GPU
Memory: {torch.cuda.memory_allocated()/1e9:.2f}GB")
            time.sleep(4)

        print("Medium training completed on 2g.20gb MIG instance")

 small-inference-script.py: |
   import torch
   import torch.nn as nn
   import time
   import os

   print(f"=== SMALL INFERENCE POD (1g.10gb) ===")
   print(f"Process ID: {os.getpid()}")
   print(f"GPU available: {torch.cuda.is_available()}")
   print(f"GPU count: {torch.cuda.device_count()}")

   if torch.cuda.is_available():
       device = torch.cuda.current_device()
       print(f"Using GPU: {torch.cuda.get_device_name(device)}")
       print(f"GPU Memory: {torch.cuda.get_device_properties(device).total_memory /
1e9:.1f} GB")
```

```
        # Small model for 1g.10gb instance
        model = nn.Sequential(
            nn.Linear(512, 256),
            nn.ReLU(),
            nn.Linear(256, 10)
        ).cuda()

        print(f"Model parameters: {sum(p.numel() for p in model.parameters())}")

        # Inference loop
        for i in range(200):
            with torch.no_grad():
                # Small batch for 1g.10gb
                x = torch.randn(32, 512).cuda()
                output = model(x)
                prediction = torch.argmax(output, dim=1)

                if i % 20 == 0:
                    print(f"Small Inference - Batch {i}, Predictions:
 {prediction[:5].tolist()}, GPU Memory: {torch.cuda.memory_allocated()/1e9:.2f}GB")
            time.sleep(2)

        print("Small inference completed on 1g.10gb MIG instance")

---
# Pod 1: Large training workload (3g.40gb)
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: mig-large-training-pod
  namespace: mig-gpu
  labels:
    app: mig-large-training
    workload-type: training
spec:
  restartPolicy: Never
  containers:
  - name: large-training-container
    image: nvcr.io/nvidia/pytorch:25.04-py3
    command: ["python", "/scripts/large-training-script.py"]
    volumeMounts:
    - name: script-volume
      mountPath: /scripts
```

```
      readOnly: true
    resources:
      claims:
      - name: mig-large-claim
  resourceClaims:
  - name: mig-large-claim
    resourceClaimTemplateName: mig-large-template
  nodeSelector:
    node.kubernetes.io/instance-type: p4de.24xlarge
    nvidia.com/gpu.present: "true"
  tolerations:
  - key: nvidia.com/gpu
    operator: Exists
    effect: NoSchedule
  volumes:
  - name: script-volume
    configMap:
      name: mig-scripts-configmap
      defaultMode: 0755

---
# Pod 2: Medium training workload (2g.20gb) - can run on SAME GPU as Pod 1
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: mig-medium-training-pod
  namespace: mig-gpu
  labels:
    app: mig-medium-training
    workload-type: training
spec:
  restartPolicy: Never
  containers:
  - name: medium-training-container
    image: nvcr.io/nvidia/pytorch:25.04-py3
    command: ["python", "/scripts/medium-training-script.py"]
    volumeMounts:
    - name: script-volume
      mountPath: /scripts
      readOnly: true
    resources:
      claims:
      - name: mig-medium-claim
  resourceClaims:
```

```
  - name: mig-medium-claim
    resourceClaimTemplateName: mig-medium-template
  nodeSelector:
    node.kubernetes.io/instance-type: p4de.24xlarge
    nvidia.com/gpu.present: "true"
  tolerations:
  - key: nvidia.com/gpu
    operator: Exists
    effect: NoSchedule
  volumes:
  - name: script-volume
    configMap:
      name: mig-scripts-configmap
      defaultMode: 0755

---
# Pod 3: Small inference workload (1g.10gb) - can run on SAME GPU as Pod 1 & 2
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: mig-small-inference-pod
  namespace: mig-gpu
  labels:
    app: mig-small-inference
    workload-type: inference
spec:
  restartPolicy: Never
  containers:
  - name: small-inference-container
    image: nvcr.io/nvidia/pytorch:25.04-py3
    command: ["python", "/scripts/small-inference-script.py"]
    volumeMounts:
    - name: script-volume
      mountPath: /scripts
      readOnly: true
    resources:
      claims:
      - name: mig-small-claim
  resourceClaims:
  - name: mig-small-claim
    resourceClaimTemplateName: mig-small-template
  nodeSelector:
    node.kubernetes.io/instance-type: p4de.24xlarge
    nvidia.com/gpu.present: "true"
```

```
  tolerations:
  - key: nvidia.com/gpu
    operator: Exists
    effect: NoSchedule
  volumes:
  - name: script-volume
    configMap:
      name: mig-scripts-configmap
      defaultMode: 0755
```

5. Apply this spec, which should deploy three Pods:

```
kubctl apply -f mig-pod.yaml
```

   These Pods should be scheduled by the DRA driver.

6. Check DRA driver Pod logs and you will see output similar to this:

```
I0717 21:50:22.925811 1 driver.go:87] NodePrepareResource is called: number of
 claims: 1
I0717 21:50:22.932499 1 driver.go:129] Returning newly prepared devices
 for claim '933e9c72-6fd6-49c5-933c-a896407dc6d1': [&Device{RequestNames:
[mig-large],PoolName:ip-100-64-173-145.ec2.internal,DeviceName:gpu-0-
mig-9-4-4,CDIDeviceIDs:[k8s.gpu.nvidia.com/device=**gpu-0-mig-9-4-4**],}]
I0717 21:50:23.186472 1 driver.go:87] NodePrepareResource is called: number of
 claims: 1
I0717 21:50:23.191226 1 driver.go:129] Returning newly prepared devices
 for claim '61e5ddd2-8c2e-4c19-93ae-d317fecb44a4': [&Device{RequestNames:
[mig-medium],PoolName:ip-100-64-173-145.ec2.internal,DeviceName:gpu-2-
mig-14-0-2,CDIDeviceIDs:[k8s.gpu.nvidia.com/device=**gpu-2-mig-14-0-2**],}]
I0717 21:50:23.450024 1 driver.go:87] NodePrepareResource is called: number of
 claims: 1
I0717 21:50:23.455991 1 driver.go:129] Returning newly prepared devices
 for claim '1eda9b2c-2ea6-401e-96d0-90e9b3c111b5': [&Device{RequestNames:
[mig-small],PoolName:ip-100-64-173-145.ec2.internal,DeviceName:gpu-1-
mig-19-2-1,CDIDeviceIDs:[k8s.gpu.nvidia.com/device=**gpu-1-mig-19-2-1**],}]
```

7. Verify the `resourceclaims` to see the Pod status:

```
kubectl get resourceclaims -n mig-gpu -w
```

   The following is example output:

```
NAME                                                    STATE                AGE
mig-large-training-pod-mig-large-claim-6dpn8     pending              0s
mig-large-training-pod-mig-large-claim-6dpn8     pending              0s
mig-large-training-pod-mig-large-claim-6dpn8     allocated,reserved   0s
mig-medium-training-pod-mig-medium-claim-bk596   pending              0s
mig-medium-training-pod-mig-medium-claim-bk596   pending              0s
mig-medium-training-pod-mig-medium-claim-bk596   allocated,reserved   0s
mig-small-inference-pod-mig-small-claim-d2t58    pending              0s
mig-small-inference-pod-mig-small-claim-d2t58    pending              0s
mig-small-inference-pod-mig-small-claim-d2t58    allocated,reserved   0s
```

As you can see, all the Pods moved from pending to `allocated,reserved` by the DRA driver.

8. Run `nvidia-smi` from the node. You will notice three Python processors are running:

```
root@ip-100-64-173-145 bin]# nvidia-smi
+-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
+
| NVIDIA-SMI 570.158.01 Driver Version: 570.158.01 CUDA Version: 12.8 |
|-----------------------------------------+------------------------
+----------------------+
| GPU Name Persistence-M | Bus-Id Disp.A | Volatile Uncorr. ECC |
| Fan Temp Perf Pwr:Usage/Cap | Memory-Usage | GPU-Util Compute M. |
| | | MIG M. |
|=========================================+========================
+======================|
| 0 NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB On | 00000000:10:1C.0 Off | On |
| N/A 63C P0 127W / 400W | 569MiB / 81920MiB | N/A Default |
| | | Enabled |
+-----------------------------------------+------------------------
+----------------------+
| 1 NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB On | 00000000:10:1D.0 Off | On |
| N/A 56C P0 121W / 400W | 374MiB / 81920MiB | N/A Default |
| | | Enabled |
+-----------------------------------------+------------------------
+----------------------+
| 2 NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB On | 00000000:20:1C.0 Off | On |
| N/A 63C P0 128W / 400W | 467MiB / 81920MiB | N/A Default |
| | | Enabled |
+-----------------------------------------+------------------------
+----------------------+
| 3 NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB On | 00000000:20:1D.0 Off | On |
```

```
| N/A 57C P0 118W / 400W | 249MiB / 81920MiB | N/A Default |
| | | Enabled |
+-----------------------------------------+-----------------------
+----------------------+
| 4 NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB On | 00000000:90:1C.0 Off | 0 |
| N/A 51C P0 77W / 400W | 0MiB / 81920MiB | 0% Default |
| | | Disabled |
+-----------------------------------------+-----------------------
+----------------------+
| 5 NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB On | 00000000:90:1D.0 Off | 0 |
| N/A 46C P0 69W / 400W | 0MiB / 81920MiB | 0% Default |
| | | Disabled |
+-----------------------------------------+-----------------------
+----------------------+
| 6 NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB On | 00000000:A0:1C.0 Off | 0 |
| N/A 52C P0 74W / 400W | 0MiB / 81920MiB | 0% Default |
| | | Disabled |
+-----------------------------------------+-----------------------
+----------------------+
| 7 NVIDIA A100-SXM4-80GB On | 00000000:A0:1D.0 Off | 0 |
| N/A 47C P0 72W / 400W | 0MiB / 81920MiB | 0% Default |
| | | Disabled |
+-----------------------------------------+-----------------------
+----------------------+



+-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
+
| MIG devices: |
+------------------+----------------------------------+-----------
+-----------------------+
| GPU GI CI MIG | Memory-Usage | Vol| Shared |
| ID ID Dev | BAR1-Usage | SM Unc| CE ENC DEC OFA JPG |
| | | ECC| |
|==================+==================================+===========
+=======================|
| 0 2 0 0 | 428MiB / 40192MiB | 42 0 | 3 0 2 0 0 |
| | 2MiB / 32767MiB | | |
+------------------+----------------------------------+-----------
+-----------------------+
| 0 3 0 1 | 71MiB / 19968MiB | 28 0 | 2 0 1 0 0 |
| | 0MiB / 16383MiB | | |
+------------------+----------------------------------+-----------
+-----------------------+
```

```
| 0 9 0 2 | 36MiB / 9728MiB | 14 0 | 1 0 0 0 0 |
| | 0MiB / 8191MiB | | |
+-----------------+----------------------------------+-----------
+----------------------+
| 0 10 0 3 | 36MiB / 9728MiB | 14 0 | 1 0 0 0 0 |
| | 0MiB / 8191MiB | | |
+-----------------+----------------------------------+-----------
+----------------------+
| 1 1 0 0 | 107MiB / 40192MiB | 42 0 | 3 0 2 0 0 |
| | 0MiB / 32767MiB | | |
+-----------------+----------------------------------+-----------
+----------------------+
| 1 5 0 1 | 71MiB / 19968MiB | 28 0 | 2 0 1 0 0 |
| | 0MiB / 16383MiB | | |
+-----------------+----------------------------------+-----------
+----------------------+
| 1 13 0 2 | 161MiB / 9728MiB | 14 0 | 1 0 0 0 0 |
| | 2MiB / 8191MiB | | |
+-----------------+----------------------------------+-----------
+----------------------+
| 1 14 0 3 | 36MiB / 9728MiB | 14 0 | 1 0 0 0 0 |
| | 0MiB / 8191MiB | | |
+-----------------+----------------------------------+-----------
+----------------------+
| 2 1 0 0 | 107MiB / 40192MiB | 42 0 | 3 0 2 0 0 |
| | 0MiB / 32767MiB | | |
+-----------------+----------------------------------+-----------
+----------------------+
| 2 5 0 1 | 289MiB / 19968MiB | 28 0 | 2 0 1 0 0 |
| | 2MiB / 16383MiB | | |
+-----------------+----------------------------------+-----------
+----------------------+
| 2 13 0 2 | 36MiB / 9728MiB | 14 0 | 1 0 0 0 0 |
| | 0MiB / 8191MiB | | |
+-----------------+----------------------------------+-----------
+----------------------+
| 2 14 0 3 | 36MiB / 9728MiB | 14 0 | 1 0 0 0 0 |
| | 0MiB / 8191MiB | | |
+-----------------+----------------------------------+-----------
+----------------------+
| 3 1 0 0 | 107MiB / 40192MiB | 42 0 | 3 0 2 0 0 |
| | 0MiB / 32767MiB | | |
+-----------------+----------------------------------+-----------
+----------------------+
```

```
| 3 5 0 1 | 71MiB / 19968MiB | 28 0 | 2 0 1 0 0 |
| | 0MiB / 16383MiB | | |
+-----------------+----------------------------------+-----------
+----------------------+
| 3 13 0 2 | 36MiB / 9728MiB | 14 0 | 1 0 0 0 0 |
| | 0MiB / 8191MiB | | |
+-----------------+----------------------------------+-----------
+----------------------+
| 3 14 0 3 | 36MiB / 9728MiB | 14 0 | 1 0 0 0 0 |
| | 0MiB / 8191MiB | | |
+-----------------+----------------------------------+-----------
+----------------------+



+-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
+
| Processes: |
| GPU GI CI PID Type Process name GPU Memory |
| ID ID Usage |
|
=========================================================================================|
**| 0 2 0 64080 C python 312MiB |
| 1 13 0 64085 C python 118MiB |
| 2 5 0 64073 C python 210MiB |**
+-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
+
```

Optimize GPU workloads with IMEX using GB200 P6e instances

IMEX (Internode Memory Exchange) enables memory-coherent communication across nodes for distributed training on NVIDIA GB200 UltraServers.

Do the following steps.

1. Define a `ComputeDomain` for multi-node training with a file named `imex-compute-domain.yaml`:

```
apiVersion: resource.nvidia.com/v1beta1
kind: ComputeDomain
metadata:
  name: distributed-training-domain
  namespace: default
```

```
spec:
  numNodes: 2
  channel:
    resourceClaimTemplate:
      name: imex-channel-template
```

2. Define a Pod using IMEX channels with a file named `imex-pod.yaml`:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: imex-distributed-training
  namespace: default
  labels:
    app: imex-training
spec:
  affinity:
    nodeAffinity:
      requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
        nodeSelectorTerms:
        - matchExpressions:
          - key: nvidia.com/gpu.clique
            operator: Exists
  containers:
  - name: distributed-training
    image: nvcr.io/nvidia/pytorch:25.04-py3
    command: ["bash", "-c"]
    args:
    - |
      echo "=== IMEX Channel Verification ==="
      ls -la /dev/nvidia-caps-imex-channels/
      echo ""

      echo "=== GPU Information ==="
      nvidia-smi
      echo ""

      echo "=== NCCL Test (if available) ==="
      python -c "
      import torch
      import torch.distributed as dist
      import os

      print(f'CUDA available: {torch.cuda.is_available()}')
```

```
      print(f'CUDA device count: {torch.cuda.device_count()}')

      if torch.cuda.is_available():
          for i in range(torch.cuda.device_count()):
              print(f'GPU {i}: {torch.cuda.get_device_name(i)}')

      # Check for IMEX environment variables
      imex_vars = [k for k in os.environ.keys() if 'IMEX' in k or 'NVLINK' in k]
      if imex_vars:
          print('IMEX Environment Variables:')
          for var in imex_vars:
              print(f'  {var}={os.environ[var]}')

      print('IMEX channel verification completed')
      "

      # Keep container running for inspection
      sleep 3600
    resources:
      claims:
      - name: imex-channel-0
      - name: imex-channel-1
  resourceClaims:
  - name: imex-channel-0
    resourceClaimTemplateName: imex-channel-template
  - name: imex-channel-1
    resourceClaimTemplateName: imex-channel-template
  tolerations:
  - key: nvidia.com/gpu
    operator: Exists
    effect: NoSchedule
```

Note

This requires P6e GB200 instances.

3. Deploy IMEX by applying the `ComputeDomain` and templates:

```
kubectl apply -f imex-claim-template.yaml
kubectl apply -f imex-compute-domain.yaml
kubectl apply -f imex-pod.yaml
```

4. Check the `ComputeDomain` status.

```
kubectl get computedomain distributed-training-domain
```

5. Monitor the IMEX daemon deployment.

```
kubectl get pods -n nvidia-dra-driver -l resource.nvidia.com/computeDomain
```

6. Check the IMEX channels in the Pod:

```
kubectl exec imex-distributed-training -- ls -la /dev/nvidia-caps-imex-channels/
```

7. View the Pod logs:

```
kubectl logs imex-distributed-training
```

   The following is an example of expected output:

```
=== IMEX Channel Verification ===
total 0
drwxr-xr-x. 2 root root 80 Jul 8 10:45 .
drwxr-xr-x. 6 root root 380 Jul 8 10:45 ..
crw-rw-rw-. 1 root root 241, 0 Jul 8 10:45 channel0
crw-rw-rw-. 1 root root 241, 1 Jul 8 10:45 channel1
```

For more information, see the NVIDIA example on GitHub.

Networking

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Consider Higher Network Bandwidth or Elastic Fabric Adapter For Applications with High Inter-Node Communication

For distributed training workloads on Amazon EKS with high inter-node communication demands, consider selecting instances with higher network bandwidth or Elastic Fabric Adapter (EFA). Insufficient network performance can bottleneck data transfer, slowing down machine learning tasks like distributed multi-GPU training. Note that inference workloads don't typically have high inter-node communication.

Example

For example, using Karpenter:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: ml-workload
spec:
  nodeSelector:
    karpenter.k8s.aws/instance-network-bandwidth: "100000"  # 100 Gbps in Mbps
    node.kubernetes.io/instance-type: p5.48xlarge  # EFA-enabled instance
  containers:
  - name: training-job
    image: `763104351884.dkr.ecr.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/pytorch-inference:2.6.0-gpu-
py312-cu124-ubuntu22.04-ec2-v1.6`
    resources:
      limits:
        vpc.amazonaws.com/efa: 1  # Requires EFA device plugin
```

Ensure tools like MPI and NCCL are installed in your container image to leverage EFA for training jobs.

Increase the number of IP addresses available to enable faster pod launch times

In EKS, each pod needs an IP address from the VPC CIDR block. As your cluster scales with more nodes and pods, you risk IP address exhaustion or slower performance, but enabling prefix delegation can mitigate these issues by pre-allocating IP ranges and reducing EC2 API calls, resulting in faster pod launch times and improved scalability.

Enabling prefix delegation after creating your cluster allows the VPC Container Network Interface (CNI) to assign IP prefixes (/28, each giving 16 IP addresses) to network interfaces on EC2 instances. This means each node can support more pods, reducing the risk of IP shortages. For example, on a `c5.4xlarge` instance, you can support up to 110 pods with prefix delegation.

While prefix delegation is crucial for optimizing IP usage in environments with many small pods, AI/ML workloads often use fewer, larger pods (e.g., one pod per GPU). Enabling prefix delegation allows the VPC CNI to pre-allocate a prefix for faster pod startup by maintaining a warm pool. This means IP addresses are readily available, reducing the time needed for pod initialization compared to on-demand allocation in non-prefix mode. In such cases, the IP savings from enabling prefix delegation offers performance benefits for AI/ML workloads. By reducing the number of EC2 API calls required for IP address configuration and pre-allocating IP ranges, using prefix delegation enables faster pod launch times, which is particularly beneficial for quickly scaling AI/ML workloads.

To enable prefix delegation:

```
kubectl set env daemonset/aws-node -n kube-system ENABLE_PREFIX_DELEGATION=true
```

Ensure proper planning for VPC subnets to avoid IP address exhaustion, especially in large deployments, and manage CIDR blocks to avoid overlaps across VPCs. To learn more, see Optimizing IP Address Utilization and Assign more IP addresses to Amazon EKS nodes with prefixes.

Security

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Security and Compliance

Consider S3 with KMS for encryption-compliant storage

Unless you specify otherwise, all S3 buckets use SSE-S3 by default to encrypt objects at rest. However, you can choose to configure buckets to use server-side encryption with AWS Key

Management Service (AWS KMS) keys (SSE-KMS) instead. The security controls in AWS KMS can help you meet encryption-related compliance requirements. You can use these KMS keys to protect your data in Amazon S3 buckets. When you use SSE-KMS encryption with an S3 bucket, the AWS KMS keys must be in the same Region as the bucket.

Configure your general purpose buckets to use S3 Bucket Keys for SSE-KMS, to reduce your AWS KMS request costs by up to 99 percent by decreasing the request traffic from Amazon S3 to AWS KMS. S3 Bucket Keys are always enabled for GET and PUT operations in a directory bucket and can't be disabled.

Note that Amazon S3 Express One Zone uses a specific type of bucket called an *S3 directory bucket*. Directory buckets are exclusively for the S3 Express One Zone storage class and enable high-performance, low-latency access. To configure default bucket encryption on an S3 directory bucket, use the AWS CLI, and specify the KMS key ID or ARN, not the alias, as in the following example:

Example

```
aws s3api put-bucket-encryption --bucket my-directory-bucket --server-side-encryption-
configuration \
   '{"Rules": [{"ApplyServerSideEncryptionByDefault": {"SSEAlgorithm": "aws:kms",
 "KMSMasterKeyID": "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab"}}]}'
```

Ensure your EKS pod's IAM role has KMS permissions (e.g., `kms:Decrypt`) to access encrypted objects. Test this in a staging environment by uploading a sample model to the bucket, mounting it in a pod (e.g., via the Mountpoint S3 CSI driver), and verifying the pod can read the encrypted data without errors. Audit logs via AWS CloudTrail to confirm compliance with encryption requirements. See the KMS Documentation for setup details and key management.

Storage

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Data Management and Storage

Deploy AI Models to Pods Using a CSI Driver

AI/ML workloads often require access to large model artifacts (e.g., trained weights, configurations), and pods need a reliable, scalable way to access these without embedding them in container images, which can increase image sizes and Container registry pull times. To reduce operational overhead of managing volume mounts we recommend deploying AI models to pods by mounting Amazon storage services (e.g., S3, FSx for Lustre, FSx for OpenZFS, EFS) as Persistent Volumes (PVs) using their respective CSI drivers. For implementation details, see subsequent topics in this section.

Optimize Storage for ML Model Caches on EKS

Leveraging an optimal storage solution is critical to minimize pod and application start-up latency, reduce memory usage, obtaining the desired levels of performance to accelerate workloads, and ensuring scalability of ML workloads. ML workloads often rely on model files (weights), which can be large and require shared access to data across pods or nodes. Selecting the optimal storage solution depends on your workload's characteristics, such as single-node efficiency, multi-node access, latency requirements, cost constraints and also data integration requirements (such as with an Amazon S3 data repository). We recommend benchmarking different storage solutions with your workloads to understand which one meets your requirements, and we have provided the following options to help you evaluate based on your workload requirements.

The EKS CSI driver supports the following AWS Storage services, each have their own CSI driver and come with their own strengths for AI and ML workflows:

- Mountpoint for Amazon S3
- Amazon FSx for Lustre
- Amazon FSx for OpenZFS
- Amazon EFS
- Amazon EBS

The choice of AWS Storage service depends on your deployment architecture, scale, performance requirements, and cost strategy. Storage CSI drivers need to be installed on your EKS cluster, which allows the CSI driver to create and manage Persistent Volumes (PV) outside the lifecycle of a Pod. Using the CSI driver, you can create PV definitions of supported AWS Storage services as

EKS cluster resources. Pods can then access these storage volumes for their data volumes through creating a Persistent Volume Claim (PVC) for the PV. Depending on the AWS storage service and your deployment scenario, a single PVC (and its associated PV) can be attached to multiple Pods for a workload. For example, for ML training, shared training data is stored on a PV and accessed by multiple Pods; for real-time online inference, LLM models are cached on a PV and accessed by multiple Pods. Sample PV and PVC YAML files for AWS Storage services are provided below to help you get started.

Monitoring performance Poor disk performance can delay container image reads, increase pod startup latency, and degrade inference or training throughput. Use Amazon CloudWatch to monitor performance metrics for your AWS storage services. When you identify performance bottlenecks, modify your storage configuration parameters to optimize performance.

Scenario: Multiple GPU instances workload

Amazon FSx for Lustre: In scenarios where you have **multiple EC2 GPU compute instance** environment with latency-sensitive and high-bandwidth throughput dynamic workloads, such as distributed training and model serving, and you require native Amazon S3 data repository integration, we recommend Amazon FSx for Lustre. FSx for Lustre provides a fully managed high performance parallel filesystem that is designed for compute-intensive workloads like high-performance computing (HPC), Machine Learning.

You can Install the FSx for Lustre CSI driver to mount FSx filesystems on EKS as a Persistent Volume (PV), then deploy FSx for Lustre file system as a standalone high performance cache or as an S3-linked file system to act as a high performance cache for S3 data, providing fast I/O and high throughput for data access across your GPU compute instances. FSx for Lustre can be deployed with either Scratch-SSD or Persistent-SSD storage options:

- **Scratch-SSD storage**: Recommended for workloads that are ephemeral or short-lived (hours), with fixed throughput capacity per-TiB provisioned.
- **Persistent-SSD storage**: Recommended for mission-critical, long-running workloads that require the highest level of availability, for example HPC simulations, big data analytics or Machine Learning training. With Persistent-SSD storage, you can configure both the storage capacity and throughput capacity (per-TiB) that is required.

Performance considerations:

- **Administrative pod to manage FSx for Lustre file system**: Configure an "administrative" Pod that has the lustre client installed and has the FSx file system mounted. This will enable an access point to enable fine-tuning of the FSx file system, and also in situations where you need to pre-warm the FSx file system with your ML training data or LLM models before starting up your GPU compute instances. This is especially important if your architecture utilizes Spot-based Amazon EC2 GPU/compute instances, where you can utilize the administrative Pod to "warm" or "pre-load" desired data into the FSx file system, so that the data is ready to be processed when you run your Spot based Amazon EC2 instances.
- **Elastic Fabric Adapter (EFA)**: Persistent-SSD storage deployment types support Elastic Fabric Adapter (EFA), where using EFA is ideal for high performance and throughput-based GPU-based workloads. Note that FSx for Lustre supports NVIDIA GPUDirect Storage (GDS), where GDS is a technology that creates a direct data path between local or remote storage and GPU memory, to enable faster data access.
- **Compression**: Enable data compression on the file system if you have file types that can be compressed. This can help to increase performance as data compression reduces the amount of data that is transferred between FSx for Lustre file servers and storage.
- **Lustre file system striping configuration**:
  - **Data striping**: Allows FSx for Luster to distribute a file's data across multiple Object Storage Targets (OSTs) within a Lustre file system maximizes parallel access and throughput, especially for large-scale ML training jobs.
  - **Standalone file system striping**: By default, a 4-component Lustre striping configuration is created for you via the Progressive file layouts (PFL) capability of FSx for Lustre. In most scenarios you don't need to update the default PFL Lustre stripe count/size. If you need to adjust the Lustre data striping, then you can manually adjust the Lustre striping by referring to striping parameters of a FSx for Lustre file system.
  - **S3-Linked File system**: Files imported into the FSx file system using the native Amazon S3 integration (Data Repository Association or DRA) don't use the default PFL layout, but instead use the layout in the file system's `ImportedFileChunkSize` parameter. S3-imported files larger than the `ImportedFileChunkSize` will be stored on multiple OSTs with a stripe count based on the `ImportedFileChunkSize` defined value (default 1GiB). If you have large files, we recommend tuning this parameter to a higher value.
  - **Placement**: Deploy an FSx for Lustre file system in the same Availability Zone as your compute or GPU nodes to enable the lowest latency access to the data, avoid cross Availability Zone access access patterns. If you have multiple GPU nodes located in different Availability Zones,

then we recommend deploying a FSx file system in each Availability Zone for low latency data access.

Example

Persistent Volume (PV) definition for an FSx for Lustre file system, using Static Provisioning (where the FSx instance has already been provisioned).

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolume
metadata:
  name: fsx-pv
spec:
  capacity:
    storage: 1200Gi
  volumeMode: Filesystem
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteMany
  mountOptions:
    - flock
  persistentVolumeReclaimPolicy: Recycle
  csi:
    driver: fsx.csi.aws.com
    volumeHandle: [FileSystemId of FSx instance]
    volumeAttributes:
      dnsname: [DNSName of FSx instance]
      mountname: [MountName of FSx instance]
```

Example

Persistent Volume Claim definition for PV called `fsx-pv`:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
metadata:
  name: fsx-claim
spec:
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteMany
  storageClassName: ""
  resources:
    requests:
```

```
      storage: 1200Gi
  volumeName: fsx-pv
```

Example

Configure a pod to use an Persistent Volume Claim of `fsx-claim`:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: fsx-app
spec:
  containers:
  - name: app
    image: amazonlinux:2023
    command: ["/bin/sh"]
    volumeMounts:
    - name: persistent-storage
      mountPath: /data
  volumes:
  - name: persistent-storage
    persistentVolumeClaim:
      claimName: fsx-claim
```

For complete examples, see the FSx for Lustre Driver Examples in GitHub. Monitor Amazon FSx for Lustre performance metrics using Amazon CloudWatch. When performance bottlenecks are identified, adjust your configuration parameters as needed.

Scenario: Single GPU instance workload

Mountpoint for Amazon S3 with CSI Driver: You can mount an S3 bucket as a volume in your pods using Mountpoint for Amazon S3 CSI driver. This method allows for fine-grained access control over which Pods can access specific S3 buckets. Each pod has its own mountpoint instance and local cache (5-10GB), isolating model loading and read performance between pods. This setup supports pod-level authentication with IAM Roles for Service Accounts (IRSA) and independent model versioning for different models or customers. The trade-off is increased memory usage and API traffic, as each pod issues S3 API calls and maintains its own cache.

Example Partial example of a Pod deployment YAML with CSI Driver:

```
# CSI driver dynamically mounts the S3 bucket for each pod
```

```
volumes:
  - name: s3-mount
    csi:
      driver: s3.csi.aws.com
      volumeAttributes:
        bucketName: your-s3-bucket-name
        mountOptions: "--allow-delete"  # Optional
        region: us-west-2

containers:
  - name: inference
    image: your-inference-image
    volumeMounts:
      - mountPath: /models
        name: s3-mount
volumeMounts:
  - name: model-cache
    mountPath: /models
volumes:
  - name: model-cache
    hostPath:
      path: /mnt/s3-model-cache
```

Performance considerations:

- **Data caching**: Mountpoint for S3 can cache content to reduce costs and improve performance for repeated reads to the same file. Refer to Caching configuration for caching options and parameters.
- **Object part-size**: When storing and accessing files over 72GB in size, refer to Configuring Mountpoint performance to understand how to configure the `--read-part-size` and `--write-part-size` command-line parameters to meet your data profile and workload requirements.
- **Shared-cache** is designed for objects up to 1MB in size. It does not support large objects. Use the Local cache option for caching objects in NVMe or EBS volumes on the EKS node.
- **API request charges**: When performing a high number of file operations with the Mountpoint for S3, API request charges can become a portion of storage costs. To mitigate this, if strong consistency is not required, always enable metadata caching and set the `metadata-ttl` period to reduce the number of API operations to S3.

For more details, see the Mountpoint for Amazon S3 CSI Driver in the Amazon EKS official documentation. We recommend monitoring the performance metrics of Amazon S3 with Amazon CloudWatch metrics if bottlenecks occur and adjusting your configuration where required.

Amazon FSx for OpenZFS persistent shared storage

For scenarios involving multiple EC2 GPU compute instances with latency-sensitive workloads requiring high availability, high performance, cost sensitivity, and multiple pod deployments for different applications, we recommend Amazon FSx for OpenZFS. Some workload examples include real-time inference, reinforcement learning, and training generative adversarial networks. FSx for OpenZFS is particularly beneficial for workloads needing high performance access to a focused directory structure with small files using small IO data access patterns. Also, FSx for OpenZFS provides the flexibility to scale performance independently from storage capacity, helping you achieve optimal cost efficiency by matching storage size to actual needs while maintaining required performance levels

The native FSx for OpenZFS CSI driver allows for the creation of multiple PVCs to a single file system by creating multiple volumes. This reduces management overhead and maximizes the utilization of the file system's throughput and IOPS through consolidated application pod deployments on a single file system. Additionally, it includes enterprise features like zero-copy snapshots, zero-copy clones, and user and group quotas which can be dynamically provisioned through the CSI driver.

FSx for OpenZFS supports three different deployment types upon creation:

- **Single-AZ:** Lowest cost option with sub-millisecond latencies, but provides no high-availability at the file system or Availability Zone level. Recommended for development and test workloads or those which have high-availability at the application layer.
- **Single-AZ (HA):** Provides high-availability at the file system level with sub-millisecond latencies. Recommended for highest performance workloads which require high-availability.
- **Multi-AZ:** Provides high-availability at the file system level as well as across Availability Zones. Recommended for high-performance workloads that require the additional availability across Availability Zones.

Performance considerations:

- **Deployment type:** If the additional availability across Availability Zones isn't a requirement, consider using the Single-AZ (HA) deployment type. This deployment type provides up to 100%

of the throughput for writes, maintains sub-millisecond latencies, and the Gen2 file systems have an additional NVMe cache for storing up to terrabytes of frequently accessed data. The Multi-AZ file systems provide up to 75% of the throughput for writes at an increased latency to accomodate for cross-AZ traffic.

- **Throughput and IOPS:** Both the throughput and IOPS configured for the file system can be scaled up or down post deployment. You can provision up to 10GB/s of disk throughput providing up to 21GB/s of cached data access. The IOPS can be scaled up to 400,000 from disk and the cache can provide over 1 million IOPS. Note that throughput scaling of a Single-AZ file system does cause a brief outage of the file system as no high-availability exists. Throughput scaling of a Single-AZ (HA) or Multi-AZ file system can be done non-disruptively. The SSD IOPS can be scaled once every six hours.
- **Storage Class:** FSx for OpenZFS supports both the SSD storage class as well as the Intelligent-Tiering storage class. For AI/ML workloads it is recommended to use the SSD storage class providing consistent performance to the workload keeping the CPU's/GPU's as busy as possible.
- **Compression:** Enable the LZ4 compression algorithm if you have a workload that can be compressed. This reduces the amount of data each file consumes in the cache allowing more data to be served directly from the cache as network throughput and IOPS reducing the load on the SSD disk.
- **Record size:** Most AI/ML workloads will benefit from leaving the default 128KiB record size. This value should only be reduced if the dataset consists of large files (above 10GiB) with consistent small block access below 128KiB from the application.

Once the file system is created, an associated root volume is automatically created by the service. It is best practice to store data within child volumes of the root volume on the file system. Using the FSx for OpenZFS CSI driver you create an associated Persistent Volume Claim to dynamically create the child volume.

Examples:

A Storage Class (SC) definition for an FSx for OpenZFS volume, used to create a child volume of the root volume ($ROOT_VOL_ID) on an existing file system and export the volume to the VPC CIDR ($VPC_CIDR) using the NFS v4.2 protocol.

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: fsxz-vol-sc
```

```
provisioner: fsx.openzfs.csi.aws.com
parameters:
  ResourceType: "volume"
  ParentVolumeId: '"$ROOT_VOL_ID"'
  CopyTagsToSnapshots: 'false'
  DataCompressionType: '"LZ4"'
  NfsExports: '[{"ClientConfigurations": [{"Clients": "$VPC_CIDR", "Options":
 ["rw","crossmnt","no_root_squash"]}]}]'
  ReadOnly: 'false'
  RecordSizeKiB: '128'
  Tags: '[{"Key": "Name", "Value": "AI-ML"}]'
  OptionsOnDeletion: '["DELETE_CHILD_VOLUMES_AND_SNAPSHOTS"]'
reclaimPolicy: Delete
allowVolumeExpansion: false
mountOptions:
  - nfsvers=4.2
  - rsize=1048576
  - wsize=1048576
  - timeo=600
  - nconnect=16
  - async
```

A dynamically created Persistent Volume Claim (PVC) against the fsxz-vol-sc created above. **Note**, the storage capacity allocated is 1Gi, this is required for FSx for OpenZFS volumes as noted in the CSI driver FAQ. The volume will be provided the full capacity provisioned to the file system with this configuration. If the volume capacity needs to be restricted you can do so using user or group quotas.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
metadata:
  name: dynamic-vol-pvc
  namespace: example
spec:
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteMany
  storageClassName: fsxz-vol-sc
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 1Gi
```

Configure a pod to mount a volume using the Persistent Volume Claim (PVC) of dynamic-vol-pvc:

```
kind: Pod
apiVersion: v1
metadata:
  name: fsx-app
  namespace: example
spec:
  volumes:
    - name: dynamic-vol-pv
      persistentVolumeClaim:
        claimName: dynamic-vol-pvc
  containers:
    - name: app
      image: amazonlinux:2023
      command: ["/bin/sh"]
      volumeMounts:
        - mountPath: "/mnt/fsxz"
          name: dynamic-vol-pv
```

Amazon EFS for shared model caches

In scenarios where you have a **multiple EC2 GPU compute instance environment** and have dynamic workloads requiring shared model access across multiple nodes and Availability Zones (e.g., real-time online inference with Karpenter) with moderate performance and scalability needs, we recommend using an Amazon Elastic File System (EFS) file system as a Persistent Volume through the EFS CSI Driver. Amazon EFS is a fully managed, highly available, and scalable cloud-based NFS file system that enables EC2 instances and containers with shared file storage, with consistent performance, and where no upfront provisioning of storage is required. Use EFS as the model volume, and mount the volume as a shared filesystem through defining a Persistent Volume on the EKS cluster. Each Persistent Volume Claim (PVC) that is backed by an EFS file system is created as an EFS Access-point to the EFS file system. EFS allows multiple nodes and pods to access the same model files, eliminating the need to sync data to each node's filesystem. Install the EFS CSI driver to integrate EFS with EKS.

You can deploy an Amazon EFS file system with the following throughput modes:

- **Bursting Throughput**: Scales throughput with file system size, suitable for varying workloads with occasional bursts.
- **Provisioned Throughput**: Dedicated throughput, ideal for consistent ML training jobs with predictable performance needs within limits.

- **Elastic Throughput (recommended for ML)**: Automatically scales based on workload, cost-effectiveness for varying ML workloads.

To view performance specifications, see Amazon EFS performance specifications.

Performance considerations:

- Use Elastic Throughput for varying workloads.
- Use Standard storage class for active ML workloads.

For complete examples of using Amazon EFS file system as a persistent Volume within your EKS cluster and Pods, refer to the EFS CSI Driver Examples in GitHub. Monitor Amazon EFS performance metrics using Amazon CloudWatch. When performance bottlenecks are identified, adjust your configuration parameters as needed.

Use S3 Express One Zone for Latency-Sensitive, Object Oriented Workflows

For latency-sensitive AI/ML workloads on Amazon EKS, such as large-scale model training, inference, or high-performance analytics, we recommend using S3 Express One Zone for high-performance model storage and retrieval. S3 Express One Zone offers a hierarchical namespace, like a filesystem, where you simply upload to a directory bucket, suitable for "chucking everything in," while maintaining high speed. This is particularly useful if you are accustomed to object-oriented workflows. Alternatively, if you are more accustomed to file systems (e.g., POSIX-compliant), you may prefer Amazon FSx for Lustre or OpenZFS. Amazon S3 Express One Zone stores data in a single Availability Zone (AZ) using directory buckets and offering lower latency than standard S3 buckets, which distribute data across multiple AZs. For best results, make sure to co-locate your EKS compute in the same AZ as your Express One Zone bucket. To learn more about the differences of S3 Express One Zone, see Differences for directory buckets.

To access S3 Express One Zone with filesystem semantics, we recommend using the Mountpoint S3 CSI Driver, which mounts S3 buckets (including Express One Zone) as a local file system. This translates file operations (e.g., open, read, write) into S3 API calls, providing high-throughput access optimized for read-heavy workloads from multiple clients and sequential writes to new objects. For details on supported operations and limitations (e.g., no full POSIX compliance, but appends and renames supported in Express One Zone), see the Mountpoint semantics documentation.

Performance benefits

- Provides up to 10x faster data access than S3 Standard, with consistent single-digit millisecond latency and up to 80% lower request costs.
- Scales to handle hundreds of thousands to millions of requests per second per directory bucket, avoiding throttling or brownouts seen in standard S3 during extreme loads (e.g., from clusters with tens to hundreds of thousands of GPUs/CPUs saturating networks).
- Uses a session-based authentication mechanism. Authenticate once to obtain a session token, then perform repeated operations at high speed without per-request auth overhead. This is optimized for workloads like frequent checkpointing or data loading.

Recommended use cases

- **Caching**: One of the top use cases of using the Mountpoint S3 CSI Driver with S3 Express One Zone is caching. The first instance reads data from S3 Standard (general purpose), caching it in lower-latency Express One Zone. Subsequent reads by other clients access the cached data faster, which is ideal for multi-node scenarios where multiple EKS nodes read the same data (e.g., shared training datasets). This can improve performance by up to 7x for repeated accesses and reduce compute costs. For workloads requiring full POSIX compliance (e.g., file locking and in-place modifications), consider Amazon FSx for Lustre or OpenZFS as alternatives.
- **Large-Scale AI/ML training and inference**: Ideal for workloads with hundreds or thousands of compute nodes (e.g., GPUs in EKS clusters) where general purpose S3 throttling could cause delays, wasting expensive compute resources. For example, LLM researchers or organizations running daily model tests/checkpoints benefit from fast, reliable access without breaking regional S3. For smaller-scale workloads (e.g., 10s of nodes), S3 Standard or other storage classes may suffice.
- **Data pipelines**: Load/prepare models, archive training data, or stream checkpoints. If your team prefers object storage over traditional file systems (e.g., due to familiarity with S3), use this instead of engineering changes for POSIX-compliant options like FSx for Lustre.

Considerations

- **Resilience**: Single-AZ design provides 99.999999999% durability (same as standard S3, via redundancy within the AZ) but lower availability (99.95% designed, 99.9% SLA) compared to multi-AZ classes (99.99% availability). It's less resilient to AZ failures. Use for recreatable or cached data. Consider multi-AZ replication or backups for critical workloads.

- **API and Feature Support**: Supports a subset of S3 APIs (e.g., no lifecycle policies or replication); may require minor app changes for session authentication or object handling.
- **EKS Integration**: Co-locate your EKS pods/nodes in the same AZ as the directory bucket to minimize network latency. Use Mountpoint for Amazon S3 or CSI drivers for Kubernetes-native access.
- **Testing:** Test retrieval latency in a non-production environment to validate performance gains. Monitor for throttling in standard S3 scenarios (e.g., high GPU saturation) and compare.

The S3 Express One Zone storage class is available in multiple regions and integrates with EKS for workloads needing object access without waiting on storage. To learn more, see Getting started with S3 Express One Zone.

Observability

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Monitoring and Observability

GPU Metrics Explained

The GPU Utilization metric shows whether the GPU ran any work during the sample window. This metric captures the percentage of time the GPU executed at least one instruction, but it does not reveal how efficiently the GPU used its hardware. A GPU contains multiple Streaming Multiprocessors (SMs), which are the parallel processing units that execute instructions. A 100% utilization reading can mean the GPU ran heavy parallel workloads across all its SMs, or it can mean a single small instruction activated the GPU over the sample period. To understand actual utilization, you need to examine GPU metrics at multiple levels of the hardware architecture. Each Streaming Multiprocessor is built from different core types, and each layer exposes different performance characteristics. Top-level metrics (GPU Utilization, Memory Utilization, GPU Power, and GPU Temperature, visible through nvidia-smi) show whether the device is active. Deeper metrics (SM utilization, SM Activity, and tensor core usage) reveal how efficiently the GPU uses its resources.

Target high GPU power usage

Underutilized GPUs waste compute capacity and increase costs because workloads fail to engage all GPU components simultaneously. For AI/ML workloads on Amazon EKS, track GPU power usage as a proxy to identify actual GPU activity. GPU Utilization reports the percentage of time the GPU executes any kernel, but it does not reveal whether the Streaming Multiprocessors, memory controllers, and tensor cores are all active at the same time. Power usage exposes this gap because fully engaged hardware draws significantly more power than hardware running lightweight kernels or sitting idle between tasks. Compare power draw against the GPU's thermal design power (TDP) to spot underutilization, then investigate whether your workload is bottlenecked by CPU preprocessing, network I/O, or inefficient batch sizes.

Set up CloudWatch Container Insights on Amazon EKS to identify pods, nodes, or workloads with low GPU power consumption. This tool integrates directly with Amazon EKS and allows you to monitor GPU power consumption and adjust pod scheduling or instance types when power usage falls below your target levels. If you need advanced visualization or custom dashboards, use NVIDIA's DCGM-Exporter with Prometheus and Grafana for Kubernetes-native monitoring. Both approaches surface key NVIDIA metrics like `nvidia_smi_power_draw` (GPU power consumption) and `nvidia_smi_temperature_gpu` (GPU temperature). For a list of metrics, explore https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/monitoring/CloudWatch-Agent-NVIDIA-GPU.htm. Look for patterns such as consistently low power usage during specific hours or for particular jobs. These trends help you identify where to consolidate workloads or adjust resource allocation.

Static resource limits in Kubernetes (such as CPU, memory, and GPU counts) often lead to over-provisioning or underutilization, especially for dynamic AI/ML workloads like inference where demand fluctuates. Analyze your utilization trends and consolidate workloads onto fewer GPUs. Ensure each GPU reaches full utilization before you allocate additional ones. This approach reduces waste and lowers costs. For detailed guidance on optimizing scheduling and sharing strategies, see the EKS Compute and Autoscaling best practices

Observability and Metrics

Using Monitoring and Observability Tools for your AI/ML Workloads

Modern AI/ML services require coordination across infrastructure, modeling, and application logic. Platform engineers manage the infrastructure and observability stack. They collect, store, and visualize metrics. AI/ML engineers define model-specific metrics and monitor performance under varying load and data distribution. Application developers consume APIs, route requests, and track

service-level metrics and user interactions. Without unified observability practices, these teams work in silos and miss critical signals about system health and performance. Establishing shared visibility across environments ensures all stakeholders can detect issues early and maintain reliable service.

Optimizing Amazon EKS clusters for AI/ML workloads presents unique monitoring challenges, especially around GPU memory management. Without proper monitoring, organizations face out-of-memory (OOM) errors, resource inefficiencies, and unnecessary costs. Effective monitoring ensures better performance, resilience, and lower costs for EKS customers. Use a holistic approach that combines three monitoring layers. First, monitor granular GPU metrics using NVIDIA DCGM Exporter to track GPU power usage, GPU temperature, SM activity, SM occupancy, and XID errors. Second, monitor inference serving frameworks like Ray and vLLM to gain distributed workload insights through their native metrics. Third, collect application-level insights to track custom metrics specific to your workload. This layered approach gives you visibility from hardware utilization through application performance.

Tools and frameworks

Several tools and frameworks provide native, out-of-the-box metrics for monitoring AI/ML workloads. These built-in metrics eliminate the need for custom instrumentation and reduce setup time. The metrics focus on performance aspects such as latency, throughput, and token generation, which are critical for inference serving and benchmarking. Using native metrics allows you to start monitoring immediately without building custom collection pipelines.

- **vLLM**: A high-throughput serving engine for large language models (LLMs) that provides native metrics such as request latency and memory usage.
- **Ray**: A distributed computing framework that emits metrics for scalable AI workloads, including task execution times and resource utilization.
- **Hugging Face Text Generation Inference (TGI)**: A toolkit for deploying and serving LLMs, with built-in metrics for inference performance.
- **NVIDIA genai-perf**: A command-line tool for benchmarking generative AI models, measuring throughput, latency, and LLM-specific metrics, such as requests completed in specific time intervals.

Observability methods

We recommend implementing any additional observability mechanisms in one of the following ways.

CloudWatch Container Insights If your organization prefers AWS-native tools with minimal setup, we recommend CloudWatch Container Insights. It integrates with the NVIDIA DCGM Exporter to collect GPU metrics and offers pre-built dashboards for quick insights. Enabled by installing the CloudWatch Observability add-on on your cluster, Container Insights deploys and manages the lifecycle of the NVIDIA DCGM Exporter which collects GPU metrics from Nvidia's drivers and exposes them to CloudWatch.

After you install Container Insights, CloudWatch automatically detects NVIDIA GPUs in your environment and collects critical health and performance metrics. These metrics appear on curated out-of-the-box dashboards. You can also integrate Ray and vLLM with CloudWatch using the Unified CloudWatch Agent to send their native metrics. This unified approach simplifies observability in EKS environments and lets teams focus on performance tuning and cost optimization instead of building monitoring infrastructure.

For a complete list of available metrics, see Amazon EKS and Kubernetes Container Insights metrics. For step-by-step guidance on implementing GPU monitoring, refer to Gain operational insights for NVIDIA GPU workloads using Amazon CloudWatch Container Insights. For practical examples of optimizing inference latency, see Optimizing AI responsiveness: A practical guide to Amazon Bedrock latency-optimized inference.

Managed Prometheus and Grafana If your organization needs customized dashboards and advanced visualization capabilities, deploy Prometheus with the NVIDIA DCGM-Exporter and Grafana for Kubernetes-native monitoring. Prometheus scrapes and stores GPU metrics from the DCGM-Exporter, while Grafana provides flexible visualization and alerting capabilities. This approach gives you more control over dashboard design and metric retention compared to CloudWatch Container Insights.

You can extend this monitoring stack by integrating open source frameworks like Ray and vLLM Ray and vLLM to export their native metrics to Prometheus. You can also connect Grafana to an AWS X-Ray data source to visualize distributed traces and identify performance bottlenecks across your inference pipeline. This combination provides end-to-end visibility from GPU-level metrics through application-level request flows.

For step-by-step guidance on deploying this monitoring stack, refer to Monitoring GPU workloads on Amazon EKS using AWS managed open-source services.

Consider Monitoring Core Training & Fine-Tuning Metrics

Monitor core training metrics to track the health and performance of your Amazon EKS cluster and the machine learning workloads running on it. Training workloads have different monitoring

requirements than inference workloads because they run for extended periods, consume resources differently, and require visibility into model convergence and data pipeline efficiency. The metrics below help you identify bottlenecks, optimize resource allocation, and ensure training jobs complete successfully. For step-by-step guidance on implementing this monitoring approach, refer to Introduction to observing machine learning workloads on Amazon EKS.

Resource Usage Metrics

Monitor resource usage metrics to validate that your resources are being properly consumed. These metrics help you identify bottlenecks and root cause performance issues.

- **CPU, Memory, Network, GPU Power and GPU Temperature** - Monitor these metrics to ensure allocated resources meet workload demands and identify optimization opportunities. Track metrics like gpu_memory_usage_bytes to identify memory consumption patterns and detect peak usage. Calculate percentiles such as the 95th percentile (P95) to understand the highest memory demands during training. This analysis helps you optimize models and infrastructure to avoid OOM errors and reduce costs.
- **SM Occupancy, SM Activity, FPxx Activity** - Monitor these metrics to understand how the underlying resource on the GPU is being used. Target 0.8 for SM Activity as a rule of thumb.
- **Node and Pod Resource Utilization** - Track resource usage at the node and pod level to identify resource contention and potential bottlenecks. Monitor whether nodes approach capacity limits, which can delay pod scheduling and slow training jobs.
- **Resource Utilization Compared to Requests and Limits** — Compare actual resource usage against configured requests and limits to determine whether your cluster can handle current workloads and accommodate future ones. This comparison reveals whether you need to adjust resource allocations to avoid OOM errors or resource waste.
- **Internal Metrics from ML Frameworks** - Capture internal training and convergence metrics from ML frameworks such as TensorFlow and PyTorch. These metrics include loss curves, learning rate, batch processing time, and training step duration. Visualize these metrics using TensorBoard or similar tools to track model convergence and identify training inefficiencies.

Model Performance Metrics

Monitor model performance metrics to validate that your training process produces models that meet accuracy and business requirements. These metrics help you determine when to stop training, compare model versions, and identify performance degradation.

- **Accuracy, Precision, Recall, and F1-score** — Track these metrics to understand how well your model performs on validation data. Calculate the F1-score on a validation set after each training epoch to assess whether the model is improving and when it reaches acceptable performance levels.
- **Business-Specific Metrics and KPIs** — Define and track metrics that directly measure the business value of your AI/ML initiatives. For a recommendation system, track metrics like click-through rate or conversion rate to ensure the model drives the intended business outcomes.
- **Performance over time** — Compare performance metrics across model versions and training runs to identify trends and detect degradation. Track whether newer model versions maintain or improve performance compared to baseline models. This historical comparison helps you decide whether to deploy new models or investigate training issues.

Data Quality and Drift Metrics

Monitor data quality and drift metrics to ensure your training data remains consistent and representative. Data drift can cause model performance to degrade over time, while data quality issues can prevent models from converging or produce unreliable results.

- **Statistical Properties of Input Data** — Track statistical properties such as mean, standard deviation, and distribution of input features over time to detect data drift or anomalies. Monitor whether feature distributions shift significantly from your baseline training data. For example, if the mean of a critical feature changes by more than two standard deviations, investigate whether your data pipeline has changed or whether the underlying data source has shifted.
- **Data Drift Detection and Alerts** — Implement automated mechanisms to detect and alert on data quality issues before they impact training. Use statistical tests such as the Kolmogorov-Smirnov test or chi-squared test to compare current data distributions with your original training data. Set up alerts when tests detect significant drift so you can retrain models with updated data or investigate data pipeline issues.

Latency and Throughput Metrics

Monitor latency and throughput metrics to identify bottlenecks in your training pipeline and optimize resource utilization. These metrics help you understand where time is spent during training and where to focus optimization efforts.

- **End-to-End Latency of ML Training Pipelines** — Measure the total time for data to flow through your entire training pipeline, from data ingestion to model update. Track this metric

across training runs to identify whether pipeline changes improve or degrade performance. High latency often indicates bottlenecks in data loading, preprocessing, or network communication between nodes.

- **Training Throughput and Processing Rate** — Track the volume of data your training pipeline processes per unit of time to ensure efficient resource utilization. Monitor metrics such as samples processed per second or batches completed per minute. Low throughput relative to your hardware capacity suggests inefficiencies in data loading, preprocessing, or model computation that waste GPU cycles.
- **Checkpoint Save and Restore Latency** – Monitor the time required to save model checkpoints to storage (S3, EFS, FSx) and restore them to GPU or CPU memory when resuming jobs or recovering from failures. Slow checkpoint operations extend job recovery time and increase costs. Track checkpoint size, save duration, restore duration, and failure count to identify optimization opportunities such as compression or faster storage tiers.
- **Data Loading and Preprocessing Time** - Measure the time spent loading data from storage and applying preprocessing transformations. Compare this time against model computation time to determine whether your training is data-bound or compute-bound. If data loading consumes more than 20% of total training time, consider optimizing your data pipeline with caching, prefetching, or faster storage.

Error Rates and Failures

Monitor error rates and failures throughout your training pipeline to maintain reliability and prevent wasted compute resources. Undetected errors can cause training jobs to fail silently, produce invalid models, or waste hours of GPU time before you notice problems.

- **Pipeline Error Monitoring** — Track errors across all stages of your ML pipeline, including data preprocessing, model training, and checkpoint operations. Log error types, frequencies, and affected components to quickly identify issues. Common errors include data format mismatches, out-of-memory failures during preprocessing, and checkpoint save failures due to storage limits. Set up alerts when error rates exceed baseline thresholds so you can investigate before errors cascade.
- **Recurring Error Analysis** — Identify and investigate patterns in recurring errors to prevent future failures and improve pipeline reliability. Analyze logs to find whether specific data samples, batch sizes, or training configurations consistently cause failures. For example, if certain input data types trigger preprocessing errors, add validation checks earlier in the pipeline or

update your data cleaning logic. Track the mean time between failures (MTBF) to measure whether your pipeline reliability improves over time."

Kubernetes and EKS Specific Metrics

Monitor Kubernetes and EKS metrics to ensure your cluster infrastructure remains healthy and can support your training workloads. These metrics help you detect infrastructure issues before they cause training job failures or performance degradation.

- **Kubernetes Cluster State Metrics** — Monitor the health and status of Kubernetes objects including pods, nodes, deployments, and services. Track pod status to identify pods stuck in pending, failed, or crash loop states. Monitor node conditions to detect issues like disk pressure, memory pressure, or network unavailability. Use kubectl or monitoring tools to check these metrics continuously and set up alerts when pods fail to start or nodes become unschedulable.
- **Training Pipeline Execution Metrics** — Track successful and failed pipeline runs, job durations, step completion times, and orchestration errors. Monitor whether training jobs complete within expected time windows and whether failure rates increase over time. Track metrics such as job success rate, average job duration, and time to failure. These metrics help you identify whether infrastructure issues, configuration problems, or data quality issues cause training failures.
- **AWS Service Metrics** — Track metrics for AWS services that support your EKS infrastructure and training workloads. Monitor S3 metrics such as request latency, error rates, and throughput to ensure data loading performance remains consistent. Track EBS volume metrics including IOPS, throughput, and queue length to detect storage bottlenecks. Monitor VPC flow logs and network metrics to identify connectivity issues between nodes or to external services.
- **Kubernetes Control Plane Metrics** — Monitor the API server, scheduler, controller manager, and etcd database to detect performance issues or failures that affect cluster operations. Track API server request latency, request rate, and error rate to ensure the control plane responds quickly to scheduling requests. Monitor etcd database size, commit duration, and leader changes to detect stability issues. High API server latency or frequent etcd leader changes can delay pod scheduling and extend training job startup times.

Application and Instance Logs

Collect and analyze application and instance logs to diagnose issues that metrics alone cannot explain. Logs provide detailed context about errors, state changes, and system events that help you

understand why training jobs fail or perform poorly. Correlating logs with metrics allows you to pinpoint root causes faster.

- **Application Logs** - Collect application logs from your training jobs, data pipelines, and ML frameworks to identify bottlenecks and diagnose failures. These logs capture detailed information about job execution, including data loading errors, model initialization failures, checkpoint save errors, and framework-specific warnings. Correlate log timestamps with metric spikes to understand what caused performance degradation or failures. For example, if GPU utilization drops suddenly, check application logs for errors indicating data pipeline stalls or preprocessing failures. Use centralized logging tools like CloudWatch Logs or Fluent Bit to aggregate logs from all pods and make them searchable.
- **Instance Logs** - Collect instance-level logs such as system journal logs and dmesg output to detect hardware issues and kernel-level problems. These logs reveal issues like GPU driver errors, memory allocation failures, disk I/O errors, and network interface problems that may not appear in application logs. Correlate instance logs with application logs and metrics to determine whether training failures stem from hardware problems or application issues. For example, if a training job fails with an out-of-memory error, check dmesg logs for kernel OOM killer messages that indicate whether the system ran out of memory or whether the application exceeded its container limits. Set up alerts for critical hardware errors such as GPU XID errors or disk failures so you can replace failing instances before they cause widespread training disruptions.

The following sections show how to collect the metrics described above using two AWS-recommended approaches: CloudWatch Container Insights and Amazon Managed Prometheus Amazon Managed Prometheus with Amazon Managed Grafana. Choose CloudWatch Container Insights if you prefer AWS-native tools with minimal setup and pre-built dashboards. Choose Amazon Managed Prometheus with Amazon Managed Grafana if you need customized dashboards, advanced visualization capabilities, or want to integrate with existing Prometheus-based monitoring infrastructure. For a complete list of available Container Insights metrics, see Amazon EKS and Kubernetes Container Insights metrics.

Consider Monitoring Real-time Online Inference Metrics

In real-time systems, low latency is critical for providing timely responses to users or other dependent systems. High latency can degrade user experience or violate performance requirements. Components that influence inference latency include model loading time, pre-processing time, actual prediction time, post-processing time, network transmission time. We recommend monitoring inference latency to ensure low-latency responses that meet service-level

agreements (SLAs) and developing custom metrics for the following. Test under expected load, include network latency, account for concurrent requests, and test with varying batch sizes.

- **Time to First Token (TTFT)** — Amount of time from when a user submits a request until they receive the beginning of a response (the first word, token, or chunk). For example, in chatbots, you'd check how long it takes to generate the first piece of output (token) after the user asks a question.
- **End-to-End Latency** — This is the total time from when a request is received to when the response is sent back. For example, measure time from request to response.
- **Output Tokens Per Second (TPS)** — Indicates how quickly your model generates new tokens after it starts responding. For example, in chatbots, you'd track generation speed for language models for a baseline text.
- **Error Rate** — Tracks failed requests, which can indicate performance issues. For example, monitor failed requests for large documents or certain characters.
- **Throughput** — Measure the number of requests or operations the system can handle per unit of time. For example, track requests per second to handle peak loads.

K/V (Key/Value) cache can be a powerful optimization technique for inference latency, particularly relevant for transformer-based models. K/V cache stores the key and value tensors from previous transformer layer computations, reducing redundant computations during autoregressive inference, particularly in large language models (LLMs). Cache Efficiency Metrics (specifically for K/V or a session cache use):

- **Cache hit/miss ratio** — For inference setups leveraging caching (K/V or embedding caches), measure how often cache is helping. Low hit rates may indicate suboptimal cache config or workload changes, both of which can increase latency.

In subsequent topics, we demonstrate gathering data for a few of the metrics mentioned above. We will provide examples with the two AWS recommended approaches: AWS-native CloudWatch Container Insights and open-source Amazon Managed Prometheus with Amazon Managed Grafana. You would choose one of these solutions based on your overall observability needs. See Amazon EKS and Kubernetes Container Insights metrics for the complete list of Container Insights metrics.

Tracking GPU Memory Usage

As discussed in the the section called "Consider Monitoring Core Training & Fine-Tuning Metrics" topic, GPU memory usage is essential to prevent out-of-memory (OOM) errors and ensure efficient resource utilization. The following examples show how to instrument your training application to expose a custom histogram metric, `gpu_memory_usage_bytes`, and calculate the P95 memory usage to identify peak consumption. Be sure to test with a sample training job (e.g., fine-tuning a transformer model) in a staging environment.

AWS-Native CloudWatch Container Insights Example

This sample demonstrates how to instrument your training application to expose `gpu_memory_usage_bytes` as a histogram using the AWS-native approach. Note that your AI/ML container must be configured to emit structured logs in CloudWatch Embedded Metrics Format (EMF) format. CloudWatch logs parses EMF and publishes the metrics. Use aws_embedded_metrics in your training application to send structured logs in EMF format to CloudWatch Logs, which extracts GPU metrics.

```
from aws_embedded_metrics import metric_scope
import torch
import numpy as np

memory_usage = []

@metric_scope
def log_gpu_memory(metrics):
    # Record current GPU memory usage
    mem = torch.cuda.memory_allocated()
    memory_usage.append(mem)

    # Log as histogram metric
    metrics.set_namespace("MLTraining/GPUMemory")
    metrics.put_metric("gpu_memory_usage_bytes", mem, "Bytes", "Histogram")

    # Calculate and log P95 if we have enough data points
    if len(memory_usage) >= 10:
        p95 = np.percentile(memory_usage, 95)
        metrics.put_metric("gpu_memory_p95_bytes", p95, "Bytes")
        print(f"Current memory: {mem} bytes, P95: {p95} bytes")

# Example usage in training loop
for epoch in range(20):
```

```
    # Your model training code would go here
    log_gpu_memory()
```

Prometheus and Grafana Example

This sample demonstrates how to instrument your training application to expose gpu_memory_usage_bytes` as a histogram using the Prometheus client library in Python.

```
from prometheus_client import Histogram
from prometheus_client import start_http_server
import pynvml

start_http_server(8080)
memory_usage = Histogram(
    'gpu_memory_usage_bytes',
    'GPU memory usage during training',
    ['gpu_index'],
    buckets=[1e9, 2e9, 4e9, 8e9, 16e9, 32e9]
)

# Function to get GPU memory usage
def get_gpu_memory_usage():
    if torch.cuda.is_available():
        # Get the current GPU device
        device = torch.cuda.current_device()

        # Get memory usage in bytes
        memory_allocated = torch.cuda.memory_allocated(device)
        memory_reserved = torch.cuda.memory_reserved(device)

        # Total memory usage (allocated + reserved)
        total_memory = memory_allocated + memory_reserved

        return device, total_memory
    else:
        return None, 0

# Get GPU memory usage
gpu_index, memory_used = get_gpu_memory_usage()
```

Track Inference Request Duration for Real-Time Online Inference

As discussed in the the section called "Consider Monitoring Core Training & Fine-Tuning Metrics" topic, low latency is critical for providing timely responses to users or other dependent systems. The following examples show how to track a custom histogram metric, `inference_request_duration_seconds`, exposed by your inference application. Calculate the 95th percentile (P95) latency to focus on worst-case scenarios, test with synthetic inference requests (e.g., via Locust) in a staging environment, and set alert thresholds (e.g., >500ms) to detect SLA violations.

AWS-Native CloudWatch Container Insights Example

This sample demonstrates how to create a custom histogram metric in your inference application for inference_request_duration_seconds using AWS CloudWatch Embedded Metric Format.

```
import boto3
import time
from aws_embedded_metrics import metric_scope, MetricsLogger

cloudwatch = boto3.client('cloudwatch')

@metric_scope
def log_inference_duration(metrics: MetricsLogger, duration: float):
    metrics.set_namespace("ML/Inference")
    metrics.put_metric("inference_request_duration_seconds", duration, "Seconds",
 "Histogram")
    metrics.set_property("Buckets", [0.1, 0.5, 1, 2, 5])

@metric_scope
def process_inference_request(metrics: MetricsLogger):
    start_time = time.time()

    # Your inference processing code here
    # For example:
    # result = model.predict(input_data)

    duration = time.time() - start_time
    log_inference_duration(metrics, duration)

    print(f"Inference request processed in {duration} seconds")

# Example usage
```

```
process_inference_request()
```

Prometheus and Grafana Example

This sample demonstrates how to create a custom histogram metric in your inference application for inference_request_duration_seconds using the Prometheus client library in Python:

```
from prometheus_client import Histogram
from prometheus_client import start_http_server
import time

start_http_server(8080)
request_duration = Histogram(
    'inference_request_duration_seconds',
    'Inference request latency',
    buckets=[0.1, 0.5, 1, 2, 5]
)
start_time = time.time()
# Process inference request
request_duration.observe(time.time() - start_time)
```

In Grafana, use the query `histogram_quantile(0.95, sum(rate(inference_request_duration_seconds_bucket[5m])) by (le, pod))` to visualize P95 latency trends. To learn more, see Prometheus Histogram Documentation and Prometheus Client Documentation.

Track Token Throughput for Real-Time Online Inference

As discussed in the the section called “Consider Monitoring Core Training & Fine-Tuning Metrics” topic, we recommend monitoring token processing time to gauge model performance and optimize scaling decisions. The following examples show how to track a custom histogram metric, `token_processing_duration_seconds`, exposed by your inference application. Calculate the 95th percentile (P95) duration to analyze processing efficiency, test with simulated request loads (e.g., 100 to 1000 requests/second) in a non-production cluster, and adjust KEDA triggers to optimize scaling.

AWS-Native CloudWatch Container Insights Example

This sample demonstrates how to create a custom histogram metric in your inference application for token_processing_duration_seconds using AWS CloudWatch Embedded Metric Format. It uses

dimensions (`set_dimension) with a custom `get_duration_bucket function to categorize durations into buckets (e.g., "⇐0.01", ">1").

```
import boto3
import time
from aws_embedded_metrics import metric_scope, MetricsLogger

cloudwatch = boto3.client('cloudwatch')

@metric_scope
def log_token_processing(metrics: MetricsLogger, duration: float, token_count: int):
    metrics.set_namespace("ML/TokenProcessing")
    metrics.put_metric("token_processing_duration_seconds", duration, "Seconds")
    metrics.set_dimension("ProcessingBucket", get_duration_bucket(duration))
    metrics.set_property("TokenCount", token_count)

def get_duration_bucket(duration):
    buckets = [0.01, 0.05, 0.1, 0.5, 1]
    for bucket in buckets:
        if duration <= bucket:
            return f"<={bucket}"
    return f">{buckets[-1]}"

@metric_scope
def process_tokens(input_text: str, model, tokenizer, metrics: MetricsLogger):
    tokens = tokenizer.encode(input_text)
    token_count = len(tokens)

    start_time = time.time()
    # Process tokens (replace with your actual processing logic)
    output = model(tokens)
    duration = time.time() - start_time

    log_token_processing(metrics, duration, token_count)
    print(f"Processed {token_count} tokens in {duration} seconds")
    return output
```

Prometheus and Grafana Example

This sample demonstrates how to create a custom histogram metric in your inference application for token_processing_duration_seconds using the Prometheus client library in Python.

```
from prometheus_client import Histogram
```

```
from prometheus_client import start_http_server
import time

start_http_server(8080)
token_duration = Histogram(
    'token_processing_duration_seconds',
    'Token processing time per request',
    buckets=[0.01, 0.05, 0.1, 0.5, 1]
)
start_time = time.time()
# Process tokens
token_duration.observe(time.time() - start_time)
```

In Grafana, use the query `histogram_quantile(0.95, sum(rate(token_processing_duration_seconds_bucket[5m])) by (le, pod))` to visualize P95 processing time trends. To learn more, see Prometheus Histogram Documentation and Prometheus Client Documentation.

Measure Checkpoint Restore Latency

As discussed in the the section called "Consider Monitoring Core Training & Fine-Tuning Metrics" topic, checkpoint latency is a critical metric during multiple phases of the model lifecycle. The following examples show how to track a custom histogram metric, `checkpoint_restore_duration_seconds`, exposed by your application. Calculate the 95th percentile (P95) duration to monitor restore performance, test with Spot interruptions in a non-production cluster, and set alert thresholds (e.g., <30 seconds) to detect delays.

AWS-Native CloudWatch Container Insights Example

This sample demonstrates how to instrument your batch application to expose checkpoint_restore_duration_seconds as a histogram using CloudWatch Insights:

```
import boto3
import time
import torch
from aws_embedded_metrics import metric_scope, MetricsLogger

@metric_scope
def log_checkpoint_restore(metrics: MetricsLogger, duration: float):
    metrics.set_namespace("ML/ModelOperations")
    metrics.put_metric("checkpoint_restore_duration_seconds", duration, "Seconds",
 "Histogram")
```

```
    metrics.set_property("Buckets", [1, 5, 10, 30, 60])
    metrics.set_property("CheckpointSource", "s3://my-bucket/checkpoint.pt")

@metric_scope
def load_checkpoint(model, checkpoint_path: str, metrics: MetricsLogger):
    start_time = time.time()

    # Load model checkpoint
    model.load_state_dict(torch.load(checkpoint_path))

    duration = time.time() - start_time
    log_checkpoint_restore(metrics, duration)

    print(f"Checkpoint restored in {duration} seconds")
```

Prometheus and Grafana Example

This sample demonstrates how to instrument your batch application to expose `checkpoint_restore_duration_seconds` as a histogram using the Prometheus client library in Python:

```
from prometheus_client import Histogram
from prometheus_client import start_http_server
import torch

start_http_server(8080)
restore_duration = Histogram(
    'checkpoint_restore_duration_seconds',
    'Time to restore checkpoint',
    buckets=[1, 5, 10, 30, 60]
)
with restore_duration.time():
    model.load_state_dict(torch.load("s3://my-bucket/checkpoint.pt"))
```

In Grafana, use the query `histogram_quantile(0.95, sum(rate(checkpoint_restore_duration_seconds_bucket[5m]) by (le))` to visualize P95 restore latency trends. To learn more, see Prometheus Histogram Documentation and Prometheus Client Documentation.

Application Scaling and Performance

> **Tip**
>
> Explore best practices through Amazon EKS workshops.

Managing ML Artifacts, Serving Frameworks, and Startup Optimization

Deploying machine learning (ML) models on Amazon EKS requires thoughtful consideration of how models are integrated into container images and runtime environments. This ensures scalability, reproducibility, and efficient resource utilization. This topic describes the different approaches to handling ML model artifacts, selecting serving frameworks, and optimizing container startup times through techniques like pre-caching, all tailored to reduce container startup times.

Handling ML Model Artifacts in Deployments

A key decision is how to handle the ML model artifacts (such as weights and configurations) themselves. The choice impacts image size, deployment speed, model update frequency, and operational overhead. Note that when referring to storing the "model", we are referring to the model artifacts (such as trained parameters and model weights). There are different approaches to handling ML model artifacts on Amazon EKS. Each has its trade-offs, and the best one depends on your model's size, update cadence, and infrastructure needs. Consider the following approaches from least to most recommended:

- **Baking the model into the container image**: Copy the model files (e.g., .safetensors, .pth, .h5) into the container image (e.g., Dockerfile) during image build. The model is part of the immutable image. We recommend using this approach for smaller models with infrequent updates. This ensures consistency and reproducibility, provides no loading delay, and simplifies dependency management, but results in larger image sizes, slowing builds and pushes, requires rebuilding and redeploying for model updates, and it is not ideal for large models due to registry pull throughput.
- **Downloading the model at runtime**: At container startup, the application downloads the model from external storage (e.g., Amazon S3, backed by S3 CRT for optimized high-throughput transfers using methods such as Mountpoint for S3 CSI driver, AWS S3 CLI, or s5cmd OSS CLI) via scripts in an init container or entrypoint. We recommend starting with this approach for large models with frequent updates. This keeps container images focused on code/runtime, enables

easy model updates without rebuilds, supports versioning via storage metadata, but it introduces potential network failures (requires retry logic), it requires authentication and caching.

To learn more, see Accelerating pull process in the AI on EKS Workshop.

Serving ML Models

Deploying and serving machine learning (ML) models on Amazon EKS requires selecting an appropriate model serving approach to optimize for latency, throughput, scalability, and operational simplicity. The choice depends on your model type (e.g., language, vision model), workload demands (e.g., real-time inference), and team expertise. Common approaches include Python-based setups for prototyping, dedicated model servers for production-grade features, and specialized inference engines for high-performance and efficiency. Each method involves trade-offs in setup complexity, performance, and resource utilization. Note that serving frameworks may increase container image sizes (multiple GBs) due to dependencies, potentially impacting startup times—consider decoupling using artifact handling techniques to mitigate this. Options are listed from least to most recommended:

Using Python frameworks (e.g., FastAPI, HuggingFace Transformers with PyTorch) Develop a custom application using Python frameworks, embedding model files (weights, config, tokenizer) within a containerized node setup.

- **Pros**: Easy prototyping, Python-only with no extra infrastructure, compatible with all HuggingFace models, simple Kubernetes deployment.
- **Cons**: Restricts to single request/simple batching, slow token generation (no optimized kernels), memory inefficient, lacks scaling/monitoring, and involves long startup times.
- **Recommendation**: Use for initial prototyping or single-node tasks requiring custom logic integration.

Using dedicated model serving frameworks (e.g., TensorRT-LLM, TGI) Adopt specialized servers like TensorRT-LLM or TGI for ML inference, managing model loading, routing, and optimization. These support formats like safetensors, with optional compilation or plugins.

- **Pros**: Offers batching (static/in-flight or continuous), quantization (INT8, FP8, GPTQ), hardware optimizations (NVIDIA, AMD, Intel, Inferentia), and multi-GPU support (Tensor/Pipeline Parallelism). TensorRT-LLM supports diverse models (LLMs, Encoder-Decoder), while TGI leverages HuggingFace integration.

- **Cons**: TensorRT-LLM needs compilation and is NVIDIA-only; TGI may be less efficient in batching; both add configuration overhead and may not fit all model types (e.g., non-transformers).
- **Recommendation**: Suitable for PyTorch/TensorFlow models needing production capabilities like A/B testing or high throughput with compatible hardware.

Using specialized high-throughput inference engines (e.g., vLLM) Utilize advanced inference engines like vLLM, optimizing LLM serving with PagedAttention, in-flight batching, and quantization (INT8, FP8-KV, AWQ), integrable with EKS autoscaling.

- **Pros**: High throughput and memory efficiency (40-60% VRAM savings), dynamic request handling, token streaming, single-node Tensor Parallel multi-GPU support, and broad hardware compatibility.
- **Cons**: Optimized for decoder-only transformers (e.g., LLaMA), less effective for non-transformer models, requires compatible hardware (e.g., NVIDIA GPUs) and setup effort.
- **Recommendation**: Top choice for high-volume, low-latency LLM inference on EKS, maximizing scalability and performance.

Optimizing container image pull times

Large container images can cause cold start delays that impact pod start-up latency. For latency-sensitive workloads, like real-time inference workloads scaled horizontally, quick pod startup is critical. Consider the following approaches to optimize container image pull times:

Reducing Container Image Sizes

Reducing the size of container images during startup is another way to make images smaller. You can make reductions at every step of the container image build process. To start, choose base images that contain the least number of dependencies required. During image builds, include only the essential libraries and artifacts that are required. When building images, try combining multiple `RUN` or `COPY` commands to create a smaller number of larger layers. For AI/ML frameworks, use multi-stage builds to separate build and runtime, copying only required artifacts (e.g., via `COPY --from=` for registries or local contexts), and select variants like runtime-only images (e.g., `pytorch/pytorch:2.7.1-cuda11.8-cudnn9-runtime` at 3.03 GB vs. devel at 6.66 GB). To learn more, see Reducing container image size in the AI on EKS Workshop.

Using SOCI snapshotter to Pre-pull Images

For very large images that you can't easily minimize, you can use the open source Seekable OCI (SOCI) snapshotter configured in parallel pull and unpack mode. This solution lets you use existing images without rebuilding or modifying your build pipelines. This option is especially effective when deploying workloads with very large images to high performance EC2 compute instances. It works well with high-throughput networking and high performance storage configurations as is typical with scaled AI/ML workloads.

SOCI parallel pull/unpack mode improves end-to-end image pull performance through configurable parallelization strategies. Faster image pulls and preparation directly impact how quickly you can deploy new workloads and scale your cluster efficiently. Image pulls have two main phases:

1. Fetching layers from the registry to the node

For layer fetch optimization, SOCI creates multiple concurrent HTTP connections per layer, multiplying download throughput beyond the single-connection limitation. It splits large layers into chunks and downloads them simultaneously across multiple connections. This approach helps saturate your available network bandwidth and reduce download times significantly. This is particularly valuable for AI/ML workloads where a single layer can be several gigabytes.

2. Unpacking and preparing those layers to create containers

For layer unpacking optimization, SOCI processes multiple layers simultaneously. Instead of waiting for each layer to fully unpack before starting the next, it uses your available CPU cores to decompress and extract multiple layers concurrently. This parallel processing transforms the traditionally I/O-bound unpacking phase into a CPU-optimized operation that scales with your available cores. The system carefully orchestrates this parallelization to maintain filesystem consistency while maximizing throughput.

SOCI parallel pull mode uses a dual-threshold control system with configurable parameters for both download concurrency and unpacking parallelism. This granular control lets you fine-tune SOCI's behavior to meet your specific performance requirements and environment conditions. Understanding these parameters helps you optimize your runtime for the best pull performance.

References

- For more information on the solution and tuning tradeoffs, see the feature documentation in the SOCI project repository on GitHub.
- For a hands-on example with Karpenter on Amazon EKS, see the Karpenter Blueprint using SOCI snapshotter parallel pull/unpack mode.
- For information on configuring Bottlerocket for parallel pull, see soci-snapshotter Parallel Pull Unpack Mode in the Bottlerocket Documentation.o

Using EBS Snapshots to Pre-pull Images

You can take an Amazon Elastic Block Store (EBS) snapshot of cached container images and reuse this snapshot for EKS worker nodes. This ensures images are prefetched locally upon node startup, reducing pod initialization time. See Reduce container startup time on Amazon EKS with Bottlerocket data volume for more information using Karpenter and EKS Terraform Blueprints for managed node groups.

To learn more, see Using containerd snapshotter and Preload container images into Bottlerocket data volumes with EBS Snapshots in the AI on EKS Workshop.

Using the Container Runtime Cache to Pre-pull Images

You can pre-pull container images onto nodes using Kubernetes resources (e.g., DaemonSet or Deployment) to populate the node's container runtime cache. The container runtime cache is the local storage managed by the container runtime (e.g., containerd where images are stored after being pulled from a registry. Pre-pulling ensures images are available locally, avoiding download delays during pod startup. This approach is particularly useful when images change often (e.g., frequent updates), when EBS snapshots are not preconfigured, when building an EBS volume would be more time-consuming than direct pulling from a container registry, or when nodes are already in the cluster and need to spin up pods on-demand using one of several possible images.

Pre-pulling all variants ensures fast startup time regardless of which image is needed. For example, in a massively parallel ML workload requiring 100,000 small models built using 10 different techniques, pre-pulling 10 images via DaemonSet across a large cluster (e.g., thousands of nodes) minimizes pod startup time, enabling completion in under 10 seconds by avoiding on-demand pulls. Using the container runtime cache approach eliminates the need to manage EBS snapshots, ensures you always get the latest container image version with DaemonSets, but for real-time inference workloads where nodes scale in/out, new nodes added by tools like Cluster Autoscaler may schedule workload pods before the pre-pull DaemonSet completes image pulling. This can

cause the initial pod on the new node to trigger the pull anyway, potentially delaying startup and impacting low-latency requirements. Additionally, kubelet image garbage collection can affect pre-pulled images by removing unused ones when disk usage exceeds certain thresholds or if they exceed a configured maximum unused age. In scale-in/out patterns, this may evict images on idle nodes, which requires re-pulls during subsequent scale-ups and reducing the reliability of the cache for bursty workloads.

See AWS GitHub repository for examples of pre-pulling images into the container runtime cache.

Consider NVMe for kubelet and containerd storage

Consider configuring `kubelet` and `containerd` to use ephemeral NVMe instance storage disks for higher disk performance. The container pull process involves downloading a container image from a registry and decompressing its layers into a usable format. To optimize I/O operations during decompression, you should evaluate what provides higher levels of I/O performance and throughput for your container host's instance type: NVMe backed-instances with local storage vs. EBS Volume IOPS/throughput. For EC2 instances with NVMe local storage, consider configuring the node's underlying filesystem for kubelet (`/var/lib/kubelet`), containerd (`/var/lib/containerd`) and Pod logs (`/var/log/pods`) to use ephemeral NVMe instance storage disks for higher levels of I/O performance and throughput.

The node's ephemeral storage can be shared among Pods that request ephemeral storage and container images that are downloaded to the node. If using Karpenter with Bottlerocket or AL2023 EKS Optimized AMIs this can be configured in the EC2NodeClass by setting instanceStorePolicy to RAID0 or, if using Managed Node Groups, by setting the localStoragePolicy in NodeConfig as part of user data.

Contribute to this guide

Anyone can contribute to the best practices guide. The EKS Best Practices Guide is written in the AsciiDoc format on GitHub.

Summary for existing contributors

- Open the `bpg-docs.code-workspace` with VS Code to automatically install the AsciiDoc extension.
  - Learn more about the AsciiDoc Extension on the Visual Studio Marketplace.
- The source files for the AWS Docs website are stored in `latest/bpg`
- The syntax is highly similar to markdown.
  - Review the Syntax Reference in the AsciiDoctor docs.
- The docs platform only deploys `latest/bpg/images`. Each of the guide sections has a symbolic link back to this directory. For example, `latest/bpg/networking/images` points to `latest/bpg/images`.

Setup a local editing environment

If you plan to edit the guide frequently, setup a local editing environment.

Fork and clone the repo

You need to be familiar with `git`, `github`, and text editors. For information on getting started with `git` and `github`, see Getting started with your GitHub account in the GitHub docs.

1. View the EKS Best Practices Guide on GitHub.
2. Create a fork of the project repo. Learn how to fork a repository in the GitHub docs.
3. Clone your fork of the project repo. Learn how to clone your forked repository.

Open the VS Code Workspace

AWS recommends using Visual Studio Code from Microsoft to edit the guide. For more information about VS Code, see Download Visual Studio Code and Get started with Visual Studio Code in the Visual Studio Code Documentation.

1. Open VS Code.
2. Open the `bpg-docs.code-workspace` file from the cloned repo.
3. If this is your first time opening this workspace, accept the prompt to install the AsciiDoc extension. This extension checks the syntax of AsciiDoc files and generates a live preview.
4. Browse to the `latest/bpg` directory. This directory holds the source files that deploy to the AWS documentation site. The source files are organized by guide section, such as "security" or "networking".

Edit a file

1. Open a file in the editor.
   - View the AsciiDoc Syntax to learn how to create headings, links, and lists.
   - You can use Markdown syntax to format text, create lists, and headings. You cannot use Markdown syntax to create links.
2. Open a live preview of the page.
   - First, press `ctrl-k` or `cmd-k` (depending on keyboard). Second, press `v`. This opens a preview in split view.

AWS suggests using feature branches to organize your changes. Learn how to create branches with git.

Submit a Pull Request

You can create a pull request from the GitHub website or the GitHub cli.

Learn how to create a pull request from a fork by using the GitHub Website.

Learn how to create a pull request by using the GitHub cli.

Use the github.dev web-based editor

The `github.dev` web-based editor is based on VS Code. This is a great way to edit multiple files and preview content without any setup.

It has support for the AsciiDoc extension. You can do git operations by using the GUI. The web-based editor does not have a shell or terminal for running commands.

You must have a GitHub account. You will be prompted to login if required.

Launch the GitHub web-based editor.

Edit a single page

You can rapidly update individual pages by using GitHub. Each page contains an "# Edit this page on GitHub" link at the bottom.

1. Navigate to the page in this guide you want to edit
2. Click the "Edit this page on GitHub" link at the bottom
3. Click the edit pencil icon on the top right of the GitHub file viewer, or press e
4. Edit the file
5. Submit your changes using the "Commit changes…" button. This button creates a GitHub pull request. The guide maintainers will review this pull request. A reviewer will approve the pull request, or request changes.

View and set the ID for a page

This page explains how to view and set page ID.

The page ID is a unique string that identifies each page on the documentation site. You can view the page ID in the address bar of your browser when you're on a specific page. The page ID is used for the URL, the filename, and to create cross-reference links.

For example, if you're viewing this page, the URL in your browser's address bar will look similar to:

```
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/view-set-page-id.html
```

The last part of the URL (`view-set-page-id`) is the page ID.

Set the page ID

When creating a new page, you need to set the page ID in the source file. The page ID should be a concise, hyphenated string that describes the page content.

1. Open the source file for your new page in a text editor.

2. At the top of the file, add the following line. It should be above the first heading.

```
[#my-new-page]
```

   Replace `my-new-page` with the page ID for your new page.

3. Save the file.

> **Note**
>
> Page IDs must be unique across the entire documentation site. If you try to use an existing page ID, you'll get a build error.

Create a new page

Learn how create a new page and update the guide table of contents.

Create page metadata

1. Determine the page title, and page short title. The page short title is optional, but recommended if the page title is more than a few words.
2. Determine the ID of the page. This must be unique within the EKS Best Practices Guide. The convention is to use all lowercase, and separate words with `-`.
3. Create a new asciidoc file, in a folder if needed, and add the following text to the file:

   Example

   ["topic"] [#<page-id>] = <page-title> :info_titleabbrev: <page-short-title>

   For example,

   Example

   ["topic"] [#scalability] = EKS Scalability best practices :info_titleabbrev: Scalability

Add to table of contents

1. Open the file for the parent page in the table of contents. For new top level guide sections, the parent file is book.adoc.
2. At the bottom of the parent file, update and insert the following directive:

   Example

   include::<new-filename>[leveloffset=+1]

   For Example,

   Example

   include::dataplane.adoc[leveloffset=+1]

Insert an image

1. Find the image prefix for the page you are editing. Review the `:imagesdir:` property in the heading of the file. For examples, `` `:imagesdir: images/reliability/ ``
2. Place your image in this path, such as `latest/bpg/images/reliability`
3. Determine appropriate alt-text for you image. Write a short high-level description of the image. For example, "diagram of VPC with three availability zones" is appropriate alt-text.
4. Update the following example with the alt-text and image filename. Insert at the desired location.

   Example

   image::<image-filename>[<image-alt-text>]

   For example,

   Example

   image::eks-data-plane-connectivity.jpeg[Network diagram]

Check style with Vale

1. Install the Vale CLI.
2. Run `vale sync`
3. Install the Vale Extension from the Visual Studio Marketplace.
4. Restart VS Code, and open an AsciiDoc file
5. VS Code underlines problematic text. Learn how to work with Errors and Warnings in the VS Code docs.

Build a local preview

1. Install the `asciidoctor` tool using `brew` on Linux or MacOS
   - Learn how to install asciidoctor cli in the AsciiDoctor docs.
   - Learn how install the brew package manager.
2. Open a terminal, and navigate to `latest/bpg/`
3. Run `asciidoctor book.adoc`
   - Review any syntax warnings and errors
4. Open the `book.html` output file.
   - On MacOS, you can run `open book.html` to open the preview in your default browser.

AsciiDoc Cheat Sheet

Basic Formatting

```
*bold text*
_italic text_
`monospace text`
```

Headers

```
= Document Title (Header 1)
== Header 2
=== Header 3
==== Header 4
```

```
===== Header 5
====== Header 6
```

Lists

Unordered Lists:

```
- Item 1
- Item 2
-- Subitem 2.1
-- Subitem 2.2
- Item 3
```

Ordered Lists:

```
. First item
. Second item
.. Subitem 2.1
.. Subitem 2.2
. Third item
```

Links

```
External link:  https://example.com[Link text]
Internal link: <<page-id>>
Internal link: xref:page-id[Link text]
```

Images

```
image::image-file.jpg[Alt text]
```

Code Blocks

```
 [source,python]
 ----
 def hello_world():
     print("Hello, World!")
 ----
```

Tables

Learn how to build a basic table.

```
[cols="1,1"]
|===
|Cell in column 1, row 1
|Cell in column 2, row 1

|Cell in column 1, row 2
|Cell in column 2, row 2

|Cell in column 1, row 3
|Cell in column 2, row 3
|===
```

Admonitions

```
NOTE: This is a note admonition.

WARNING: This is a warning admonition.

TIP: This is a tip admonition.

IMPORTANT: This is an important admonition.

CAUTION: This is a caution admonition.
```

Preview:

> **Note**
>
> This is a note admonition.

Includes

```
include::filename.adoc[]
```